An Oshkosh Corporation Company

Service and Maintenance Manual

Models
600S
600SJ
660SJ

S/N 0300080000 to 0300171769

P/N - 3121202

February 26, 2014

ANSI

CE

An Oshkosh Corporation Company

SECTION A. INTRODUCTION - MAINTENANCE SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

A GENERAL

This section contains the general safety precautions which must be observed during maintenance of the aerial platform. It is of utmost importance that maintenance personnel pay strict attention to these warnings and precautions to avoid possible injury to themselves or others, or damage to the equipment. A maintenance program must be followed to ensure that the machine is safe to operate.

⚠ WARNING

MODIFICATION OR ALTERATION OF AN AERIAL WORK PLATFORM SHALL BE MADE ONLY WITH WRITTEN PERMISSION FROM THE MANUFACTURER.

The specific precautions to be observed during maintenance are inserted at the appropriate point in the manual. These precautions are, for the most part, those that apply when servicing hydraulic and larger machine component parts.

Your safety, and that of others, is the first consideration when engaging in the maintenance of equipment. Always be conscious of weight. Never attempt to move heavy parts without the aid of a mechanical device. Do not allow heavy objects to rest in an unstable position. When raising a portion of the equipment, ensure that adequate support is provided.

⚠ WARNING

SINCE THE MACHINE MANUFACTURER HAS NO DIRECT CONTROL OVER THE FIELD INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE, SAFETY IN THIS AREA RESPONSIBILITY OF THE OWNER/OPERATOR.

B HYDRAULIC SYSTEM SAFETY

It should be noted that the machines hydraulic systems operate at extremely high potentially dangerous pressures. Every effort should be made to relieve any system pressure prior to disconnecting or removing any portion of the system.

Relieve system pressure by cycling the applicable control several times with the engine stopped and ignition on, to direct any line pressure back into the reservoir. Pressure feed lines to system components can then be disconnected with minimal fluid loss.

C MAINTENANCE

⚠ WARNING

FAILURE TO COMPLY WITH SAFETY PRECAUTIONS LISTED IN THIS SECTION COULD RESULT IN MACHINE DAMAGE, PERSONNEL INJURY OR DEATH AND IS A SAFETY VIOLATION.

- ENSURE REPLACEMENT PARTS OR COMPONENTS ARE IDENTICAL OR EQUIVALENT TO ORIGINAL PARTS OR COMPONENTS.
- NO SMOKING IS MANDATORY. NEVER REFUEL DURING ELECTRICAL STORMS. ENSURE THAT FUEL CAP IS CLOSED AND SECURE AT ALL OTHER TIMES.
- REMOVE ALL RINGS, WATCHES AND JEWELRY WHEN PERFORMING ANY MAINTENANCE.
- DO NOT WEAR LONG HAIR UNRESTRAINED, OR LOOSE-FITTING CLOTHING AND NECKTIES WHICH ARE APT TO BECOME CAUGHT ON OR ENTANGLED IN EQUIPMENT.
- OBSERVE AND OBEY ALL WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS ON MACHINE AND IN SERVICEMANUAL.
- KEEP OIL, GREASE, WATER, ETC. WIPED FROM STANDING SURFACES AND HAND HOLDS.
- USE CAUTION WHEN CHECKING A HOT, PRESSURIZED COOLANT SYSTEM.
- NEVER WORK UNDER AN ELEVATED BOOM UNTIL BOOM HAS BEEN SAFELY RESTRAINED FROM ANY MOVEMENT BY BLOCKING OR OVERHEAD SLING, OR BOOM SAFETY PROP HAS BEEN ENGAGED.
- BEFORE MAKING ADJUSTMENTS, LUBRICATING OR PERFORMING ANY OTHER MAINTENANCE, SHUT OFF ALL POWER CONTROLS.
- BATTERY SHOULD ALWAYS BE DISCONNECTED-DURING REPLACEMENT OF ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS.
- KEEP ALL SUPPORT EQUIPMENT AND ATTACHMENTS STOWED IN THEIR PROPER PLACE.
- USE ONLY APPROVED, NONFLAMMABLE CLEANING SOLVENTS.

REVISON LOG

Original Issue	- October 15, 2004
Revised	- May 23, 2005
Revised	- October 11, 2005
Revised	- March 2, 2006
Revised	- March 12, 2008
Revised	- November 20, 2012
Revised	- February 26, 2014

SECTION NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.

SECTION NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.

SECTION NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.

SECTION NO. TITLE PAGE NO.

FIGURE NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.
3-31.	Shaft and Front Bearing	3-30
3-32.	Cylinder Kit Installation	3-30
3-33.	Servo Spring and Minimum Angle Stop	3-30
3-34.	Valve Plate and Rear Bearing	3-31
3-35.	End Cap	3-31
3-36.	Shaft Seal	3-32
3-37.	Plugs and Fittings Installation	3-32
3-38.	Loop Flushing Spool	3-33
3-39.	Steer Adjustments	3-35
3-40.	Swing Torque Hub Adjustment	3-36
3-41.	Swing Drive Hub (Fairfield)	3-44
3-42.	Swing Bearing Bolt Feeler Gauge Check	3-45
3-43.	Swing Bearing Tolerance Boom Placement	3-46
3-44.	Swing Bearing Tolerance Measuring Point	3-47
3-45.	Swing Bearing Torque Sequence	3-48
3-46.	Swing Brake Assembly (Mico)	3-50
3-47.	Rotary Coupling - Sheet 1 of 2	3-52
3-48.	Rotary Coupling - Sheet 2 of 2	3-53
3-49.	Rotary Coupling Port Location - 2WS	3-54
3-50.	Rotary Coupling Port Location - 4WS	3-55
3-51.	Inspecting Generator Brushes, Replacing Brushes, and Cleaning Slip Rings	3-58
3-52.	EFI Component Location	3-62
3-53.	Typical Fuel System	3-66
3-54.	Ford LPG System	3-71
3-55.	Deutz Sensors for JLG Control System	3-74
3-56.	Deutz Engine Installation - Sheet 1 of 2	3-75
3-57.	Deutz Engine Installation - Sheet 2 of 2	3-76
3-58.	Caterpillar Engine Installation - Sheet 1 of 2	3-77
3-59.	Caterpillar Engine Installation - Sheet 2 of 2	3-78
3-60.	Ford Engine Installation - Sheet 1 of 2	3-79
3-61.	Ford Engine Installation - Sheet 2 of 2	3-80
3-62.	EMR 2 Engine Side Equipment	3-82
3-63.	Deutz EMR 2 Troubleshooting Flow Chart	3-83
3-64.	Deutz EMR 2 Vehicle Side Connection Diagram	3-84
3-65.	Deutz EMR 2 Engine Side Connection Diagram - Sheet 1 of 2	3-85
3-66.	Deutz EMR 2 Engine Side Connection Diagram - Sheet 2 of 2	3-86
3-67.	EMR 2 Engine Plug Pin Identification	3-87
3-68.	EMR 2 Vehicle Plug Pin Identification	3-88
3-69.	EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 1 of 5	3-89
3-70.	EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 2 of 5	3-90
3-71.	EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 3 of 5	3-91
3-72.	EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 4 of 5	3-92
3-73.	EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 5 of 5	3-93
3-74.	Engine Oil Dip Stick	3-96
3-75.	Electric Fuel Lock Off	3-99
3-76.	EPR Assembly	3-99

FIGURE NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.

TABLE NO.	TITLE	PAGE NO.

SECTION 1. SPECIFICATIONS

1.1 CAPACITIES

Table 1-1. Capacities

Fuel Tank	39 Gallons (147.6 L)
Hydraulic Oil Tank	31 Gallons (117.3 L) w/ 10% air space
Hydraulic System (Including Tank)	37.2 Gallons (140.8 L)
Torque Hub, Drive*	17 ounces (0.50 L)
Engine Crankcase Ford LRG-425 Gas w/Filter Ford LRG-423 Gas w/Filter Deutz F4M1011F Diesel w/Filter Caterpillar 3044C Diesel w/Filter GM 3.0L w/Filter	 4.5 quarts (4.25L) 5.00 quarts (4.73 L) 11 quarts (10.5 L) 10.6 quarts (10 L) 4.5 quarts (4.25L)
*Torque hubs should be one half full of lubricant.	

1.2 COMPONENT DATA

Engine Data

Table 1-2. Ford LRG-425 Specifications

Fuel	Gasoline
Oil Capacity	4.5 Quarts (4.25 L) w/Filter
Idle RPM	1000
Low RPM	1800
High RPM	2800
Alternator	40 Amp, Belt Drive
Battery	85 Amphour, 550 Cold Cranking Amps, 12 VDC
Fuel Consumption Low RPM High RPM	 3.45 GPH (13.06 lph) 4.60 GPH (17.41 lph)
Horsepower	54 @ 2400 RPM, full load
Cooling System	16 Quarts (15.14 L)
Spark Plug	AWSF-52-C
Spark Plug Gap	0.044 in. (1.117 mm)

Table 1-3. Deutz F4M1011F/F4M2011 Specifications

Fuel	Diesel
Oil Capacity Cooling System Crankcase Total Capacity	 5 Quarts (4.5 L) 11 Quarts (10.5 L) w/Filter 16 Quarts (15 L)
Idle RPM	1000
Low RPM	1800
High RPM	2800
Alternator	60 Amp, belt drive
Battery	950 Cold Cranking Amps, 205 Minutes Reserve Capacity, 12 VDC
Fuel Consumption Low RPM High RPM	 1.90 GPH (7.19 lph) 2.50 GPH (9.46 lph)
Horsepower	65 @ 3000 RPM, full load

Table 1-4. Deutz D2011L04 Specifications

Fuel	Diesel
Oil Capacity Cooling System Crankcase Total Capacity	 5 Quarts (4.5 L) 11 Quarts (10.5 L) w/Filter 16 Quarts (15 L)
Idle RPM	1000
Low RPM	1800
High RPM	2500
Alternator	60 Amp, belt drive
Battery	950 Cold Cranking Amps, 205 Minutes Reserve Capacity, 12 VDC
Fuel Consumption Low RPM High RPM	 1.90 GPH (7.19 lph) 2.50 GPH (9.46 lph)
Horsepower	49 @ 2500 RPM, full load

Table 1-5. Caterpillar 3044C

Type	Four Stroke Cycle
Cylinders	4 in-line
Bore	3.70 inch (94 mm)
Stroke	4.72 inch (120 mm)
Aspiration	turbocharged
Compression ratio	19:1
Displacement	203 in^3 (3.33 L)
Firing Order	1-3-4-2
Rotation (viewed from flywheel)	Counterclockwise
Oil Capacity (w/filter)	10.6 quarts (10 L)
Cooling System (Engine Only)	5.8 quarts (5.5 L)

Table 1-6. GM 3.0L

Fuel	Gasoline or Gasoline/LP Gas
No. of Cylinders	4
BHP Gasoline LP	 83 hp @ 3000 rpm 75 hp @ 3000 rpm
Bore	4.0 in. (101.6 mm)
Stroke	3.6 in. (91.44 mm)
Displacement	181 cu.in. (3.0 L, 2966 cc)
Oil Capacity w/filter	4.5 qts. (4.25 L)
Minimum Oil Pressure at idle Hot	 6 psi (0.4 Bar) @ 1000 rpm 18 psi (1.2 Bar) @ 2000 rpm
Compression Ratio	9.2:1
Firing Order	1-3-4-2
Max. RPM	2800

Drive System

Table 1-7. Drive System Specifications

Drive Motor Displacement	2.8 cu. in. max. 1.1 cu. in. min. (46 cm3] max. 18 cm3] min.)
Drive Hub Ratio 2WD 4WD	 53.58:1 43:1
Drive Brake	Automatic spring applied, hydraulically released disc brakes
Toe-in	adjust for 1/4" (6.35 mm) overall

Tires

Table 1-8. Tire Specifications

Size	Load Range	Ply Rating	Pressure
15 x 19.5	G	14	95 PSI (6.5 Bar)
15 x 19.5	G	14	Foam-Filled
18 x 625	H	16	60 PSI (4 Bar)
41/18LL x 22.5	G	14	70 PSI (5 Bar)

Swing System

Table 1-9. Swing System Specifications

Swing Motor Displacement	4.62 cu. in. (75 cm^3)
Swing Brake	Automatic spring applied hydraulically released disc brakes
Swing Hub Ratio	50:1
Hydraulic Gear Pump (at 1800 RPM)	7.9 GPM (29.90 lpm)
Pump Displacement	1.02 cu. in. (16 cm^3)
Rotation	Clockwise

Auxiliary Power Pump

Table 1-10. Auxiliary Power Pump Specifications

Output	2.6 GPM (9.84 lpm) @ 1200 PSI. (82.7 BAR)
Pump Displacement	0.244 cu. in. (14 cm^3)
Motor	DC
Rotation	Clockwise

Hydraulic Filters

Table 1-11. Hydraulic Filters

Pressure Filter	In-line
Return - Bypass Type	10 Microns Absolute
Charge	10 Microns Absolute
Hydraulic Strainers (In Tank)	30 Microns

1.3 PERFORMANCE DATA

Table 1-12. Performance Data

Travel Speed 2WD 4WD	 4.5 MPH (7.25 Km/hr.) 4 MPH (6.44 Km/hr.)
Gradeability 2WD 4WD	 30% 45%

Machine Weight (Approximate)

Table 1-13. Machine Weight (Approximate)

Model	Lbs.	Kg
600S - 2WD	22,000	9,979
600SJ - 2WD	23,500	10,660
660SJ - 2WD	25,500	11,567
600S - 4WD	22,510	10,211
600SJ - 4WD	23,980	10,877
660SJ- 4WD	25,910	11,753

Dimensional Data

Table 1-14. Dimensional Data

Machine Height (Stowed)	8 ft. 4.75 in. (2.56 m)
Machine Length (Stowed) 600S Over Drive Axle 600SJ Over Drive Axle 660SJ Over Drive Axle	 27 ft. 11.125 in. (8.51 m) 32 ft. 11.75 in. (10.05 m) 35 ft. 2.875 in. (11.40 m)
Machine Width 2WS/2WD 2WS/4WD 4WS/2WD 4WS/4WD	 7 ft. 11.375 in. (2.42 m) 7 ft. 11.4375 in. (242 m) 7 ft. 11.4375 in. (2.42 m) 7 ft. 11.375 in. (2.42 m)
Wheelbase	8 ft. 1.50 in. (2.48 m)
Boom Elevation - 600S	+60 ft. 2 13/16 in. (18.36 m) -6 ft. 1 11/16 in. (1.87 m)
Boom Elevation - 600SJ	+60 ft. 5 3/4 in. (18.43 m) -9 ft. 9 3/16 in. (2.98 m)
Boom Elevation - 660SJ	+66 ft. 7 5/8 in. (20.31 m) -11 ft. 5 1/4 in. (3.49 m)
Turning Radius (Inside) 2WS/2WD 2WS/4WD 4WS/2WD 4WS/4WD	 12 ft. (3.66 m) 14 ft. 3.875 in. (5.25 m) 5 ft. 5 in. (1.65 m) 5 ft. 3.625 in. (1.22 m)
Turning Radius (Outside) 2WS/2WD 2WS/4WD 4WS/2WD 4WS/4WD	 17 ft. 9 in. (5.41 m) 20 ft. 4.6875 in. (6.21 m) 11 ft. 4 in. (3.45 m) 11 ft. 2.6875 in. (3.42 m)

1.4 FUNCTION SPEEDS

Machine Orientation When Doing Speed Tests

Lift: Telescope Retracted. Lift Up, Record Time, Lift Down, Record Time.

Swing: Boom at Full Elevation. Telescope Retracted. Swing the Turntable off center and stop. Swing the opposite direction and start the test when the turntable is centered up. This eliminates ramp up and down on the controller affecting times.

Telescope: Boom at Full Elevation; Telescope Retracted; Telescope Out, Record Time. Telescope In, Record Time.

Drive (Forward/Reverse): Test should be done on a smooth level surface. Drive Select Switch should be set to High Engine. Start approximately 25 ft. (7.62 m) from the starting point so that the unit is at maximum speed when starting the test. Results should be recorded for a 200 ft. (60.96 m) course. Drive Forward, Record Time. Drive Reverse, Record Time.

Drive (Above Horizontal): Test should be done on a smooth level surface. Drive Select Switch should be set to Low Engine. The boom should be raised above horizontal. Results should be recorded for a 50 ft. (15.24 m) course. Drive Forward, Record Time. Drive Reverse, Record Time.

Platform Rotate: Platform level and completely rotated one direction. Rotate the opposite direction, Record Time. Rotate the other direction, Record Time.

Articulating Jib: Platform level and centered with the boom. Start with the Jib down. Jib Up, Record Time. Jib Down, Record Time.

Test Notes

1. Stop watch should be started with the function, not with the controller or switch.
2. All speed tests are run from the platform. These speeds do not reflect the ground control operation.
3. The platform speed knob control must be at full speed (turned clockwise completely).
4. Function speeds may vary due to cold, thick hydraulic oil. Test should be run with the oil temperature above 100° F (38° C).
5. Some flow control functions may not work with the speed knob clicked into the creep position.

Table 1-15. Function Speeds (In Seconds)

Function	600S
Lift Up	46-60
Lift Down	33-43
Swing Right & Left*	79-101
Telescope Out	50-67
Telescope In	25-33
Platform Rotate Right & Left**	16-25
Jib Up	22-34
Jib Down	16-26
Drive Forward & Reverse (2WD) Forward Reverse	 30-34 38-42
Drive Forward & Reverse (4WD)	30-34
Drive Above Horizontal (2WD) Forward Reverse	 46-54 58-68
Drive Above Horizontal - Forward & Reverse (4WD)	46-54
*Max 10% Difference Between Left & Right **Max 15% Difference Between Left & Right	

4150501 - B

1.5 TORQUE REQUIREMENTS

Table 1-16. Torque Requirements

Description	Torque Value (Dry)	Interval Hours
Bearing To Chassis	190 ft. lbs. (258 Nm) See Note	50/600*
Bearing To Turntable	190 ft. lbs. (258 Nm) See Note	50/600*
Wire Rope	15 ft. lbs (20 Nm)	150
Wheel Lugs	170 ft. lbs (231 Nm)	150
Engine Mounting Bolts	165 ft. lbs. (231 Nm)	A/R
Engine Manifold Mounting Bolts	30 ft. lbs. (42 Nm)	A/R
*Check swing bearing bolts for security after first 50 hours of operation and every 600 hours thereafter. (See Swing Bearing in Section 3.)		
NOTE: *When maintenance becomes necessary or a fastener has loosened, refer to the Torque Chart to determine proper torque value.*		

1.6 LUBRICATION

Ford Engine Oil Specifications

Single Viscosity Oils (SF, SF-SE, SF-CC, SF-CD)

When Outside Temperature is Consistently	Use SAE Viscosity Number
-10°F. to +60°F	*10W
(-24°C. to +16°C.)	*10W
+10°F. to +90°F	*10W
(+12°C. to +32°C.)	20W-20
Above +32°F. (+0°C.)	30
Above +50°F. (+10°C.)	40

Multi-Viscosity Oil. (SF, SF-SE, SF-CC, SF-CD)

*Not recommended for severe service, including high RPM operation

When Outside Temperature is Consistently	Use SAE Viscosity Number
Below +10°F. (+12°C.)	*5W-20
Below +60°F. (+16°C.)	5W-30
-10°F. to +90°F. (-23°C. to +32°C.)	10W-30
Above -10°F. (-23°C.)	10W-40 or 10W-50
Above +20°F. (+7°C.)	20W-40 or 20W-50

*Not recommended for severe service, including high RPM operation

NOTE: *Crankcase oil must be high quality detergent type meeting API service classification SF, SH, SG.*

Deutz Engine Oil Specifications

Single Viscosity Oil (CD-SE, CD-SF)

When Outside Temperature is Consistently	Use SAE Viscosity Number
-20°F. to +25°F. (-29°C. to +4°C.)	*10W
+5°F. to +50°F. (+15°C. to +10°C.)	20W-20
+40°F. to +85°F. (+4°C. to +30°C.)	30
Above 75°F. (24°C.)	40

Multi Viscosity Oil (CD-SE, CD-SF)

*This viscosity can be used at colder temperatures with engine oil preheating.

When Outside Temperature is Consistently	**Use SAE Viscosity Number**
-40°F. to +75°F. (-40°C. to +24°C.)	*5W-30 (Synthetic)
-15°F. to +70°F. (-26°C. to +21°C.)	10W-30
-15°F. to +85°F. (-26°C. to +30°C.)	10W-40
Above -5°F. (-21°C.)	15W-40
-5°F. to +75°F. (-21°C. to +24°C.)	15W-30

*This viscosity can be used at colder temperatures with engine oil preheating.

NOTE: *Crankcase oil should be MIL-L2104B/MIL-L2104C or have properties of API classification CC/CD grades.*

Hydraulic Oil

Table 1-17. Hydraulic Oil

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM OPERATING TEMPERATURE RANGE	SAE VISCOSITY GRADE
+0° to +180° F (-18° C to +83° C)	10W
+0° F to +210° F (-18° C to +99° C)	10W-20, 10W-30
+50° F to +210° F (+10° C to +210° C)	20W-20

NOTE: *Hydraulic oils must have anti-wear qualities at least to API Service Classification GL-3, and sufficient chemical stability for mobile hydraulic system service. JLG Industries recommends Mobilfluid 424 hydraulic oil, which has an SAE viscosity index of 152.*

NOTE: *When temperatures remain below 20° F (-7° C), JLG Industries recommends the use of Mobil DTE 13M.*

Table 1-18. Mobilfluid 424 Specs

SAE Grade	10W30
Gravity, API	29.0
Density, Lb/Gal. 60°F	7.35
Pour Point, Max	-46°F (-43°C)
Flash Point, Min.	442°F (228°C)
Viscosity	
Brookfield, cP at -18°C	2700
at 40° C	55 cSt
at 100° C	9.3 cSt
Viscosity Index	152

Table 1-19. Mobil DTE 13M Specs

ISO Viscosity Grade	#32
Specific Gravity	0.877
Pour Point, Max	-40°F (-40°C)
Flash Point, Min.	330°F (166°C)
Viscosity	
at 40° C	33cSt
at 100° C	6.6 cSt
at 100° F	169 SUS
at 210° F	48 SUS
cp at -20° F	6,200
Viscosity Index	140

Aside from JLG recommendations, it is not advisable to mix oils of different brands or types, as they may not contain the same required additives or be of comparable viscosities. If use of hydraulic oil other than Mobilfluid 424 is desired, contact JLG Industries for proper recommendations.

1.7 PRESSURE SETTINGS

Table 1-20. Pressure Settings

Setting	PSI	Bar
Main Relief	3000	207
Upper Boom Lift Down	1500	103
Swing	1700	117
Steer	1800	124
Steer Reliefs - 4WS Front & Rear	2500	172
Platform Level Forward Backward	 2800 1800	 193 124
Articulating Jib Boom Up Down	 1500 1200	 103 83

1.8 CYLINDER SPECIFICATIONS

Table 1-21. Cylinder Specifications- 600S

DESCRIPTION	BORE	STROKE	ROD DIA.
Lift	6.00 (152.4)	44.6875 (1135.1)	3 (76.2)
Telescope	3.5 (88.9)	177.75 (4514.9)	2.5 (63.5)
Steer	2.5 (63.5)	10.75 (273.1)	1.25 (31.8)
Lockout (2wd)	4 (101.6)	3.875 (98.4)	1.5 (38.1)
Master	3 (76.2)	8.5 (215.9)	1.5 (38.1)
Slave Level	3 (76.2)	8.5 (215.9)	1.5 (38.1)

Table 1-22. Cylinder Specifications - 600SJ

DESCRIPTION	BORE	STROKE	ROD DIA.
Lift	6.00 (152.4)	44.6875 (1135.1)	3 (76.2)
Telescope	3.5 (88.9)	143.1875 (3637)	2.5 (63.5)
Steer	2.5 (63.5)	10.75 (273.1)	1.25 (31.8)
Lockout (2wd)	4 (101.6)	3.875 (98.4)	1.5 (38.1)
Master	3.5 (88.9)	13.0625 (331.8)	1.5 (38.1)
Slave Level	3.5 (88.9)	13.0625 (331.8)	1.5 (38.1)
Lift (Articulating Jib Boom)	3 (76.2)	25.5 (647.7)	1.5 (38.1)

Table 1-23. Cylinder Specifications - 660SJ

DESCRIPTION	BORE	STROKE	ROD DIA.
	660SJ	660SJ	660SJ
Lift	6.00 (152.4)	44.6875 (1135.1)	3 (76.2)
Telescope	3.5 (88.9)	168.4375 (4278.3)	2.5 (63.5)
Steer	2.5 (63.5)	10.75 (273.1)	1.25 (31.8)
Lockout (2wd)	4 (101.6)	3.875 (98.4)	1.5 (38.1)
Master	3.5 (88.9)	13.0625 (331.8)	1.5 (38.1)
Slave Level	3.5 (88.9)	13.0625 (331.8)	1.5 (38.1)
Lift (Articulating Jib Boom)	3 (76.2)	25.5 (647.7)	1.5 (38.1)

1.9 MAJOR COMPONENT WEIGHTS

Table 1-24. Major Component Weights - 600S

	LB.	KG.
Platform Control Console	250	113
Platform Level Cylinder	46	21
Main Boom (Includes Lift Cyl., Rotator, and Support)	3527	1600
Turntable Complete (including engine)	7315	3318
Chassis Complete (w/pneumatic tires)	10400	4718
Chassis Complete (w/foam-filled tires)	11680	5300
Machine Complete (GVW) - 2WD w/pneumatic tires	22000	9979
Machine Complete (GVW) - 4WD w/pneumatic tires	22510	10211

Table 1-25. Major Component Weights - 600SJ

	LB.	KG.
Platform Control Console	250	113
Platform Level Cylinder	60	27
Main Boom (Includes Lift Cyl., Rotator, and Support)	3483	1580
Turntable Complete (including engine)	7915	3590
Chassis Complete (w/pneumatic tires)	11300	5126
Chassis Complete (w/foam-filled tires)	12580	5707
Machine Complete (GVW) - 2WD w/pneumatic tires	23500	10660
Machine Complete (GVW) - 4WD w/pneumatic tires	23980	10877

Table 1-26. Major Component Weights - 660SJ

	LB.	KG.
Platform Control Console	250	113
Platform Level Cylinder	60	27
Main Boom (Includes Lift Cyl., Rotator, and Support)	3783	1716
Turntable Complete (including engine)	9065	4112
Chassis Complete (w/pneumatic tires)	11775	5341
Chassis Complete (w/foam-filled tires)	13055	5922
Machine Complete (GVW) - 2WD w/pneumatic tires	25500	11567
Machine Complete (GVW) - 4WD w/pneumatic tires	25910	11753

1.10 CRITICAL STABILITY WEIGHTS

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT REPLACE ITEMS CRITICAL TO STABILITY WITH ITEMS OF DIFFERENT WEIGHT OR SPECIFICATION (FOR EXAMPLE: BATTERIES, FILLED TIRES, COUNTERWEIGHT, ENGINE & PLATFORM) DO NOT MODIFY UNIT IN ANY WAY TO AFFECT STABILITY.

Table 1-27. Critical Stability Weights - 600S

		LB.	KG.
Tire and Wheel (Ballasted Only)	Size (15 - 19.5)	253	115
Engine	Ford	460	209
	Deutz	534	242
	Continental	558	253
Counterweight	Weight	2900	1315
Platform	6 ft. (1.83 M)	205	93
	8 ft. (2.44 M)	230	105

Table 1-28. Critical Stability Weights - 600SJ

		LB.	KG.
Tire and Wheel (Ballasted Only)	Size (15 - 19.5)	253	115
Engine	Ford	460	209
	Deutz	534	242
	Continental	558	253
Counterweight	Weight	3500	1588
Platform	6 ft. (1.83 M)	205	93
	8 ft. (2.44 M)	230	105

Table 1-29. Critical Stability Weights - 660SJ

		LB.	KG.
Tire and Wheel (Ballasted Only)	Size (15 - 19.5)	253	115
Engine	Ford	460	209
	Deutz	534	242
	Continental	558	253
Counterweight	Weight	4650	2109
Platform	6 ft. (1.83 M)	205	93
	8 ft. (2.44 M)	230	105

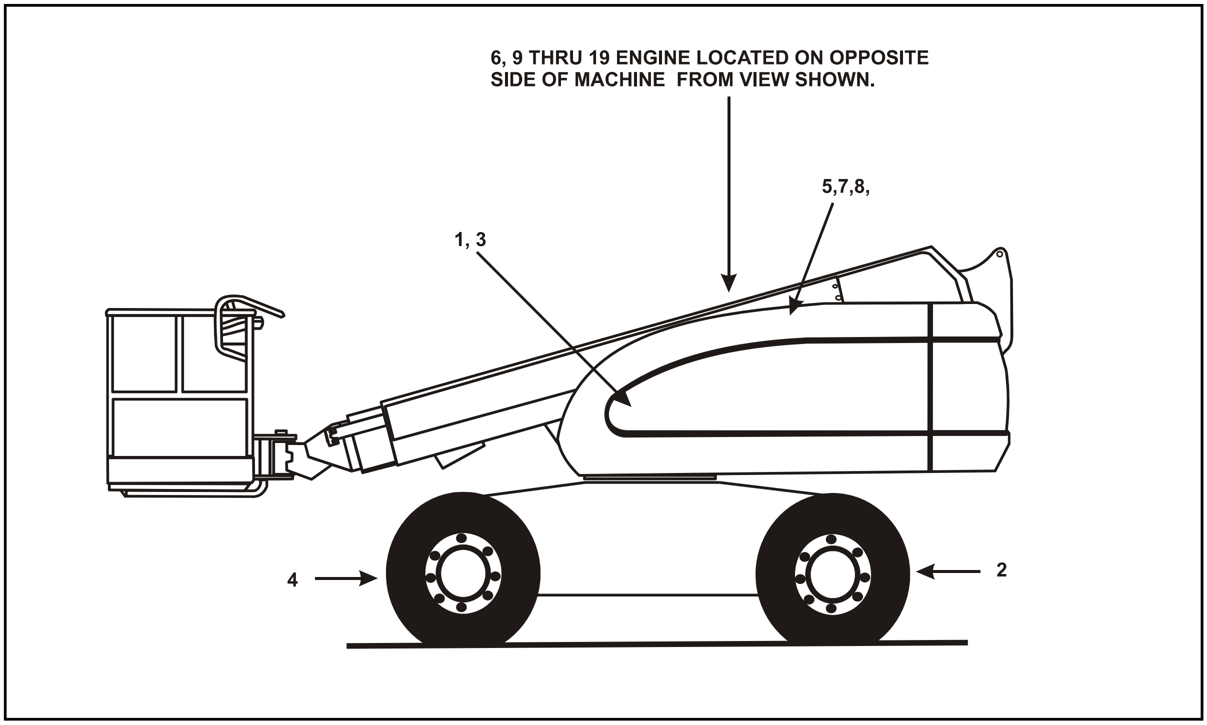


Figure 1-1. Lubrication and Operator Maintenance Point Location

1.11 LUBRICATION AND OPERATOR MAINTENANCE

NOTE: *The following numbers correspond to those in Figure 1-1., Lubrication and Operator Maintenance Point Location.*

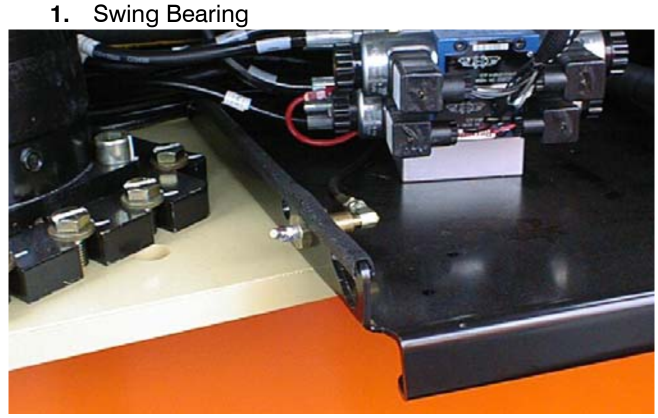
Table 1-30. Lubrication Specifications

KEY	SPECIFICATIONS
MPG	Multipurpose Grease having a minimum dripping point of 350° F. Excellent water resistance and adhesive qualities, and being of extreme pressure type. (Timken OK 40 pounds minimum.)
EPGL	Extreme Pressure Gear Lube (oil) meeting API service classification GL-5 or MIL-Spec MIL-L-2105
HO	Hydraulic Oil. API service classification GL-3, e.g. Mobilfluid 424.
EO	Engine (crankcase) Oil. Gas - API SF, SH, SG class, MIL-L-2104. Diesel - API CC/CD class, MIL-L-2104B/ MIL-L-2104C.

NOTICE

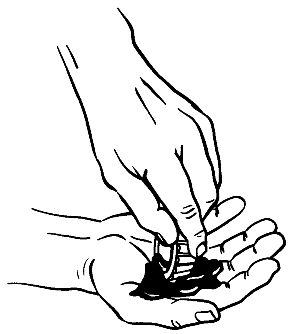
LUBRICATION INTERVALS ARE BASED ON MACHINE OPERATION UNDER NORMAL CONDITIONS. FOR MACHINES USED IN MULTI-SHIFT OPERATIONS AND/OR EXPOSED TO HOSTILE ENVIRONMENTS OR CONDITIONS, LUBRICATION FREQUENCIES MUST BE INCREASED ACCORDINGLY.

1. Swing Bearing



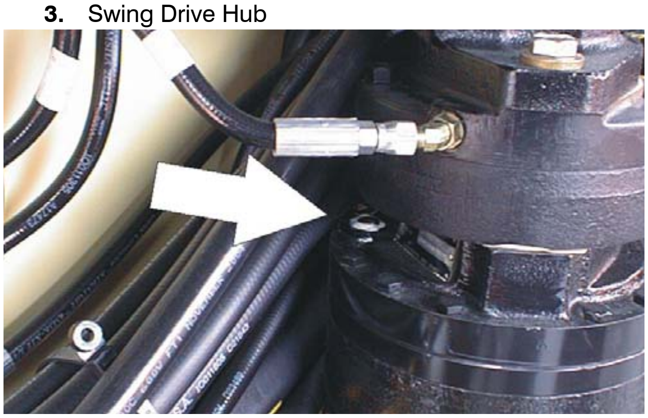
Lube Point(s) - 2 Grease Fittings
Capacity - A/R
Lube - MPG
Interval - Every 3 months or 150 hrs of operation
Comments - Remote Access

2. Wheel Bearings



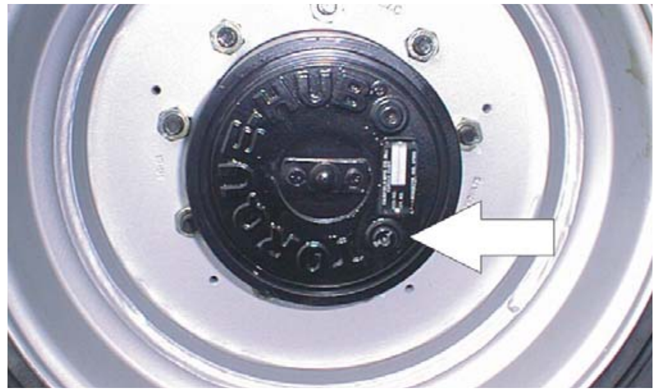
Lube Point(s) - Repack
Capacity - A/R
Lube - MPG
Interval - Every 2 years or 1200 hours of operation

3. Swing Drive Hub



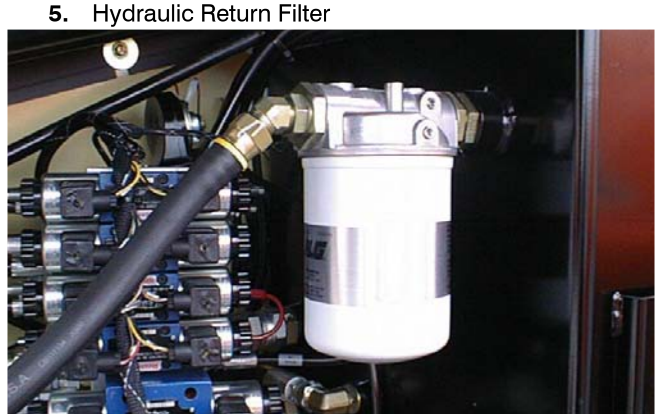
Lube Point(s) - Level/Fill Plug
Capacity - 17 oz. (1/2 Full)
Lube - EPGL
Interval - Check level every 3 months or 150 hrs of operation; change every 2 years or 1200 hours of operation

4. Wheel Drive Hub



Lube Point(s) - Level/Fill Plug
Capacity - 17 oz. (1/2 Full)
Lube - EPGL
Interval - Check level every 3 months or 150 hrs of operation; change every 2 years or 1200 hours of operation

5. Hydraulic Return Filter

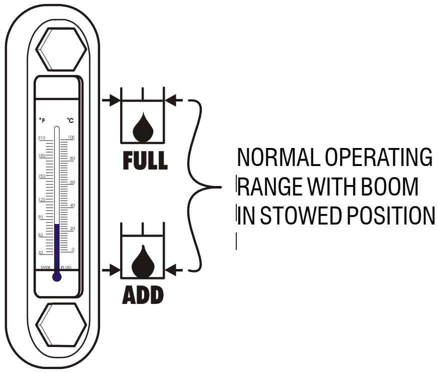


Interval - Change after first 50 hrs. and every 6 months or 300 hrs. thereafter or as indicated by Condition Indicator.

6. Hydraulic Charge Filter

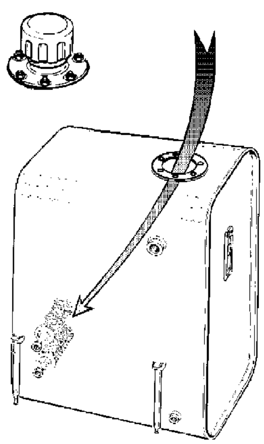
Interval - Change after first 50 hrs. and every 6 months or 300 hrs. thereafter or as indicated by Condition Indicator.

7. Hydraulic Tank



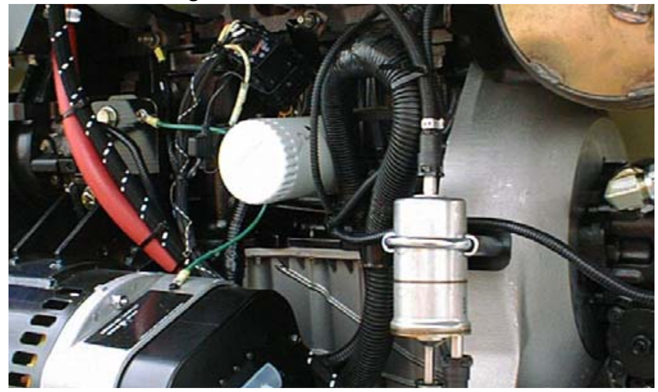
Lube Point(s) - Fill Cap
Capacity - 30.6 gal. Tank; 32.7 gal. System
Lube - HO
Interval - Check Level daily; Change every 2 years or 1200 hours of operation.

8. Suction Strainers (in tank)



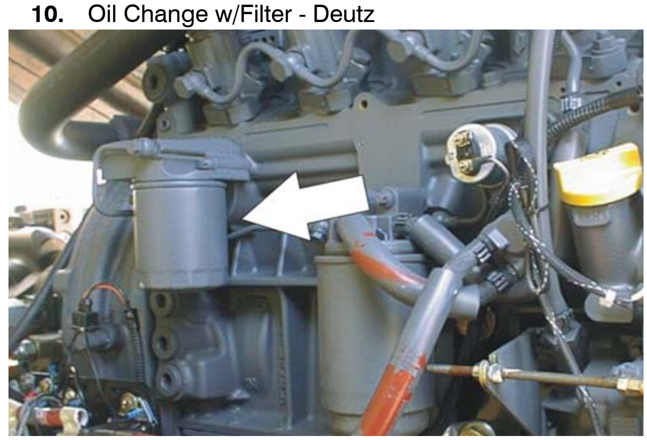
Lube Point(s) - 2
Interval - Every 2 years or 1200 hours of operation, remove and clean at time of hydraulic oil change.

9. Oil Change w/Filter - Ford LRG425



Lube Point(s) - Fill Cap/Spin-on Element
Capacity - 4.5 Quarts
Lube - EO
Interval - 3 Months or 150 hours of operation
Comments - Check level daily/Change in accordance with engine manual.

10. Oil Change w/Filter - Deutz



Lube Point(s) - Fill Cap/Spin-on Element
Capacity - 11 Quarts Crankcase; 5 Quarts Cooler
Lube - EO
Interval - Check level daily; Change every Year or 1200 hours of operation, whichever comes first. Adjust final level by mark on dipstick.

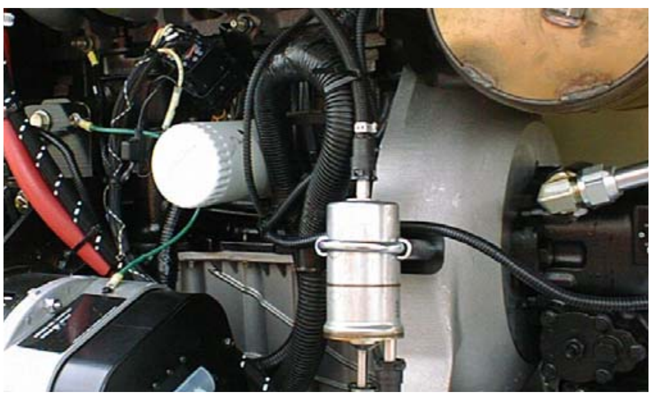
11. Oil Change w/Filter - Caterpillar

Lube Point(s) - Fill Cap/Spin-on Element
Capacity - 10.6 Quarts
Lube - EO
Interval - 3 Months or 150 hours of operation
Comments - Check level daily/Change in accordance with engine manual.

12. Oil Change w/Filter - GM

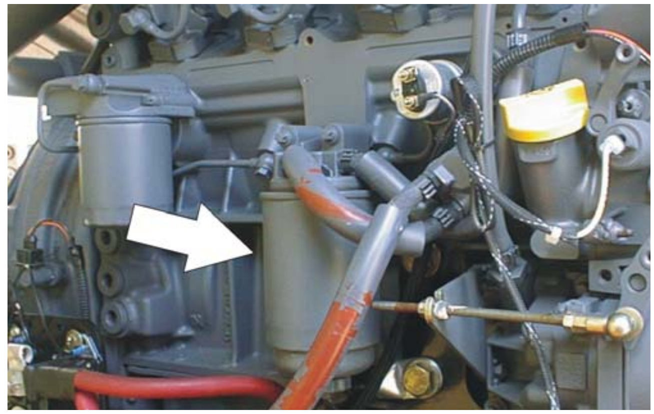
Lube Point(s) - Fill Cap/Spin-on Element
Capacity - 4.5 qt. (4.25 L) w/filter
Lube - EO
Interval - 3 Months or 150 hours of operation
Comments - Check level daily/Change in accordance with engine manual.

13. Fuel Filter - Ford



Lube Point(s) - Replaceable Element
Interval - Every Year or 1200 hours of operation

14. Fuel Filter - Deutz



Lube Point(s) - Replaceable Element
Interval - Every Year or 600 hours of operation

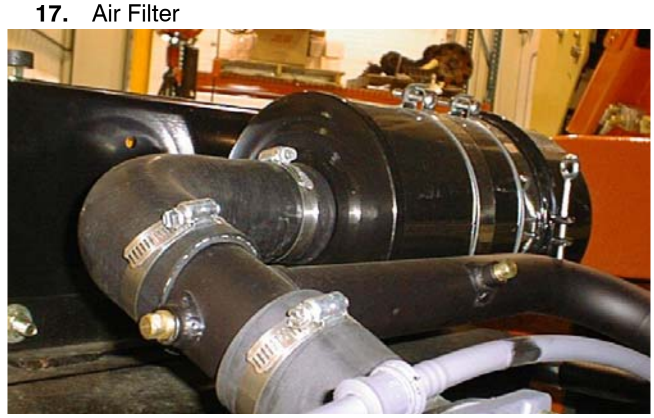
15. Fuel Filter - Caterpillar

Lube Point(s) - Replaceable Element
Interval - Every Year or 600 hours of operation

16. Fuel Filter (Gasoline) - GM

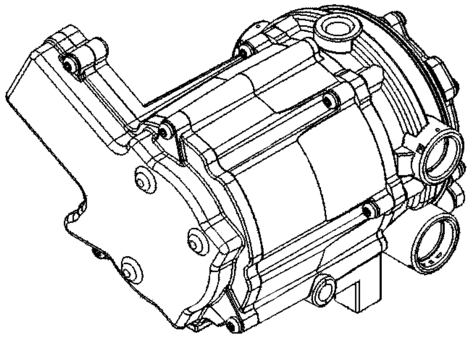
Lube Point(s) - Replaceable Element
Interval - Every 6 months or 300 hours of operation

17. Air Filter



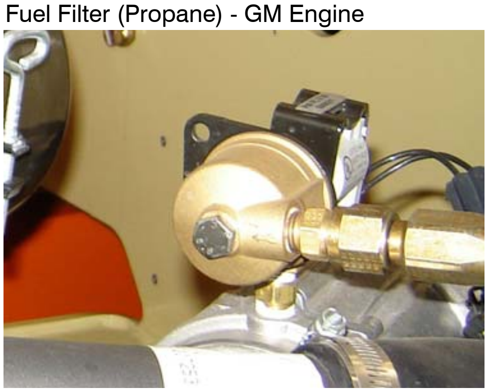
Lube Point(s) - Replaceable Element
Interval - Every 6 months or 300 hours of operation or as indicated by the condition indicator

18. Electronic Pressure Regulator (LP only)



Interval - 3 Months or 150 hours of operation
Comments - Drain oil build up. Refer to Draining Oil Build Up From The Propane Regulator

19. Fuel Filter (Propane) - GM Engine



Interval - 3 Months or 150 hours of operation
Comments - Replace filter. Refer to Propane Fuel Filter Replacement

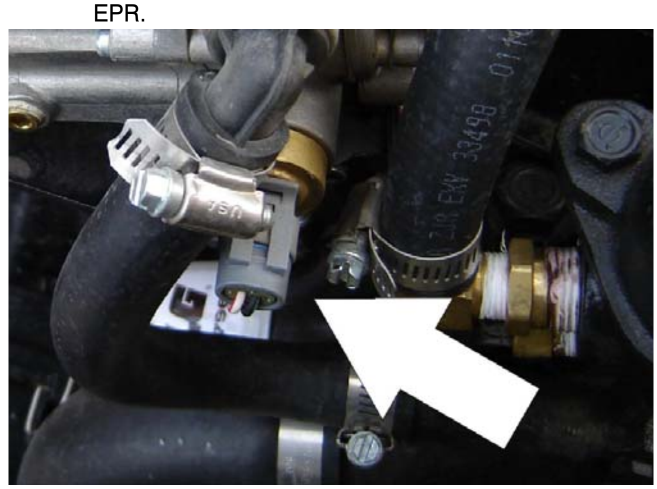
Draining Oil Build Up From The Propane Regulator

During the course of normal operation oils may build inside the primary and secondary chambers of the propane pressure regulator. These oils may be a result of poor fuel quality, contamination of the fuel supply chain, or regional variation in the make up of the fuel. If the build up of the oil is significant this can effect the operation of the fuel control system. Refer to Section 1.11, Lubrication and Operator Maintenance for maintenance intervals. More frequent draining may be required if the fuel supply has been contaminated.

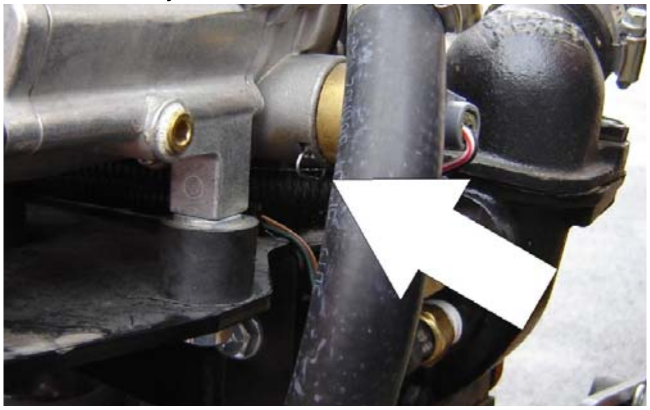
NOTICE

FOR BEST RESULTS WARM THE ENGINE TO OPERATING TEMPERATURE BEFORE DRAINING. THIS WILL ALLOW THE OILS TO BE LIQUID AND FLOW FREELY FROM THE REGULATOR.

1. Move the equipment to a well ventilated area. Ensure there are no external ignition sources.
2. Start the engine and bring to operating temperature.
3. With the engine running, close the manual tank valve and run the engine out of fuel.
4. Push in the Emergency Switch once the engine stops.
5. Disconnect the electrical connection to the LPG fuel temperature sensor in the auxiliary fuel port of the EPR.



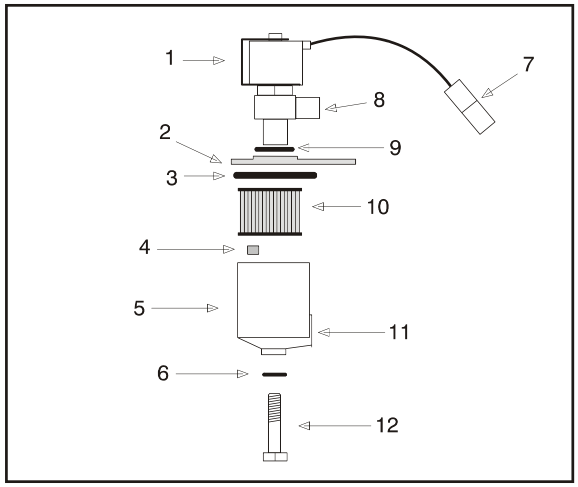
6. Remove the retainer clip for the LPG fuel temperature sensor and remove the sensor from the regulator body.



NOTE: *Have a small container ready to collect oil that will drain freely from the regulator at this point.*

7. Once all of the oil has been drained, reinstall the LPG fuel temperature sensor and reconnect the electrical connector.
8. Open the fuel tank manual valve.
9. Start the engine and verify all connections are secure.
10. Dispose of any drained oil in a safe and proper fashion.

Propane Fuel Filter Replacement



1. Electric Lock Off Solenoid	7. Electrical Connector
2. Mounting Plate	8. Fuel Outlet
3. Housing Seal	9. O-ring
4. Filter Magnet	10. Filter
5. Filter Housing	11. Fuel Inlet
6. Seal	12. Retaining Bolt

Figure 1-2. Filter Lock Assembly

REMOVAL

1. Relieve the propane fuel system pressure. Refer to Propane Fuel System Pressure Relief.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Slowly loosen the Filter housing retaining bolt and remove it.
4. Pull the filter housing from the Electric lock off assembly.
5. Locate Filter magnet and remove it.
6. Remove the filter from the housing.
7. Remove and discard the housing seal.
8. Remove and discard the retaining bolt seal.
9. Remove and discard mounting plate to lock off O-ring seal.

INSTALLATION

NOTICE

BE SURE TO REINSTALL THE FILTER MAGNET INTO THE HOUSING BEFORE INSTALLING NEW SEAL

1. Install the mounting plate to lock off O-ring seal.
2. Install the retaining bolt seal.
3. Install the housing seal.
4. Drop the magnet into the bottom of the filter housing.
5. Install the filter into the housing.
6. Install the retaining bolt into the filter housing.
7. Install the filter up to the bottom of the electric lock off.
8. Tighten the filter retaining bolt to 106 in lbs (12 Nm).
9. Open manual shut-off valve. Start the vehicle and leak check the propane fuel system at each serviced fitting. Refer to Propane Fuel System Leak Test.

Propane Fuel System Pressure Relief

⚠ CAUTION

THE PROPANE FUEL SYSTEM OPERATES AT PRESSURES UP TO 312 PSI (21.5 BAR). TO MINIMIZE THE RISK OF FIRE AND PERSONAL INJURY, RELIEVE THE PROPANE FUEL SYSTEM PRESSURE (WHERE APPLICABLE) BEFORE SERVICING THE PROPANE FUEL SYSTEM COMPONENTS.

To relieve propane fuel system pressure:

1. Close the manual shut-off valve on the propane fuel tank.
2. Start and run the vehicle until the engine stalls.
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

⚠ CAUTION

RESIDUAL VAPOR PRESSURE WILL BE PRESENT IN THE FUEL SYSTEM. ENSURE THE WORK AREA IS WELL VENTILATED BEFORE DISCONNECTING ANY FUEL LINE.

1.12 SERIAL NUMBER LOCATIONS

A serial number plate is affixed to the left rear side of the frame. If the serial number plate is damaged or missing, the machine serial number is stamped on the left side of the frame.

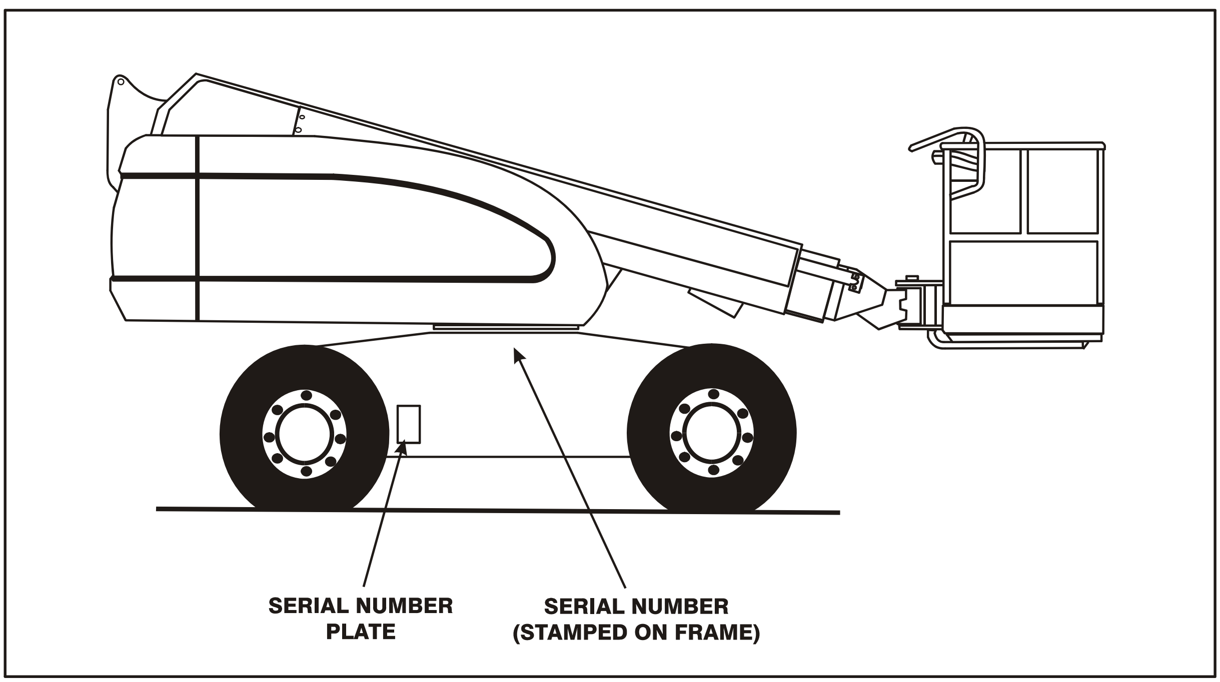
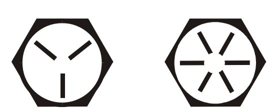


Figure 1-3. Serial Number Locations

				VALUES FOR ZINC PLATED / YELLOW CHROMATE FASTENERS ONLY				
				SAE GRADE 5 BOLTS & GRADE 2 NUTS				
SIZE	TPI	BOLT DIA	TENSILE STRESS AREA	CLAMP LOAD	TORQUE (DRY OR LOCTITE 263)	TORQUE (LUB)	TORQUE (LOCTITE 262)	TORQUE (LOCTITE) (242 OR 271)
		IN	SQ IN	LB	IN-LB [N.m]	IN-LB [N.m]	IN-LB [N.m]	IN-LB [N.m]
4	40	0.1120	0.00604	380	8 [.9]	6 [.7]		
	48	0.1120	0.00661	420	9 [1.0]	7 [.8]		
6	32	0.1380	0.00909	580	16 [1.8]	12 [1.4]		
	40	0.1380	0.01015	610	18 [2.0]	13 [1.5]		
8	32	0.1640	0.01400	900	30 [3.5]	22 [2.5]		
	36	0.1640	0.01474	940	31 [4]	23 [2.6]		
10	24	0.1900	0.01750	1120	43 [5]	32 [3.5]		
	32	0.1900	0.02000	1285	49 [5.5]	36 [4]		
1/4	20	0.2500	0.0318	2020	96 [11]	75 [9]		105 [12]
	28	0.2500	0.0364	2320	120 [14]	86 [10]		135 [15]
		IN	SQ IN	LB	FT-LB [N.m]	FT-LB [N.m]	FT-LB [N.m]	FT-LB [N.m]
5/16	18	0.3125	0.0524	3340	17 [23]	13 [18]	16 [22]	19 [26]
	24	0.3125	0.0580	3700	19 [26]	14 [19]	17 [23]	21 [29]
3/8	16	0.3750	0.0775	4940	30 [41]	23 [31]	28 [38]	35 [47]
	24	0.3750	0.0878	5600	35 [47]	25 [34]	32 [43]	40 [54]
7/16	14	0.4375	0.1063	6800	50 [68]	35 [47]	45 [61]	55 [75]
	20	0.4375	0.1187	7550	55 [75]	40 [54]	50 [68]	60 [81]
1/2	13	0.5000	0.1419	9050	75 [102]	55 [75]	68 [92]	85 [115]
	20	0.5000	0.1599	10700	90 [122]	65 [88]	80 [108]	100 [136]
9/16	12	0.5625	0.1820	11600	110 [149]	80 [108]	98 [133]	120 [163]
	18	0.5625	0.2030	12950	120 [163]	90 [122]	109 [148]	135 [183]
5/8	11	0.6250	0.2260	14400	150 [203]	110 [149]	135 [183]	165 [224]
	18	0.6250	0.2560	16300	170 [230]	130 [176]	153 [207]	190 [258]
3/4	10	0.7500	0.3340	21300	260 [353]	200 [271]	240 [325]	285 [386]
	16	0.7500	0.3730	23800	300 [407]	220 [298]	268 [363]	330 [447]
7/8	9	0.8750	0.4620	29400	430 [583]	320 [434]	386 [523]	475 [644]
	14	0.8750	0.5090	32400	470 [637]	350 [475]	425 [576]	520 [705]
1	8	1.0000	0.6060	38600	640 [868]	480 [651]	579 [785]	675 [915]
	12	1.0000	0.6630	42200	700 [949]	530 [719]	633 [858]	735 [997]
1 1/8	7	1.1250	0.7630	42300	800 [1085]	600 [813]	714 [968]	840 [1139]
	12	1.1250	0.8560	47500	880 [1193]	660 [895]	802 [1087]	925 [1254]
1 1/4	7	1.2500	0.9690	53800	1120 [1518]	840 [1139]	1009 [1368]	1175 [1593]
	12	1.2500	1.0730	59600	1240 [1681]	920 [1247]	1118 [1516]	1300 [1763]
1 3/8	6	1.3750	1.1550	64100	1460 [1979]	1100 [1491]	1322 [1792]	1525 [2068]
	12	1.3750	1.3150	73000	1680 [2278]	1260 [1708]	1506 [2042]	1750 [2373]
1 1/2	6	1.5000	1.4050	78000	1940 [2630]	1460 [1979]	1755 [2379]	2025 [2746]
	12	1.5000	1.5800	87700	2200 [2983]	1640 [2224]	1974 [2676]	2300 [3118]

5000059_H

NOTE: THESE TORQUE VALUES DO NOT APPLY TO CADMIUM PLATED FASTENERS



SAE GRADE 5 SAE GRADE 8

Figure 1-4. Torque Chart (SAE Fasteners - Sheet 1 of 3)

				VALUES FOR ZINC PLATED / YELLOW CHROMATE FASTENERS ONLY				
				SAE GRADE 8 BOLTS & GRADE 8 NUTS, & SOCKET HEAD CAP SCREWS #6 THRU 1/4				
SIZE	TPI	BOLT DIA	TENSILE STRESS AREA	CLAMP LOAD	TORQUE (DRY OR LOCTITE 263)	TORQUE (LUB)	TORQUE (LOCTITE 262)	TORQUE (LOCTITE) (242 OR 271)
		IN	SQ IN	LB	IN-LB [N.m]	IN-LB [N.m]	IN-LB [N.m]	IN-LB [N.m]
4	40	0.1120	0.00604	540	12 [1.4]	9 [1.0]		
	48	0.1120	0.00661	600	13 [1.5]	10 [1.1]		
6	32	0.1380	0.00909	820	23 [2.6]	17 [1.9]		
	40	0.1380	0.01015	920	25 [2.8]	19 [2.2]		
8	32	0.1640	0.01400	1260	41 [4.5]	31 [3.5]		
	36	0.1640	0.01474	1320	43 [5]	32 [4]		
10	24	0.1900	0.01750	1580	60 [7]	45 [5]		
	32	0.1900	0.02000	1800	68 [8]	51 [6]		
1/4	20	0.2500	0.0318	2860	144 [16]	108 [12]		160 [18]
	28	0.2500	0.0364	3280	168 [19]	120 [14]		185 [21]
		IN	SQ IN	LB	FT-LB [N.m]	FT-LB [N.m]	FT-LB [N.m]	FT-LB [N.m]
5/16	18	0.3125	0.0524	4720	25 [34]	18 [24]	22 [30]	30 [41]
	24	0.3125	0.0580	5220	25 [34]	20 [27]	25 [34]	30 [41]
3/8	16	0.3750	0.0775	7000	45 [61]	35 [47]	40 [54]	50 [68]
	24	0.3750	0.0878	7900	50 [68]	35 [47]	45 [61]	55 [75]
7/16	14	0.4375	0.1063	9550	70 [95]	55 [75]	63 [85]	80 [108]
	20	0.4375	0.1187	10700	80 [108]	60 [81]	70 [95]	90 [122]
1/2	13	0.5000	0.1419	12750	110 [149]	80 [108]	96 [130]	120 [163]
	20	0.5000	0.1599	14400	120 [163]	90 [122]	108 [146]	135 [183]
9/16	12	0.5625	0.1820	16400	150 [203]	110 [149]	139 [188]	165 [224]
	18	0.5625	0.2030	18250	170 [230]	130 [176]	154 [209]	190 [258]
5/8	11	0.6250	0.2260	20350	220 [298]	170 [230]	180 [244]	240 [325]
	18	0.6250	0.2560	23000	240 [325]	180 [244]	204 [277]	265 [359]
3/4	10	0.7500	0.3340	30100	380 [515]	280 [380]	301 [408]	420 [569]
	16	0.7500	0.3730	33600	420 [569]	320 [434]	336 [456]	465 [630]
7/8	9	0.8750	0.4620	41600	600 [813]	460 [624]	485 [658]	660 [895]
	14	0.8750	0.5090	45800	660 [895]	500 [678]	534 [724]	725 [983]
1	8	1.0000	0.6060	51500	900 [1220]	680 [922]	687 [931]	990 [1342]
	12	1.0000	0.6630	59700	1000 [1356]	740 [1003]	796 [1079]	1100 [1491]
1 1/8	7	1.1250	0.7630	68700	1280 [1735]	960 [1302]	1030 [1396]	1400 [1898]
	12	1.1250	0.8560	77000	1440 [1952]	1080 [1464]	1155 [1607]	1575 [2135]
1 1/4	7	1.2500	0.9690	87200	1820 [2468]	1360 [1844]	1453 [1970]	2000 [2712]
	12	1.2500	1.0730	96600	2000 [2712]	1500 [2034]	1610 [2183]	2200 [2983]
1 3/8	6	1.3750	1.1550	104000	2380 [3227]	1780 [2413]	1907 [2586]	2625 [3559]
	12	1.3750	1.3150	118100	2720 [3688]	2040 [2765]	2165 [2935]	3000 [4067]
1 1/2	6	1.5000	1.4050	126500	3160 [4284]	2360 [3200]	2530 [3430]	3475 [4711]
	12	1.5000	1.5800	142200	3560 [4827]	2660 [3606]	2844 [3856]	3925 [5322]

5000059_H

NOTE: THESE TORQUE VALUES DO NOT APPLY TO CADMIUM PLATED FASTENERS

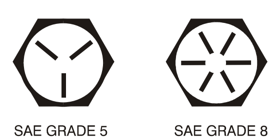
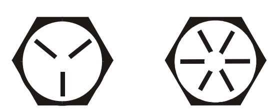


Figure 1-5. Torque Chart (SAE Fasteners - Sheet 2 of 3)

				JLG SPECIFICATION #4150701- MAGNI 565			
				SOCKET HEAD CAP SCREWS 5/16 & ABOVE			
SIZE	TPI	BOLT DIA	TENSILE STRESS AREA	CLAMP LOAD	TORQUE	TORQUE (LOCTITE 262)	TORQUE (LOCTITE) (242 OR 271)
		IN	SQ IN	LB	IN-LB [N.m]	IN-LB [N.m]	IN-LB [N.m]
4	40	0.1120	0.00604				
	48	0.1120	0.00661				
6	32	0.1380	0.00909				
	40	0.1380	0.01015				
8	32	0.1640	0.01400				
	36	0.1640	0.01474				
10	24	0.1900	0.01750				
	32	0.1900	0.02000				
1/4	20	0.2500	0.0318	2860	108 [12]		160 [18]
	28	0.2500	0.0364	3280	120 [14]		185 [21]
		IN	SQ IN	LB	FT-LB [N.m]	FT-LB [N.m]	FT-LB [N.m]
5/16	18	0.3125	0.0524	4720	18 [24]	22 [30]	30 [41]
	24	0.3125	0.0580	5220	20 [27]	25 [34]	30 [41]
3/8	16	0.3750	0.0775	7000	35 [47]	40 [54]	50 [68]
	24	0.3750	0.0878	7900	35 [47]	45 [61]	55 [75]
7/16	14	0.4375	0.1063	9550	55 [75]	63 [85]	80 [108]
	20	0.4375	0.1187	10700	60 [81]	70 [95]	90 [122]
1/2	13	0.5000	0.1419	12750	80 [108]	96 [130]	120 [163]
	20	0.5000	0.1599	14400	90 [122]	108 [146]	135 [183]
9/16	12	0.5625	0.1820	16400	110 [149]	139 [188]	165 [224]
	18	0.5625	0.2030	18250	130 [176]	154 [209]	190 [258]
5/8	11	0.6250	0.2260	20350	170 [230]	180 [244]	240 [325]
	18	0.6250	0.2560	23000	180 [244]	204 [277]	265 [359]
3/4	10	0.7500	0.3340	30100	280 [380]	301 [408]	420 [569]
	16	0.7500	0.3730	33600	320 [434]	336 [456]	465 [630]
7/8	9	0.8750	0.4620	41600	460 [624]	485 [658]	660 [895]
	14	0.8750	0.5090	45800	500 [678]	534 [724]	725 [983]
1	8	1.0000	0.6060	51500	680 [922]	687 [931]	990 [1342]
	12	1.0000	0.6630	59700	740 [1003]	796 [1079]	1100 [1491]
1 1/8	7	1.1250	0.7630	68700	960 [1302]	1030 [1396]	1400 [1898]
	12	1.1250	0.8560	77000	1080 [1464]	1155 [1607]	1575 [2135]
1 1/4	7	1.2500	0.9690	87200	1360 [1844]	1453 [1970]	2000 [2712]
	12	1.2500	1.0730	96600	1500 [2034]	1610 [2183]	2200 [2983]
1 3/8	6	1.3750	1.1550	104000	1780 [2413]	1907 [2586]	2625 [3559]
	12	1.3750	1.3150	118100	2040 [2765]	2165 [2935]	3000 [4067]
1 1/2	6	1.5000	1.4050	126500	2360 [3200]	2530 [3430]	3475 [4711]
	12	1.5000	1.5800	142200	2660 [3606]	2844 [3856]	3925 [5322]

5000059_H

NOTE: THESE TORQUE VALUES DO NOT APPLY TO CADMIUM PLATED FASTENERS



SAE GRADE 5 SAE GRADE 8

Figure 1-6. Torque Chart (SAE Fasteners - Sheet 3 of 3)

			VALUES FOR ZINC PLATED / YELLOW CHROMATE FASTENERS ONLY				
			CLASS 8.8 METRIC BOLTS CLASS 8 METRIC NUTS				
SIZE	PITCH	TENSILE STRESS AREA	CLAMP LOAD	TORQUE (DRY OR LOCTITE 263)	TORQUE (LUB)	TORQUE (LOCTITE 262)	TORQUE (LOCTITE) (242 OR 271)
		sq mm	KN	N.m	N.m	N.m	N.m
3	.5	5.03	2.19	1.3	1.0	1.2	1.4
3.5	.6	6.78	2.95	2.1	1.6	1.9	2.3
4	.7	8.78	3.82	3.1	2.3	2.8	3.4
5	.8	14.2	6.18	6.2	4.6	5.6	6.8
6	1	20.1	8.74	11	7.9	9.4	12
7	1	28.9	12.6	18	13	16	19
8	1.25	36.6	15.9	25	19	23	28
10	1.5	58.0	25.2	50	38	45	55
12	1.75	84.3	36.7	88	66	79	97
14	2	115	50.0	140	105	126	154
16	2	157	68.3	219	164	197	241
18	2.5	192	83.5	301	226	271	331
20	2.5	245	106.5	426	320	383	469
22	2.5	303	132.0	581	436	523	639
24	3	353	153.5	737	553	663	811
27	3	459	199.5	1080	810	970	1130
30	3.5	561	244.0	1460	1100	1320	1530
33	3.5	694	302.0	1990	1490	1790	2090
36	4	817	355.5	2560	1920	2300	2690
42	4.5	1120	487.0	4090	3070	3680	4290

5000059_H

NOTE: THESE TORQUE VALUES DO NOT APPLY TO CADMIUM PLATED FASTENERS

METRIC CLASS 8.8

METRIC CLASS 10.9

Figure 1-7. Torque Chart (METRIC Fasteners - Sheet 1 of 3)

			VALUES FOR ZINC PLATED / YELLOW CHROMATE FASTENERS ONLY				
			CLASS 10.9 METRIC BOLTS CLASS 10 METRIC NUTS CLASS 12.9 SOCKET HEAD CAP SCREWS M3-M5				
SIZE	PITCH	TENSILE STRESS AREA	CLAMP LOAD	TORQUE (DRY OR LOCTITE 263)	TORQUE (LUB)	TORQUE (LOCTITE 262)	TORQUE (LOCTITE) (242 OR 271)
		sq mm	KN	N.m	N.m	N.m	N.m
3	.5	5.03	3.13	1.9	1.4	1.5	2.1
3.5	.6	6.78	4.22	3.0	2.2	2.4	3.3
4	.7	8.78	5.47	4.4	3.3	3.5	4.8
5	.8	14.2	8.85	8.9	6.6	7.1	9.7
6	1	20.1	12.5	15	11	12	17
7	1	28.9	18.0	25	19	20	28
8	1.25	36.6	22.8	37	27	29	40
10	1.5	58.0	36.1	72	54	58	79
12	1.75	84.3	52.5	126	95	101	139
14	2	115	71.6	200	150	160	220
16	2	157	97.8	313	235	250	344
18	2.5	192	119.5	430	323	344	473
20	2.5	245	152.5	610	458	488	671
22	2.5	303	189.0	832	624	665	915
24	3	353	220.0	1060	792	845	1170
27	3	459	286.0	1540	1160	1240	1690
30	3.5	561	349.5	2100	1570	1680	2310
33	3.5	694	432.5	2600	2140	2280	2860
36	4	817	509.0	3660	2750	2930	4020
42	4.5	1120	698.0	5860	4400	4690	6440

5000059_H

NOTE: THESE TORQUE VALUES DO NOT APPLY TO
CADMIUM PLATED FASTENERS

METRIC CLASS 8.8

METRIC CLASS 10.9

Figure 1-8. Torque Chart (METRIC Fasteners - Sheet 2 of 3)

			JLG SPECIFICATION #4150701- MAGNI 565			
			CLASS 12.9 SOCKET HEAD CAP SCREWS M6 AND ABOVE			
SIZE	PITCH	TENSILE STRESS AREA	CLAMP LOAD	TORQUE	TORQUE (LOCTITE 262)	TORQUE (LOCTITE) (242 OR 271)
		sq mm	KN	N.m	N.m	N.m
3	.5	5.03			1.5	2.1
3.5	.6	6.78			2.4	3.3
4	.7	8.78			3.5	4.8
5	.8	14.2			7.1	9.7
6	1	20.1	12.5	11	12	17
7	1	28.9	18.0	19	20	28
8	1.25	36.6	22.8	27	29	40
10	1.5	58.0	36.1	54	58	79
12	1.75	84.3	52.5	95	101	139
14	2	115	71.6	150	160	220
16	2	157	97.8	235	250	344
18	2.5	192	119.5	323	344	473
20	2.5	245	152.5	458	488	671
22	2.5	303	189.0	624	665	915
24	3	353	220.0	792	845	1170
27	3	459	286.0	1160	1240	1690
30	3.5	561	349.5	1570	1680	2310
33	3.5	694	432.5	2140	2280	2860
36	4	817	509.0	2750	2930	4020
42	4.5	1120	698.0	4400	4690	6440

NOTE: THESE TORQUE VALUES DO NOT APPLY TO CADMIUM PLATED FASTENERS

5000059_H

METRIC CLASS 8.8 METRIC CLASS 10.9

Figure 1-9. Torque Chart (METRIC Fasteners - Sheet 3 of 3)

NOTES:

SECTION 2. GENERAL

2.1 MACHINE PREPARATION, INSPECTION, AND MAINTENANCE

General

This section provides the necessary information needed by those personnel that are responsible to place the machine in operation readiness and maintain its safe operating condition. For maximum service life and safe operation, ensure that all the necessary inspections and maintenance have been completed before placing the machine into service.

Preparation, Inspection, and Maintenance

It is important to establish and conform to a comprehensive inspection and preventive maintenance program. The following table outlines the periodic machine inspections and maintenance recommended by JLG Industries, Inc. Consult your national, regional, or local regulations for further requirements for aerial work platforms. The frequency of inspections and maintenance must be increased as environment, severity and frequency of usage requires.

Pre-Start Inspection

It is the User's or Operator's primary responsibility to perform a Pre-Start Inspection of the machine prior to use daily or at each change of operator. Reference the Operator's and Safety Manual for completion procedures for the Pre-Start Inspection. The Operator and Safety Manual must be read in its entirety and understood prior to performing the Pre-Start Inspection.

Pre-Delivery Inspection and Frequent Inspection

The Pre-Delivery Inspection and Frequent Inspection shall be performed by a qualified JLG equipment mechanic. JLG Industries, Inc. recognizes a qualified JLG equipment mechanic as a person who, by possession of a recognized degree, certificate, extensive knowledge, training, or experience, has successfully demonstrated the ability and proficiency to service, repair, and maintain the subject JLG product model.

The Pre-Delivery Inspection and Frequent Inspection procedures are performed in the same manner, but at different times. The Pre-Delivery Inspection shall be performed prior to each sale, lease, or rental delivery. The Frequent Inspection shall be accomplished for each machine in service for 3 months or 150 hours (whichever comes first); out of service for a period of more than 3 months; or when purchased used. The frequency of this inspection must be increased as environment, severity and frequency of usage requires.

Reference the JLG Pre-Delivery and Frequent Inspection Form and the Inspection and Preventative Maintenance Schedule for items requiring inspection during the performance of these inspections. Reference the appropriate areas of this manual for servicing and maintenance procedures.

Annual Machine Inspection

The Annual Machine Inspection must be performed on an annual basis, no later than thirteen (13) months from the date of the prior Annual Machine Inspection. JLG Industries recommends this task be performed by a Factory-Trained Service Technician. JLG Industries, Inc. recognizes a Factory-Trained Service Technician as a person who has successfully completed the JLG Service Training School for the subject JLG product model. Reference the machine Service and Maintenance Manual and appropriate JLG inspection form for performance of this inspection.

Reference the JLG Annual Machine Inspection Form and the Inspection and Preventative Maintenance Schedule for items requiring inspection during the performance of this inspection. Reference the appropriate areas of this manual for servicing and maintenance procedures.

For the purpose of receiving safety-related bulletins, it is important that JLG Industries, Inc. has updated ownership information for each machine. When performing each Annual Machine Inspection, notify JLG Industries, Inc. of the current machine ownership.

Preventative Maintenance

In conjunction with the specified inspections, maintenance shall be performed by a qualified JLG equipment mechanic. JLG Industries, Inc. recognizes a qualified JLG equipment mechanic as a person who, by possession of a recognized degree, certificate, extensive knowledge, training, or experience, has successfully demonstrated the ability and proficiency to service, repair, and maintain the subject JLG product model.

Reference the Preventative Maintenance Schedule and the appropriate areas of this manual for servicing and maintenance procedures. The frequency of service and maintenance must be increased as environment, severity and frequency of usage requires.

Table 2-1. Inspection and Maintenance

Type	Frequency	Primary Responsibility	Service Qualification	Reference
Pre-Start Inspection	Prior to use each day; or At each Operator change.	User or Operator	User or Operator	Operation and Safety Manual
Pre-Delivery Inspection	Prior to each sale, lease, or rental delivery.	Owner, Dealer, or User	Qualified JLG Mechanic	Service and Maintenance Manual and applicable JLG inspection form.
Frequent Inspection	In service for 3 months or 150 hours, whichever comes first; or Out of service for a period of more than 3 months; or purchased used.	Owner, Dealer, or User	Qualified JLG Mechanic	Service and Maintenance Manual and applicable JLG inspection form.
Annual Machine Inspection	Annually, no later than 13 months from the date of the prior inspection.	Owner, Dealer, or User	Factory-Trained Service Technician (Recommended)	Service and Maintenance Manual and applicable JLG inspection form.
Preventative Maintenance	At intervals as specified in the Service and Maintenance Manual.	Owner, Dealer, or User	Qualified JLG Mechanic	Service and Maintenance Manual

2.2 SERVICE AND GUIDELINES

General

The following information is provided to assist you in the use and application of servicing and maintenance procedures contained in this book.

Safety and Workmanship

Your safety, and that of others, is the first consideration when engaging in the maintenance of equipment. Always be conscious of weight. Never attempt to move heavy parts without the aid of a mechanical device. Do not allow heavy objects to rest in an unstable position. When raising a portion of the equipment, ensure that adequate support is provided.

Cleanliness

1. The most important single item in preserving the long service life of a machine is to keep dirt and foreign materials out of the vital components. Precautions have been taken to safeguard against this. Shields, covers, seals, and filters are provided to keep air, fuel, and oil supplies clean; however, these items must be maintained on a scheduled basis in order to function properly.
2. At any time when air, fuel, or oil lines are disconnected, clear adjacent areas as well as the openings and fittings themselves. As soon as a line or component is disconnected, cap or cover all openings to prevent entry of foreign matter.
3. Clean and inspect all parts during servicing or maintenance, and assure that all passages and openings are unobstructed. Cover all parts to keep them clean. Be sure all parts are clean before they are installed. New parts should remain in their containers until they are ready to be used.

Components Removal and Installation

1. Use adjustable lifting devices, whenever possible, if mechanical assistance is required. All slings (chains, cables, etc.) should be parallel to each other and as near perpendicular as possible to top of part being lifted.
2. Should it be necessary to remove a component on an angle, keep in mind that the capacity of an eyebolt or similar bracket lessens, as the angle between the supporting structure and the component becomes less than 90 degrees.
3. If a part resists removal, check to see whether all nuts, bolts, cables, brackets, wiring, etc., have been removed and that no adjacent parts are interfering.

Component Disassembly and Reassembly

When disassembling or reassembling a component, complete the procedural steps in sequence. Do not partially disassemble or assemble one part, then start on another. Always recheck your work to assure that nothing has been overlooked. Do not make any adjustments, other than those recommended, without obtaining proper approval.

Pressure-Fit Parts

When assembling pressure-fit parts, use a molybdenum disulfide base compound or equivalent to lubricate the mating surface.

Bearings

1. When a bearing is removed, cover it to keep out dirt and abrasives. Clean bearings in nonflammable cleaning solvent and allow to drip dry. Compressed air can be used but do not spin the bearing.
2. Discard bearings if the races and balls (or rollers) are pitted, scored, or burned.
3. If bearing is found to be serviceable, apply a light coat of oil and wrap it in clean (waxed) paper. Do not unwrap reusable or new bearings until they are ready to install.
4. Lubricate new or used serviceable bearings before installation. When pressing a bearing into a retainer or bore, apply pressure to the outer race. If the bearing is to be installed on a shaft, apply pressure to the inner race.

Gaskets

Check that holes in gaskets align with openings in the mating parts. If it becomes necessary to hand-fabricate a gasket, use gasket material or stock of equivalent material and thickness. Be sure to cut holes in the right location, as blank gaskets can cause serious system damage.

Bolt Usage and Torque Application

NOTICE

SELF LOCKING FASTENERS, SUCH AS NYLON INSERT AND THREAD DEFORMING LOCKNUTS, ARE NOT INTENDED TO BE REINSTALLED AFTER REMOVAL.

1. Always use new replacement hardware when installing locking fasteners. Use bolts of proper length. A bolt which is too long will bottom before the head is tight against its related part. If a bolt is too short, there will not be enough thread area to engage and hold the part properly. When replacing bolts, use only those having the same specifications of the original, or one which is equivalent.
2. Unless specific torque requirements are given within the text, standard torque values should be used on heat-treated bolts, studs, and steel nuts, in accordance with recommended shop practices. (See Torque Chart Section 1.)

Hydraulic Lines and Electrical Wiring

Clearly mark or tag hydraulic lines and electrical wiring, as well as their receptacles, when disconnecting or removing them from the unit. This will assure that they are correctly reinstalled.

Hydraulic System

1. Keep the system clean. If evidence of metal or rubber particles are found in the hydraulic system, drain and flush the entire system.
2. Disassemble and reassemble parts on clean work surface. Clean all metal parts with non-flammable cleaning solvent. Lubricate components, as required, to aid assembly.

Lubrication

Service applicable components with the amount, type, and grade of lubricant recommended in this manual, at the specified intervals. When recommended lubricants are not available, consult your local supplier for an equivalent that meets or exceeds the specifications listed.

Battery

Clean battery using a non-metallic brush and a solution of baking soda and water. Rinse with clean water. After cleaning, thoroughly dry battery and coat terminals with an anti corrosion compound.

Lubrication and Servicing

Components and assemblies requiring lubrication and servicing are shown in the Lubrication Chart in Section 1.

2.3 LUBRICATION AND INFORMATION

Hydraulic System

1. The primary enemy of a hydraulic system is contamination. Contaminants enter the system by various means, e.g., using inadequate hydraulic oil, allowing moisture, grease, filings, sealing components, sand, etc., to enter when performing maintenance, or by permitting the pump to cavitate due to insufficient system warm-up or leaks in the pump supply (suction) lines.

2. The design and manufacturing tolerances of the component working parts are very close, therefore, even the smallest amount of dirt or foreign matter entering a system can cause wear or damage to the components and generally results in faulty operation. Every precaution must be taken to keep hydraulic oil clean, including reserve oil in storage. Hydraulic system filters should be checked, cleaned, and/or replaced as necessary, at the specified intervals required in the Lubrication Chart in Section 1. Always examine filters for evidence of metal particles.

3. Cloudy oils indicate a high moisture content which permits organic growth, resulting in oxidation or corrosion. If this condition occurs, the system must be drained, flushed, and refilled with clean oil.

4. It is not advisable to mix oils of different brands or types, as they may not contain the same required additives or be of comparable viscosities. Good grade mineral oils, with viscosities suited to the ambient temperatures in which the machine is operating, are recommended for use.

NOTE: *Metal particles may appear in the oil or filters of new machines due to the wear-in of meshing components.*

Hydraulic Oil

1. Refer to Section 1 for recommendations for viscosity ranges.

Changing Hydraulic Oil

1. Filter elements must be changed after the first 50 hours of operation and every 300 hours (unless specified otherwise) thereafter. If it is necessary to change the oil, use only those oils meeting or exceeding the specifications appearing in this manual. If unable to obtain the same type of oil supplied with the machine, consult local supplier for assistance in selecting the proper equivalent. Avoid mixing petroleum and synthetic base oils.

2. Use every precaution to keep the hydraulic oil clean. If the oil must be poured from the original container into another, be sure to clean all possible contaminants from the service container. Always clean the mesh element of the filter and replace the cartridge any time the system oil is changed.

3. While the unit is shut down, a good preventive maintenance measure is to make a thorough inspection of all hydraulic components, lines, fittings, etc., as well as a functional check of each system, before placing the machine back in service.

Lubrication Specifications

Specified lubricants, as recommended by the component manufacturers, are always the best choice, however, multi-purpose greases usually have the qualities which meet a variety of single purpose grease requirements. Should any question arise, regarding the use of greases in maintenance stock, consult your local supplier for evaluation. Refer to Section 1 for an explanation of the lubricant key designations appearing in the Lubrication Chart.

2.4 CYLINDER DRIFT TEST

Maximum acceptable cylinder drift is to be measured using the following methods.

Platform Drift

Measure the drift of the platform to the ground. Lower booms (if equipped) slightly elevated, main boom fully extended with the rated load in the platform and power off. Maximum allowable drift is 2 inches (5 cm) in 10 minutes. If the machine does not pass this test, proceed with the following.

Cylinder Drift

Table 2-2. Cylinder Drift

Cylinder Bore Diameter		Max. Acceptable Drift in 10 Minutes	
inches	mm	inches	mm
3	76.2	0.026	0.66
3.5	89	0.019	0.48
4	101.6	0.015	0.38
5	127	0.009	0.22
6	152.4	0.006	0.15
7	177.8	0.005	0.13
8	203.2	0.0038	0.10
9	228.6	0.0030	0.08

Drift is to be measured at the cylinder rod with a calibrated dial indicator. The cylinder oil must be at ambient temperature and temperature stabilized.

The cylinder must have the normal load, which is the normal platform load applied.

If the cylinder passes this test, it is acceptable.

NOTE: *This information is based on 6 drops per minute cylinder leakage.*

2.5 PINS AND COMPOSITE BEARING REPAIR GUIDELINES

Filament wound bearings.

1. Pinned joints should be disassembled and inspected if the following occurs:
   a. Excessive sloppiness in joints.
   b. Noise originating from the joint during operation.
2. Filament wound bearings should be replaced if any of the following is observed:
   a. Frayed or separated fibers on the liner surface.
   b. Cracked or damaged liner backing.
   c. Bearings that have moved or spun in their housing.
   d. Debris embedded in liner surface.
3. Pins should be replaced if any of the following is observed (pin should be properly cleaned prior to inspection):
   a. Detectable wear in the bearing area.
   b. Flaking, pealing, scoring, or scratches on the pin surface.
   c. Rusting of the pin in the bearing area.
4. Re-assembly of pinned joints using filament wound bearings.
   a. Housing should be blown out to remove all dirt and debris...bearings and bearing housings must be free of all contamination.
   b. Bearing / pins should be cleaned with a solvent to remove all grease and oil...filament wound bearing are a dry joint and should not be lubricated unless otherwise instructed (i.e. sheave pins).
   c. Pins should be inspected to ensure it is free of burrs, nicks, and scratches which would damage the bearing during installation and operation.

2.6 WELDING ON JLG EQUIPMENT

NOTE: *This instruction applies to repairs, or modifications to the machine and to welding performed from the machine on an external structure, or component,*

Do the Following When Welding on JLG Equipment

- Disconnect the battery.
- Disconnect the moment pin connection (where fitted)
- Ground only to structure being welded.

Do NOT Do the Following When Welding on JLG Equipment

- Ground on frame and weld on any other area than the chassis.
- Ground on turntable and weld on any other area than the turntable.
- Ground on the platform/support and weld on any other area than the platform/support.
- Ground on a specific boom section and weld on any other area than that specific boom section.
- Allow pins, wear pads, wire ropes, bearings, gearing, seals, valves, electrical wiring, or hoses to be between the grounding position and the welded area.

NOTICE

FAILURE TO COMPLY WITH THE ABOVE REQUIREMENTS MAY RESULT IN COMPONENT DAMAGE (I.E. ELECTRONIC MODULES, SWING BEARING, COLLECTOR RING, BOOM WIRE ROPES ETC.)

Table 2-3. Inspection and Preventive Maintenance Schedule

AREA	INTERVAL					
	Pre-Start[1] Inspection	Weekly Preventive Maintenance	Monthly Preventive Maintenance	Pre-Delivery[2] or Frequent[3] Inspection	Annual[4] (Yearly) Inspection	Every 2 Years
Boom Assembly	9					
Boom Weldments				1,2,4,7	1,2,4	
Hose/Cable Carrier Installations				1,2,7,9,12	1,2,9,12	
Pivot Pins and Pin Retainers				1,2,7	1,2	
Sheaves, Sheave Pins				1,2,7	1,2	
Bearings				1,2,7	1,2	
Wear Pads				1,2,7	1,2	
Covers or Shields				1,2,7	1,2	
Extend/Retract Chain or Cable Systems				1,2,3,7	1,2,3	
Platform Assembly	9					
Platform	1,2				1,2	
Railing	1,2			1	1,2	
Gate			5	1	1,5	
Floor	1,2			1	1,2	
Rotator		9,5		15		
Lanyard Anchorage Point	2			1,2,10	1,2,10	
Turntable Assembly	9					
Swing Bearing or Worm Gear				1,2,14	1,2,3,13,14	
Oil Coupling		9				
Swing Drive System						
Turntable Lock				1,2,5	1,2,5	
Hood, Hood Props, Hood Latches				5	1,2,5	
Chassis Assembly	9					
Tires	1	16,17		16,17,18	16,17,18	
Wheel Nuts/Bolts	1	15		15	15	
Wheel Bearings						14,24
Oscillating Axle/Lockout Cylinder Systems					5,8	
Outrigger or Extendable Axle Systems				5,8	5,8	
Steer Components						
Drive Motors						
Torque Hubs				11	11	
Functions/Controls	9					
Platform Controls	5	5		6	6	

Table 2-3. Inspection and Preventive Maintenance Schedule

AREA	INTERVAL					
	Pre-Start[1] Inspection	Weekly Preventive Maintenance	Monthly Preventive Maintenance	Pre-Delivery[2] or Frequent[3] Inspection	Annual[4] (Yearly) Inspection	Every 2 Years
Ground Controls	5	5		6	6	
Function Control Locks, Guards, or Detents	1,5	1,5		5	5	
Footswitch	1,5			5	5	
Emergency Stop Switches (Ground & Platform)	5			5	5	
Function Limit or Cutout Switch Systems				5	5	
Capacity Indicator					5	
Drive Brakes				5		
Swing Brakes				5		
Boom Synchronization/Sequencing Systems					5	
Manual Descent or Auxiliary Power				5	5	
Power System	9					
Engine Idle, Throttle, and RPM				3	3	
Engine Fluids (Oil, Coolant, Fuel)	11	9,11		11	11	
Air/Fuel Filter		1,7		7	7	
Exhaust System			1,9	9	9	
Batteries	5	1,9			19	
Battery Fluid		11		11	11	
Battery Charger		5			5	
Fuel Reservoir, Cap, and Breather	11,9		2	1,5	1,5	
Hydraulic/Electric System	9					
Hydraulic Pumps		1,9		1,2,9		
Hydraulic Cylinders		1,9,7	2	1,2,9	1,2,9	
Cylinder Attachment Pins and Pin Retainers		1,9		1,2	1,2	
Hydraulic Hoses, Lines, and Fittings		1,9	12	1,2,9,12	1,2,9,12	
Hydraulic Reservoir, Cap, and Breather	11	1,9	2	1,5	1,5	24
Hydraulic Filter		1,9		7	7	
Hydraulic Fluid	11			7,11	7,11	
Electrical Connections		1		20	20	
Instruments, Gauges, Switches, Lights, Horn		1			5,23	
General						
Operators and Safety Manuals in Storage Box	21			21	21	
ANSI and EMI Manuals/Handbooks Installed					21	
Capacity Decals Installed, Secure, Legible	21			21	21	
All Decals/Placards Installed, Secure, Legible	21			21	21	

Table 2-3. Inspection and Preventive Maintenance Schedule

AREA	INTERVAL					
	Pre-Start[1] Inspection	Weekly Preventive Maintenance	Monthly Preventive Maintenance	Pre-Delivery[2] or Frequent[3] Inspection	Annual[4] (Yearly) Inspection	Every 2 Years
Walk-Around Inspection Performed	21					
Annual Machine Inspection Due				21		
No Unauthorized Modifications or Additions				21	21	
All Relevant Safety Publications Incorporated				21	21	
General Structural Condition and Welds				2,4	2,4	
All Fasteners, Pins, Shields, and Covers				1,2	1,2	
Grease and Lubricate to Specifications				22	22	
Function Test of All Systems	21			21	21, 22	
Paint and Appearance				7	7	
Stamp Inspection Date on Frame					22	
Notify JLG of Machine Ownership					22	

Footnotes:
[1] Prior to use each day; or at each Operator change
[2] Prior to each sale, lease, or delivery
[3] In service for 3 months or 150 Hours; or Out of service for 3 months or more; or Purchased used
[4] Annually, no later than 13 months from the date of the prior inspection

Performance Codes:
1 - Check for proper and secure installation
2 - Visual inspection for damage, cracks, distortion or excessive wear
3 - Check for proper adjustment
4 - Check for cracked or broken welds
5 - Operates Properly
6 - Returns to neutral or "off" position when released
7 - Clean and free of debris
8 - Interlocks function properly
9 - Check for signs of leakage
10 - Decals installed and legible
11 - Check for proper fluid level
12 - Check for chafing and proper routing
13 - Check for proper tolerances
14 - Properly lubricated
15 - Torqued to proper specification
16 - No gouges, excessive wear, or cords showing
17 - Properly inflated and seated around rim
18 - Proper and authorized components
19 - Fully charged
20 - No loose connections, corrosion, or abrasions
21 - Verify
22 - Perform
23 - Sealed Properly
24 - Drain, Clean, Refill

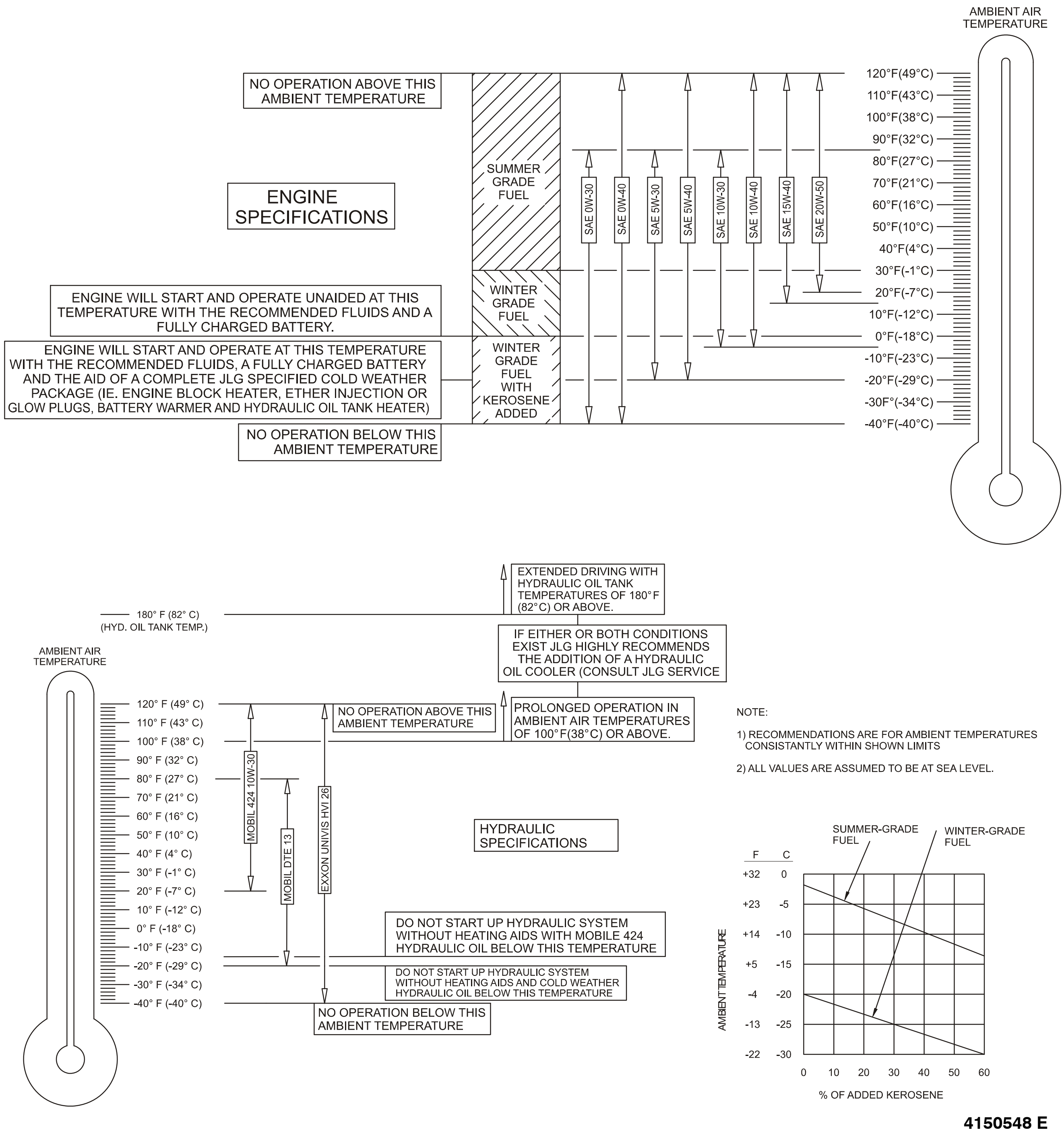


Figure 2-1. Engine Operating Temperature Specifications - Deutz

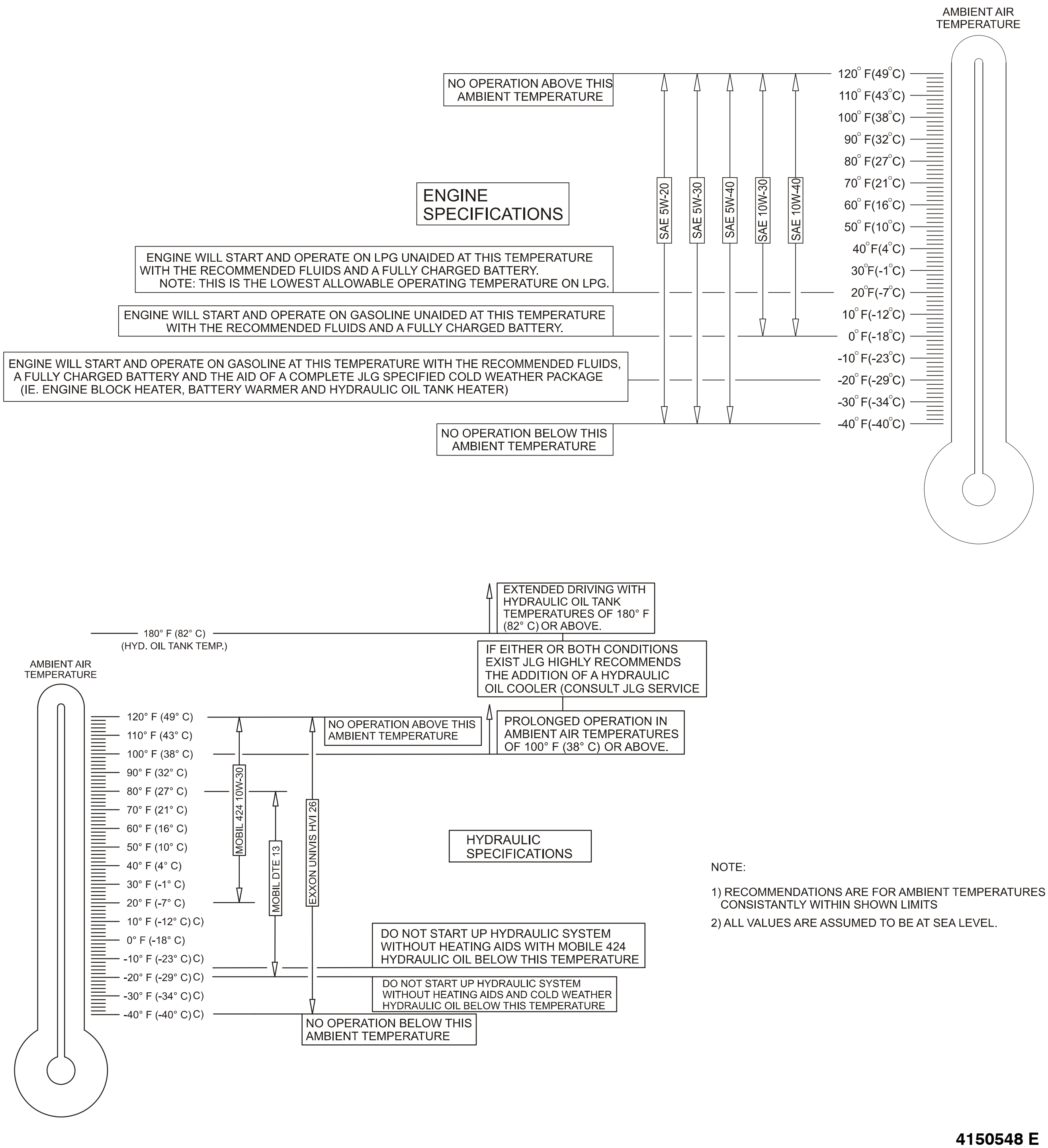


Figure 2-2. Engine Operating Temperature Specifications - Ford

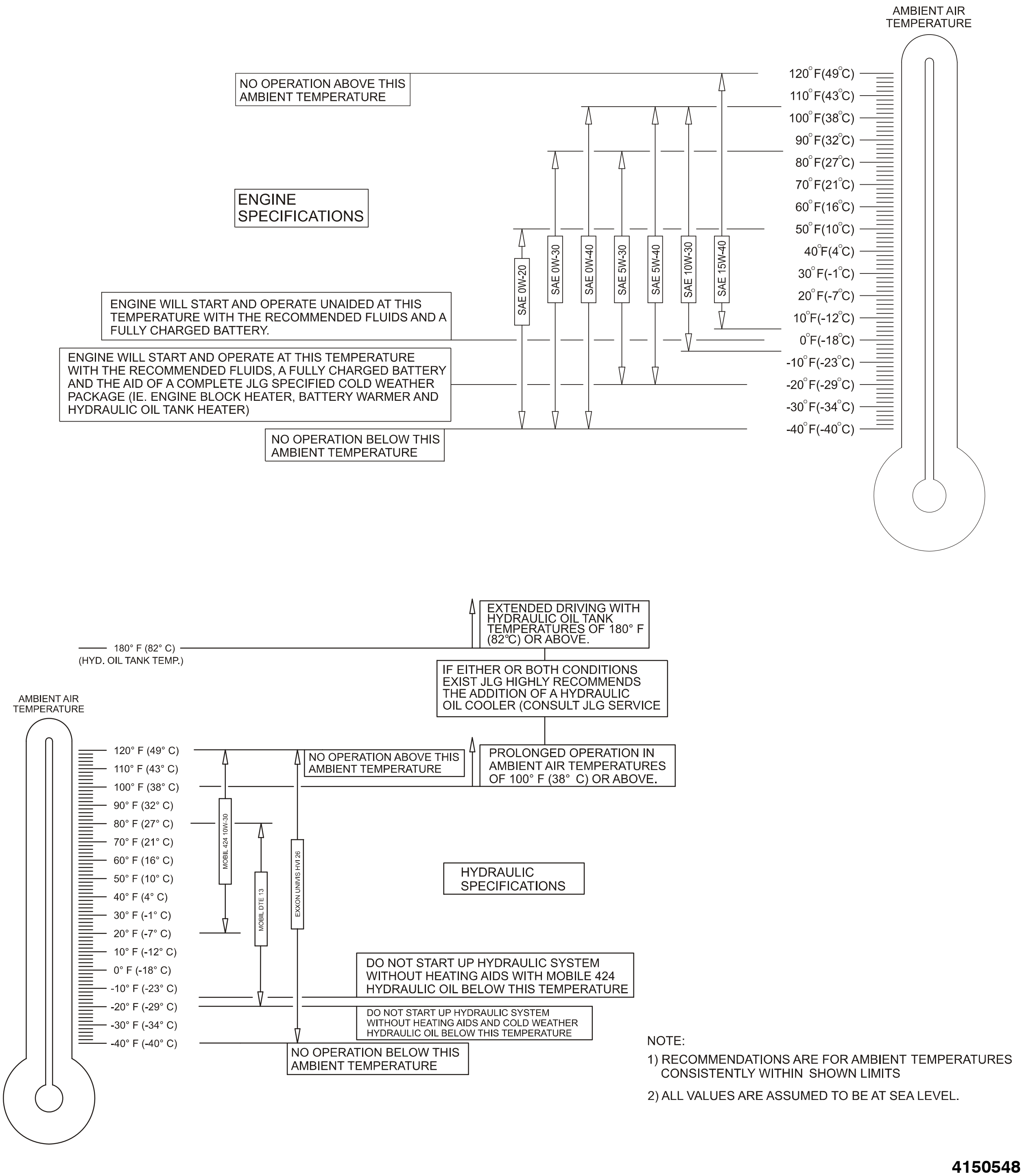


Figure 2-3. Engine Operating Temperature Specifications - Caterpillar

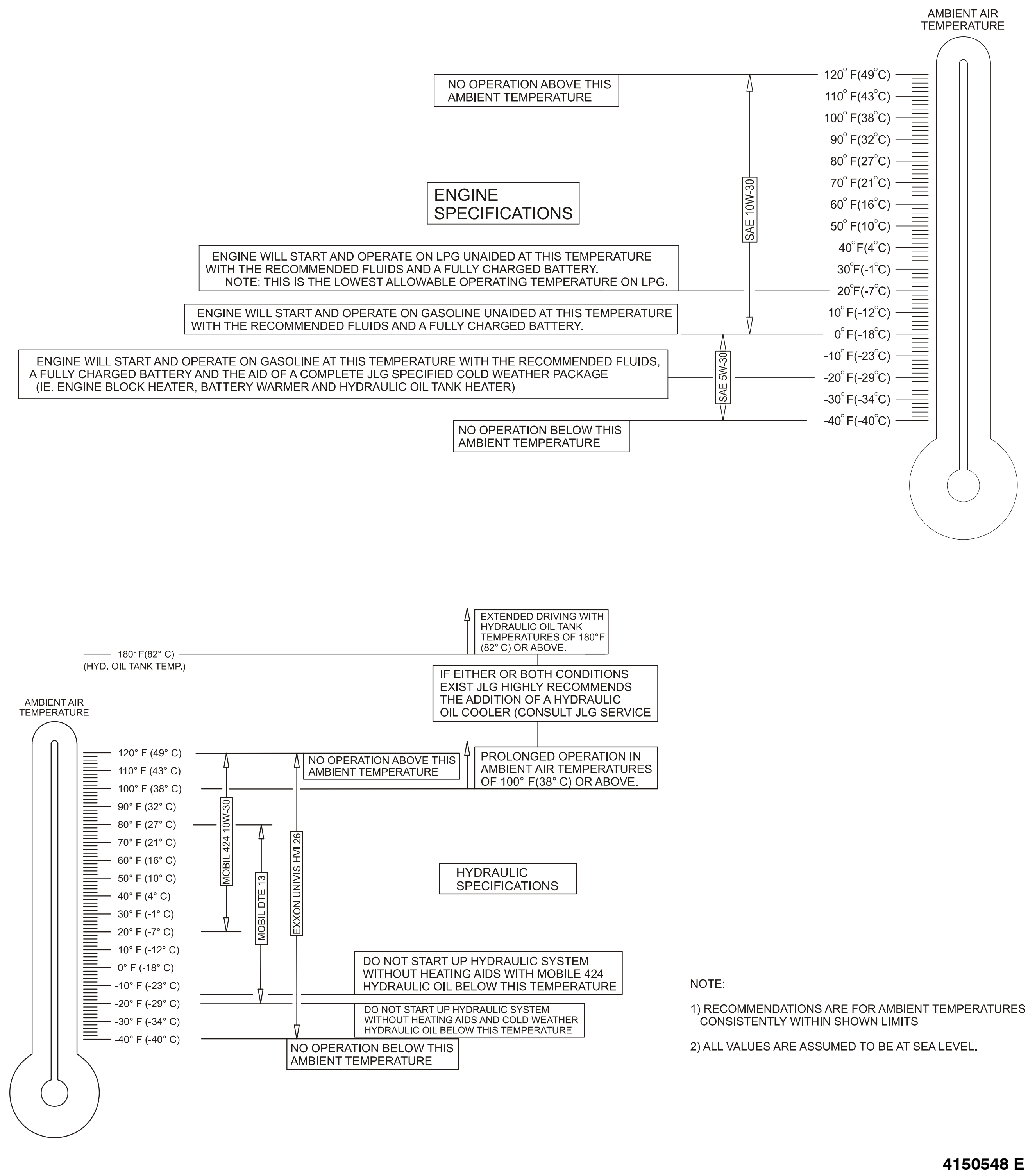


Figure 2-4. Engine Operating Temperature Specifications - GM

SECTION 3. CHASSIS & TURNTABLE

3.1 TIRES & WHEELS

Tire Inflation

The air pressure for pneumatic tires must be equal to the air pressure that is stenciled on the side of the JLG product or rim decal for safe and proper operational characteristics.

Tire Damage

For pneumatic tires, JLG Industries, Inc. recommends that when any cut, rip, or tear is discovered that exposes sidewall or tread area cords in the tire, measures must be taken to remove the JLG product from service immediately. Arrangements must be made for replacement of the tire or tire assembly.

For polyurethane foam filled tires, JLG Industries, Inc. recommends that when any of the following are discovered, measures must be taken to remove the JLG product from service immediately and arrangements must be made for replacement of the tire or tire assembly.

- a smooth, even cut through the cord plies which exceeds 3 inches (7.5 cm) in total length
- any tears or rips (ragged edges) in the cord plies which exceeds 1 inch (2.5 cm) in any direction
- any punctures which exceed 1 inch in diameter
- any damage to the bead area cords of the tire

If a tire is damaged but is within the above noted criteria, the tire must be inspected on a daily basis to insure the damage has not propagated beyond the allowable criteria.

Tire Replacement

JLG recommends a replacement tire be the same size, ply and brand as originally installed on the machine. Please refer to the JLG Parts Manual for the part number of the approved tires for a particular machine model. If not using a JLG approved replacement tire, we recommend that replacement tires have the following characteristics:

- Equal or greater ply/load rating and size of original
- Tire tread contact width equal or greater than original
- Wheel diameter, width, and offset dimensions equal to the original

Unless specifically approved by JLG Industries Inc. do not replace a foam filled or ballast filled tire assembly with a pneumatic tire. When selecting and installing a replacement tire, ensure that all tires are inflated to the pressure recommended by JLG. Due to size variations between tire brands, both tires on the same axle should be the same.

Wheel Replacement

The rims installed on each product model have been designed for stability requirements which consist of track width, tire pressure, and load capacity. Size changes such as rim width, center piece location, larger or smaller diameter, etc., without written factory recommendations, may result in an unsafe condition regarding stability.

Wheel Installation

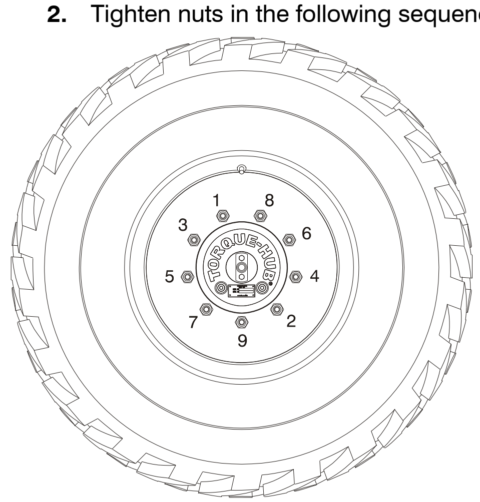
It is extremely important to apply and maintain proper wheel mounting torque.

WARNING

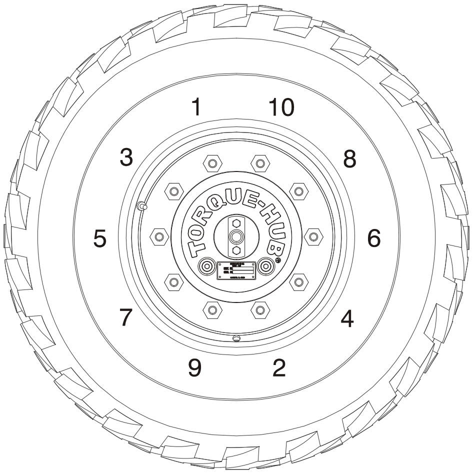
WHEEL NUTS MUST BE INSTALLED AND MAINTAINED AT THE PROPER TORQUE TO PREVENT LOOSE WHEELS, BROKEN STUDS, AND POSSIBLE DANGEROUS SEPARATION OF WHEEL FROM THE AXLE. BE SURE TO USE ONLY THE NUTS MATCHED TO THE CONE ANGLE OF THE WHEEL.

Tighten the lug nuts to the proper torque to prevent wheels from coming loose. Use a torque wrench to tighten the fasteners. If you do not have a torque wrench, tighten the fasteners with a lug wrench, then immediately have a service garage or dealer tighten the lug nuts to the proper torque. Over-tightening will result in breaking the studs or permanently deforming the mounting stud holes in the wheels. The proper procedure for attaching wheels is as follows:

1. Start all nuts by hand to prevent cross threading. DO NOT use a lubricant on threads or nuts.
2. Tighten nuts in the following sequence:



9 LUG PATTERN



3. The tightening of the nuts should be done in stages. Following the recommended sequence, tighten nuts per wheel torque chart.

Table 3-1. Wheel Torque Chart - 9 Lug

TORQUE SEQUENCE		
1st Stage	2nd Stage	3rd Stage
40 ft. lbs. (55 Nm)	95 ft. lbs. (130 Nm)	170 ft. lbs. (230 Nm)

Table 3-2. Wheel Torque Chart - 10 Lug

TORQUE SEQUENCE		
1st Stage	2nd Stage	3rd Stage
70 ft. lbs. (95 Nm)	170 ft. lbs. (225 Nm)	300 ft. lbs. (405 Nm)

4. Wheel nuts should be torqued after first 50 hours of operation and after each wheel removal. Check torque every 3 months or 150 hours of operation.

3.2 DRIVE TORQUE HUB

Roll, Leak and Brake Testing

Torque-Hub units should always be roll and leak tested before disassembly and after assembly to make sure that the unit's gears, bearings and seals are working properly. The following information briefly outlines what to look for when performing these tests.

NOTE: *The brake must be released before performing the roll test. This can be accomplished by either pressurizing the brake using the Brake Leak Test procedure below or by tightening the bolts into the piston through the end plate (See Brake Disassembly Procedure)*

NOTE: *Bolts must be removed while performing brake release test*

THE ROLL TEST

The purpose of the roll test is to determine if the unit's gears are rotating freely and properly. You should be able to rotate the gears in your unit by applying constant force to the roll checker. If you feel more drag in the gears only at certain points, then the gears are not rolling freely and should be examined for improper installation or defects. Some gear packages roll with more difficulty than others. Do not be concerned if the gears in your unit seem to roll hard as long as they roll with consistency.

THE LEAK TEST (MAIN UNIT)

The purpose of a leak test is to make sure the unit is air tight. You can tell if your unit has a leak if the pressure gauge reading on your leak checking fitting starts to fall after the unit has been pressurized and allowed to equalize. Leaks will most likely occur at the pipe plugs, the main seal or wherever o-rings or gaskets are located. The exact location of a leak can usually be detected by brushing a soap and water solution around the main seal and where the o-rings or gaskets meet on the exterior of the unit, then checking for air bubbles. If a leak is detected in a seal, o-ring or gasket, the part must be replaced, and the unit rechecked. Leak test at 10 psi for 20 minutes.

THE BRAKE TEST

Reference: Sample Model 7HBE01F0B30057. The underlined letter is the brake option. Options are A, B, C, D, E, or X.

A Input Brake	2,200 in-lb (248 Nm) Static, 280 psi (19.3 bar) Full Release 3000 psi (207 bar) maximum o-ring check.
B Input Brake	1,900 in-lb (215 Nm) Static, 240 psi (16.5 bar) Full Release 3000 psi (207 bar) maximum o-ring check.
C Input Brake	1,600 in-lb (181 Nm) Static, 200 psi (13.8 bar) Full Release 3000 psi (207 bar) maximum o-ring check.
D Input Brake	1,400 in-lb (158 Nm) Static, 180 psi (12.4 bar) Full Release 3000 psi (207 bar) maximum o-ring check.
E Input Brake	1,250 in-lb (141 Nm) Static, 160 psi (11.0 bar) Full Release 3000 psi (207 bar) maximum o-ring check.
X – No Brake	

If brake does not release at these pressure values, brake has to be inspected, repaired or replaced.

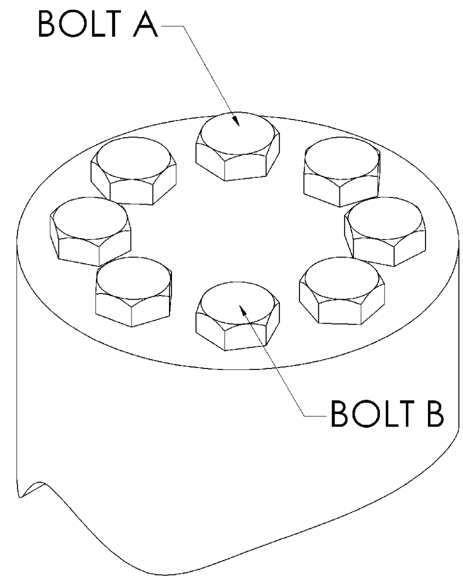
NOTE: *Failure to perform this test may result in damaged or ineffective brake parts.*

Tightening and Torquing Bolts

If an air impact wrench is used to tighten bolts, extreme care should be taken to ensure that the bolts are not tightened beyond their specified torque.

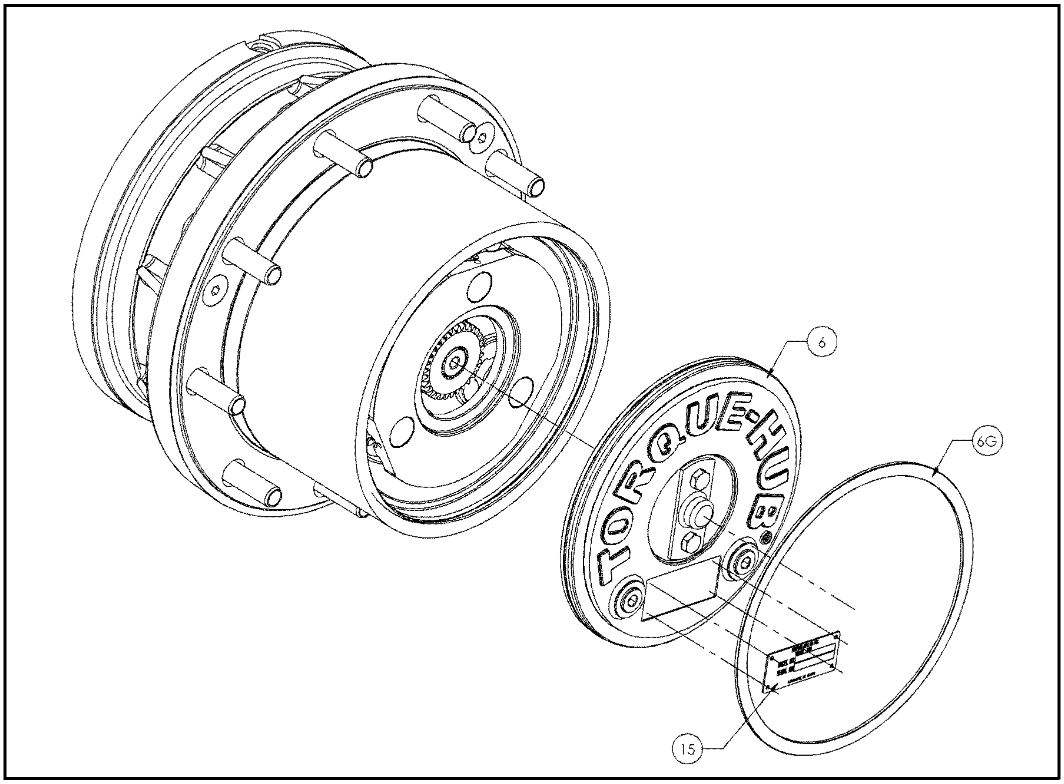
The following steps describe how to tighten and torque bolts or socket head cap screws in a bolt circle.

1. Tighten (but do not torque) bolt "A" until snug.
2. Go to the opposite side of the bolt circle and tighten bolt "B" until equally snug.
3. Crisscross around the bolt circle and tighten remaining bolts.
4. Now use a torque wrench to apply the specified torque to bolt "A".
5. Using the same sequence, crisscross around the bolt circle and apply an equal torque to the remaining bolts.



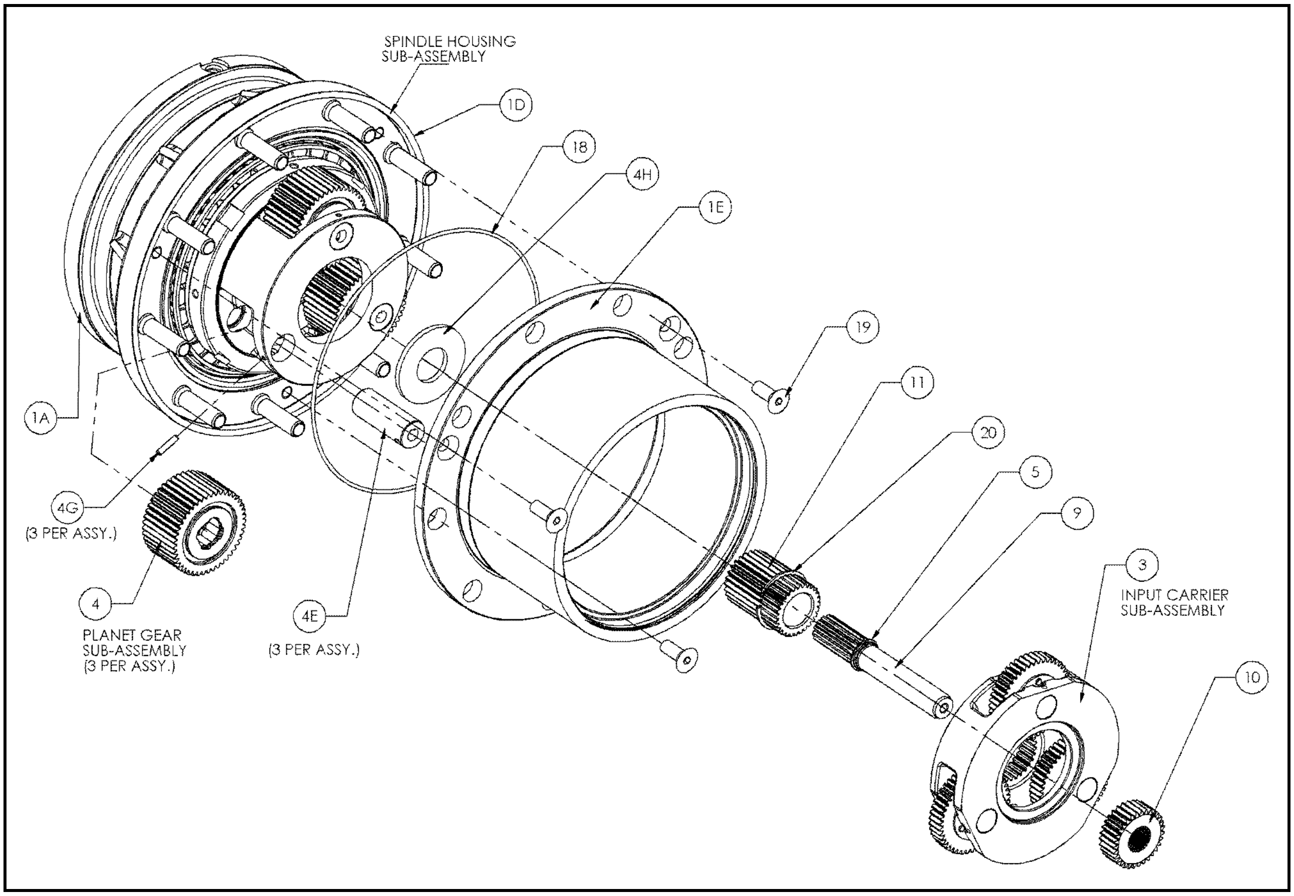
Main Disassembly

1. Perform Roll Check, Leak Check and Brake Check if applicable prior to disassembling the unit.
2. Drain oil from unit. Note the condition and volume of the oil.
3. Remove Retaining Ring (6G) by prying the open end of Retaining Ring out of the groove in the Ring Gear (1E) with a screwdriver, then grasp the loose end with pliers and pull the Retaining Ring completely out of the groove.
4. Remove the Cover Subassembly (6) from the unit. The unit can be carefully pressurized with air to pop the cover out of the unit.



6. Cover
6G. Retaining Ring
15. ID Plate

Figure 3-1. Main Disassembly



1A. Spindle	4. Planet Gear	5. Retaining Ring	18. O-ring
1D. Housing	4E. Planet Shaft	9. Input Shaft	19. Bolt
1E. Ring Gear	4G. Roll Pin	10. First Stage Sun Gear	20. Retaining Ring
3. Input Carrier	4H. Thrust Washer	11. Second Stage Sun Gear	

Figure 3-2. Input Carrier

5. Remove the First Stage Sun Gear (10) if applicable.

NOTE: *On units with ratios greater than 36:1 numerically, there will not be a separate First Stage Sun Gear (10), as the gear teeth will be integral to the Input Shaft (9).*

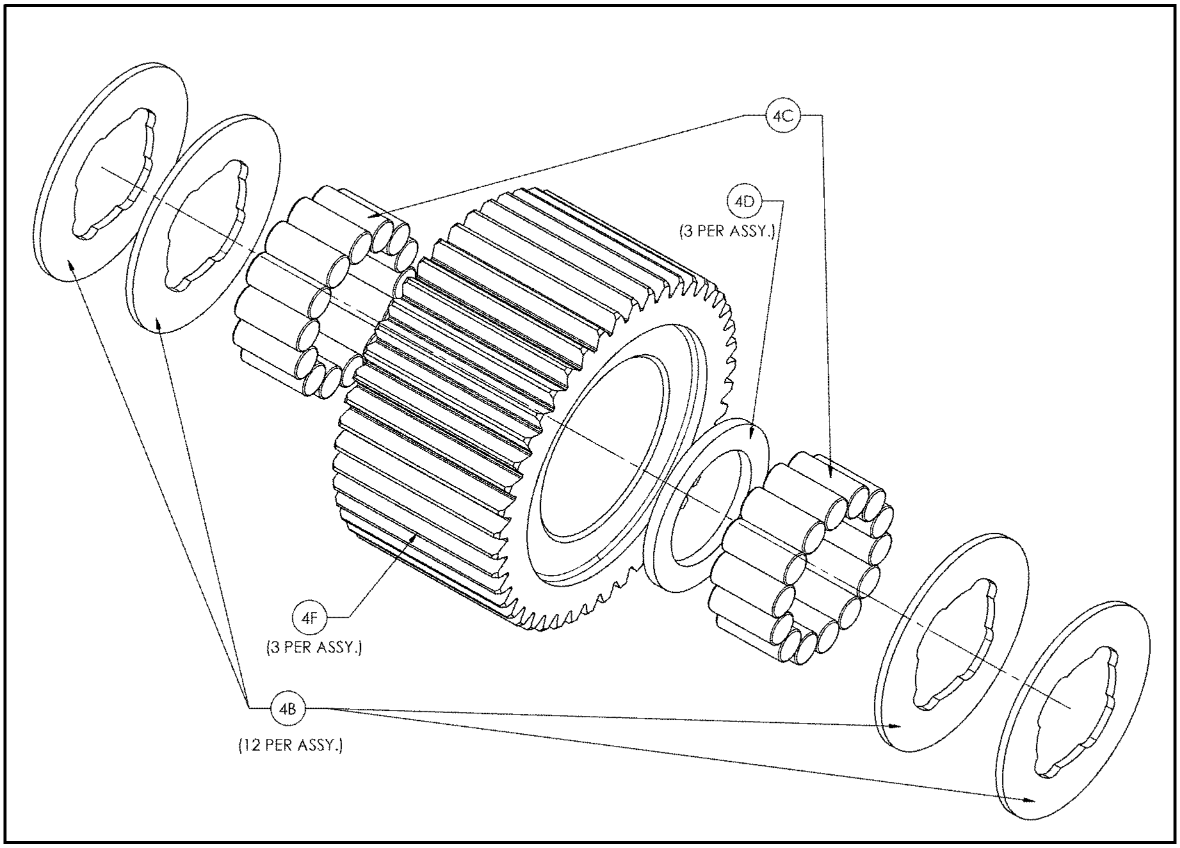
6. Remove the Input Carrier Subassembly (3).
7. Remove the Input Shaft (9).
8. Remove the Second Stage Sun Gear (11).

NOTE: *On units with a ratio 48:1, the Sun Gear (11) and the Input Shaft (9) will need to be removed together.*

9. Loosen and remove the three Flat Head Bolts (19) that retain the Ring Gear (1E) to the Housing (1G).
10. Lift the Ring Gear (1E) off of the Housing (1D).
11. Remove the O-ring (18) from between the Housing (1D) and the Ring Gear (1E).
12. Using a 1/8” diameter punch, drive the Roll Pin (4G) into the Planet Shaft (4E) until it bottoms against the Spindle (1A).
13. Grasp the Roll Pin (4G) using needle nosed pliers or some sort of hooked tool, and pull the Planet Shaft (4E) out of the Spindle (1A).
14. Using a 1/8” diameter punch, drive the Roll Pin (4G) out of the Planet Shaft (4E).

NOTE: *The Roll Pins (4G) should not be reused when reassembling the unit.*

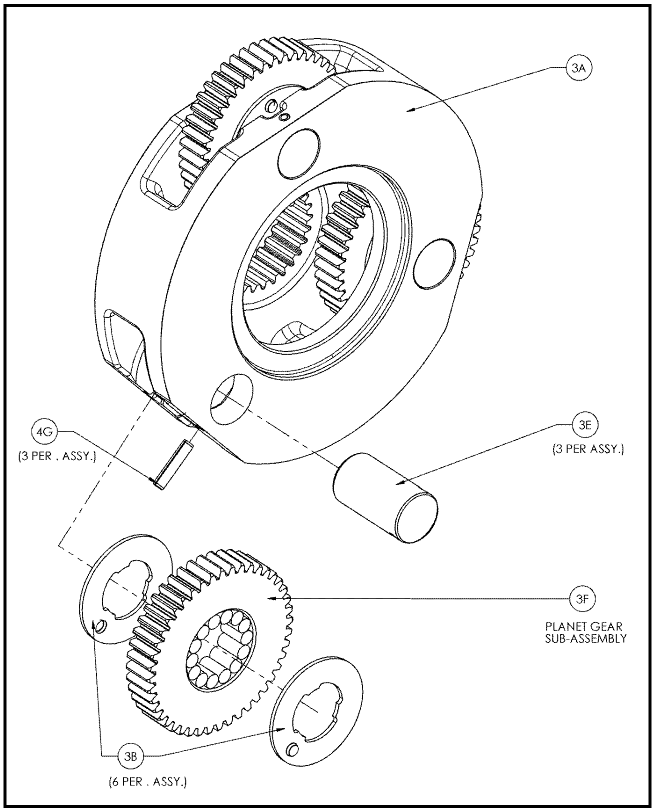
15. Slide the Planet Gear Subassembly (4) out of the Spindle (1A) being careful to not drop the Needle Bearings (4C) in the process.
16. Remove 4 Thrust Washers (4B), 28 Needle Rollers (4C) and the Thrust Spacer (4D) from the Second Stage Planet Gear (4F).
17. Repeat Steps 12 though 16 for the remaining two Planet Gears (4F).
18. Remove the Thrust Washer (4H) from the counter-bore in the Spindle (1A).



4B. Thrust Washer
4C. Needle Roller
4D. Thrust Spacer
4F. Planet Gear

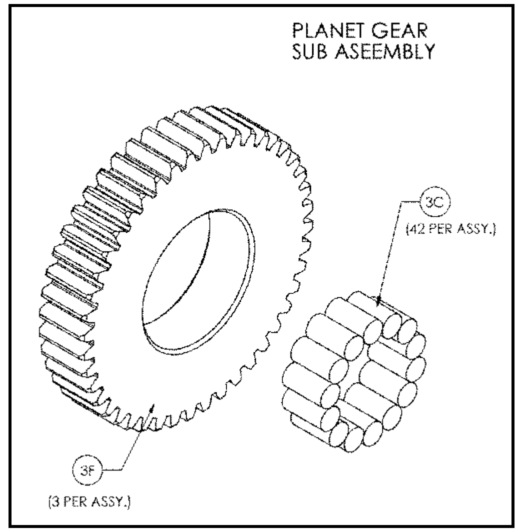
Figure 3-3. Planet Gear Sub Assembly

Input Carrier Disassembly



3A. Carrier
3B. Thrust Washer
3E. Planet Shaft
3F. Planet Gear
4G. Roll Pin

Figure 3-4. Input Carrier



3C. Needle Bearing
3F. Planet Gear

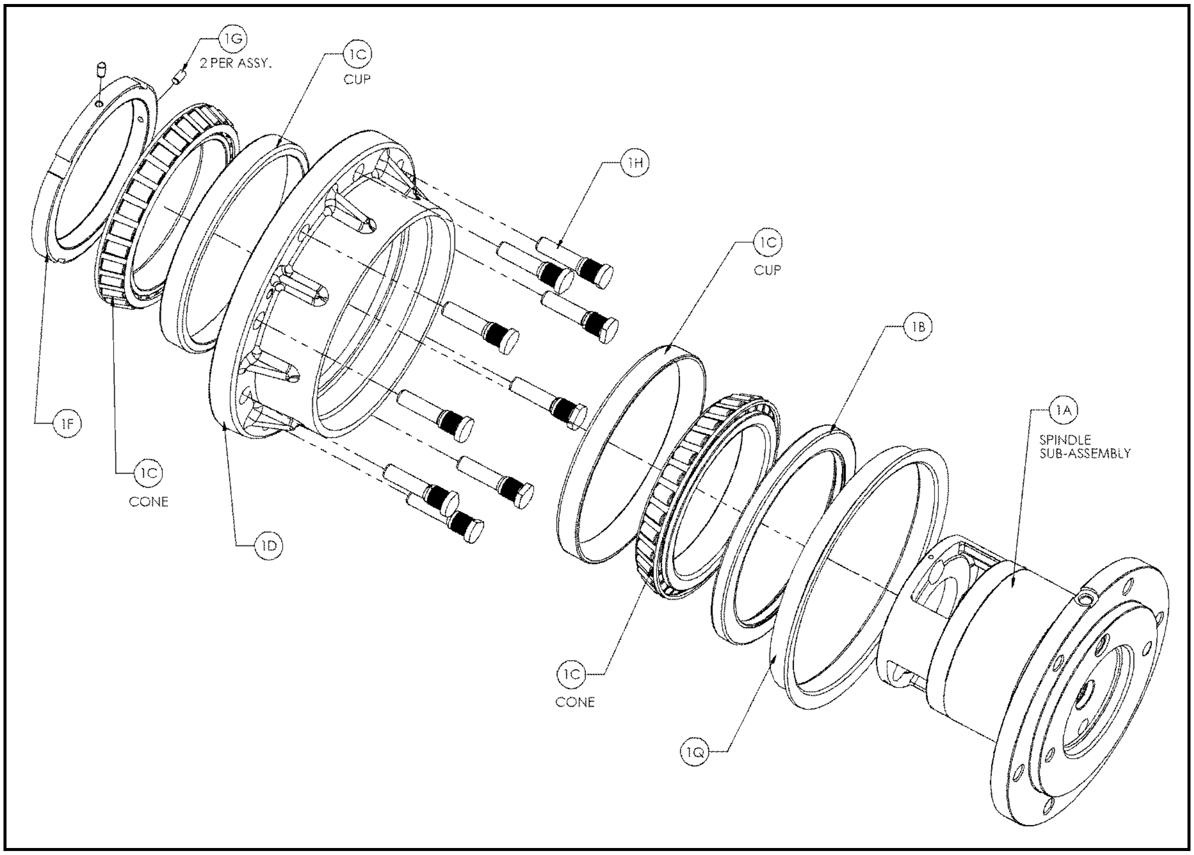
Figure 3-5. Planet Gear Subassembly

1. Using a 1/8” diameter punch, drive the Roll Pin (4G) into the Planet Shaft (3E) until it bottoms against the Carrier (3A).
2. Using a soft face hammer, tap the Planet Shaft (3E) out of the Carrier (3A).
3. Using a 1/8” diameter punch, drive the Roll Pin (4G) out of the Planet Shaft (3E).

NOTE: *The Roll Pins (4G) should not be reused when reassembling the unit.*

4. Slide the Planet Gear (3F) and the two Thrust Washers (3B) out of the Carrier (3A).
5. Remove the 14 needle Bearings (3C) from the bore of the Planet Gear (3F).
6. Repeat steps 1 through 5 for each of the two remaining planet gears.

Hub-Spindle Disassembly



1A. Barrel
1B. Seal
1C. Bearing Cone
1D. Hub
1F. Bearing Nut
1G. Setscrew
1H. Stud
1Q. Boot Seal

Figure 3-6. Hub Spindle

1. Place unit on bench with Spindle (1A) end down.
2. Remove 2 Set Screws (1G) and Bearing Nut (1F) using T-206569.

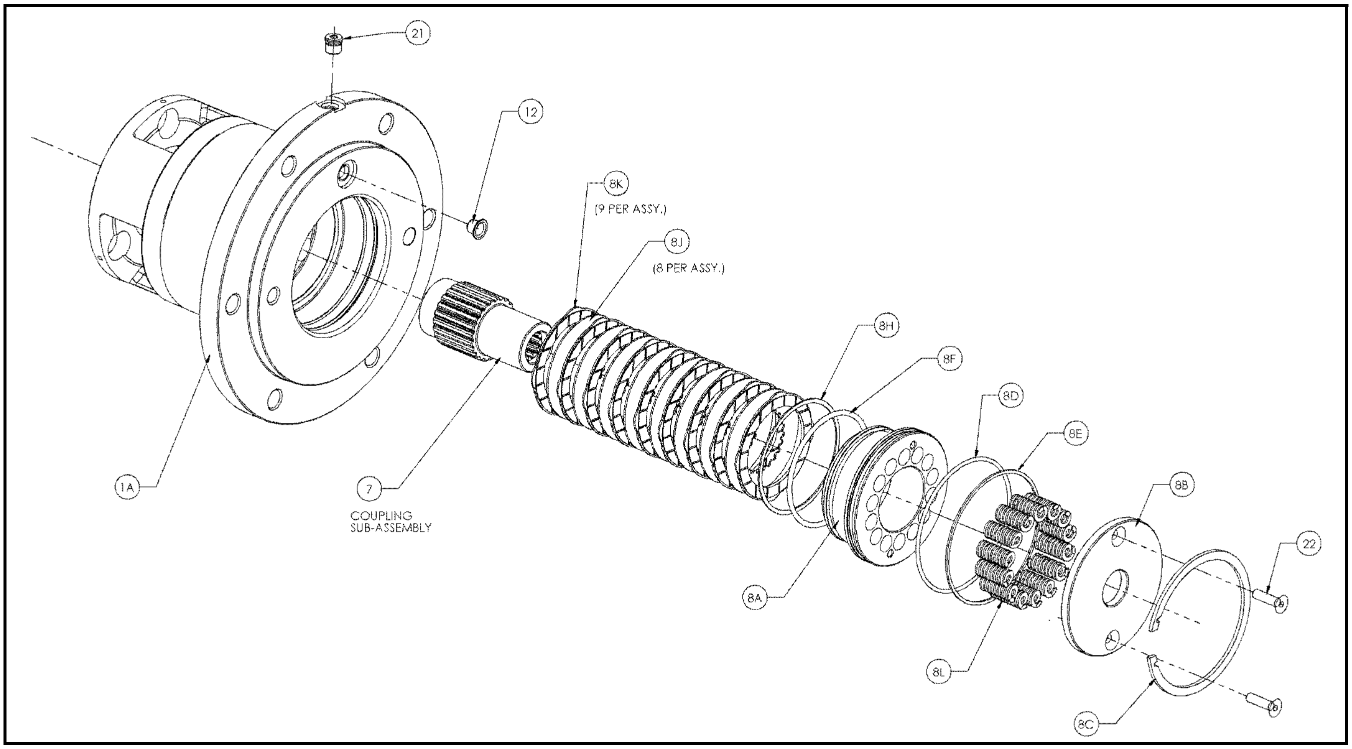
NOTE: *The holes in the Bearing Nut (1F) for the Set Screws (1G) were staked for retention of the Set Screws (1G). The holes will need to be cleaned up prior to removing the Set Screws.*

3. Remove “A” position Bearing Cone (1C) from Bearing Cup (1C) in Hub (1D).
4. While supporting the unit on Hub (1D) flange, press Spindle (1A) out of Hub (1D).
5. Lift Hub (1D) off of Spindle (1A). Remove Boot Seal (1Q) from Hub (1D) if applicable.
6. If necessary, press 9 Studs (1H) out of Hub (1D). Locate Hub (1D) on Seal (1B) end.
7. Remove Seal (1B) from Hub (1D).

NOTE: *The Seal (1B) should NOT be reused when reassembling the unit.*

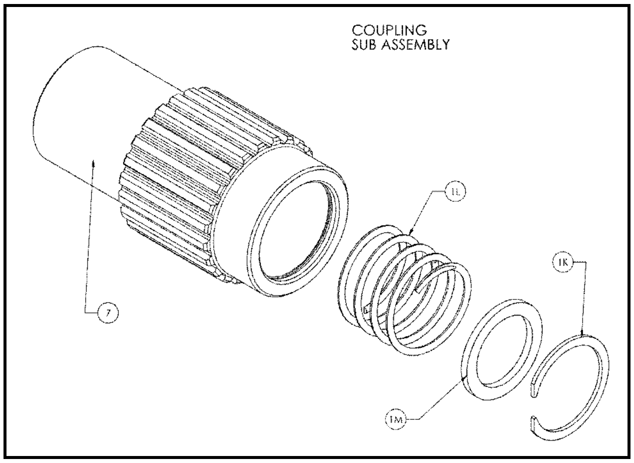
8. Remove “B” position Bearing Cone (1C) from Bearing Cup (1C) in Hub (1D).
9. Remove “B” position Bearing Cone (1C) from Hub (1D).
10. Using a soft steel rod, knock both Bearing Cups (1C) out of Hub (1D).

Spindle-Brake Disassembly



1A. Spindle
7. Coupling Subassembly
8A. Piston
8B. Pressure Plate
8C. Retaining Ring
8D. O-Ring
8E. Backup Ring
8F. O-Ring
8H. Backup Ring
8J. Rotor
8K. Stator
8L. Compression Spring
12. Plastic Plug
21. Pipe Plug
22. Flat Head Capscrew

Figure 3-7. Spindle Brake



1K. Retaining Ring
1L. Spring
1M. Spacer
7. Coupling

Figure 3-8. Coupling Subassembly

NOTE: *This procedure applies only to units with integral Input Brake (8).*

CAUTION

EYE PROTECTION MUST BE WORN WHILE PERFORMING THE STEPS 1-3 IN THIS PROCEDURE.

1. Compress the Compression Springs (8L) by installing two 1/4-20 x 5/8" Flat Head Cap Screws (22) through Pressure Plate (8B) and into Piston (8A) and tightening incrementally until spring force has been taken off of the Retaining Ring (8C).

NOTE: *Flat Head Cap Screws (22) are removed prior to shipping new units since they are for transit and service only. They are included in most brake repair kits.*

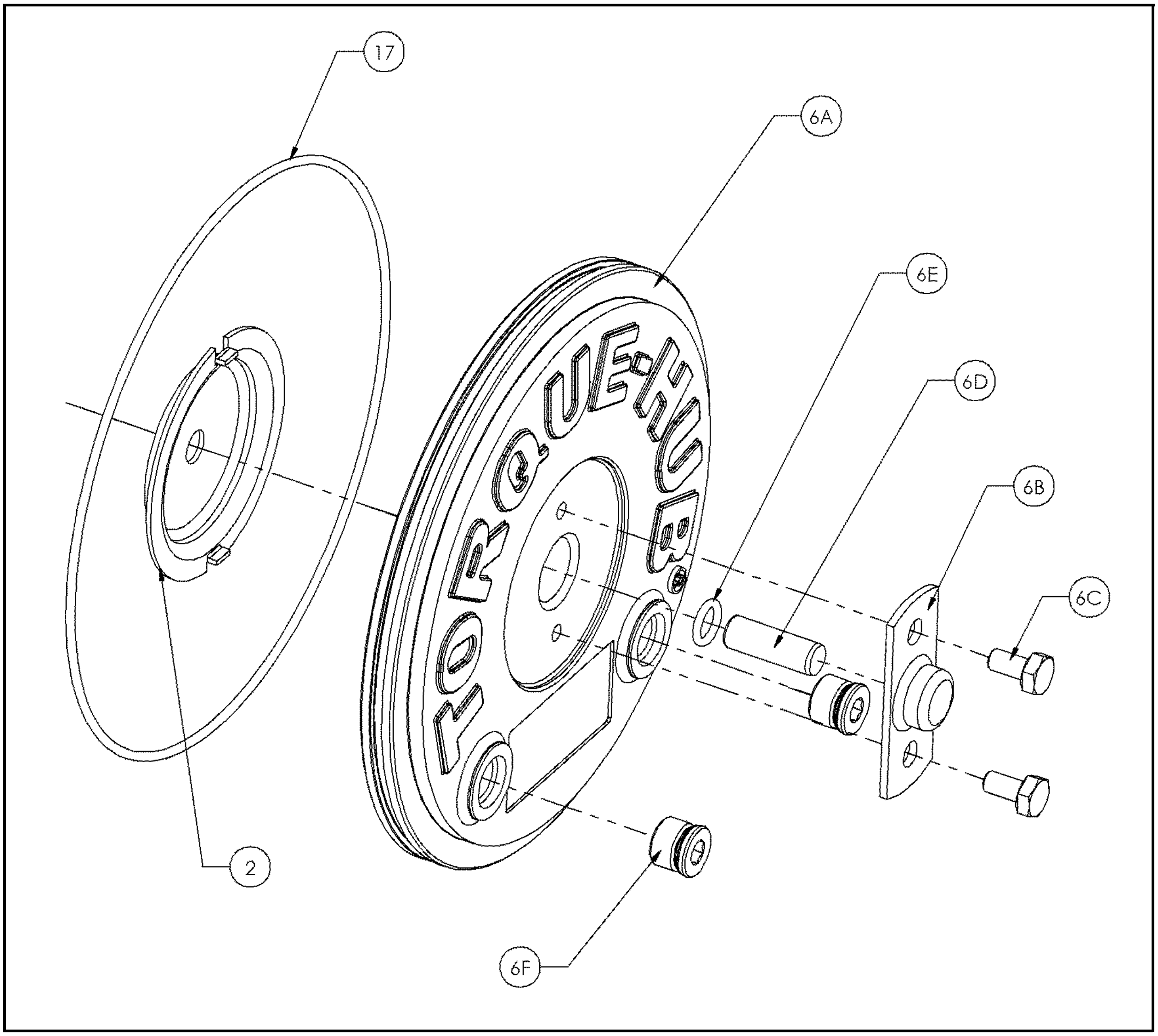
2. Using retaining ring pliers, remove Retaining Ring (8C) from the groove in the Spindle (1A).
3. Back Flat Head Cap Screws (22) incrementally out of Piston (8A) until spring force is relieved from the Pressure Plate (8B). Then, remove Flat Head Cap Screws (22) and Pressure Plate (8B) from brake cavity in Spindle (1A).
4. Remove Compression Springs (8L) from Piston (8A).

CAUTION

EYE PROTECTION MUST BE WORN WHILE PERFORMING THE NEXT STEP IN THIS PROCEDURE.

5. Using an air hose, slowly and carefully pressurize the brake port in the Spindle (1A) until the Piston (8A) comes out of piston bore of Spindle (1A), Then pull the Piston (8A) the rest of the way out of the Spindle (1A) by hand.
6. Remove Backup Rings (8E) & (8H) and O-rings (8D) & (8F) from grooves in Piston (8A).
7. Remove Rotors (8J) and Stators (8K) from brake cavity in Spindle (1A).
8. Remove Coupling Subassembly (7) from brake cavity in Spindle (1A).
9. Remove Retaining Ring (1K) out of the internal groove using appropriate tool.
10. Remove the Spacer (1M) & Spring (1L) out of the bore of Coupling (7).
11. Remove Plastic Plug (12) & Pipe Plug (21) from Spindle (1A) if applicable.

Cover Disassembly



2. Thrust Washer
6A. Cover
6B. Disengage Cap
6C. Bolt
6D. Disengage Rod
6E. O-Ring
6F. Pipe Plug
17. O-Ring

Figure 3-9. Cover

1. Remove O-Ring (17) from groove in Cover (6A).
2. Remove Thrust Washer (2) from Cover (6A) pockets.
3. Unscrew two Hex Head Bolts (6C) and remove Disengage Cap (6B) from Cover (6A).
4. Pull Disengage Rod (6D) out from Cover (6A).
5. Use appropriate tool to remove O-ring (6E) from internal groove in Cover (6A).
6. Remove two O-Ring Pipe Plugs (6F) from Cover (6A).

Input Carrier Sub-Assembly

1. Apply a liberal coat of grease to the bore of one Input Planet Gear (3F).
2. Line the inside of the Planet Gear (3F) with 14 Needle Rollers (3C).

NOTE: *The last roller installed must be installed end wise. That is, the end of the last roller must be placed in between the ends of the two rollers which form the space, and then slid, parallel to the other rollers, into place.*

3. Set Carrier (3A) in an upright position.
4. Insert a Planet Shaft (3E) into the planet shaft hole in the end of the Carrier (3A) opposite the splined end. The end of the planet shaft that does NOT have the roll pin hole should be inserted into the carrier FIRST.
5. Place one Thrust Washer (3B) onto the end of Planet Shaft (3E). Make sure the flat faces towards the inside of the carrier and make sure the button fits in the pocket on the inside of the Carrier (3A) towards the OD.
6. Following the thrust washer, place Planet Gear (3F) with needle rollers, onto Planet Shaft (3E).
7. Following the planet gear, place one more Thrust Washer (3B) onto Planet Shaft (3E). Align the Thrust Washer (3B) in the same manner described in Step 5.
8. Now insert Planet Shaft (3E) through the opposite planet shaft hole on Carrier (3A). Use an alignment punch or similar tool to align the roll pin holes on Carrier (3A) and Planet Shaft (3E).

NOTE: *Be sure not to hit the Planet Gears (3F) when driving in the Roll Pins (4G).*

9. Drive Roll Pin (4G) down into the aligned roll pin holes. Pin should be flush with the flat of carrier.
10. Repeat Steps 1-9 for the installation of the two remaining Planet Gears (3F).

NOTE: *Some grease may need to be applied to the Thrust Washers (3B) to hold them in place while installing the planet gears.*

Output Planet Gear Sub-Assembly

1. Apply a liberal coat of grease to the bore of one Output Planet Gear (4F).
2. Line the inside of the Planet Gear (4F) with 14 Needle Rollers (4C).

NOTE: *The last roller installed must be installed end wise. That is, the end of the last roller must be placed in between the ends of the two rollers which form the space, and then slid, parallel to the other rollers, into place.*

3. Place Spacer (4D) into the bore of the Output Planet (4F).
4. Repeat Step 2 to put in second roll of Needle Rollers (4C).
5. Apply grease to hold two Thrust Washers (4B) together and onto Output Planet Gear (4F) counterbore. Do the same to the other side.
6. Repeat Steps 1-5 to finish the assembly of the two remaining Output Planet Gears (4F).

Spindle - Brake Sub-Assembly

1. Place Spindle (1A) such that the flange side is up.
2. Place Stator (8K) into the Spindle (1A) scallop cuts.
3. Place Rotor (8J) on top of Stator (8K).
4. Repeat steps 2 & 3 until there are a total of 9 Stators (8K) and 8 Rotors (8J) installed.
5. Place Piston (8A) such that the smaller O.D. end is facing upward. Grease the two O-Rings and the two Backup Rings.
6. Install large Backup Ring (8E) in the large-diameter groove at the bottom of the Piston (8A).
7. Install large O-Ring (8D) in the large-diameter groove at the bottom of the Piston (8A), on top of the large Backup Ring (8E).
8. Install small O-Ring (8F) in the small-diameter groove near the top of the Piston (8A). Make sure the O-Ring is seated on the bottom of the groove.

9. Install small Backup Ring (8H) in the small-diameter groove near the top of the Piston (8A), on top of the small O-Ring (8F).
10. Insert Piston (8A) into Spindle (1A) until it contacts the Stator (8K).
11. Insert the appropriate number of Springs (8L), based on the assembly print, into Piston (8A)counterbore.
12. Place Spring (1L) into Coupling (7) counterbore. Place the Pressure plate (1M) on top of Spring (1L).
13. Use appropriate tool to install Retaining Ring (1K) into the retaining ring groove in the coupling (7) counterbore.
14. Insert Coupling sub-Assembly (7) through Rotors (8J).
15. Place Pressure Plate (8B) on top of Springs (8L).
16. Use two ¼ -20 x 0.625 flat head Cap Screws (22) by bolting the Pressure Plate (8B) and Piston (8A) together or some other appropriate tools to install Retaining Ring on top of Pressure Plate (8B) until Retaining Ring (8C) is seated.

NOTE: *Remove 2 Screws from units when done, otherwise brake will not function.*

17. Install Pipe Plug (21) if applicable

Hub-Spindle Sub-Assembly

NOTE: *Spray a light film of oil on all component parts during assembly. Spray a generous amount of oil on bearings during installation.*

1. Press Bearing Cup of part (1C), position "A", into Hub using T-158422 pressing tool.
2. Turn hub over and press Bearing Cup of part (1C), position "B", into hub using T-158422 pressing tool.(T).
3. Place Bearing Cone of part (1C), into Bearing Cup of part (1C), position "B".
4. Grease Seal (1B) lip and press seal into Hub (1D) using appropriate tool until seal is flush with end of hub.(T).
5. Place Hub (1D) into pressing base. Press nine Studs (1H) into Hub.

NOTE: *Use enough pressure to press in studs. Don t use excessively high pressure to press in studs or hub may crack.*

6. Set Spindle assembly (1A) on the bench with the flange down. Turn Hub (1D) over and lower onto Spindle (5). Install boot (21) if applicable.
7. Install Bearing Cone of part (1C) into Bearing Cup, position "A".
8. Apply Loctite 243 on Bearing Nut (1F) thread. Screw Nut (1F) on top of Bearing Cone of part (1C). Leave 0.003-0.005 inches end play to check the initial rolling torque with the unit tied down. Then torque Bearing Nut (1F) until rolling torque is 40 to 50 in-lbs greater than initial rolling torque. Using tool T-206569 for the Bearing Nut.

NOTE: *Final torque is initial rolling torque plus 40-50 in-lbs. E.g., if the initial rolling torque is 30 in-lbs, the final rolling torque is between 70-80 in-lbs. Be sure to rotate hub as the torque is applied to properly seat the bearing. Be sure the torque wrench is tangent to the Hub (1D) OD.*

9. Using appropriate tool, install two Set Screws (1G) into Bearing Nut (1F) threaded holes. Make sure Set Screw is driven into the spindle thread. Tighten the set screws to damage the thread and stake the edge of the nut around the Set Screws (1G) so the nut will not loosen.
10. Place Thrust Washer (4H) into counterbore of Spindle (1A).
11. Place Planet Gear Sub-assembly (4) into Spindle (1A) through gap between two Studs (1H). Align the planet gear bore with one of the planet shaft holes on the spindle (1A) assembly using T-209919.
12. Insert a Planet Shaft (4E) into the planet shaft hole described in Step (11) on Spindle (1A). The end of the planet shaft that does NOT have the roll pin hole should be inserted into the Spindle FIRST.
13. Now insert Planet Shaft (4E) through the first set of Thrust Washers (4B), Planet gear, then the second set of Washers (4B). Use an alignment punch or similar tool to align roll pin holes on Spindle (1A) and Planet Shaft (4E).

NOTE: *Be sure not to hit the Planet Gears (4F) when driving in Roll Pins (4G).*

14. Drive Roll Pin (4G) down into the aligned roll pin holes. Pin should be flush with OD of spindle.
15. Repeat Steps (11-14) for the installation of the two remaining Planet Gears (4F).

Cover Sub-Assembly

1. Grease O-Ring (6E) and insert into internal groove in Cover (6A).
2. Assemble Disengage Cap (6B) onto Cover (6A) using two Hex Head Bolts (6C). Torque bolts to 70-80 in-lbs.
3. Insert Disengage Rod (6D) into hole in Cover (6A) until it touches the inside of the Disengage Cap (6B).

NOTE: *The Disengage Rod can be inserted either end first.*

4. Grease Face of Thrust Washer (2) and place in Cover (6A) making sure that tangs on washer seat into pockets in cover.
5. Install O-Ring Pipe Plugs (6F) into Cover (6A). The plugs should be hand tight.

Main Assembly

NOTE: *All components should receive a generous amount of lubricant oil as they are being assembled.*

1. Place Hub-Spindle Sub-Assembly on the bench.
2. Grease O-Ring (18) and place it into groove of Hub (1D).
3. Place Ring Gear (1E) onto Hub (1D). Align the three shipping Cap Screw Holes on Hub (1D) and Ring Gear (1E).
4. Install three shipping Cap Screws (19) into ring gear and hub. Torque them to 15-20 ft-lbs.
5. Place External Retaining Ring (5) over 13T spline to the retaining groove on Input Shaft (9).

NOTE: *For ratio 48:1, assemble Output Sun Gear (11) over Input Shaft (9) first, then install External Retaining Ring (5).*

6. Using appropriate tool to install Retaining Ring (20) into groove on Output Sun (11).
7. Place Input Shaft (9) spline end into mesh with Internal Coupling (7) splines.
8. With the modified spline end facing up, place the Output Gear (11) into mesh with the planet gears from the Hub-Spindle Sub-Assembly.
9. Place Input Carrier Sub-Assembly (3A) onto Output Sun Gear (11) splines. Drop Input Sun (10) into mesh with planet gears for specific ratios, if required. (No timing required).
10. Grease O-Ring (17) and insert into groove in Cover Sub-Assembly (6).
11. Install Cover Sub-Assembly (6) into Ring Gear (1E) counterbore and install Retaining Ring (6G) into groove in Ring Gear (1E).
12. Attach ID Tag (15) onto unit using Drive Screws (16).
13. Check disconnect, roll and air check unit, leak check brake, and record release pressure.
14. Insert Plastic Plug (12) into place if applicable.

Integral Brake Check

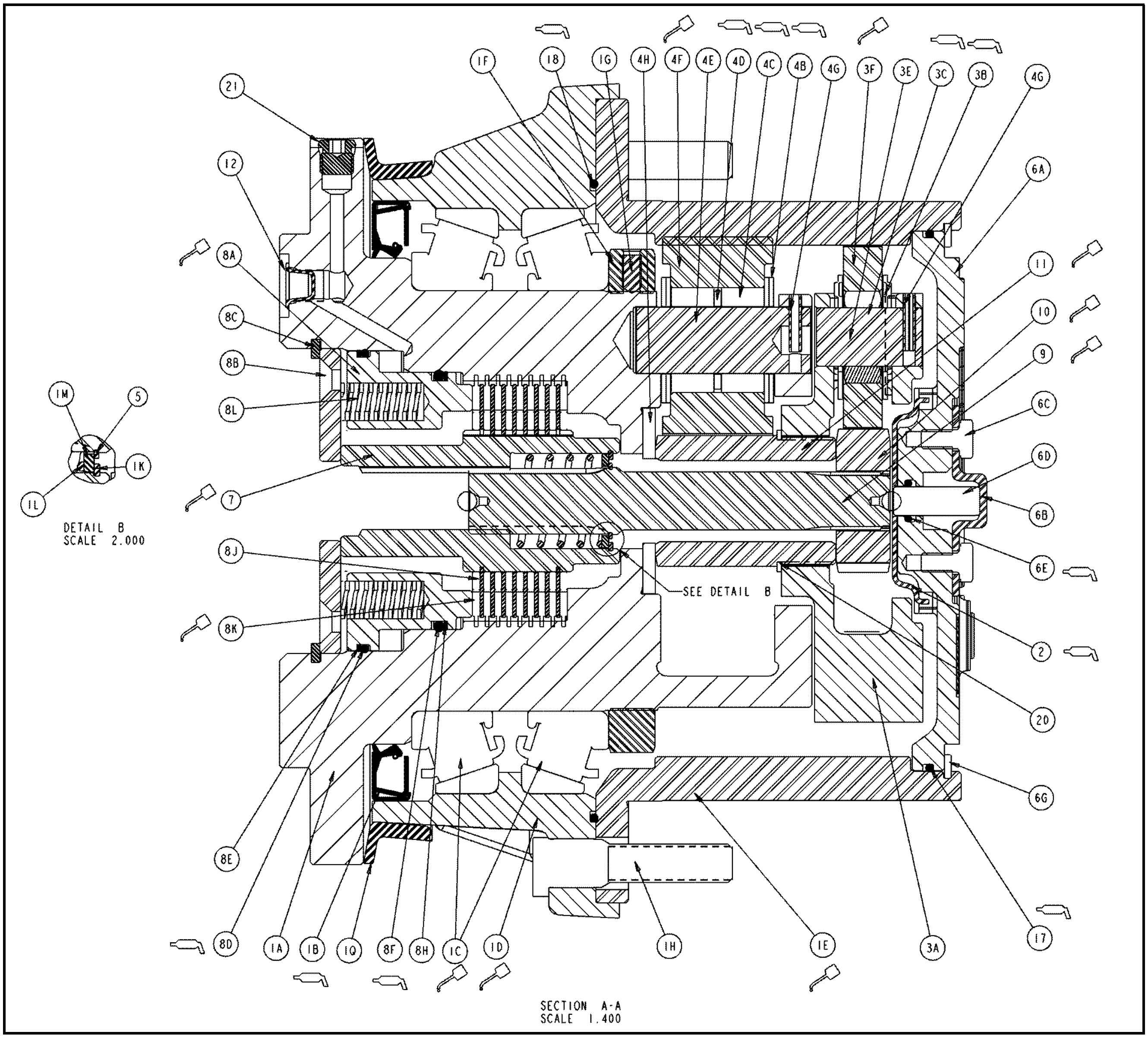
1. Using appropriate fittings, connect hydraulic line from hand pump to brake port.
2. Check to see that brake is set by trying to rotate Input Shaft (9). This can be accomplished by installing an appropriate tool (any tool that can locate on the splines of the Input Coupling (7), such as a mating splined shaft) into Input Coupling (7).
3. Bleed brake. Increase hydraulic pressure gradually while trying to rotate the input until brake just starts to release. Note this pressure. Make sure the pressure falls into the appropriate range below.

BRAKE CODE	JUST RELEASE PRESSURE RANGE	
	PSI	BAR
A	200-260	13.7-17.9
B	170-220	11.7-15.1
C	140-185	9.6-12.7
D	130-155	8.9-10.6
E	115-145	7.9-9.9

4. Increase pressure to 1,000 psi and hold for 30 seconds to check for leaks. Repair leaks if necessary.

NOTE: *Make sure that brake re-engages when pressure is released.*

NOTE: *When done, make sure Input Coupling (7) is centered in Spindle (1A) to make installation of motor possible without release of brake.*



1A. Spindle
1B. Lip Seal
1C. Tapered Bearing
1D. Housing
1E. Ring Gear
1F. Bearing Nut
1G. Setscrew
1H. Stud
1K. Retaining Ring
1L. Spring
1M. Thrust Washer
1Q. Seal Boot
2. Thrust Spacer
3A. Carrier
3B. Thrust Washer
3C. Needle Bearing
3E. Planet Shaft
3F. Planet Gear
4B. Thrust Washer
4C. Needle Bearing
4D. Thrust Spacer
4E. Planet Shaft
4F. Planet Gear
4G. Roll Pin
4H. Thrust Washer
5. Retaining Ring
6A. Cover
6B. Disengage Cap
6C. Bolt
6D. Dowel Pin
6E. O-Ring
6F. Pipe Plug
6G. Retaining Ring
7. Coupling
8A. Brake Piston
8B. Pressure Plate
8C. Retaining Ring
8D. O-Ring
8E. Backup Ring
8F. O-Ring
8H. Backup Ring
8J. Brake Rotor
8K. Brake Stator
8L. Spring
9. Input Shaft
10. Sun Gear
11. Sun Gear
12. Plastic Plug
15. ID Plate
16. Drive Screw
17. O-Ring
18. O-Ring
19. Bolt
20. Retaining Ring
21. O-Ring Plug

Figure 3-10. Hub Assembly

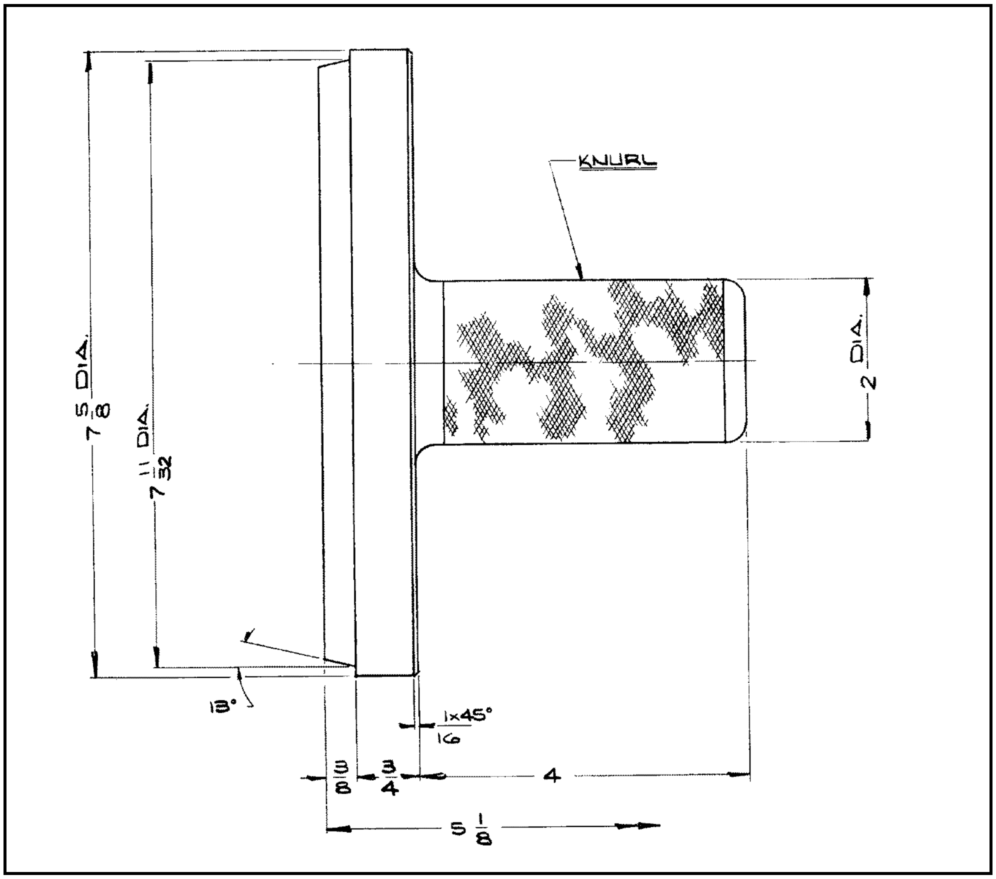


Figure 3-11. Bearing Cup Pressing Tool

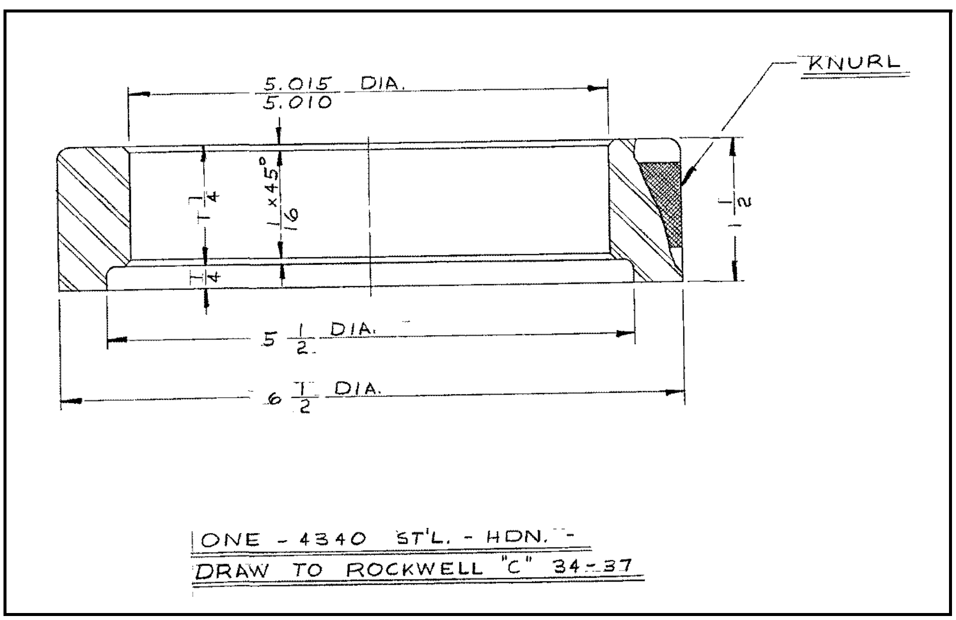


Figure 3-12. Seal Pressing Tool

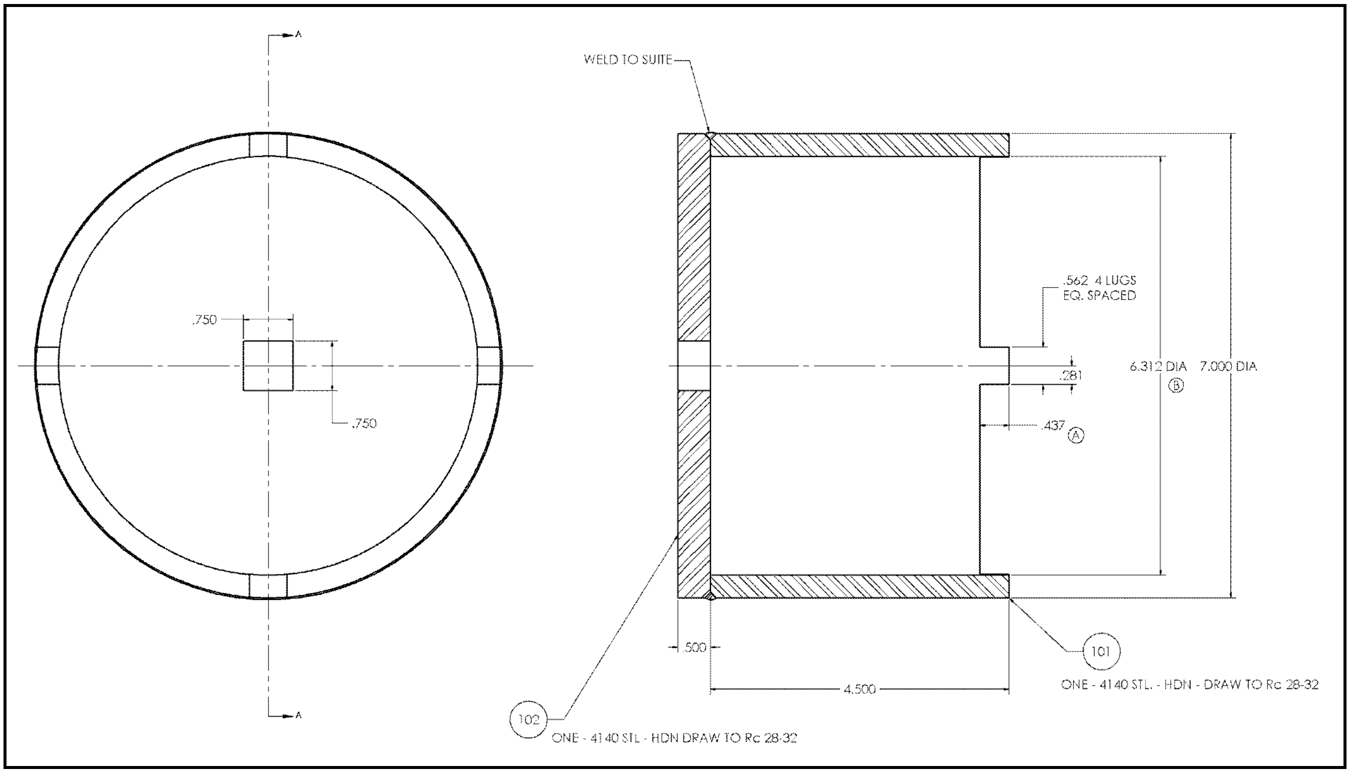


Figure 3-13. Bearing Cup Pressing Tool

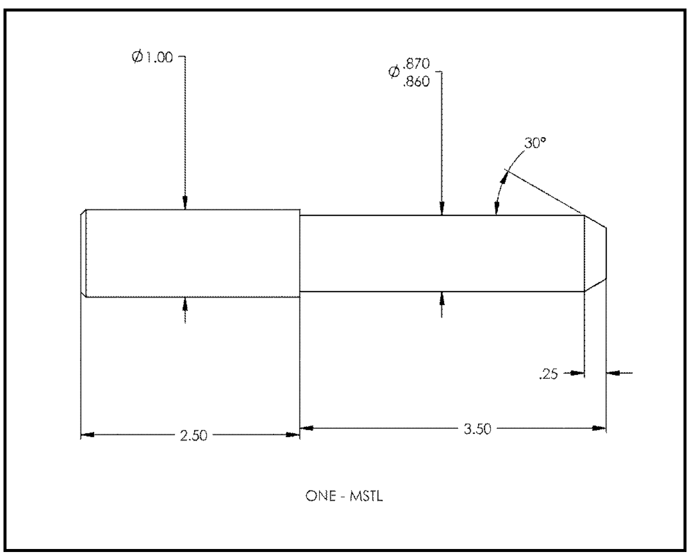


Figure 3-14. Drift Pin for Lining Up Thrust Washers with Output Planet Gear

3.3 FREE WHEELING OPTION

To Disengage Drive Motors and Brakes (Free Wheel) for Towing, etc.

1. Chock wheels securely if not on flat level surface.
2. Disconnect both drive hubs by inverting disconnect caps in center of hubs.
3. If equipped, move steer/tow selector valve to float (tow) position by pulling valve knob out.

To Engage Drive Motors and Brakes (Normal Operation)

1. If equipped, move steer/tow valve to steer position by pushing valve knob in.
2. Connect both drive hubs by inverting disconnect cap in center of hub.
3. Remove chocks from wheels as required.

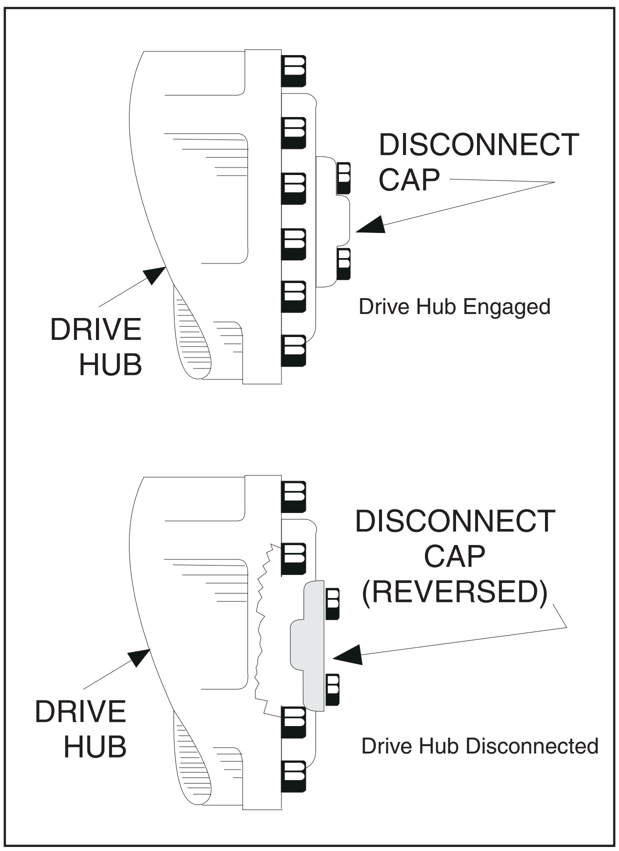


Figure 3-15. Disconnecting the Drive Hubs

3.4 DRIVE MOTOR (S/N 75606 TO PRESENT)

Description

The drive motors are low to medium power, two-position axial piston motors incorporating an integral servo piston. They are designed for operation in both open and closed circuit applications. The standard control is a direct acting single line hydraulic control. The integral servo piston controls motor displacement.

The motors are spring biased to maximum displacement and hydraulically shifted to minimum displacement. Minimum and maximum displacement can be set with fixed internal stops. The large diameter servo piston allows smooth acceleration and deceleration with relatively large circuit orificing.

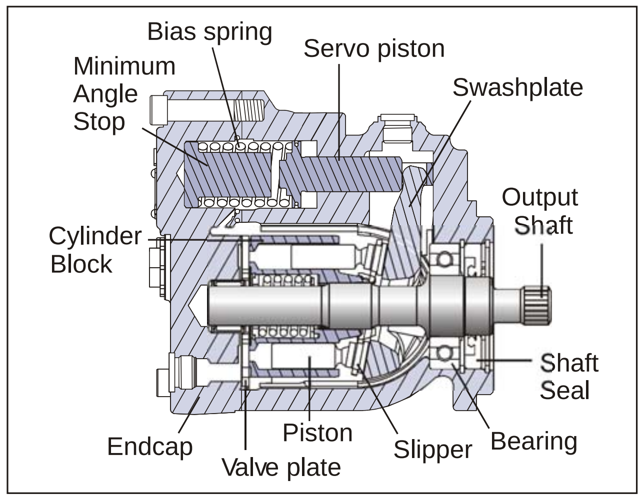
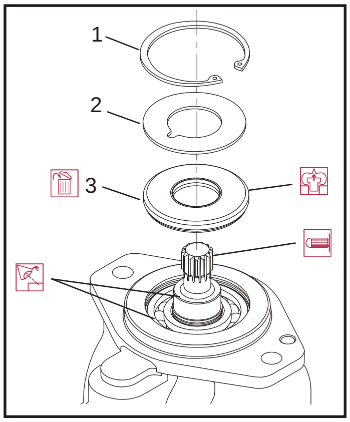


Figure 3-16. Drive Motor Cross Section

Shaft Seal Replacement

REMOVAL

1. Remove the snap ring (1) retaining the shaft seal and support washer.



1. Snap Ring
2. Support Washer
3. Shaft Seal

Figure 3-17. Removing the Shaft Seal

2. Remove the support washer (2).
3. Carefully pry out the shaft seal (3).

   To avoid damaging the shaft during removal, install a large sheet metal screw into the chuck of a slide hammer. Drive the screw into the seal surface and use the slide hammer to pull the seal.
4. Discard the seal.

INSPECT THE COMPONENTS

Inspect the new seal, the motor housing seal bore, and the sealing area on the shaft for rust, wear, and contamination. Polish the shaft and clean the housing if necessary.

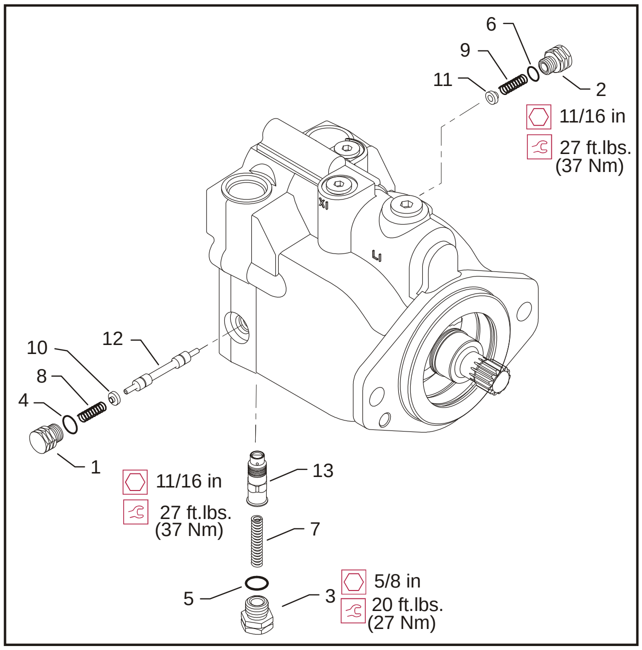
INSTALLATION

1. Cover the shaft splines with an installation sleeve to protect the shaft seal during installation.
2. Install a new shaft seal with the cupped side facing the motor. Press seal into housing until it bottoms out. Press evenly to avoid binding and damaging the seal.
3. Install seal support washer.
4. Install snap ring.
5. Remove the installation sleeve.

Loop Flushing Valve

REMOVAL

1. Using a 11/16 in internal hex wrench remove plug (1) and (2).



1. Plug
2. Plug
3. Plug
4. O-ring
5. O-ring
6. O-ring
7. Spring
8. Spring
9. Spring
10. Washer
11. Washer
12. Shift Spool
13. Orifice Poppet

Figure 3-18. Loop Flushing Spool

2. Using a 1/4 in hex wrench remove plug (3).
3. Remove O-rings (4, 5, and 6).
4. Using pliers, remove centering springs (7, 8, and 9).
5. Remove spring retaining washers (10 and 11).
6. Remove shift spool (12).
7. Remove orifice poppet (13).

INSPECT THE COMPONENTS

Inspect new O-rings and the sealing area for rust, wear, or contamination. Also check springs and poppet for wear.

INSTALLATION

1. Install orifice poppet (13).
2. Install shift spool (12).
3. Install spring retaining washers onto springs (10 and 11).
4. Carefully install centering springs (7, 8, and 9).
5. Install new O-rings (6, 4, and 5).
6. Using a 1/4 in hex wrench torque plug (3) to 20 ft. lbs. (27 Nm).
7. Using a 11/16 in internal hex, torque plugs (2 and 1) to 27 ft.lbs. (37 Nm).

Troubleshooting

Table 3-3. Excessive Noise and/or Vibration

Item	Description	Action
Check oil level in reservoir and oil supply to the motor.	Insufficient hydraulic fluid could lead to cavitation that would cause system noise.	Fill the reservoir to the proper level and ensure that oil supply to the motor is adequate and the lines are unobstructed.
Check for air in the system.	Air trapped within the system lines, or the motor itself, could result in cavitation that would cause system noise.	Ensure that all of the system lines and components are purged of air.
Inspect the output shaft couplings.	A loose or incorrect shaft coupling will produce vibrations that could result in system noise.	Ensure that the correct coupling is used and that it fits properly onto the shaft.
Inspect the output shaft alignment.	Misaligned shafts create excessive frictional vibration that could result in system noise.	Ensure that the shafts are properly aligned.
Hydraulic oil viscosity above limits.	Viscosity above acceptable limits will result in cavitation that would lead to system noise.	Replace hydraulic oil with appropriate fluid for operating conditions.

Table 3-4. System Operating Hot

Item	Description	Action
Check oil level in reservoir and oil supply to the pump.	Insufficient amount of hydraulic fluid will not meet the cooling demands of the system.	Fill the reservoir to the proper level.
Inspect the heat exchanger, (if so equipped).	If the heat exchanger fails, or becomes obstructed, it may not meet the cooling demands of the system.	Ensure that heat exchanger is receiving adequate air flow and that the heat exchanger is in good operating condition. Repair or replace as necessary.
Check the system relief valves.	If a system relief valve becomes unseated for an extended period of time or fails for any other reason, the system could become overheated.	Repair or replace any malfunctioning relief valves as applicable and verify that the loads on the machine are not excessive.

Table 3-5. Won't Shift or Slow to Start

Item	Description	Action
Check the signal line to the servo control port.	Obstructed or restricted flow through the servo control signal lines could result in slow shift or no shift conditions within the motor.	Ensure that the signal lines are not obstructed or restricted and that signal pressure is adequate to shift the motor.
Check that the correct supply and drain orifices are properly installed, and are not obstructed.	Supply and drain orifices determine the shift rate of the motor. The smaller the orifice, the longer the time it takes to shift the motor. Obstruction will also increase shift times.	Ensure that the proper control orifices are installed in the motor and verify that they are not obstructed. Clean or replace as necessary.

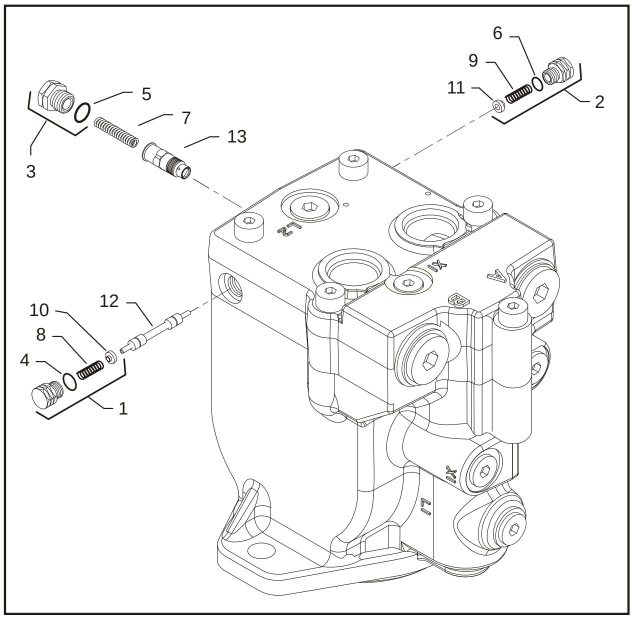
Disassembly

NOTE: *Removal of the endcap voids warranty.*

During assembly, coat all moving parts with a film of clean hydraulic oil. This assures that these parts will be lubricated during start-up.

Replace all O-Rings and gaskets.

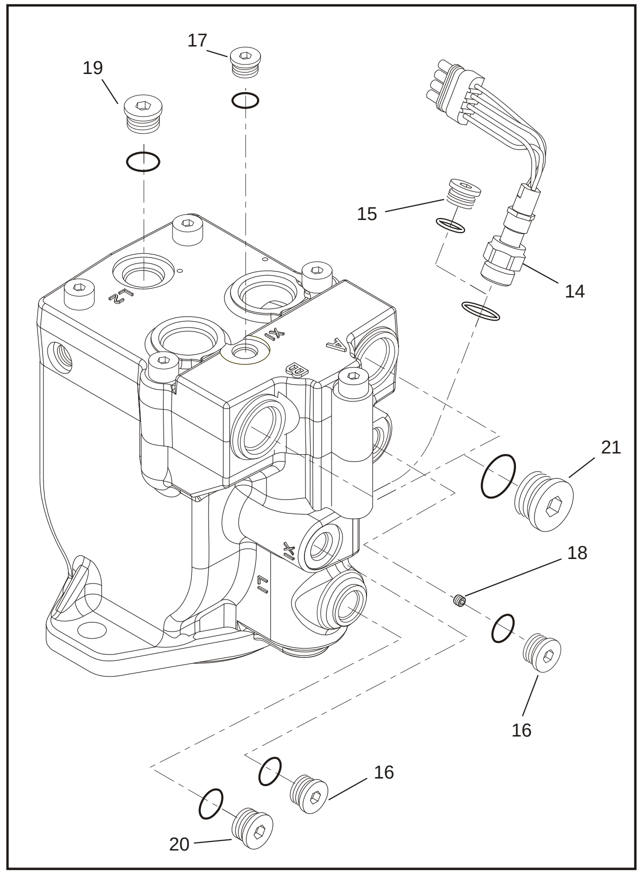
It is recommended that all O-rings be replaced. Lightly lubricate all O-rings with clean petroleum jelly prior to assembly.



1. Plug
2. Plug
3. Plug
4. O-ring
5. O-ring
6. O-ring
7. Spring
8. Spring
9. Spring
10. Washer
11. Washer
12. Shift Spool
13. Orifice Poppet

Figure 3-19. Loop Flushing Spool

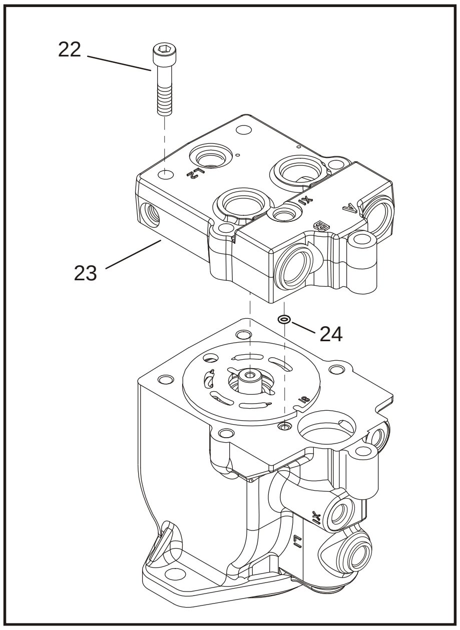
1. Using a 11/16 in wrench remove plug (1) and (2).
2. Using a 5/8 in hex wrench remove plug (3).
3. Remove O-rings (4, 5, and 6).
4. Using pliers, remove centering springs (7, 8, and 9).
5. Remove spring retaining washers (10 and 11).
6. Remove shift spool (12).
7. Remove orifice poppet (13).



14. Lock Nut
15. O-ring Plug
16. Control Line Plug
17. Control Line Plug
18. Cavity Plug
19. Drain Plug
20. Drain Plug
21. Work Port Plug

Figure 3-20. Plugs, Fittings, and Speed Sensor

8. Remove all fittings from the unit. Discard any O-rings on the fittings.
9. Using an 11/16 inch hex wrench, loosen the speed sensor lock nut (14) if equipped. Then remove the speed sensor using a Vi inch hex wrench. Units without speed sensor have an O-ring plug (15) installed in that location; remove it with a Va inch internal hex wrench.
10. Using a 1/4 inch internal hex wrench, remove control line plugs (16, 17). Discard O-rings. Using a 3 mm hex wrench, remove cavity plug (18, if equipped with two-line control) from X2 cavity.
11. Using a 5/16 inch internal hex wrench, remove drain plugs (19, 20). Discard O-rings.
12. Using a 9/16 inch internal hex wrench, remove work port plugs (21, if equipped with axial ports). Discard O-rings.

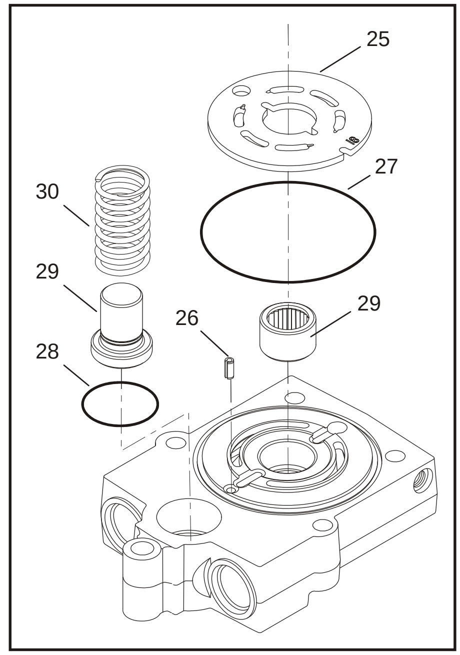


22. Screw
23. End Cap
24. O-ring

Figure 3-21. End Cap

13. Using an 8 mm internal hex wrench, remove the endcap screws (22).
14. Remove the endcap (23). Remove O-ring (24) from the housing or endcap.

    When the endcap screws are removed, pressure from the servo spring will cause the endcap to bind on the shaft. Press down on the portion of the endcap covering the servo piston and hold the endcap level while removing.



25. Valve Plate
26. End Cap
27. O-ring
28. O-ring
29. Angle Stop
30. Servo Spring

Figure 3-22. Valve Plate & Rear Shaft Bearing

NOTICE

TAKE CARE NOT TO SCRATCH THE SURFACE OF THE VALVE PLATE.

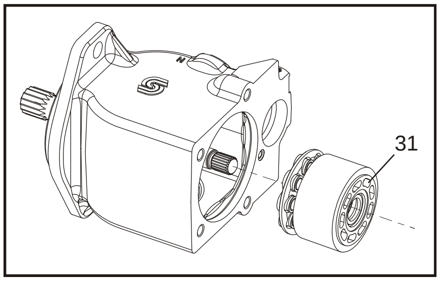
15. Remove the valve plate (25) and timing pin (26) from the endcap.

    Each displacement has a unique valve plate. For identification, the last two digits of the valve plate part number are stamped on its surface.

16. Remove and discard the O-rings (27, 28).
17. Remove the rear shaft bearing (29) from the endcap with a bearing puller.

    The bearing may be difficult to remove with a puller. Try this as an alternative: Pack the bearing cavity with heavy grease. After the shaft is removed, insert it into the bearing cavity and tap lightly with a soft mallet on the splined end. The grease will force the bearing out. Use caution not to drive the bearing past the rear shaft journal as the bearing may become trapped on the shaft and damaged.

18. Remove minimum angle stop (29) and servo spring (30) from the housing.



31. Cylinder Kit Assembly

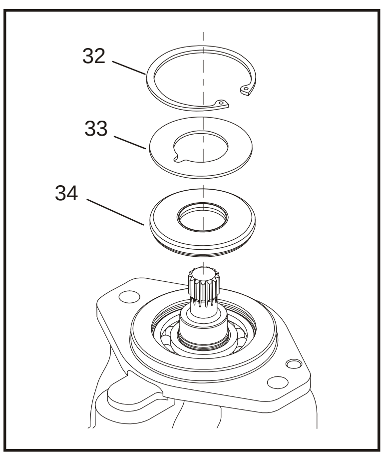
Figure 3-23. Cylinder Kit

19. Turn the housing on its side and remove the cylinder kit assembly (31). Set the assembly aside, being careful not to scratch the running surface.

NOTE: *Grooves on the surface of the cylinder kit identify its displacement:*

Table 3-6. Displacement Identifiers

# of Grooves	Frame L	Frame K
1	25	38
2	30	45
3	35	- -

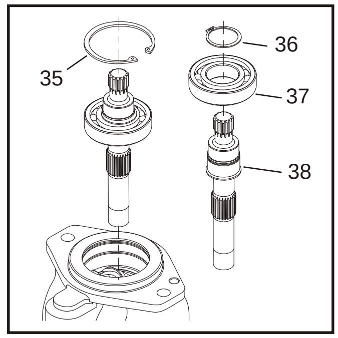


32. Snap Ring
33. Support Washer
34. Shaft Seal

Figure 3-24. Shaft Seal

20. Turn the housing over and remove the snap ring (32) retaining the shaft seal and support washer. Remove the support washer (33) and carefully pry out the shaft seal (34). Discard the seal.

To avoid damaging the shaft during seal removal. Install a large sheet metal screw into the chuck of a slide hammer. Drive the screw into the seal surface and use the slide hammer to pull the seal.

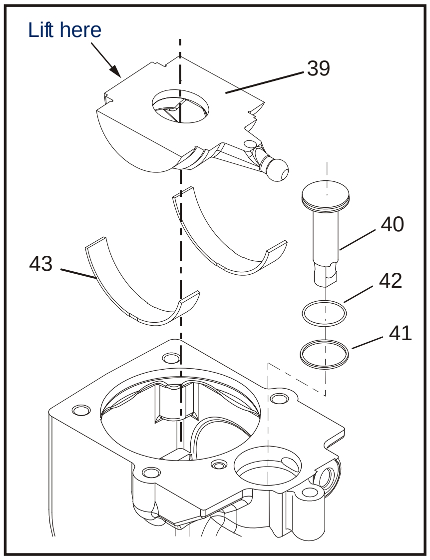


35. Inner Snap Ring
36. Snap Ring
37. Bearing
38. Shaft

Figure 3-25. Shaft & Front Bearing

21. Remove the inner snap ring (35) and the shaft / bearing assembly.

22. Remove the snap-ring (36) retaining the shaft front bearing. Pull the bearing (37) off of the shaft (38).



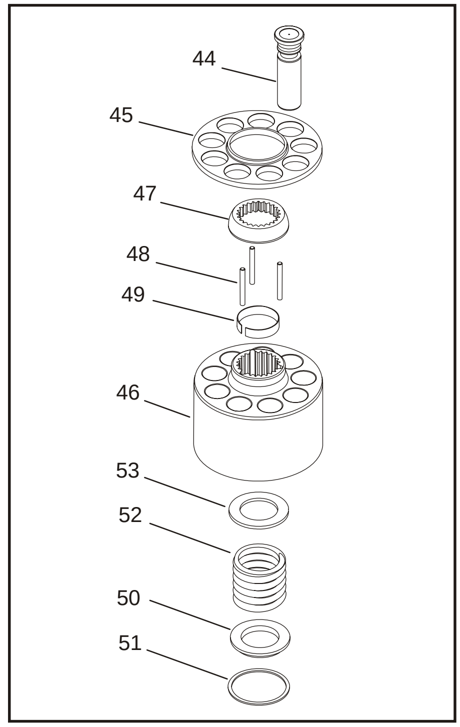
39. Swashplate
40. Servo Piston
41. Piston Seal
42. O-ring
43. Journal Bearings

Figure 3-26. Swash Plate & Servo Piston

23. Turn housing over and remove the swashplate (39) by lifting on the end opposite the servo lever.

24. Remove the servo piston (40). Remove the piston seal (41) and O-ring (42) from the servo piston. Discard the seal and O-ring.

25. Remove the journal bearings (43) from the housing. If the bearings are to be reused, note the location and orientation of each bearing for reassembly.



44. Piston
45. Slipper Retainer
46. Cylinder Block
47. Ball Guide
48. Holddown Pins
49. Retaining Ring
50. Block Spring Washer
51. Spiral Retaining Ring
52. Block Spring
53. Inner Block Spring Washer

Figure 3-27. Cylinder Kit Disassembly

26. Remove pistons (44) and slipper retainer (45) from the cylinder block (46).

The pistons are not selectively fitted, however units with high hourly usage may develop wear patterns. Number the pistons and bores for reassembly if they are to be reused.

27. Remove the ball guide (47), hold-down pins (48), and retaining ring (49) from the cylinder block.

NOTE: *Most repairs do not require block spring removal. Perform this procedure only if you suspect problems with the block spring.*

⚠ WARNING

RISK OF PERSONAL INJURY: COMPRESSING THE BLOCK SPRING REQUIRES FORCE OF ABOUT 80 TO 90 LBF (350 TO 400 N). USE A PRESS SUFFICIENT TO MAINTAIN THIS FORCE WITH REASONABLE EFFORT. ENSURE THE SPRING IS SECURE BEFORE ATTEMPTING TO REMOVE THE SPIRAL RETAINING RING. RELEASE THE PRESSURE SLOWLY AFTER THE RETAINING RING IS REMOVED.

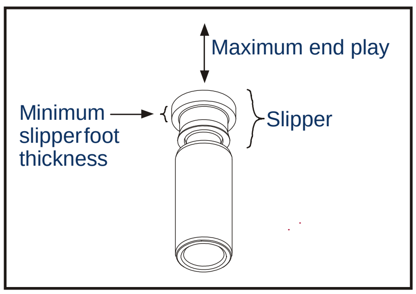
28. Turn the block over. Using a press, apply pressure on the block spring washer (50) to compress the block spring. Compress the spring enough to safely remove the spiral retaining ring (51). While maintaining pressure, unwind the spiral retaining ring (51). Carefully release the pressure and remove the outer block spring washer (50), block spring (52), and inner block spring washer (53) from the cylinder block.

Inspection

After disassembly, wash all parts (including the end-cap and housing) thoroughly with clean solvent and allow to air dry. Blow out oil passages in the housing and endcap with compressed air. Conduct inspection in a clean area and keep all parts free from contamination. Clean and dry parts again after any rework or resurfacing.

PISTON

Inspect the pistons for damage and discoloration. Discolored pistons may indicate excessive heat; do not reuse.



SLIPPERS

Inspect the running surface of the slippers. Replace any piston assemblies with scored or excessively rounded slipper edges. Measure the slipper foot thickness. Replace any piston assemblies with excessively worn slippers. Check the slipper axial end-play. Replace any piston assemblies with excessive end-play.

Minimum slipper foot thickness and maximum axial end-play are given in the table below.

Table 3-7. Slipper Foot Thickness & End Play

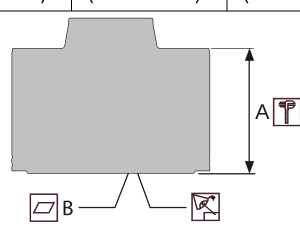
Measurement		L Frame	K Frame
Slipper Foot Thickness	mm (in.)	2.71 (0.11)	4.07 (0.16)
Piston/Slipper End Play		0.15 (0.006)	

CYLINDER BLOCK

Measure the cylinder block height. Replace blocks worn beyond the minimum height specification. Inspect the running surface of the cylinder block. Replace or resurface worn or scratched blocks. Blocks may be resurfaced to the specifications shown in the drawing, provided resurfacing will not reduce the block height below the minimum specification. Table 3-8, Cylinder Block Measurements.

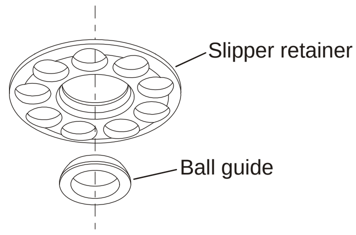
Table 3-8. Cylinder Block Measurements

Measurement	L25	L30	L35	K38	K45
Minimum Cylinder Block Height (A)	50.8 (2.00)	50.8 (2.00)	50.8 (2.00)	54.4 (2.14)	54.4 (2.14)
Cylinder Block Surface Flatness	0.002 (0.0000079)	0.002 (0.0000079)	0.002 (0.0000079)	0.002 (0.0000079)	0.002 (0.0000079)



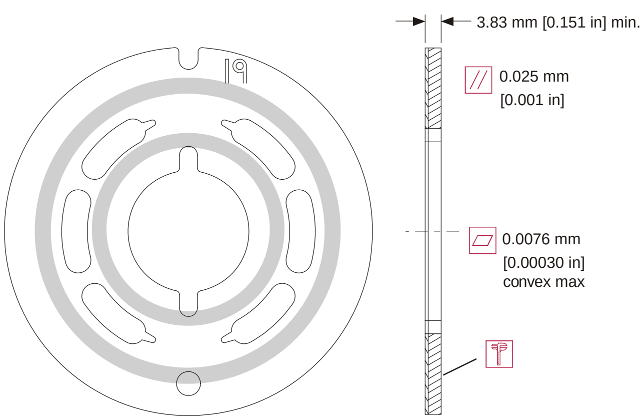
BALL GUIDE AND SLIPPER RETAINER

Inspect the ball guide and slipper retainer for damage, discoloration, or excessive wear. A discolored ball guide or slipper retainer indicates excessive heat. Do not reuse.



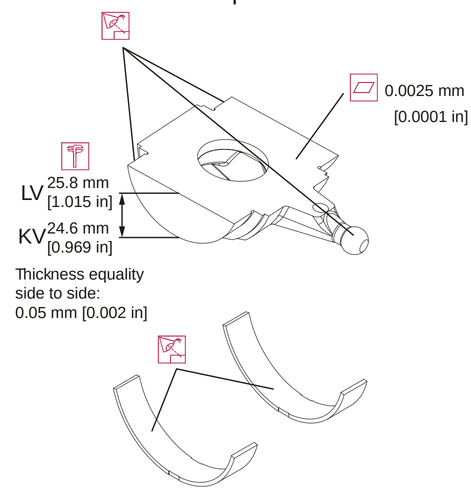
VALVE PLATE

The condition of the valve plate is critical to the efficiency of the motor. Inspect the valve plate surfaces carefully for excessive wear, grooves, or scratches. Replace or resurface grooved or scratched valve plates. Measure the valve plate thickness and replace if worn beyond the minimum specification. Valve plates may be resurfaced to the specifications shown in the drawing, provided resurfacing will not reduce the thickness below the minimum specification.



SWASHPLATE AND JOURNAL BEARINGS

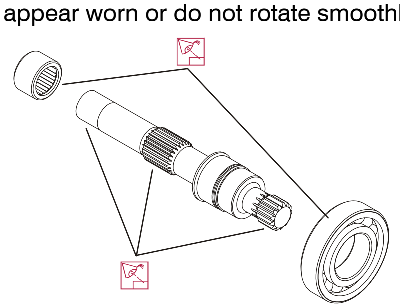
Inspect the running face, servo ball-joint, and swashplate journal surfaces for damage or excessive wear. Some material transfer may appear on these surfaces and is acceptable providing the surface condition meets specifications shown. Measure the swashplate thickness from the journals to the running face. Replace swashplate if damaged or worn beyond minimum specification. Replace swashplate if the difference in thickness from one side to the other exceeds specification.



Inspect the journal bearings for damage or excessive wear. Replace journal bearings if scratched, warped, or excessively worn. The polymer wear layer must be smooth and intact.

SHAFT BEARINGS

Inspect bearings for excessive wear or contamination. Rotate the bearings while feeling for uneven movement. Bearings should spin smoothly and freely. Replace bearings that appear worn or do not rotate smoothly.

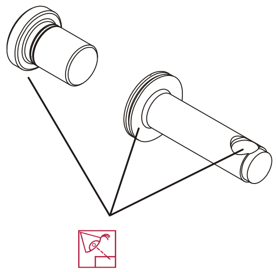


SHAFT

Inspect the motor shaft. Look for damage or excessive wear on the output and block splines. Inspect the bearing surfaces and sealing surface. Replace shafts with damaged or excessively worn splines, bearing surfaces, or sealing surfaces.

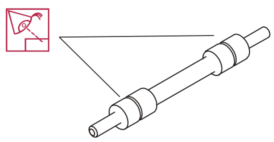
SERVO PISTON AND MINIMUM ANGLE STOP

Inspect the minimum angle stop, servo piston head, and servo piston ball-socket for damage or excessive wear. Replace if necessary.



LOOP FLUSHING SPOOL

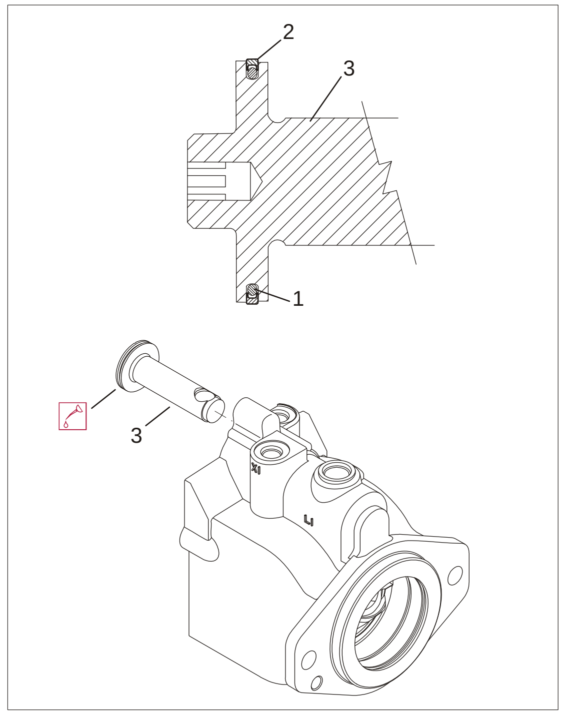
Inspect the loop flushing spool. Check for cracks or damage. Replace if necessary.



Assembly

1. Install new O-ring (1) and piston seal (2) to the servo piston (3). Install the piston seal over the O-ring.

   Installing the piston seal stretches it, making it difficult to install the servo piston in its bore. Allow 30 minutes for the seal to relax after installation. To speed up seal relaxation, compress the seal by installing the piston head into the servo cavity in the end-cap and let it stand for at least five minutes.



1. O-ring
2. Piston Seal
3. Servo Piston

Figure 3-28. Servo Piston

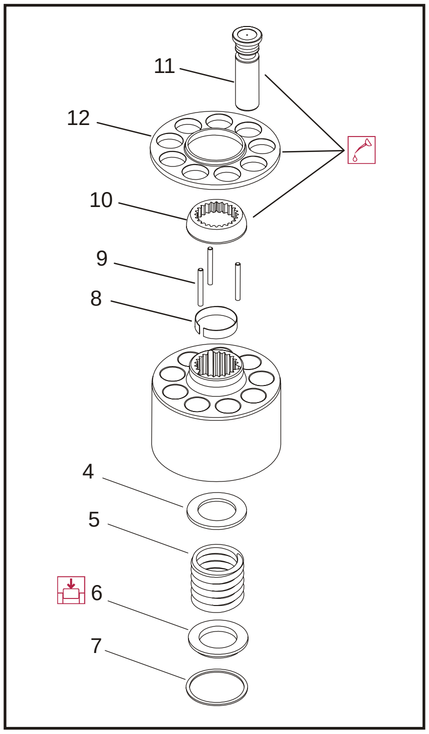
2. After piston seal has relaxed, lubricate and install servo piston into the housing bore. Align the piston with the ball socket facing the inside of the housing.

⚠ WARNING

RISK OF PERSONAL INJURY: COMPRESSING THE BLOCK SPRING REQUIRES ABOUT 80 TO 90 LBF (350 TO 400 N) OF FORCE. USE A PRESS SUFFICIENT TO MAINTAIN THIS FORCE WITH REASONABLE EFFORT. ENSURE THE SPRING IS SECURE BEFORE ATTEMPTING TO INSTALL THE SPIRAL RETAINING RING. RELEASE THE PRESSURE SLOWLY AFTER THE RETAINING RING IS INSTALLED.

3. Install the inner block spring washer (4), block spring (5), and outer washer (6) into the cylinder

block. Using a press, compress the block spring enough to expose the retaining ring groove. Wind the spiral retaining ring (7) into the groove in the cylinder block.



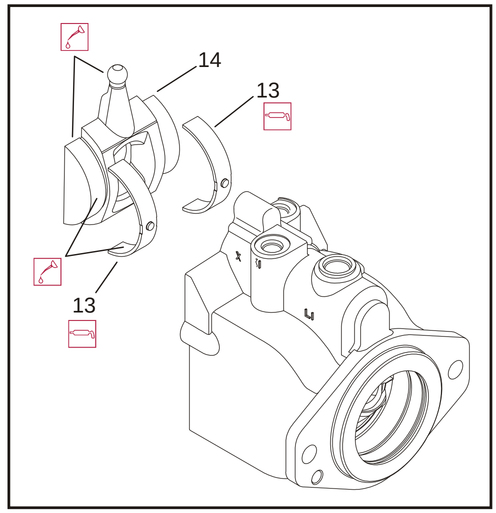
4. Block Spring Washer
5. Block Spring
6. Outer Washer
7. Spiral Retaining Ring
8. Retaining Ring
9. Holddown Pins
10. Ball Guide
11. Piston
12. Slipper Retainer

Figure 3-29. Cylinder Kit Assembly

4. Turn the block over and install the retaining ring (8), hold-down pins (9), and ball guide (10) to the cylinder block.

5. Install the pistons (11) to the slipper retainer (12). Install the piston/retainer assembly into the cylinder block. Ensure the concave surface of the retainer seats on the ball guide. If you're reusing the pistons, install them to the original block bores. Lubricate the pistons, slippers, retainer, and ball guide before assembly. Set the cylinder kit aside on a clean surface until needed.

6. Install the journal bearings (13) into the housing seats. Use assembly grease to keep the bearings seated during assembly. Ensure the locating nubs drop into the cavities in the seats. If you're reusing the bearings, install them in the original location and orientation. Lubricate the journal bearings.

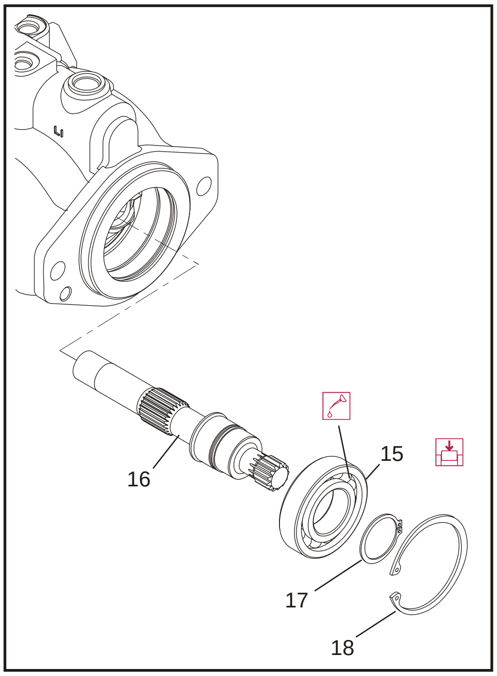


13. Journal Bearings
14. Swash Plate

Figure 3-30. Swash Plate and Journal Bearing

7. Install the swashplate (14) into the housing. Tilt the swashplate and guide the servo lever ball into its socket in the servo piston rod. Ensure the swashplate seats into the journal bearings and moves freely. Lubricate the running surface of the swashplate.

8. Press front shaft bearing (15) onto shaft (16). Press bearing onto shaft with lettering facing out. Lubricate bearing rollers. Install snap-ring (17) onto shaft.

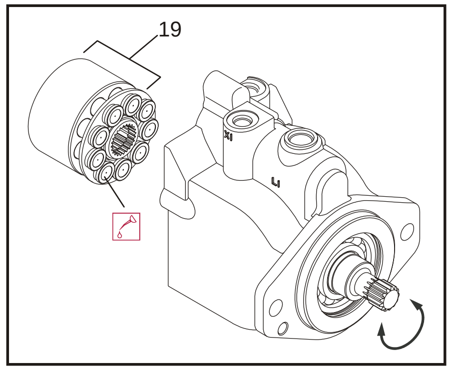


15. Front Shaft Bearing
16. Shaft
17. Snap Ring
18. Snap Ring

Figure 3-31. Shaft and Front Bearing

9. While holding the swashplate in place, turn the housing on its side. Install the install shaft/bearing assembly into housing from the flange end. Install the snap-ring (18).

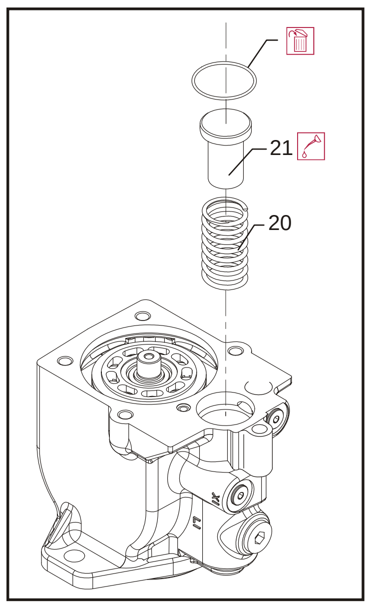
10. Verify swashplate and bearings are properly seated. Install the cylinder kit (19) onto the shaft. Install with the slippers facing the swashplate. Rock the shaft to align the block splines and slide the cylinder kit into place. Orient the motor with the shaft pointing downward and verify the cylinder kit, swashplate, journal bearings, and servo piston are all secure and properly installed.



19. Cylinder Kit

Figure 3-32. Cylinder Kit Installation

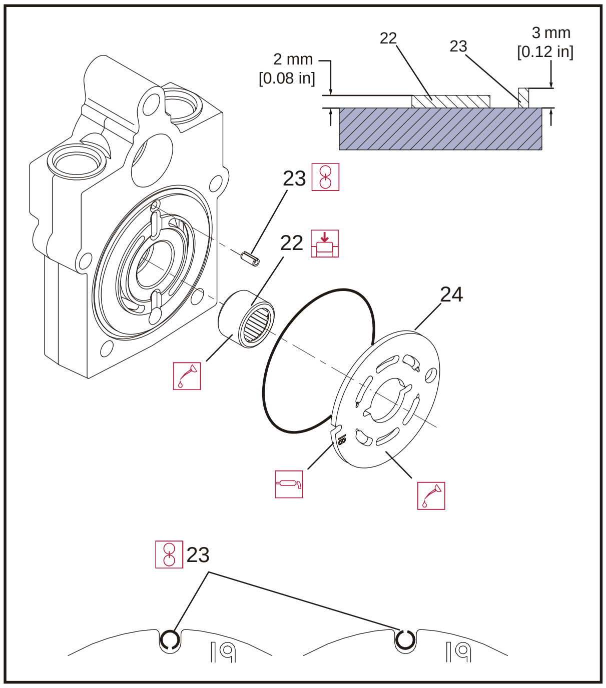
11. Lubricate and install the servo spring (20), and minimum angle stop (21) into the housing bore.



20. Servo Spring
21. Minimum Angle Stop

Figure 3-33. Servo Spring and Minimum Angle Stop

12. Press the rear shaft bearing (22) into the endcap. Install the bearing with letters facing out. Press until bearing surface is 0.08 ±0.01 in (2 ±0.25 mm) above endcap surface.



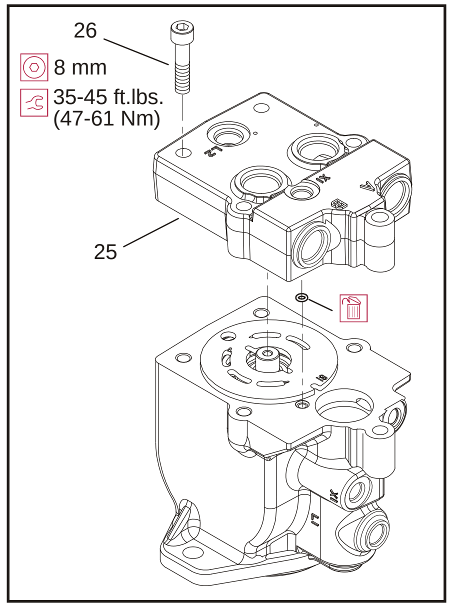
22. Rear Shaft Bearing
23. Timing Pin
24. Valve Plate

Figure 3-34. Valve Plate and Rear Bearing

13. Install timing pin (23) into its bore in the endcap. Install the pin with its groove facing toward or away from the shaft. Press the pin until the end protrudes 0.12 ±0.01 in (3 ±0.25 mm) above endcap surface.

14. Install the valve plate (24) onto the endcap. Install the valve plate with the yellow surface toward the cylinder block. Align the slot in the valve plate with the timing pin. Apply a liberal coat of assembly grease to the endcap side of the valve plate to keep it in place during installation.

15. Install the endcap (25) onto the housing with the endcap screws (26). Check to ensure the endcap will properly seat onto the housing without interference. Improper assembly of the internal components may prevent the endcap from seating properly. Ensure the O-rings seat properly when installing the endcap.



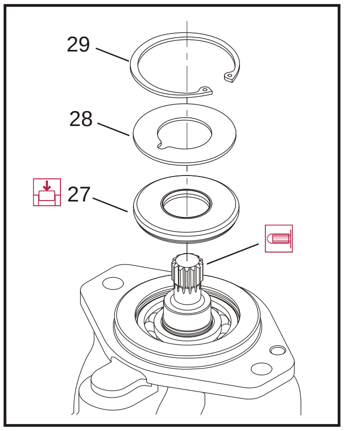
25. End Cap
26. Screw

Figure 3-35. End Cap

16. Using an 8 mm internal hex wrench, tighten the endcap screws. Tighten the screws in opposite corners slowly and evenly to compress the servo spring and properly seat the endcap. Torque endcap screws 35-45 ft.lbs. (47-61 Nm).

17. Before installing the shaft seal, ensure the shaft turns smoothly with less than 120 in.lbs. (13.5 Nm) of force. If the shaft does not turn smoothly within the specified maximum force, disassemble and check the unit.

18. Cover shaft splines with an installation sleeve. Install a new shaft seal (27) with the cup side facing the motor. Press seal into housing until it bottoms out. Press evenly to avoid binding and damaging the seal. Install seal support washer (28) and snap ring (29).



27. Shaft Seal
28. Seal Support Washer
29. Snap Ring

Figure 3-36. Shaft Seal

19. Install remaining plugs and fittings to the housing. Refer to the drawing below for wrench sizes and installation torques.

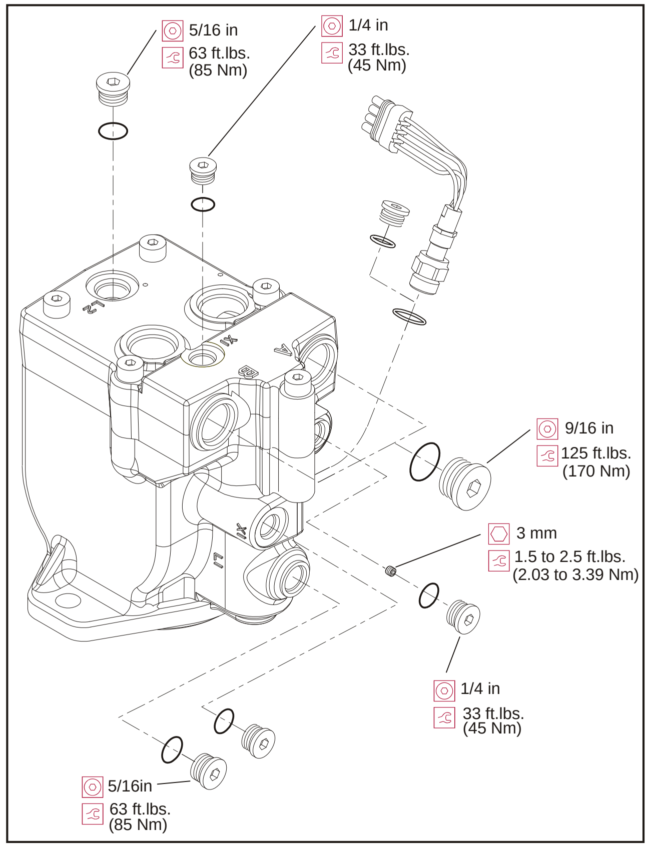
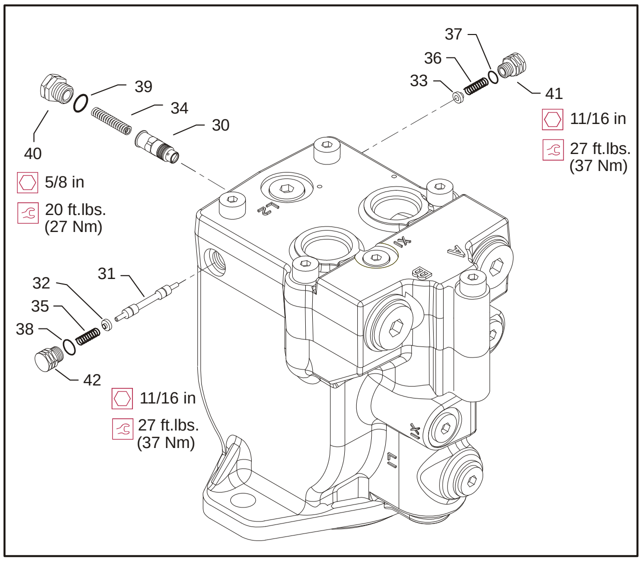


Figure 3-37. Plugs and Fittings Installation

20. Install orifice poppet (30).



30. Orifice Poppet	34. Spring	37. O-ring	40. Plug
31. Shift Spool	35. Spring	38. O-ring	41. Plug
32. Spring	36. Spring	39. O-ring	42. Plug
33. Spring			

Figure 3-38. Loop Flushing Spool

21. Install shift spool (31).
22. Install spring retaining washers onto springs (32 and 33).
23. Carefully install centering springs (34, 35, and 36).
24. Install new O-rings (37, 38, and 39).
25. Using a 5/8 in wrench torque plug (40) to 20 ft.lbs. (27 Nm).
26. Using a 11/16 in wrench, torque plugs (41 and 42) to 27 ft.lbs. (37 Nm).

Initial Start-up Procedures

Follow this procedure when starting-up a new motor or when installing a motor that has been removed.

Prior to installing the motor, inspect for damage incurred during shipping. Make certain all system components (reservoir, hoses, valves, fittings, heat exchanger, etc.) are clean prior to filling with fluid.

1. Fill the reservoir with recommended hydraulic fluid. Always filter fluid through a 10 micron filter when pouring into the reservoir. Never reuse hydraulic fluid.
2. Fill the inlet line leading from the pump to the reservoir. Check the inlet line for properly tightened fittings and be certain it is free of restrictions and air leaks.
3. Fill the pump and motor housing with clean hydraulic fluid. Pour filtered oil directly into the upper most case drain port.
4. To ensure the pump and motor stay filled with oil, install case drain lines into the upper most case drain ports.
5. Install a 0 to 500 psi (0 to 35 bar) gauge in the charge pressure gauge port of the pump to monitor system pressure during start up.
6. While watching the pressure gauge, run the engine at the lowest possible speed until system pressure builds to normal levels (minimum 160 psi [11 bar]). Once system pressure is established, increase to full operating speed. If system pressure is not maintained, shut down the prime mover, determine cause, and take corrective action.
7. Operate the hydraulic system for at least fifteen minutes under light load conditions.
8. Check and adjust control settings as necessary after installation.
9. Shut down the prime mover and remove the pressure gauge. Replace plug at the charge pressure gauge port.
10. Check the fluid level in the reservoir; add clean filtered fluid if necessary. The motor is now ready for operation.

3.5 OSCILLATING AXLE BLEEDING PROCEDURE AND LOCKOUT TEST

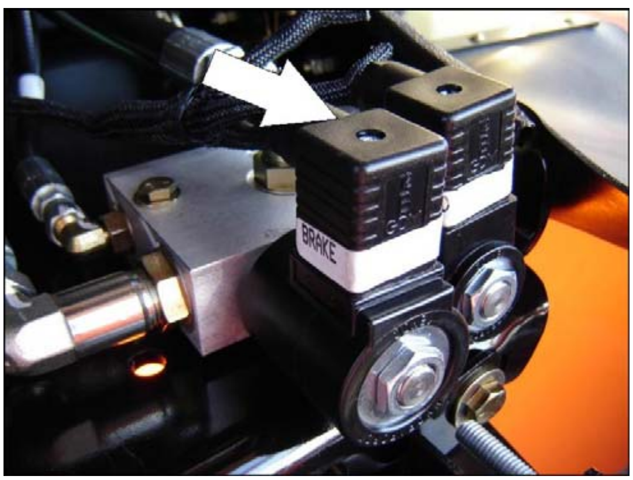
Lockout Cylinder Bleeding

NOTICE

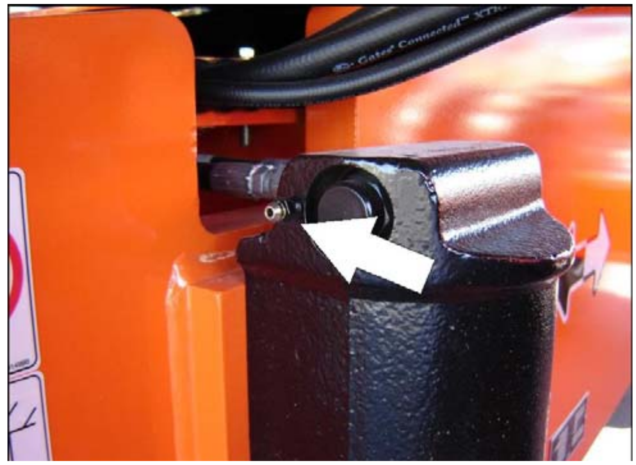
ENSURE PLATFORM IS FULLY LOWERED AND BOOM IS CENTERED OVER REAR AXLE PRIOR TO BEGINNING BLEEDING PROCEDURE.

ENSURE MACHINE IS ON A LEVEL SURFACE AND REAR WHEELS ARE BLOCKED, BRAKE WIRE IS DISCONNECTED.

1. Making sure machine is on a level surface and rear wheels are blocked, brake wire is disconnected.
2. Center boom over rear axle to make sure that the oscillation valve in the rotary coupling is activated.
3. Using a Phillips screwdriver, remove screw from connection on the brake valve and disconnect the solenoid from the valve



4. Place suitable containers under each lockout cylinder to catch any residual hydraulic fluid.
5. Open both bleeder screws (one on each lockout cylinder).



6. Start the engine, position drive control lever to forward or reverse.
7. Close bleeder screws when there is no more air in the hydraulic oil coming out of the bleeder valve.
8. Perform oscillating axle lockout test.
9. If necessary, repeat steps 1 thru 8.

Oscillating Axle Lockout Test

NOTICE

LOCKOUT SYSTEM TEST MUST BE PERFORMED QUARTERLY, ANY TIME A SYSTEM COMPONENT IS REPLACED, OR WHEN IMPROPER SYSTEM OPERATION IS SUSPECTED.

NOTE: *Ensure boom is fully retracted, lowered, and centered between drive wheels prior to beginning lockout cylinder test.*

1. Place a 6 inch (15.2 cm) high block with ascension ramp in front of left front wheel.
2. From platform control station, activate machine hydraulic system.
3. Place FUNCTION SPEED CONTROL and DRIVE SPEED/TORQUE SELECT control switches to their respective LOW positions.
4. Place DRIVE control lever to FORWARD position and carefully drive machine up ascension ramp until left front wheel is on top of block.
5. Carefully activate SWING control lever and position boom over right side of machine.
6. With boom over right side of machine, place DRIVE control lever to REVERSE and drive machine off of block and ramp.

7. Have an assistant check to see that left front wheel remains locked in position off of ground.

8. Carefully activate SWING control lever and return boom to stowed position (centered between drive wheels). When boom reaches center, stowed position, lockout cylinders should release and allow wheel to rest on ground, it may be necessary activate DRIVE to release cylinders.

9. Place the 6 inch (15.2 cm) high block with ascension ramp in front of right front wheel.

10. Place DRIVE control lever to FORWARD and carefully drive machine up ascension ramp until right front wheel is on top of block.

11. Carefully activate SWING control lever and position boom over left side of machine.

12. With boom over left side of machine, place DRIVE control lever to REVERSE and drive machine off of block and ramp.

13. Have an assistant check to see that right front wheel remains locked in position off of ground.

14. Carefully activate SWING control lever and return boom to stowed position (centered between drive wheels). When boom reaches center, stowed position, lockout cylinders should release and allow wheel to rest on ground, it may be necessary activate DRIVE to release cylinders.

15. If lockout cylinders do not function properly, have qualified personnel correct the malfunction prior to any further operation.

3.6 STEER ADJUSTMENTS

NOTE: *Spindles do not stop on cylinder stroke. Adjust steering stops as follows: Adjust item #1 to achieve 44° inside turn angles. Steer full left and adjust RH item #2 to contact axle. Steer full right and adjust LH item #2 to contact axle. (2WS/2WD)*

Spindles do not stop on cylinder stroke. Adjust steering stops as follows: Adjust item #1 to achieve 39° inside turn angles. Steer full left and adjust RH item #2 to contact axle. Steer full right and adjust LH item #2 to contact axle. (2WS/4WD)

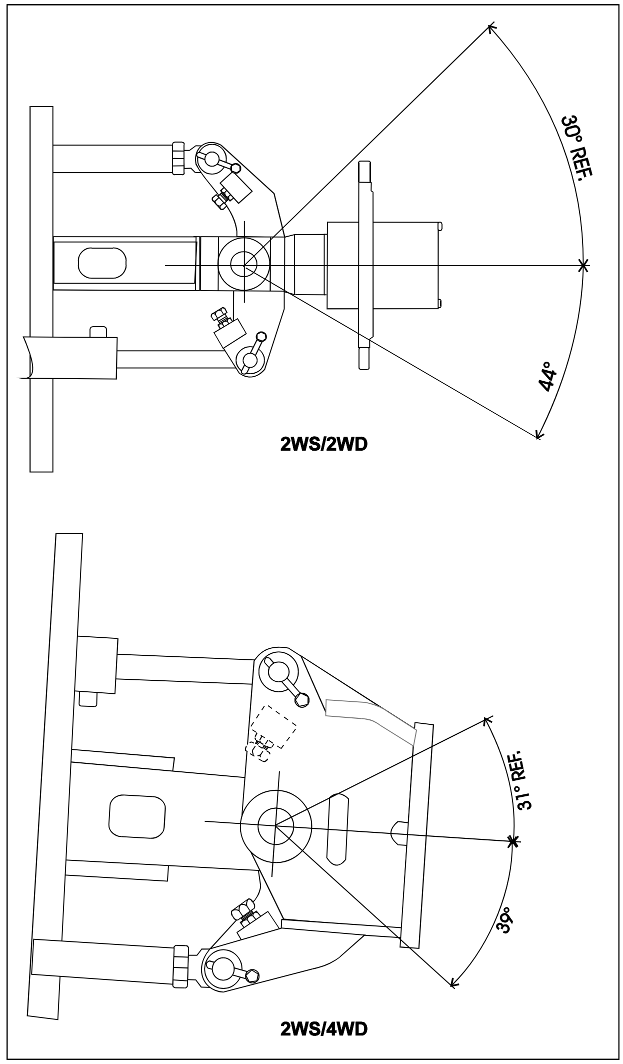


Figure 3-39. Steer Adjustments

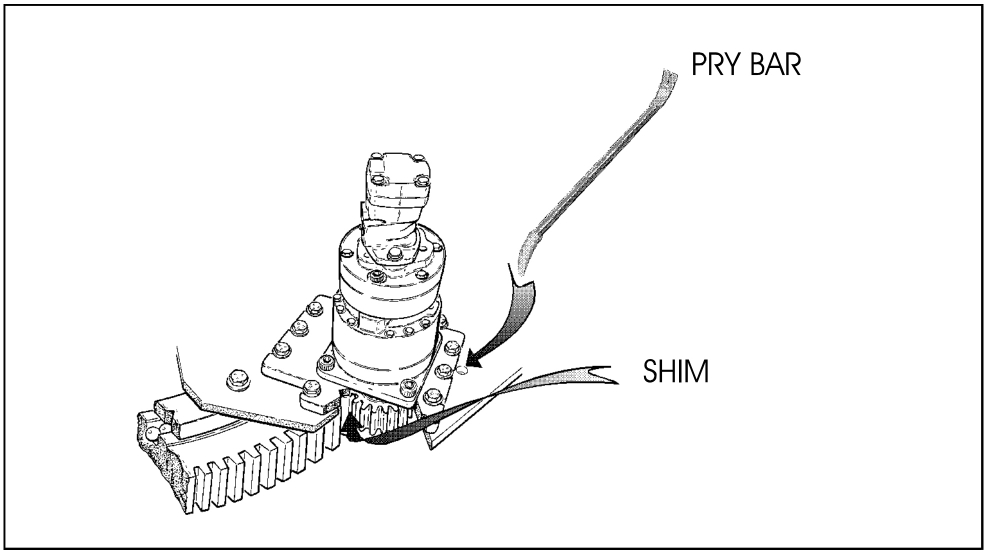


Figure 3-40. Swing Torque Hub Adjustment

3.7 SWING HUB

Adjustment Procedures

NOTE: *The swing bearing high spot is usually marked with a colored paint.*

1. Ensure swing drive is located on bearing gear max eccentric tooth (high spot).
2. With mounting free to slide, shim between pinion and bearing gear teeth to achieve 0.008 - 0.012 in. (0.20 - 0.30 mm) backlash.
3. Install a pry bar into hole in turntable base plate and pry swing hub back tight against shim and bearing.
4. Torque bolts according to the torque chart in Section 1.

Disassembly

1. Loosen all 12 cover bolts (12)&(13) and drain the oil from the unit.
2. Remove the 12 cover bolts (12)& (13) and lift off the cover (6). Remove and discard the O-ring (5) from the counterbore of the cover (6).
3. Remove the input gear (8) and thrust washer (10).
4. Lift out the carrier assembly (3) and top thrust washer (11). The thrust washer (11) may stick to the inside of the carrier (3).
5. Remove the input thrust spacer (9).
6. Lift out the internal gear (2) and thrust washer (11). The thrust washer (11) may stick to the under side of the carrier (3).
7. Remove the retaining ring (1I) from the output shaft (1A) and discard.

CAUTION

EYE PROTECTION SHOULD BE WORN DURING RETAINING RING (1I) REMOVAL.

8. Remove bearing shim (1H) from the output shaft (1A).
9. The output shaft (1A) may now be pressed out of the hub (1G).
10. THe bearing cups (1C)&(1E) will remain in hub (1G) as will bearing cone (1F). Bearing cone (1D) will remain on the same output shaft (1A). The seal (1B) will be automatically removed during this procedure.

NOTE: *If bearing replacement is necessary, the bearing cups can be removed with a slide hammer puller driven out with a punch.*

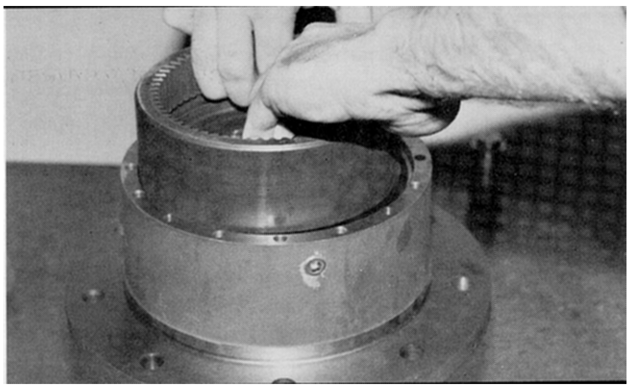
11. To remove the cluster gears (3F) from the carrier (3A), drive the anti-roll pin (3G) into the planet shaft (3E) may now be tapped out of the carrier. After planet shaft (3E) has been removed the roll pin (3G) can be driven out.
12. The cluster gear (3F) can now be removed from the carrier (3A). THe thrust washers (3B) will be removed with the cluster gear (3F).
13. The needle rollers (3C) and spacer (3D) are now removed from the cluster gear (3F).

NOTICE

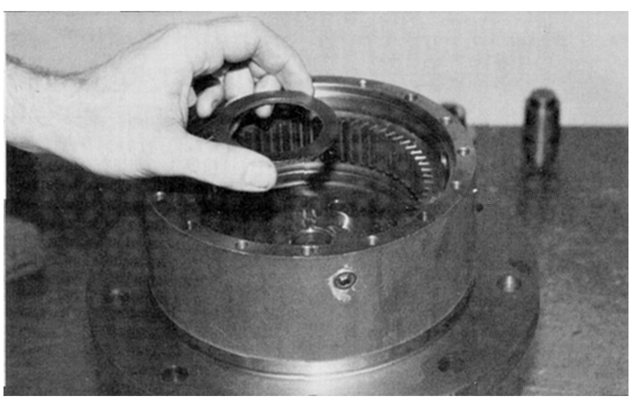
WHEN REBUILDING OR REPAIRING THE UNIT, THE RETAINING RING (1I), O-RINGS (5) AND SEAL (1B) SHOULD ALWAYS BE REPLACED.

Main Assembly Procedure

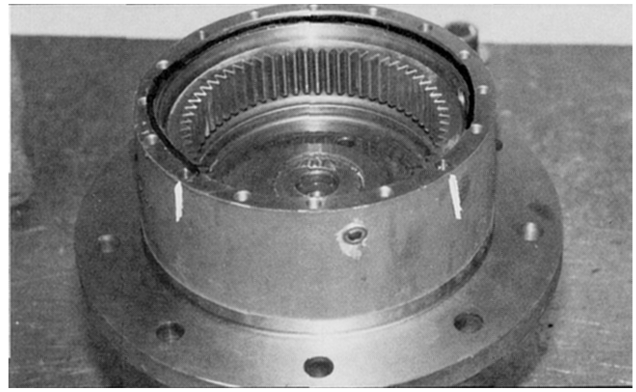
1. With the hub shaft sub-assembly resting on the shaft (1A) install internal gear (2). The spline of the internal gear (2) bore will mesh the spline of the output shaft (1A).



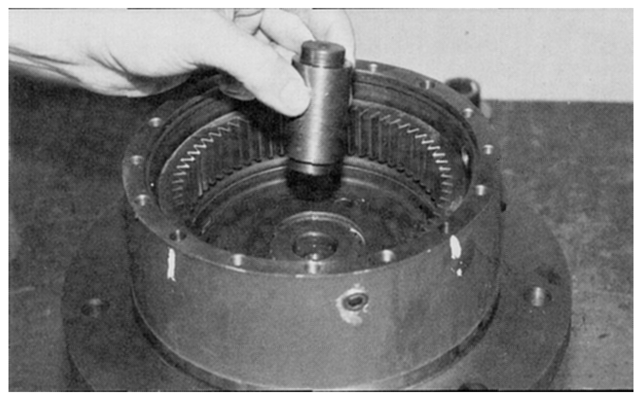
2. Thrust washer (11) is installed on the face of the output shaft (1A). Sufficient grease or petroleum jelly should be used to hold thrust washer in place.



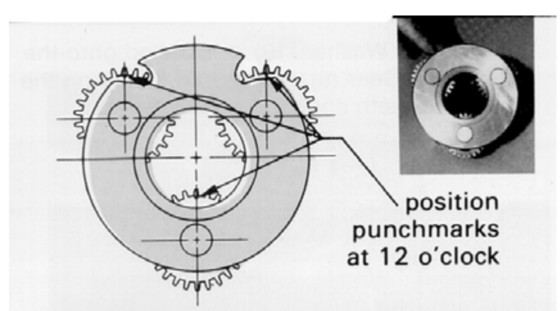
3. Place O-ring (5) into hub counterbore. Use petroleum jelly to hold O-ring in place. Also at this time locate and mark the 4 counter beamed holes in the face of the hub (1G). This is for identification later in the assembly.



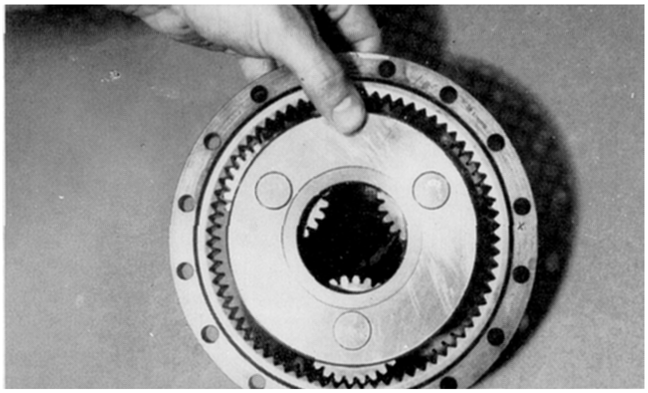
4. Thrust spacer (9) is installed into the bore of the output shaft (1A). This should be a slip fit and thrust spaces should rotate in this location.



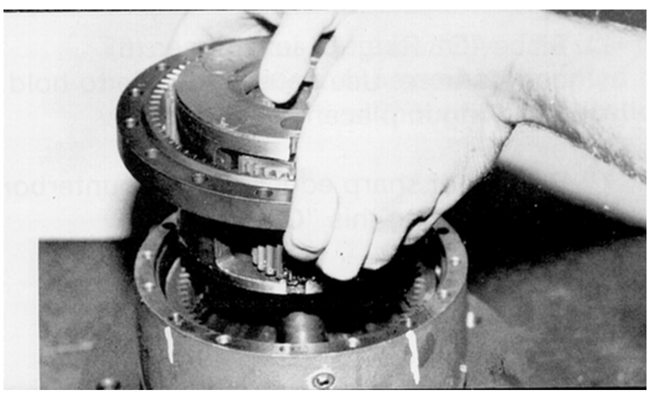
5. Place carrier assembly (3) on a flat surface with the large gears (3F) up and positioned as shown. Find the punch marked tooth on each large gear (3F) and locate at 12 0'clock (straight-up) from each planet pin. Marked tooth will be located just under the carrier (3A) on upper two gears (3F).



6. With shoulder side of ring gear (4) facing down, place ring gear over (into mesh with) large gears. Be sure that punch marks remain in correct location during ring gear installation. The side of the ring gear with an x stamped on it should be up.

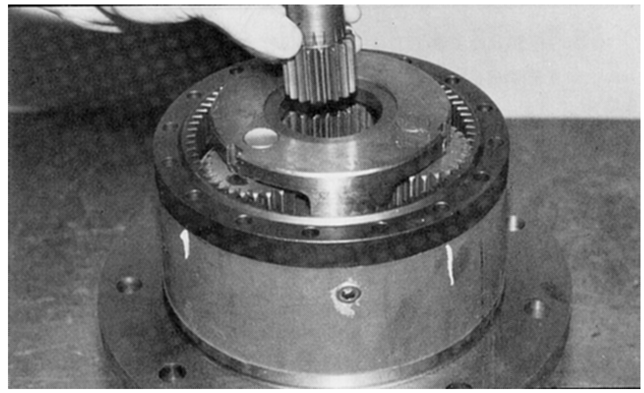


7. While holding ring gear (4) and cluster gears (3F) in mesh, place small side of cluster gears (3F) into mesh with the internal gear (2) and input gear (13). On the ring gear locate the hole marked “x” over one of the marked counterbore holes (step 3) in hub (1G).

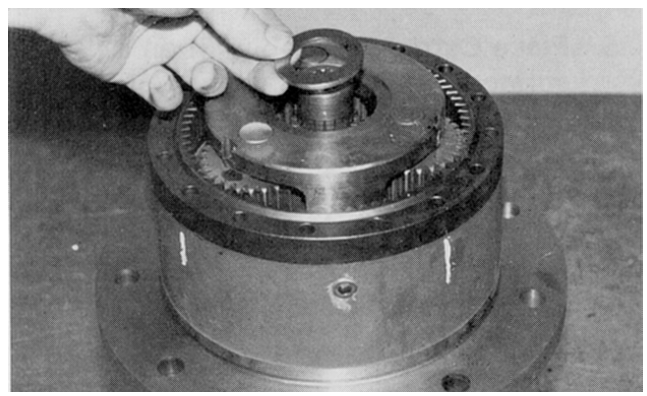


NOTE: *If gears do not mesh easily or carrier assembly does not rotate freely, then remove the carrier and ring gear and check the cluster gear timing.*

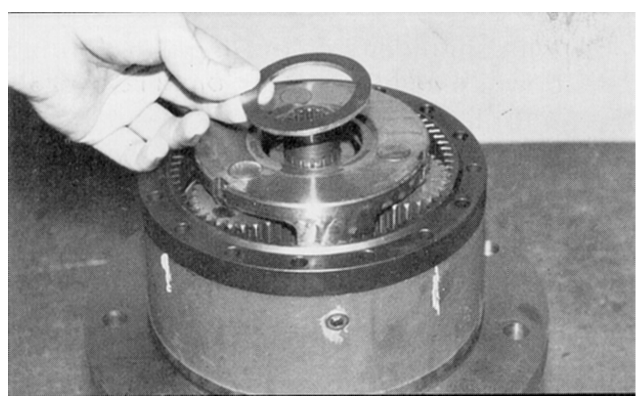
8. Input gear (8) is installed, meshing with teeth of the large diameter cluster gear (3F). The counterbore on the input gear (8) locates on the shoulder of the thrust spacer (9). This is to be a slip fit and operate freely.



9. Thrust washer (10) is installed onto the input gear (8) and should locate on the gear teeth shoulder.



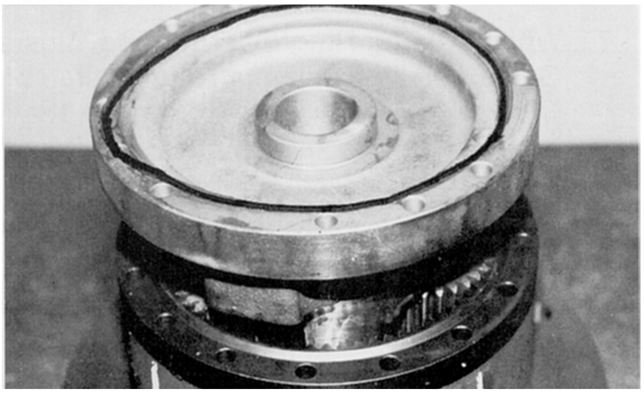
10. Thrust washer (11) is installed into the counterbore of the carrier (3).



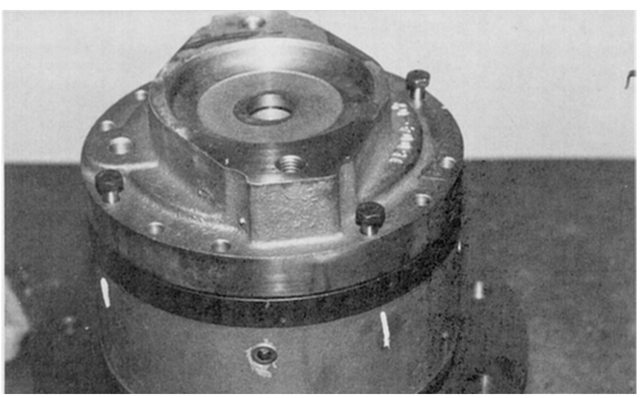
11. Place O-ring (5) into cover (6) counterbore. Use petroleum jelly to hold O-ring in place.

⚠ CAUTION

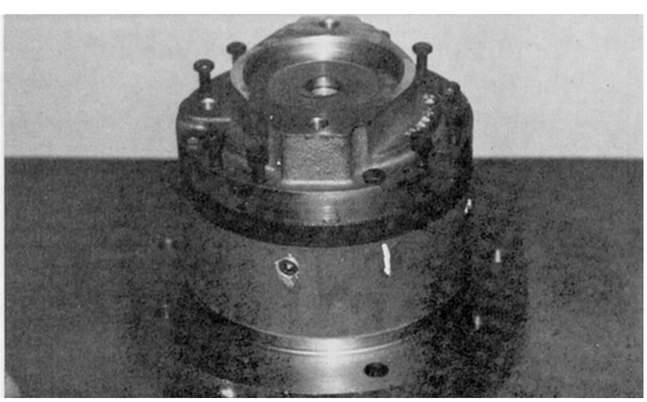
BEWARE OF SHARP EDGES OF THE COUNTERBORE WHILE SEATING THIS O-RING.



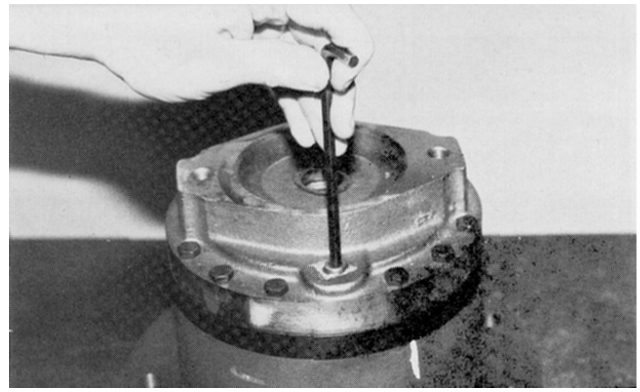
12. THe cover (6) is now installed on this assembly. Taking care to correctly align pipe plug hole (20) with those in the hub (1J), usually 90° to one another. Locate the 4 counterbore holes in hub (1G) (marked in step 3) and install 4 shoulder bolts (13). A slight tap with a hammer may be necessary to align shoulder bolt with hub (1G) counterbore.



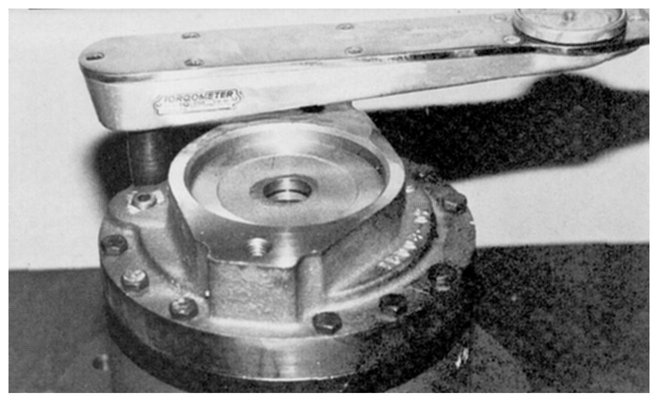
13. Install regular grade 8 bolts (12) into remaining holes.



14. Pipe plugs (20) are to be installed into cover (6) using a lubricant of some sort.



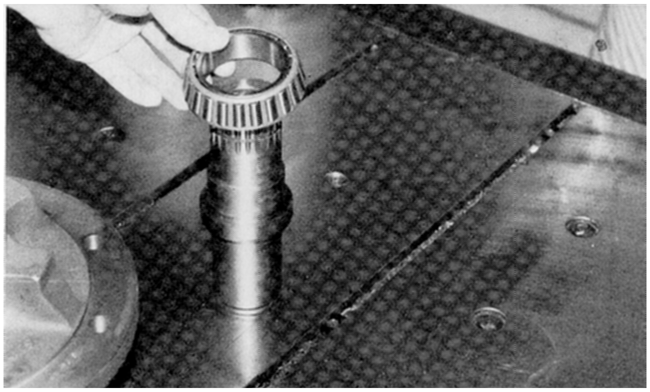
15. Torque shoulder bolts (13) to 23-27 ft./lbs. and regular grade 8 bolts (12) to 23-27 ft./lbs,



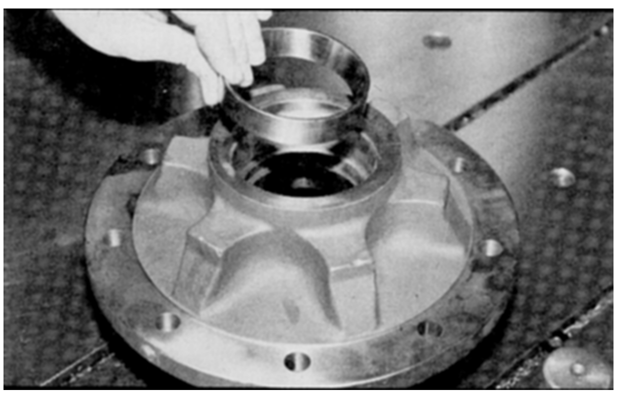
This completes the assembly. THe unit must be filled one-half full of EP 90 lubricant before operation if the unit is mounted horizontally, and completely filled if mounted vertically. In vertical mounting application case oil circulation is recommended.

Hub Shaft Sub-Assembly

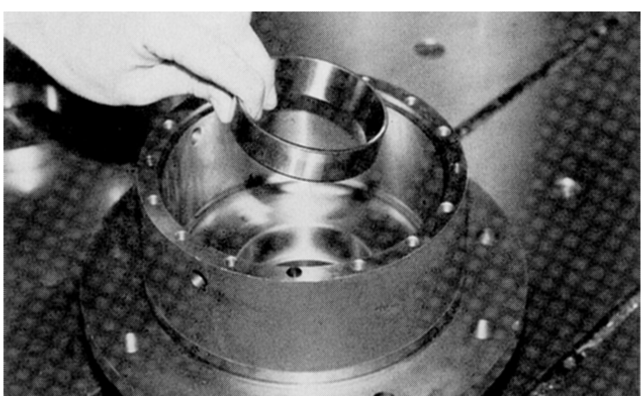
1. Press bearing cone (1D) onto shaft (1A).



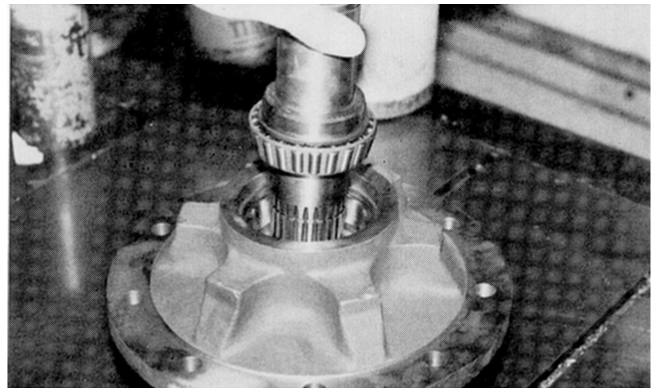
2. Press bearing cup (1C) into hub (1G) taking care to insure cup start square with the bore of the hub.



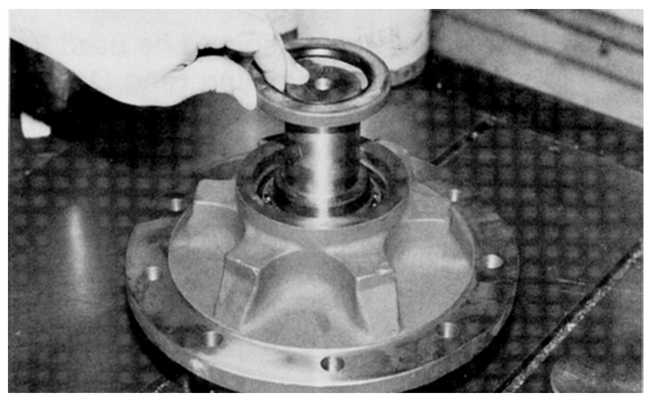
3. Invert hub (1G) and press bearing cup (1E) into inter counterbore of hub (1G).



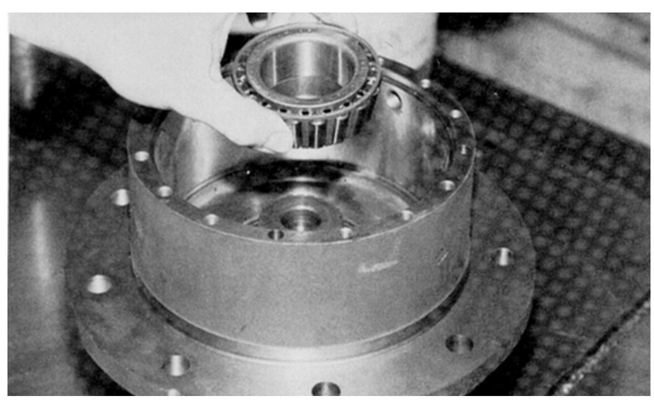
4. Returning the hub (1G) to locate on the large diameter end, the output shaft (1A) is carefully installed into the hub (1G).



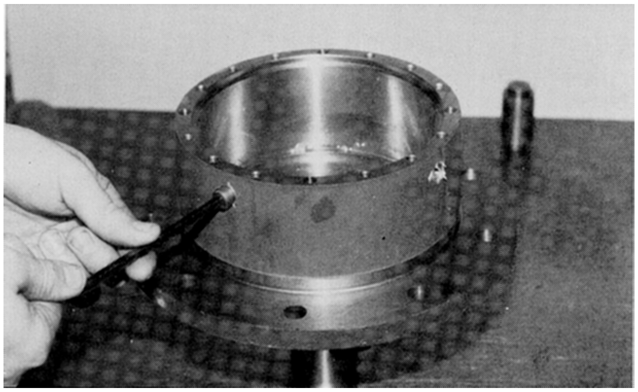
5. The shaft seal (1B) is installed over the output shaft (1A) and into the counterbore of the hub (1G). Care should be taken to insure the seal (1B) is being correctly installed (smooth face up and located just flush with the counterbore face).



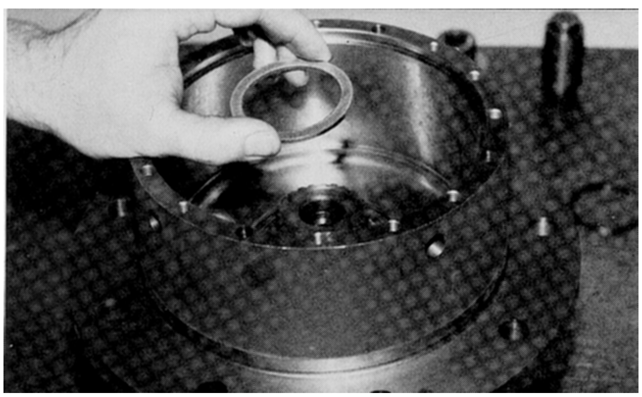
6. The bearing cone (1F) is an interference fit and has to be pressed or tapped on.



7. Pipe plugs (1J & 1K) should be checked and/ or installed at this time in the assembly.



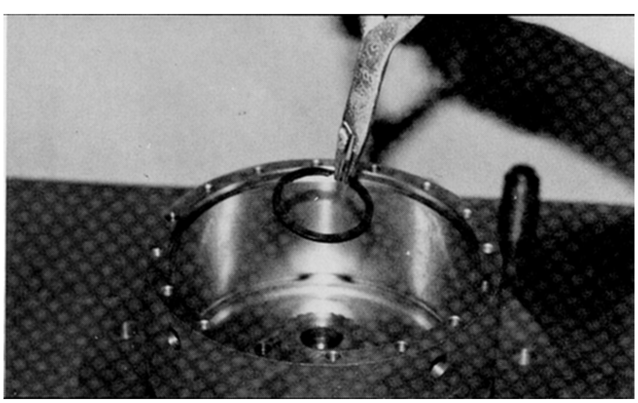
8. Bearing spacer (1H) is installed around the output shaft (1A) and locates on bearing cone (1F).



9. Retaining ring (1I) installed into groove provided in the output shaft (1A). This retaining ring (1I) should never be reused in a repair or rebuild.

CAUTION

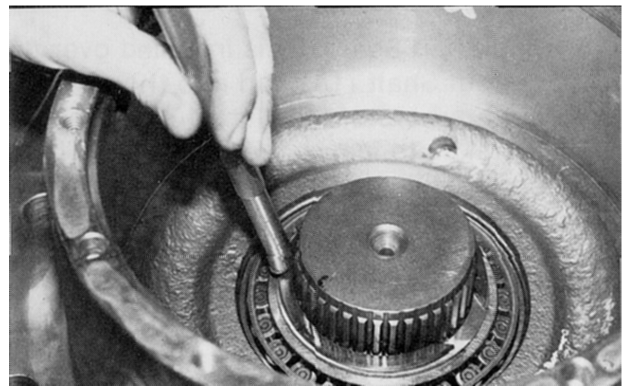
EYE PROTECTION SHOULD BE WORN DURING THIS PROCEDURE.



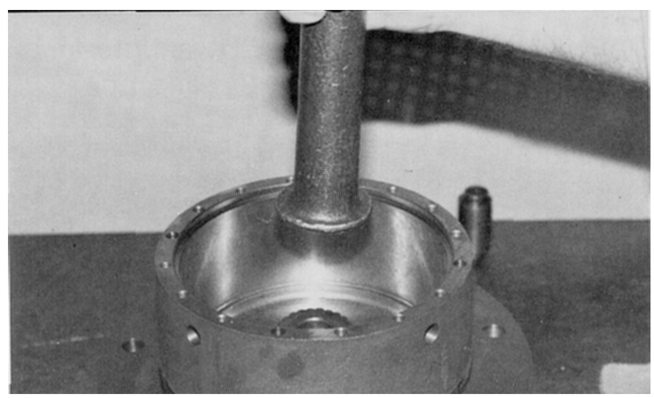
10. A soft metal punch should be used to insure that this retaining ring (1I) is completely seated in the groove of the output shaft (1A).

CAUTION

EYE PROTECTION SHOULD BE WORN DURING THIS PROCEDURE.



11. Upon completion of step 10, rap the internal end of the output shaft (1A) twice with a piece of soft metal rod. This will release the preload which was on the bearings.

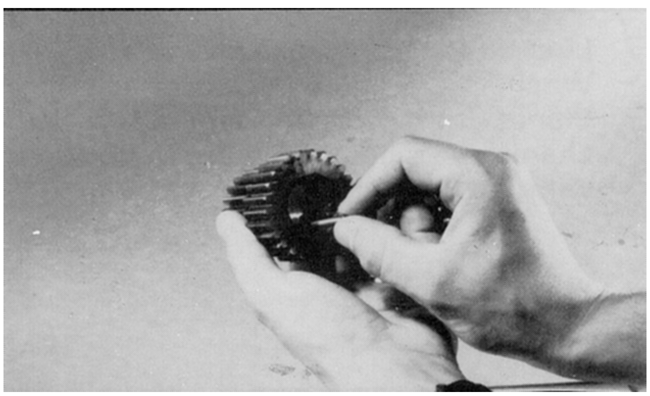


This completes the hub shaft sub-assembly —items (1A) through (1J). If this assembly is not going to be used right away, it should be oiled and covered to help prevent rusting,

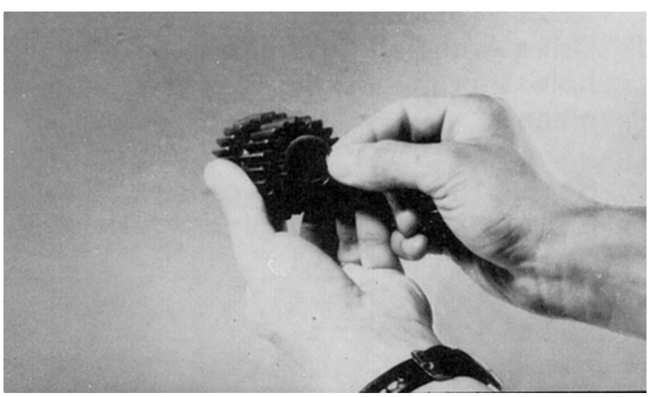
Carrier Sub-Assembly

1. Apply a coat of grease or petroleum jelly to cluster gear bore.

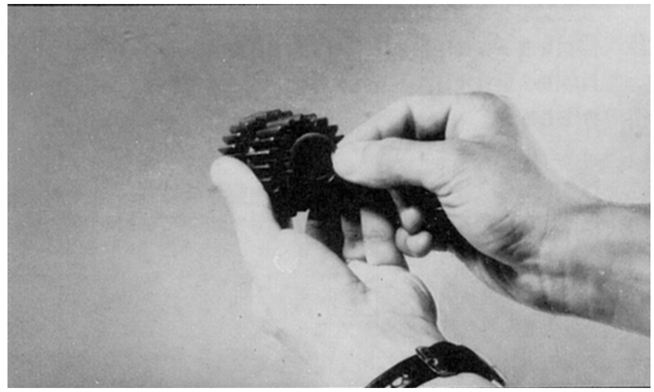
2. Place sixteen needle rollers into cluster gear bore.



3. Place spacer washer into opposite side of cluster gear and against needle rollers.

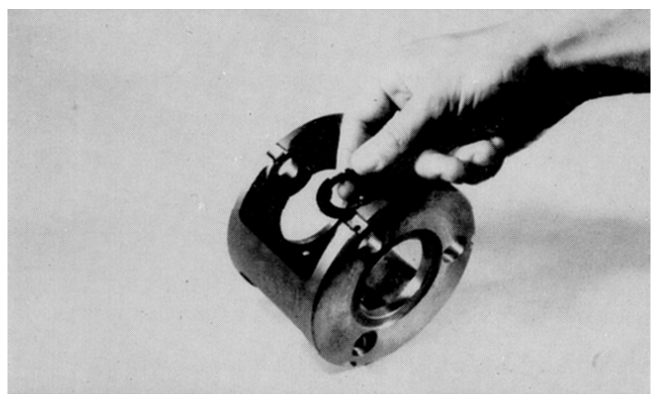


4. Place second set of sixteen needle rollers into cluster gear.

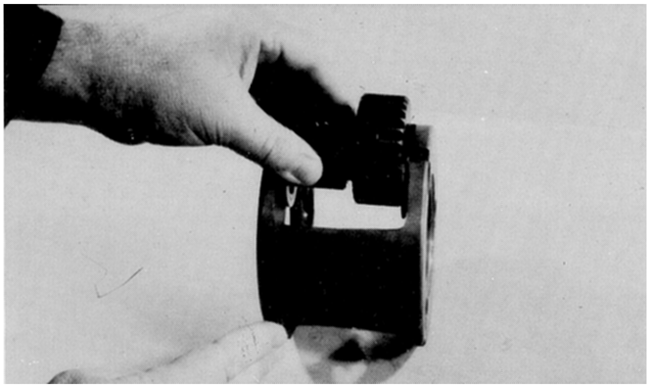


5. Apply grease or petroleum jelly to the tang side of two thrust washers. Place thrust washers against bosses in carrier with washer tang fitting into slot in carrier outside diameter.

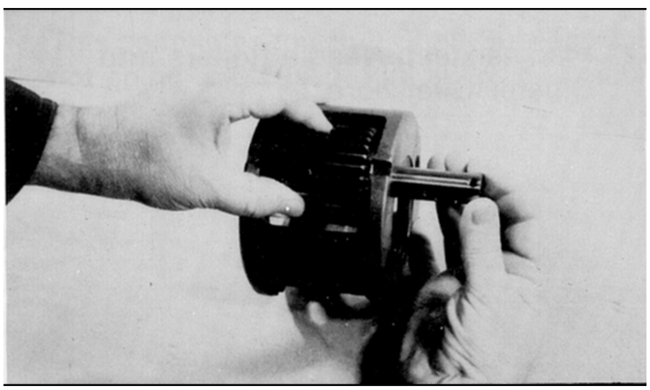
NOTE: *Some old style carriers will not have slots and tangs should be located inside boss relief.*



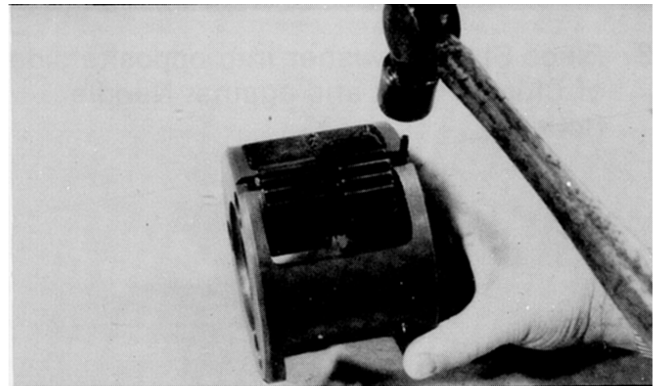
6. While keeping thrust washers in place, slide cluster gear into carrier with the larger gear on the side with the small pin hole.

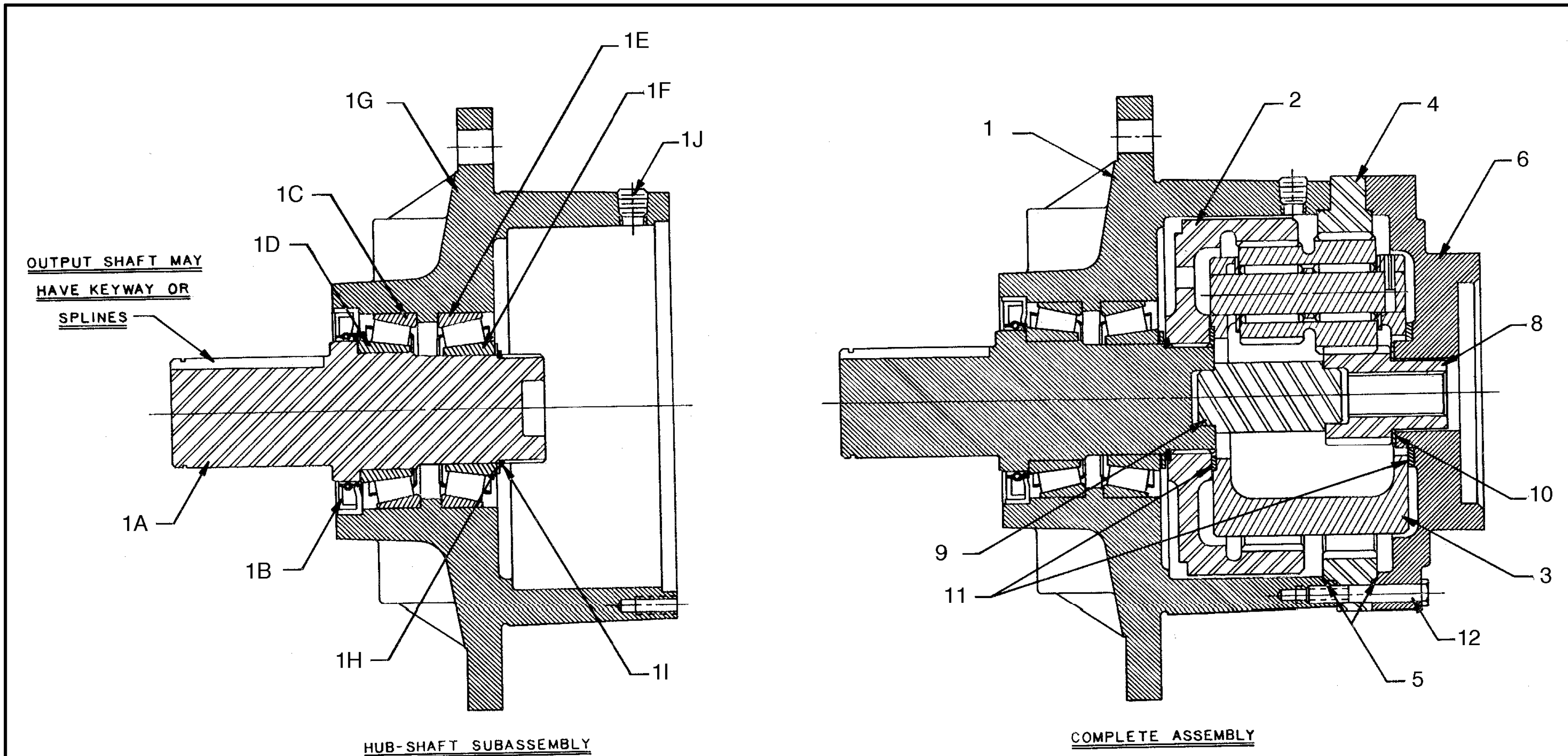


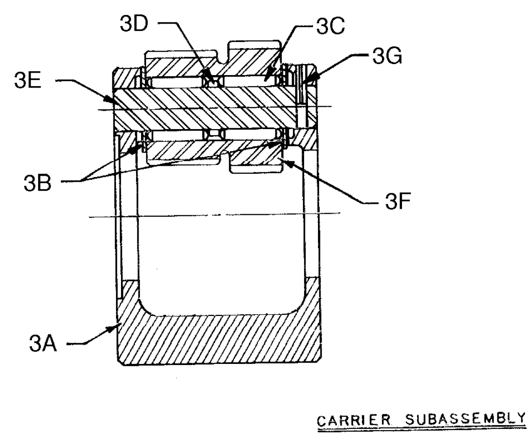
7. Line up cluster gear and thrust washer with hole in carrier and slide planet shaft through. Line up chamfered side of hole in planet shaft with pin hole in carrier.

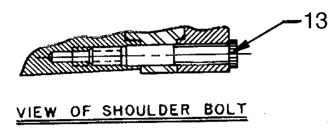


8. Drive anti-roll pin flush into carrier hole, thereby locking planet shaft into place.
   Repeat these steps for remaining two cluster gears to complete carrier assembly.









1.
2. Internal Gear
3. Carrier Assembly
4. Ring Gear
5. O-ring
6. Cover
7. N/A
8. Input Gear
9. Thrust Spacer
10. Thrust Washer
11. Thrust Washer
12. Grade 8 Bolt
13. Shoulder Bolt

1A. Shaft
1B. Shaft Seal
1C. Bearing Cone
1D. Bearing Cone
1E. Bearing Cup
1F. Bearing Cone
1G. Hub
1H. Bearing Spacer
1I. Retaining Ring
1j. Pipe Plug

3A. Carrier
3B. Thrust Washer
3C. Needle Rollers
3D. Spacer
3E. Planet Shaft
3F. Large Gears
3G. Anti-Roll Pin

Figure 3-41. Swing Drive Hub (Fairfield)

3.8 SWING BEARING

Turntable Bearing Mounting Bolt Condition Check

***NOTE:** This check is designed to replace the existing bearing bolt torque checks on JLG Lifts in service. This check must be performed after the first 50 hours of machine operation and every 600 hours of machine operation thereafter. If during this check any bolts are found to be missing or loose, replace missing or loose bolts with new bolts and torque to the value specified in the torque chart, after lubricating the bolt threads with loctite #271. After replacing and retorquing bolt or bolts recheck all existing bolts for looseness.*

1. Check the frame to bearing. Attach bolts as follows:
   a. Elevate the fully retracted boom to 70 degrees (full elevation).
   b. At the positions indicated on Figure 3-42. try and insert the 0.0015" feeler gauge between the bolt head and hardened washer at the arrow indicated position.
   c. Assure that the 0.0015" feeler gauge will not penetrate under the bolt head to the bolt shank.
   d. Swing the turntable 90 degrees, and check some selected bolts at the new position.
   e. Continue rotating the turntable at 90 degrees intervals until a sampling of bolts have been checked in all quadrants.
2. Check the turntable to bearing. Attach bolts as follows:
   a. Elevate the fully retracted boom to 70 degrees (full elevation).
   b. At the positions indicated on Figure 3-42. try and insert the 0.0015" feeler gauge between the bolt head and hardened washer at the arrow indicated position.
   c. Lower the boom to horizontal and fully extend the boom.
   d. At the position indicated on Figure 3-42. try and insert the 0.0015" feeler gauge between the bolt head and hardened washer at the arrow indicated position.

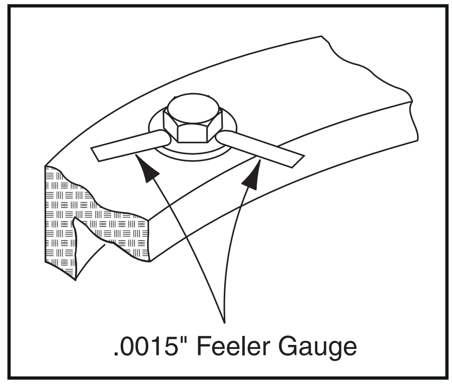


Figure 3-42. Swing Bearing Bolt Feeler Gauge Check

Wear Tolerance

1. From the underside of the machine, at rear center, with the boom fully elevated and fully retracted, as shown in Figure 3-43., Swing Bearing Tolerance Boom Placement - Swing Bearing Tolerance Boom Placement) A, using a magnetic base dial indicator, measure and record the distance between the swing bearing and turntable. (Figure 3-44., Swing Bearing Tolerance Measuring Point)
2. At the same point, with the boom at horizontal and fully extended, and the tower boom fully elevated as shown in - Swing Bearing Tolerance Boom Placement) B, using a magnetic base dial indicator, measure and record the distance between the swing bearing and turntable. (Figure 3-44., Swing Bearing Tolerance Measuring Point)
3. If a difference greater than 0.079 in. (2.00 mm) is determined, the swing bearing should be replaced.
4. If a difference less than 0.079 in. (2.00 mm) is determined, and any of the following conditions exist, the bearing should be removed, disassembled, and inspected for the following:
   a. Metal particles in the grease.
   b. Increased drive power required.
   c. Noise.
   d. Rough rotation.

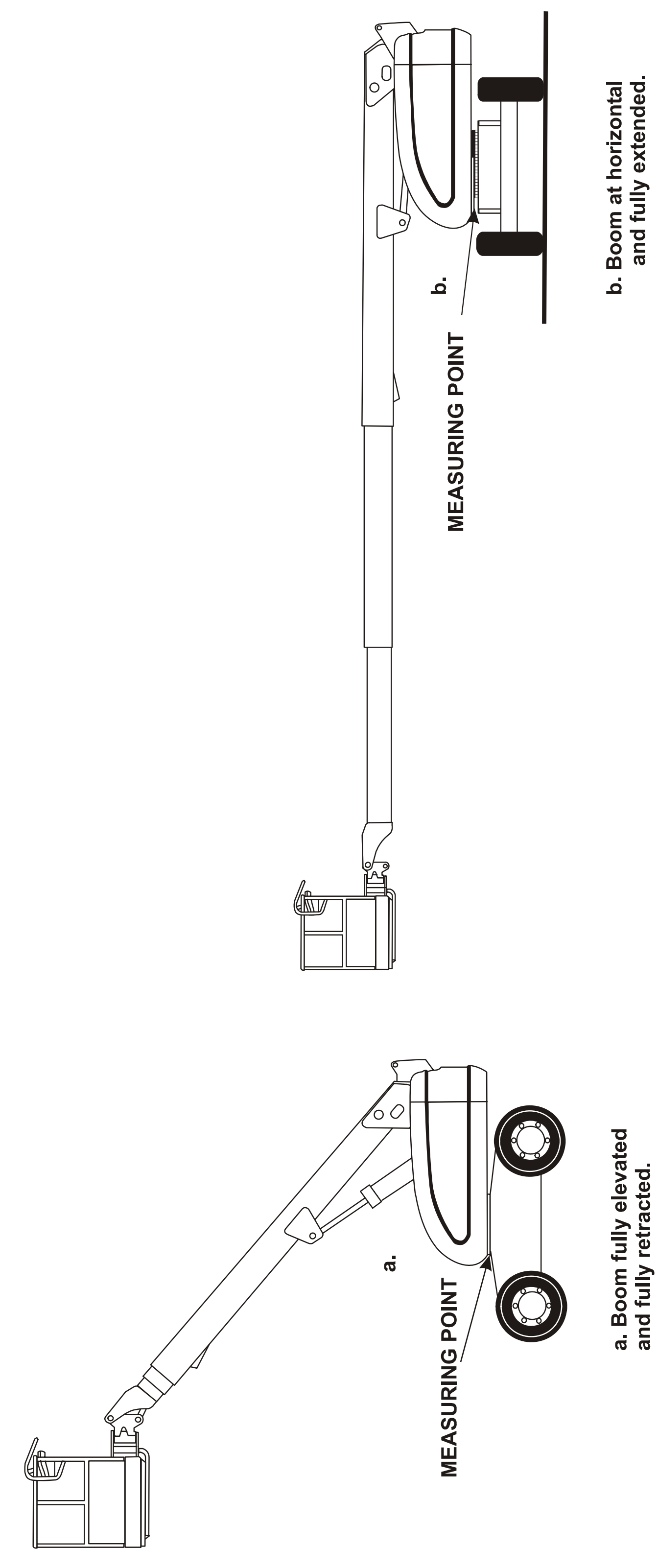


Figure 3-43. Swing Bearing Tolerance Boom Placement

5. If bearing inspection shows no defects, reassemble and return to service.

NOTICE

THE SWING BEARING IS ONE OF THE MOST CRITICAL POINTS ON AN AERIAL LIFT. IT IS HERE THAT THE STRESSES OF LIFTING ARE CONCENTRATED, AT THE CENTER OF ROTATION. BECAUSE OF THIS, PROPER MAINTENANCE OF THE SWING BEARING BOLTS IS A MUST FOR SAFE OPERATION.

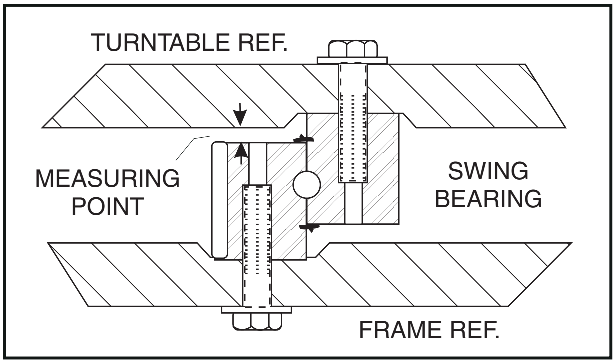


Figure 3-44. Swing Bearing Tolerance Measuring Point

Swing Bearing Replacement

1. Removal.

   a. From Ground Control station, operate the boom adequately to provide access to frame opening or, if equipped, to rotary coupling.

WARNING

NEVER WORK BENEATH THE BOOM WITHOUT FIRST ENGAGING BOOM SAFETY PROP OR PROVIDING ADEQUATE OVERHEAD SLING SUPPORT AND/OR BLOCKING.

   b. Attach an adequate support sling to the boom and draw all slack from sling. Prop or block the boom if feasible.

   c. From inside turntable, remove mounting hardware which attach rotary coupling retaining yoke brackets to turntable.

NOTICE

HYDRAULIC LINES AND PORTS SHOULD BE CAPPED IMMEDIATELY AFTER DISCONNECTING LINES TO AVOID THE ENTRY OF CONTAMINANTS INTO THE SYSTEM.

   d. Tag and disconnect the hydraulic lines from the fittings on the top of the rotary coupling. Use a suitable container to retain any residual hydraulic fluid. Immediately cap lines and ports.

   e. Attach suitable overhead lifting equipment to the base of the turntable weldment.

   f. Use a suitable tool to scribe a line on the inner race of the swing bearing and on the underside of the turntable. This will aid in aligning the bearing upon installation. Remove the bolts and washers which attach the turntable to the bearing inner race. Discard the bolts.

   g. Use the lifting equipment to carefully lift the complete turntable assembly from the bearing. Ensure that no damage occurs to the turntable, bearing or frame-mounted components.

   h. Carefully place the turntable on a suitably supported trestle.

   i. Use a suitable tool to scribe a line on the outer race of the swing bearing and the frame. This line will aid in aligning the bearing upon installation. Remove the bolts and washers which attach the outer race of the bearing to the frame. Discard the bolts. Use suitable lifting equipment to remove the bearing from the frame, then move the bearing to a clean, suitably supported work area.

2. Installation.

   a. Using suitable lifting equipment, carefully lower the swing bearing into position on the frame. Ensure the scribed line of the outer race of the bearing aligns with the scribed line on the frame. If a new swing bearing is used, ensure that the filler plug fitting is at 90 degrees from the fore and aft center line of the frame.

CAUTION

JLG INDUSTRIES RECOMMENDS THAT ALL REMOVED BEARING BOLTS BE DISCARDED AND REPLACED WITH NEW BOLTS. SINCE THE SWING BEARING IS THE ONLY STRUCTURAL LINK BETWEEN THE FRAME AND TURNTABLE, IT IS IMPERATIVE THAT SUCH REPLACEMENT HARDWARE MEETS JLG SPECIFICATIONS. USE OF GENUINE JLG HARDWARE IS HIGHLY RECOMMENDED.

   b. Apply a light coating of Loctite #271 to the new bearing bolts, and loosely install the bolts and washers through the frame and outer race of bearing.

CAUTION

IF COMPRESSED AIR OR ELECTRICALLY OPERATED IMPACT WRENCH IS USED FOR TIGHTENING THE BEARING ATTACHMENT BOLTS, THE TORQUE SETTING ACCURACY OF THE TOOL SHOULD BE CHECKED PRIOR TO USE.

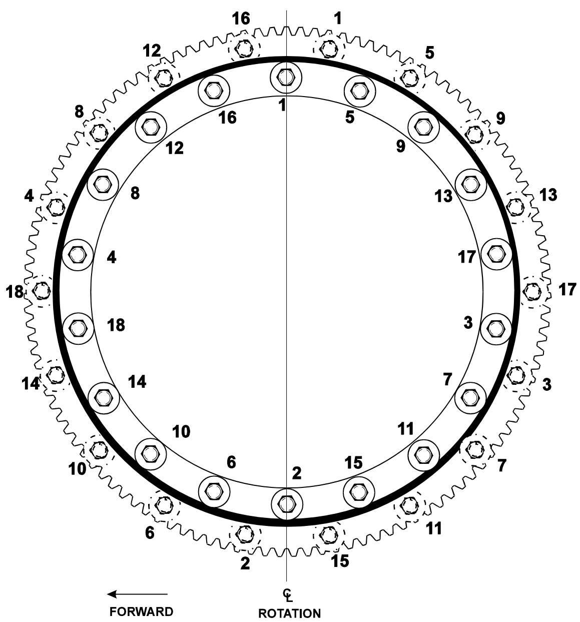


Figure 3-45. Swing Bearing Torque Sequence

c. Refer to the Torque Sequence diagram as shown in Figure 3-45., Swing Bearing Torque Sequence. Clean any residue off the new bearing bolts, then apply a light coating of Loctite #271 and install the bolts and washers through the frame and outer race of the bearing. Tighten the bolts to a torque of190 ft. lbs. (258 Nm) w/ Loctite.

d. Remove the lifting equipment from the bearing.

e. Using suitable lifting equipment, carefully position the turntable assembly above the machine frame.

f. Carefully lower the turntable onto the swing bearing, ensuring that the scribed line of the inner race of the bearing aligns with scribed line on the turntable. If a new swing bearing is used, ensure that the filler plug fitting is at 90 degrees from the fore and aft center line of the turntable.

g. Clean any residue off the new bearing bolts, then apply a light coating of Loctite #271 and install the bolts and washers through the turntable and inner race of the bearing.

h. Following the Torque Sequence diagram shown in Figure 2-49. Swing Bearing Torquing Sequence, tighten the bolts to a torque of 190 ft. lbs. (258 Nm) w/Loctite.

i. Remove the lifting equipment.

j. Install the rotary coupling retaining yoke brackets, apply a light coating of Loctite #242 to the attaching bolts and secure the yoke to the turntable with the mounting hardware.

k. Connect the hydraulic lines to the rotary coupling as tagged prior to removal.

l. At ground control station, use boom lift control to lower boom to stowed position.

m. Using all applicable safety precautions, activate the hydraulic system and check the swing system for proper and safe operation.

Swing Bearing Torque Values

1. Outer Race - 190 ft. lbs. (258 Nm) w/Loctite.
2. Inner Race - 190 ft. lbs. (258 Nm) w/Loctite.
3. See Swing Bearing Torquing Sequence.

⚠ WARNING

CHECK THE INNER AND OUTER SWING BEARING BOLTS FOR MISSING OR LOOSENESS AFTER FIRST 50 HOURS OF OPERATION, AND EVERY 600 HOURS THEREAFTER.

3.9 SWING BRAKE - MICO

Disassembly

1. With shaft protrusion downward, remove end cover (13) by removing capscrews (12).

⚠ CAUTION

END COVER IS UNDER SPRING TENSION OF APPROXIMATELY 2000 POUNDS (681 KG). THE FOUR CAPSCREWS SHOULD BE LOOSENED EVENLY TO RELIEVE THIS FORCE. IF A HYDRAULIC PRESS IS AVAILABLE (3000 LBS (1362 KG) MAXIMUM), THE COVER CAN BE HELD IN POSITION WHILE REMOVING THE CAPSCREWS AND LOCKWASHERS.

2. Remove case seal (11) from housing (7) then remove bleeder screw (14) from end cover (52).
3. Remove piston (22) from end cover (13).
4. Remove o-ring (17), back-up ring (16), o-ring (19) and back-up ring (18) from piston (22).
5. Remove separators (10) from housing (52).
6. Remove stack assembly, consisting of discs (21), return plate (8) and friction discs (20) from housing (52).
7. Remove dowel pins (15), springs (5 & 6) from housing (52).
8. Remove retaining ring (3) from housing (52).
9. Remove shaft by pressing or using a soft mallet on male end of shaft (51).
10. Remove retaining ring (54) bearing (2) from shaft (51).
11. Press rotary seal (1) from housing (51).

Inspection

1. Clean all parts thoroughly.
2. Closely inspect all parts for excessive wear, cracks and chips. Replace parts as necessary.
3. Discard seals and o-rings.
4. Closely inspect bearings and bearing contact surfaces. Replace as necessary.

NOTE: *Bearings may be reused if, after thorough inspection, they are found to be in good condition.*

Assembly

NOTE: *Lubricate all seals and o-rings with clean hydraulic oil prior to assembly.*

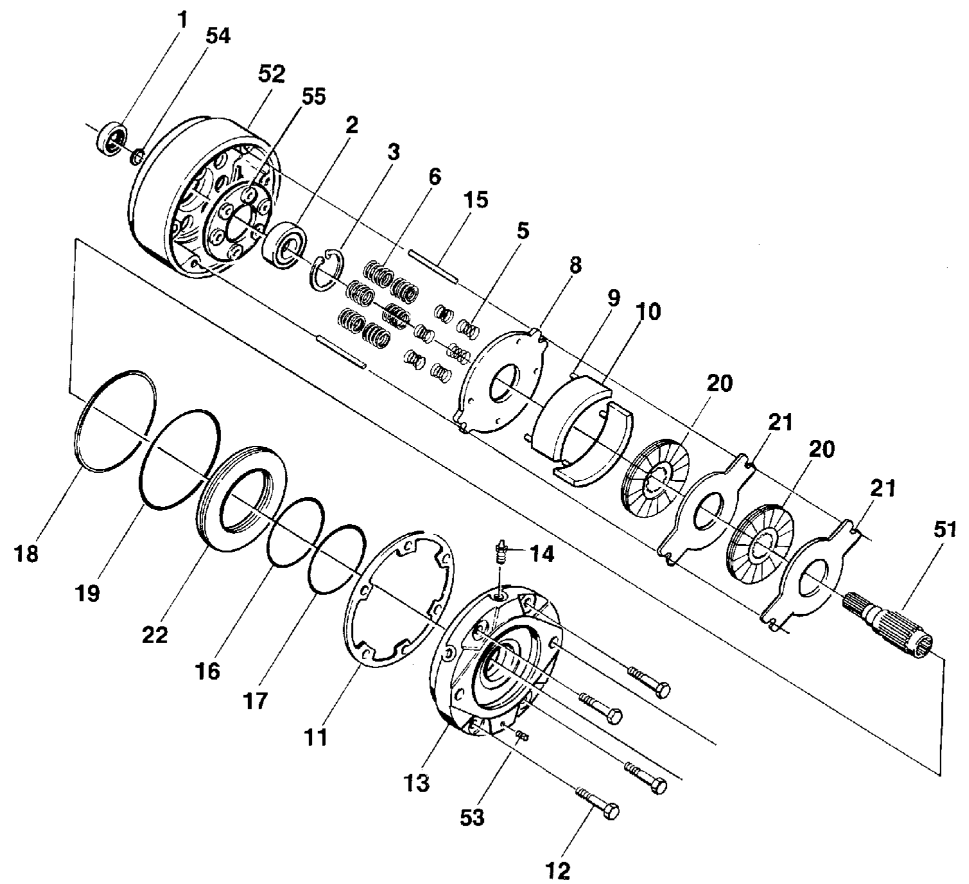
1. Press new rotary seal (1) into housing (52). Note the direction of seal.
2. Install new bearing (2) on shaft (51).
3. Install shaft assembly and retaining ring (3) into housing (52).
4. Install dowel pins (15), spring retainer (55), and springs (5 & 6) into housing (52).

NOTE: *Be sure to use the same number of springs and spring pattern as recorded during disassembly.*

5. Position new large diameter return plate (8) in housing with tabs guided by dowel pins (15) until disc rests on springs (5 & 6).

NOTE: *Discs (21 & 8) and friction discs (20) should remain dry during installation. Oil will contaminate disc surfaces.*

6. Place new disc (20) on shaft (51) until it contacts return plate (8).
7. Add additional discs (21) as required to complete assembly.
8. Insert separators (10) in holes of return plate (8).
9. Install new o-ring (17), new back-up ring (16), new o-ring (19) and new back-up ring (18) on piston (22). Insert piston (22) into end cover (13), being careful not to shear o-rings or back-up rings.
10. Install new case seal (11) in housing (52), then install bleeder screw (14) in end cover.
11. Position end cover (13) on housing (52), aligning dowel pins (15) with holes in end cover.
12. Insert capscrews (12) and tighten evenly to draw end cover (13) to housing (52). Torque capscrews to 55 ft. lbs. (75 Nm).



1. Oil Seal	10. Separator	19. O-Ring
2. Bearing	11. Case Seal	20. Rotor
3. Retaining Ring	12. Bolt	21. Stator
51. Shaft	13. Cover	22. Piston
5. Spring	14. Bleeder Screw	53. Pipe Plug
6. Spring	15. Dowel Pin	54. Retaining Ring
52. Housing	16. Backup Ring	55. Spring Guide
8. Return Plate	17. O-Ring	
9. Pin	18. Back-up Ring	

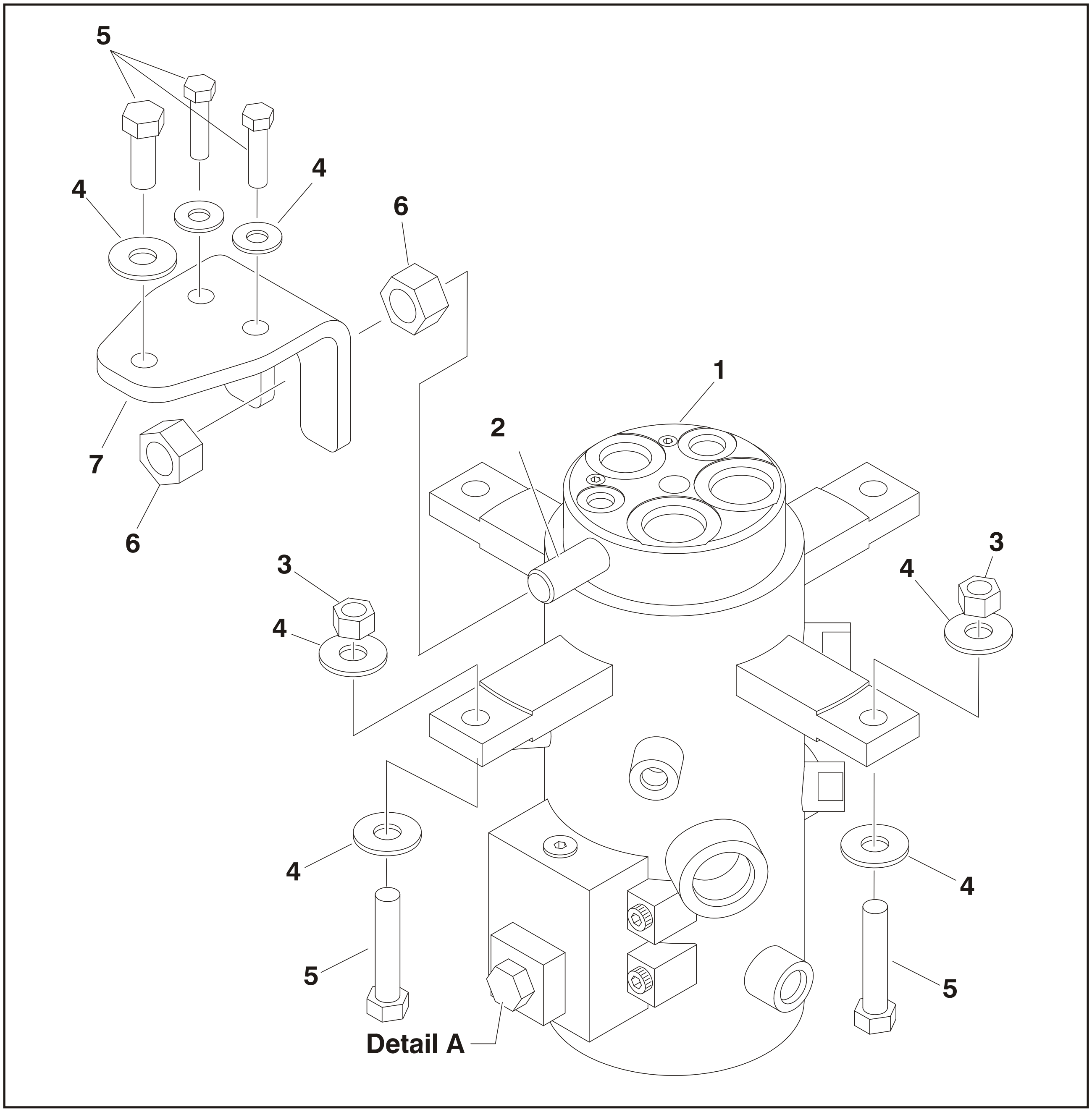
Figure 3-46. Swing Brake Assembly (Mico)

3.10 ROTARY COUPLING

Use the following procedure to install the seal kit.

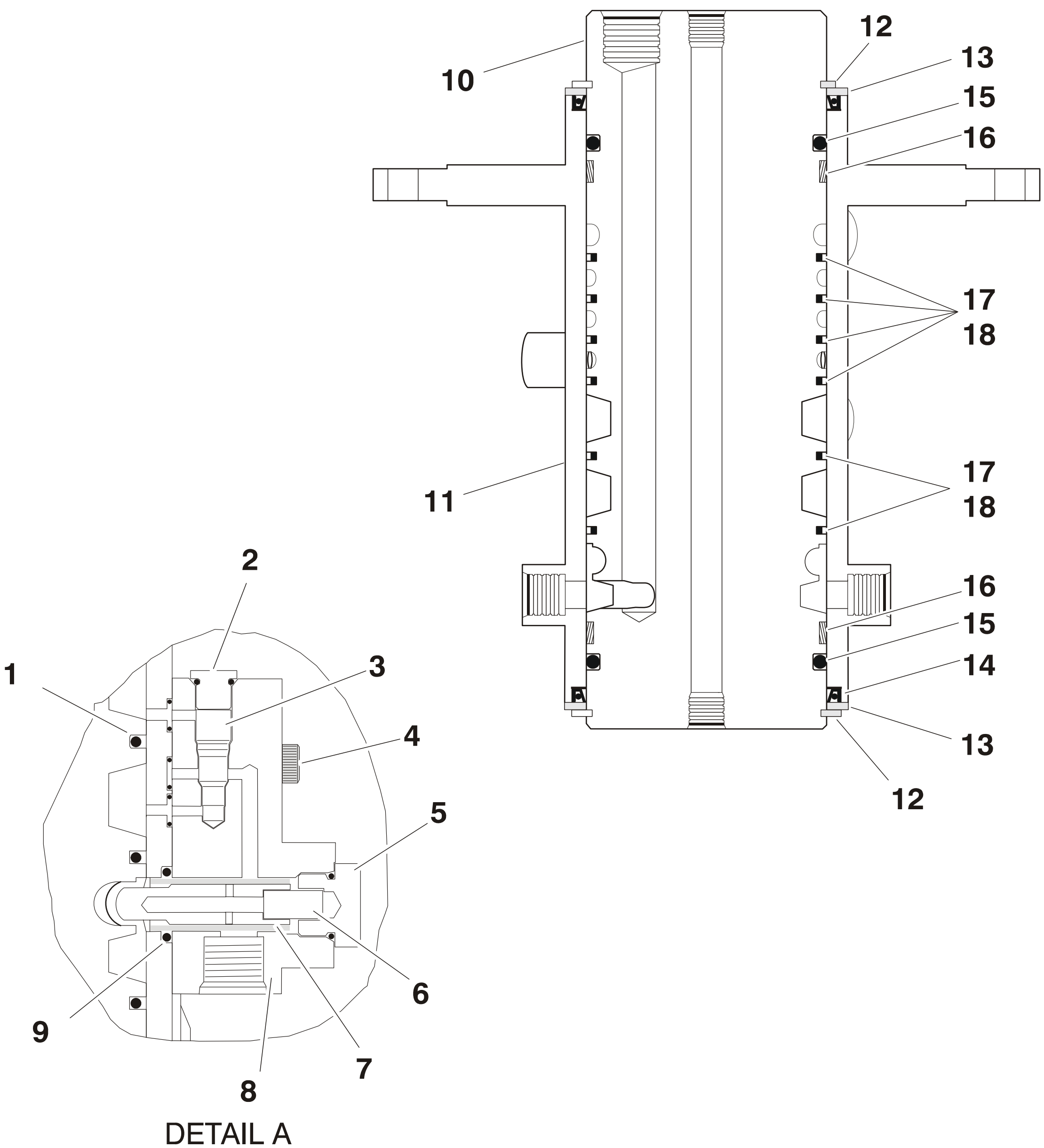
NOTE: *Step 1 applies to machines S/N 75606 to Present.*

1. If not already removed, remove the axle oscillation valve from the cylinder barrel. The spool of the valve protrudes into the barrel and will damage the spool and seals if left in place.
2. Remove snap ring (12) from end.
3. Remove thrust ring (13) from the same end.
4. Remove center body (10) from housing (11).
5. Cut off old seals (14,15,17,18).
6. Assemble lip seals (14) in direction shown in Figure 3-48., Rotary Coupling - Sheet 2 of 2.
7. Reassemble O-ring (18).
8. Heat cap seals (17) in hydraulic oil for 5 minutes at 300° F (149° C).
9. Assemble cap seals over O-rings
10. Reinsert center body into housing (lube with hydraulic oil).
11. Replace thrust ring and snap ring.



1. Rotary Coupling
2. Torque Lug
3. Locknut
4. Flatwasher
5. Bolt
6. Nut
7. Bracket

Figure 3-47. Rotary Coupling - Sheet 1 of 2



1. O-ring
2. Plug
3. Check Valve
4. Screw
5. Plug
6. Spring
7. Valve Block Plunger
8. Valve Block
9. O-ring
10. Body
11. Housing
12. Retaining Ring
13. Ring
14. Oil Seal
15. O-ring
16. Bearing
17. Cap Seal
18. O-ring

Figure 3-48. Rotary Coupling - Sheet 2 of 2

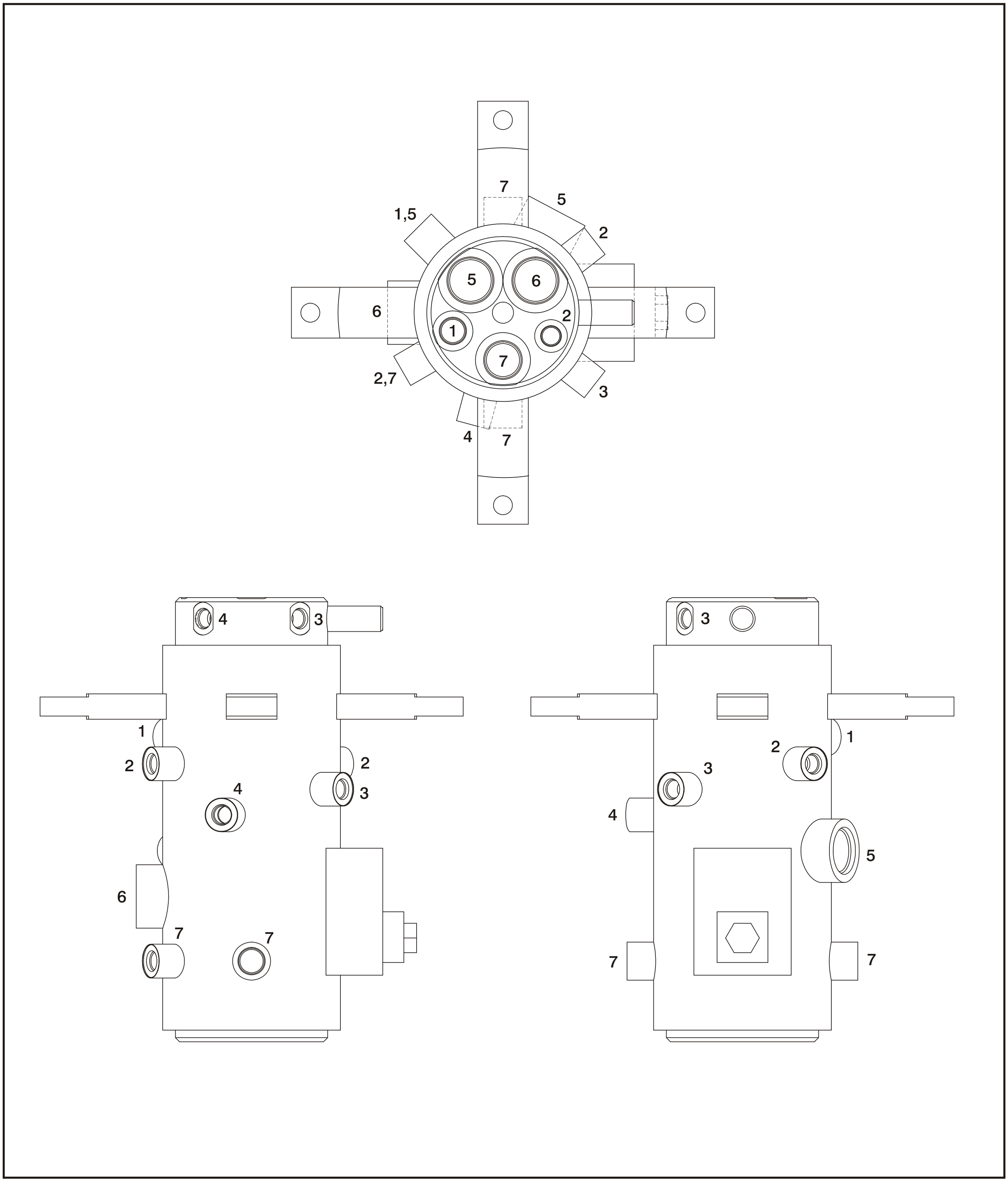


Figure 3-49. Rotary Coupling Port Location - 2WS

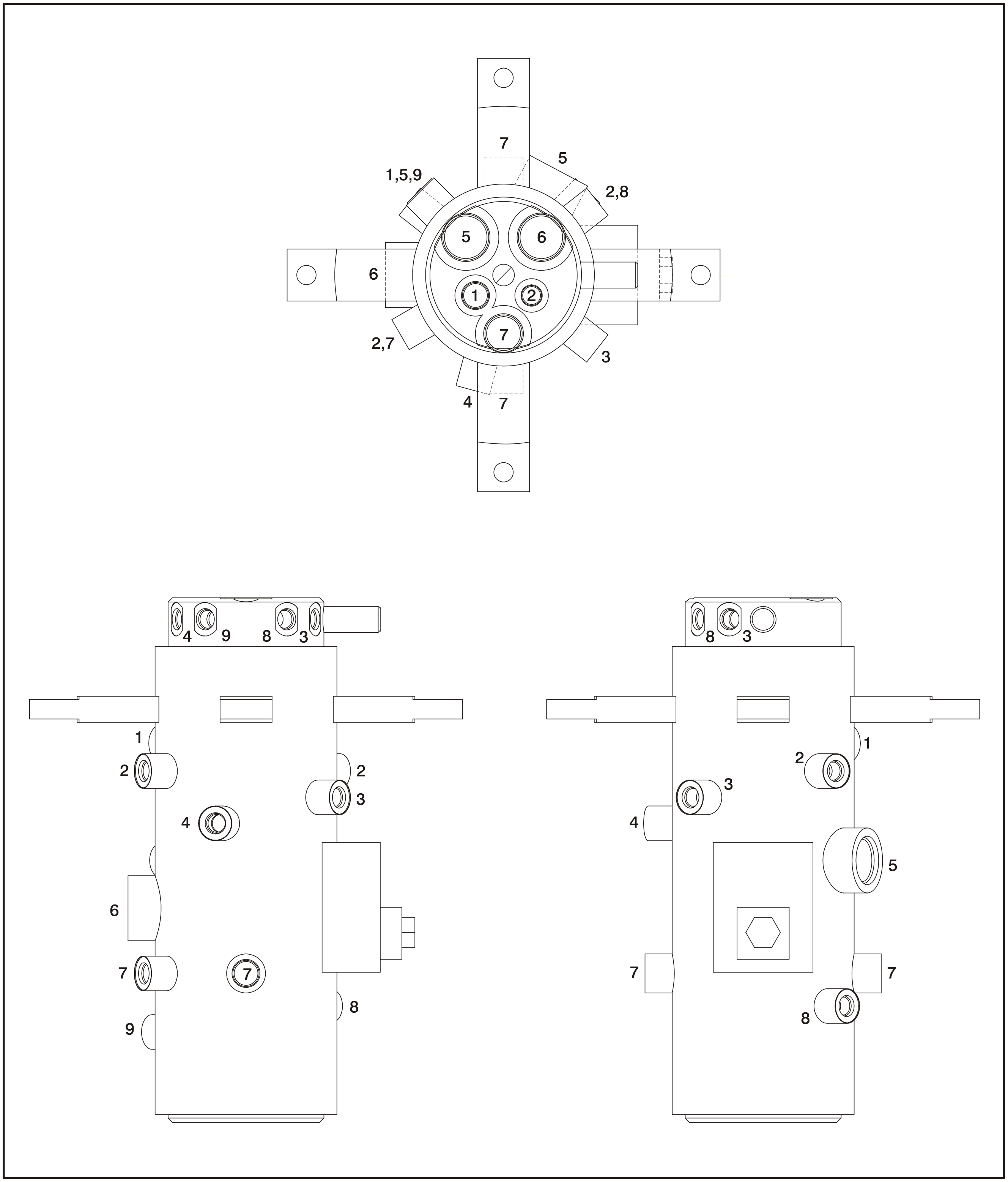


Figure 3-50. Rotary Coupling Port Location - 4WS

Table 3-9. Coupling Port Information Table - 2WS

Port No.	Outlet	Port Size	Description	Operating Pressure PSI (Bar)	Proof Pressure PSI (Bar)
1	1	-8	Brake	450 (31)	675 (47)
2	2	-6	2 Speed	4500 (310)	6750 (465)
3	1	-6	Steer	2500 (172)	3750 (259)
4	1	-6	Steer	2500 (172)	3750 (259)
5	2	-6, -16	Drive Reverse	4500 (310)	6750 (465)
6	1	-16	Drive Forward	4500 (310)	6750 (465)
7	3	-8, -6	Case Drain	250 (17)	375 (26)

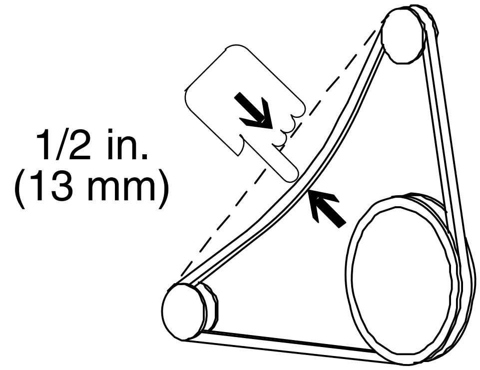
Table 3-10. Coupling Port Information Table - 4WS

Port No.	Outlet	Port Size	Description	Operating Pressure PSI (Bar)	Proof Pressure PSI (Bar)
1	1	-8	Brake	450 (31)	675 (47)
2	2	-6	2 Speed	4500 (310)	6750 (465)
3	1	-6	Steer	2500 (172)	3750 (259)
4	1	-6	Steer	2500 (172)	3750 (259)
5	2	-6, -16	Drive Reverse	4500 (310)	6750 (465)
6	1	-16	Drive Forward	4500 (310)	6750 (465)
7	3	-8, -6	Case Drain	250 (17)	375 (26)
8	1	-6	Steer	2500 (172)	3750 (259)
9	1	-6	Steer	2500 (172)	3750 (259)

3.11 GENERATOR

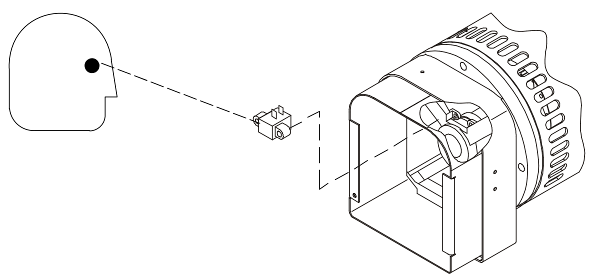
Every 250 hours

Every 250 hours of operation, check the drive belt for proper tension.

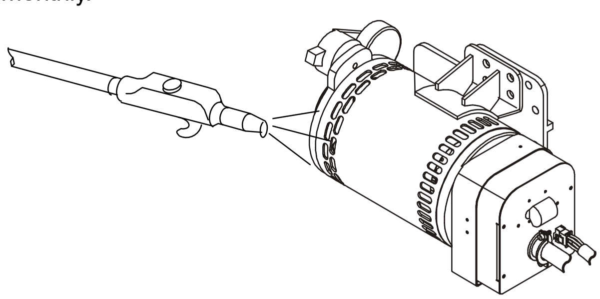


Every 500 hours

Every 500 hours of operation, service the generator brushes and slip rings. Hostile environments may require more frequent service.



Every 500 hours of service, blow out the inside of the generator. If operating in a hostile environment, clean monthly.

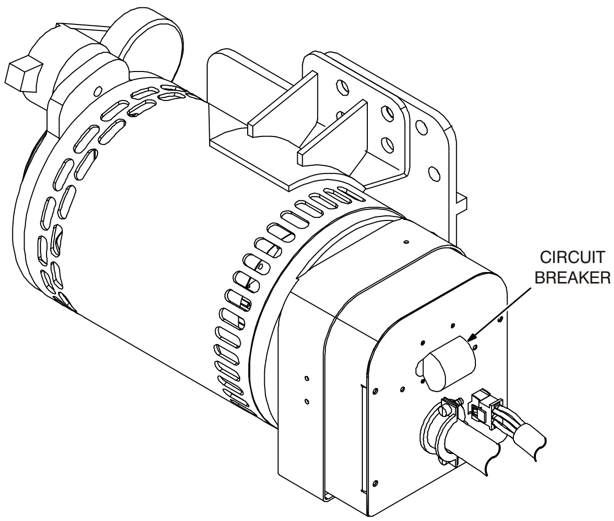


Overload Protection

CAUTION

STOP THE ENGINE WHENEVER CHECKING OR INSPECTING THE CIRCUIT BREAKER.

The circuit breaker protects the generator windings from overload. If the circuit breaker opens, generator output stops. If the circuit breaker continues to open, check for faulty equipment connected to the platform receptacles.



Inspecting Brushes, Replacing Brushes, and Cleaning Slip Rings

Refer to Figure 3-51., Inspecting Generator Brushes, Replacing Brushes, and Cleaning Slip Rings.

INSPECTING BRUSH POSITION

Inspect brush alignment with slip rings. View alignment through the air vents in the stator barrel. The brushes must ride completely on the slip rings.

INSPECTING BRUSHES

Remove the end panel. Inspect the wires. Remove the brush holder assembly. Pull the brushes from the holders.

Replace the brushes if damaged, or if the brush is at or near minimum length.

CLEANING SLIP RINGS

Visually inspect the slip rings. Under normal use, the rings turn dark brown.

If the slip rings are corroded or their surface is uneven, remove the belt to turn the shaft by hand for cleaning.

Clean the rings with 220 grit emery paper. Remove as little material as possible. If the rings are deeply pitted and do not clean up, consult generator factory service.

Reinstall the belt, brush holder assembly, and end panel.

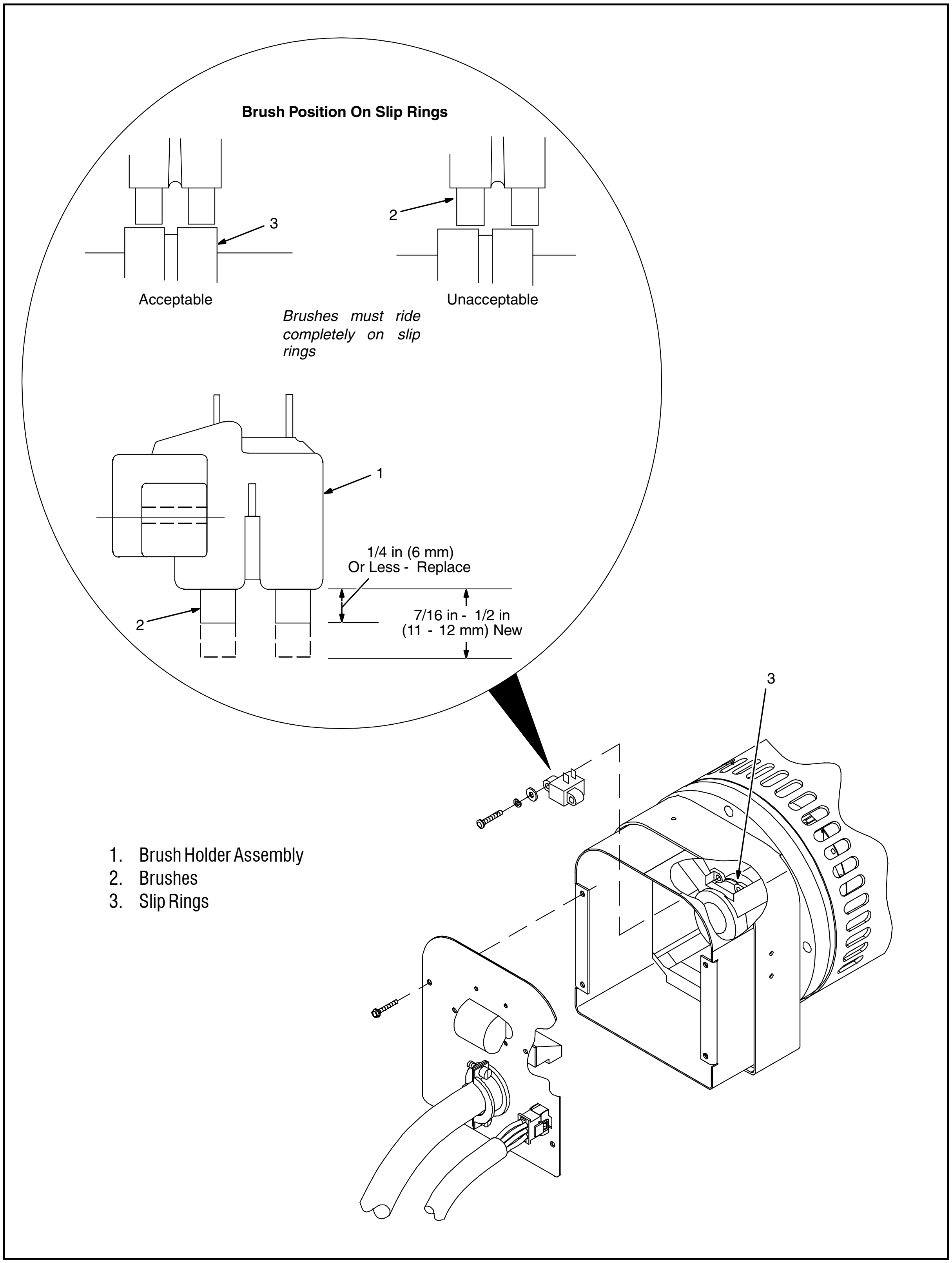


Figure 3-51. Inspecting Generator Brushes, Replacing Brushes, and Cleaning Slip Rings

3.12 SPARK ARRESTER CLEANING INSTRUCTIONS

1. Remove the cleanout plug in the bottom of spark arrester (muffler).
2. Without causing deformation (or any type of damage to the spark arrester) repeatedly tap on the arrester near the cleanout plug. This may be enough to begin drainage of the spark trap.
3. An industrial vacuum cleaner can do a complete job at this point.
   a. Or, IN A SAFE AREA, start the engine. Then alternate between low idle and high idle for two to three minutes.
   b. Or, operate the engine as required by the application for two to three minutes.
4. Install the cleanout plug.

3.13 GLOW PLUGS

If the glow plug option is enabled in the JLG Control System, the glow plug and indicator lamp will be energized when the Power/Emergency Stop switch is pulled on if the ambient air temperature is less than 50° F (10° C) and the engine coolant temperature is less than 140° F (60° C). This determination will occur one second after the Power/Emergency Stop switch has been pulled on. The lamp and glow plugs will remain energized for the period of time specified by the setting in the JLG Control System. Engine start shall be disabled during this period. On Deutz engines, the glow plugs will continue (post glow) after the engine has started for three times the machine digit setting.

3.14 FORD EFI ENGINE

Performing Diagnostics

1. Verify the complaint and determine if it is a deviation from normal operation.
2. Once the complaint has been verified, preliminary checks can be done. Conduct a thorough visual inspection, be alert for unusual sounds or odors, and gather diagnostic trouble code information.
3. Perform a system check that will verify the proper operation of the system in question and check for recent information updates.
4. If a diagnostic trouble code (DTC) is stored, contact a JLG distributor to make an effective repair.
5. If no DTC is stored, select the symptom from the symptom tables and follow the diagnostic path or suggestions to complete the repair.
6. After the repair has been made and validated for proper operation, the old part should be momentarily re-installed to verify that it was indeed the source of the problem.

If no matching symptom is available, analyze the complaint and develop a plan for diagnostics utilizing the wiring diagrams, technical assistance, and repair history.

Intermittent conditions may be resolved by using a check sheet to pinpoint the circuit or electrical system component. Some diagnostic charts contain Diagnostic Aids which give additional information about a system. Be sure to use all of the information that is available to you.

VISUAL/PHYSICAL ENGINE INSPECTION CHECK

Perform a careful visual and physical engine inspection before performing any diagnostic procedure. Perform all necessary repairs before proceeding with additional diagnosis, this can often lead to repairing a problem without performing unnecessary steps. Use the following guidelines when performing a visual/physical inspection check:

- Inspect engine for modifications or aftermarket equipment that can contribute to the symptom; verify that all electrical and mechanical loads or accessory equipment is "OFF" or disconnected before performing diagnosis.
- Inspect engine fluids for correct levels and evidence of leaks.
- Inspect vacuum hoses for damage, leaks, cracks, kinks and improper routing, inspect intake manifold sealing surface for a possible vacuum leak.
- Inspect PCV valve for proper installation and operation.
- Inspect all wires and harnesses for proper connections and routing; bent or broken connector pins; burned, chafed, or pinched wires; and corrosion. Verify that harness grounds are clean and tight.
- Inspect engine control module (ECM), sensors, and actuators for physical damage.
- Inspect ECM grounds for cleanliness, tightness, and proper location.
- Inspect fuel system for adequate fuel level, and fuel quality (concerns such as proper octane, contamination, winter/summer blend).
- Inspect intake air system and air filter for restrictions.
- Inspect battery condition and starter current draw.

If no evidence of a problem is found after visual/physical engine check has been performed, proceed to MIL DTC retrieval procedure.

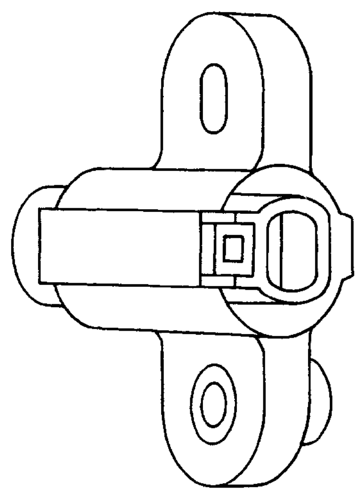
ECM/EPM and Sensors

CRANKSHAFT POSITION (CKP) SENSOR

The crankshaft position (CKP) sensor provides a signal used by the engine control module (ECM) to calculate the ignition sequence. The CKP sensor initiates the reference pulses which the ECM uses to calculate RPM and crankshaft position.

CAMSHAFT POSITION (CMP) SENSOR AND SIGNAL

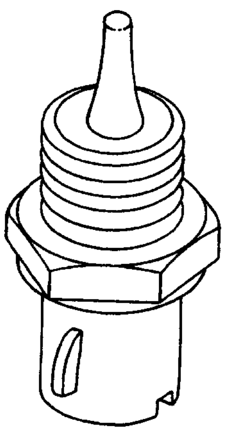
The camshaft position (CMP) sensor sends a CMP signal to the ECM. The ECM uses this signal as a "sync pulse" to trigger the injectors in the proper sequence. The ECM uses the CMP signal to indicate the position of the #1 piston during its power stroke. The CMP uses a Hall Effect sensor to measure piston position. This allows the ECM to calculate true sequential fuel injection (SFI) mode of operation. If the ECM detects an incorrect CMP signal while the engine is running, DTC 53 will set. If the CMP signal is lost while the engine is running, the fuel injection system will shift to a calculated sequential fuel injection mode based on the last fuel injection pulse, and the engine will continue to nun. As long as the fault is present, the engine can be restarted. It will run in the previously established injection sequence.



ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE (ECT) SENSOR

The engine coolant temperature (ECT) sensor is a g thermistor (a resistor which changes value based on temperature) mounted in the engine coolant stream. Low coolant temperature produces a high resistance of 100,000 ohms at -40°C (-40°F). High temperature causes a low resistance of 70 ohms at 130°C (266°F). The ECM supplies a 5-volt signal to the ECT sensor through resistors in the ECM and measures the voltage. The signal voltage will be high when the engine is cold and low when the engine is hot. By measuring the voltage, the ECM calculates the engine coolant temperature. Engine coolant temperature affects most of the systems that the ECM controls.

After engine start-up, the temperature should rise steadily to about 85°C (185°F). it then stabilizes when the thermostat opens. If the engine has not been run for several hours (overnight), the engine coolant temperature and intake air temperature displays should be close to each other. A fault in the engine coolant sensor circuit will set DTC 33 or DTC 43.



ELECTRICALLY ERASABLE PROGRAMMABLE READ ONLY MEMORY (EEPROM)

The electrically erasable programmable read only memory (EEPROM) is a permanent memory chip that is located within the ECM. The EEPROM contains the program and the calibration information that the ECM needs to control engine operations.

If the ECM is replaced, the new ECM will need to be programmed. An IBM-compatible computer and software containing the correct program and calibration for the application are required to program the ECM.

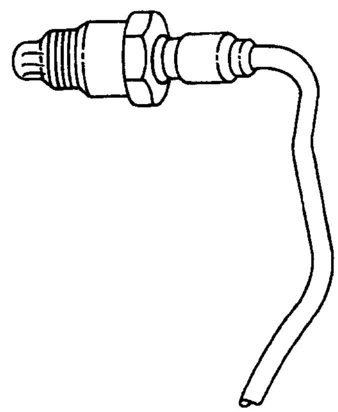
HEATED OXYGEN SENSOR

The heated oxygen sensor is mounted in the exhaust stream where it can monitor the oxygen content of the exhaust gas. The oxygen present in the exhaust gas reacts with the sensor to produce a voltage output. This voltage should constantly fluctuate from approximately 100 mV to 900 mV. The heated oxygen sensor voltage can be monitored on an IBM PC-compatible computer with diagnostic software. By monitoring the voltage out-put of the oxygen sensor, the ECM calculates the pulse width command for the injectors to produce the proper combustion chamber mixture.

Low HO2S voltage indicates a lean mixture which will result in a rich command to compensate.

High HO2S voltage indicates a rich mixture which will result in a lean command to compensate.

A constant voltage below 200 mV for 10 consecutive seconds will set OTC 32. A constant voltage above 650 mV for 10 consecutive seconds will set OTC 42.



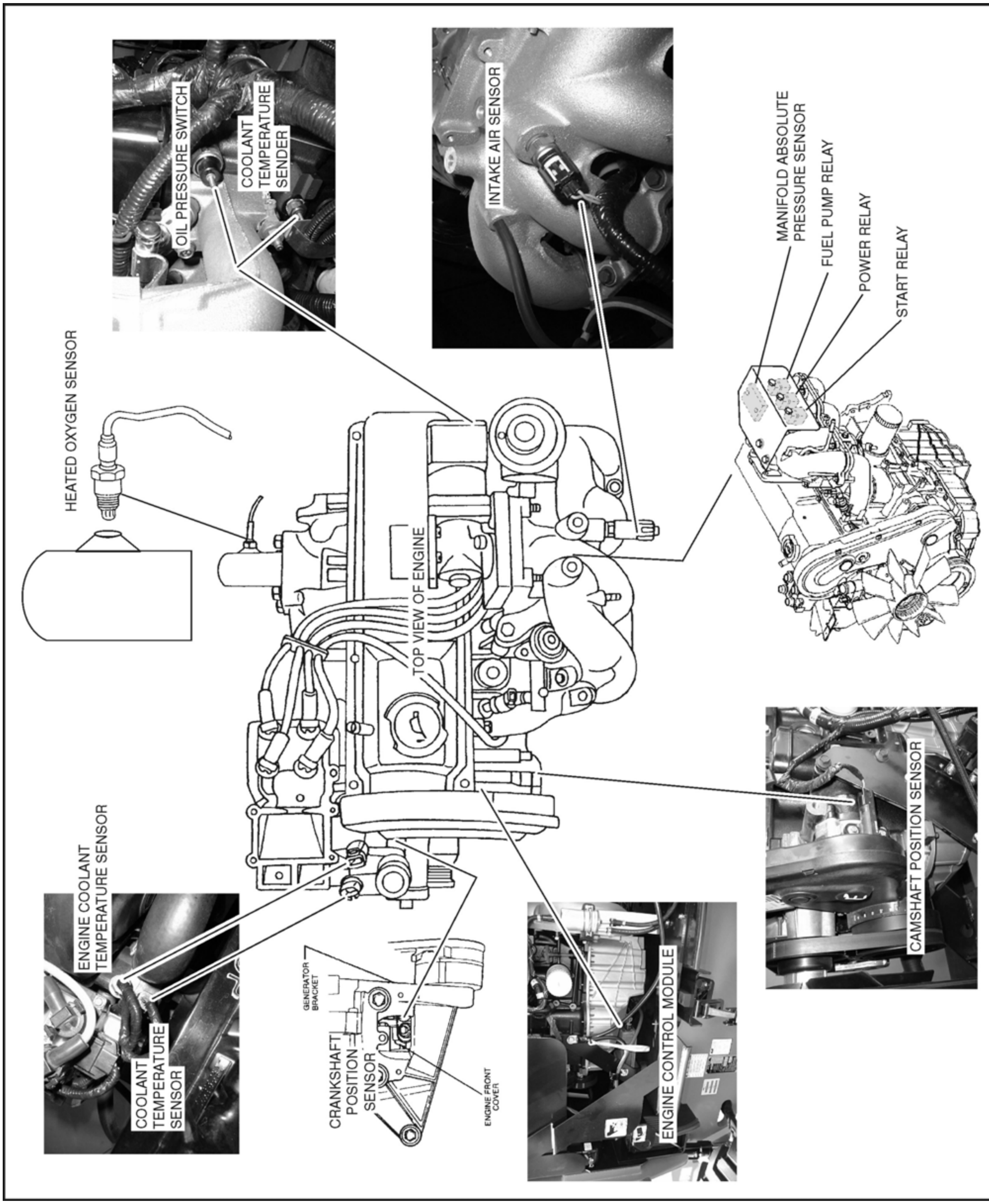
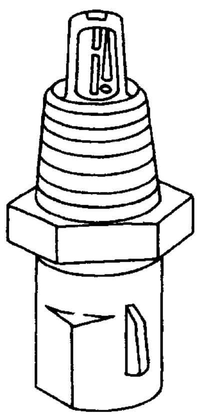


Figure 3-52. EFI Component Location

INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE (IAT) SENSOR

The intake air temperature (IAT) sensor is a thermistor which changes its resistance based on the temperature of air entering the engine. Low temperature produces a high resistance of 100,000 ohms at -40°C (-40°F). High temperature causes a low resistance of 70 ohms at 130°C (266°F). The ECM supplies a 5-volt signal to the sensor through a resistor in the ECM and monitors the signal voltage. The signal voltage will be high when the incoming air is cold and low when the incoming air is hot. By measuring the voltage, the ECM calculates the incoming air temperature. The IAT sensor signal is used to adjust spark timing according to the incoming air density. An IBM PC-compatible computer with diagnostic soft-ware can be used to display the temperature of the air entering the engine. The temperature should read close to the ambient air temperature when the engine is cold, and rise as engine compartment temperature increases. If the engine has not been run for several hours (overnight), the IAT sensor temperature and engine coolant temperature should read close to each other. A failure in the IAT sensor circuit will set DTC 35 or DTC 45.



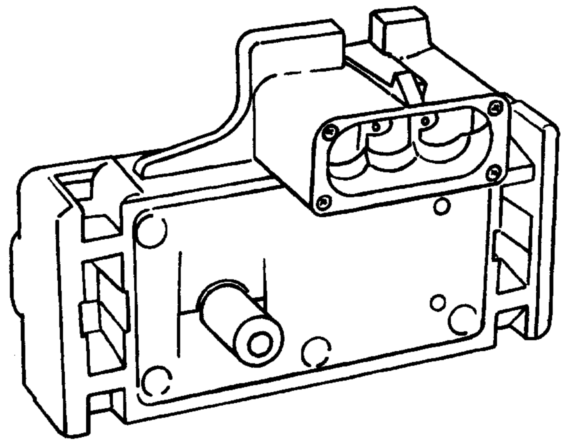
MANIFOLD ABSOLUTE PRESSURE (MAP) SENSOR

The manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor responds to changes in intake manifold pressure (vacuum). The MAP sensor signal voltage to the ECM varies from below 2 volts at idle (high vacuum) to above 4 volts with the ignition ON, engine not running or at wide-open throttle (low vacuum).

The MAP sensor is used to determine the following:

- Engine vacuum level for engine control purposes.
- Barometric pressure (BARO)

If the ECM detects a voltage that is significantly lower than the estimated MAP value for 2 or more consecutive seconds, DTC 14 will be set. A signal voltage significantly higher than the estimated MAP value for 2 or more consecutive seconds will set DTC 24.



ENGINE CONTROL MODULE/ENGINE PERFORMANCE MODULE (ECM/EPM)

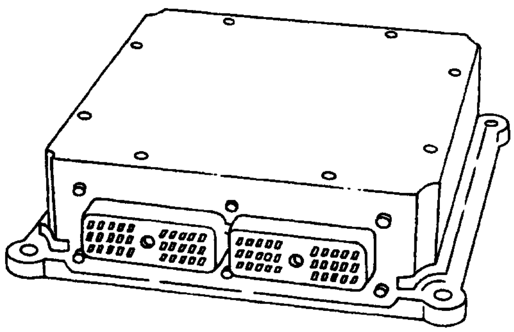
The ECM controls the following:

- Fuel metering system
- Ignition timing
- On-board diagnostics for engine functions

The ECM/EPM constantly observes the information from various sensors. The ECM controls the systems that affect engine performance. The ECM performs the diagnostic function of the system. It can recognize operational problems, alert the operator through the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL), and store diagnostic trouble codes (DTCs). DTCs identify the problem areas to aid the technician in making repairs.

The ECM/EPM supplies either 5 or 12 volts to power various sensors or switches. The power is supplied through resistances in the ECM/EPM which are so huh in value that a test light will not light when connected to the circuit. In some cases, even an ordinary shop voltmeter will not give an accurate reading because its resistance is too low. Therefore, a digital voltmeter with at least 10 meg ohms input impedance is required to ensure accurate voltage readings. The ECM/EPM controls output circuits such as the fuel injectors, electronic governor, etc., by control ling the ground or the power feed circuit through transistors or other solid state devices.

The ECM/EPM is designed to maintain exhaust emission levels to government mandated standards while providing excellent operation and fuel efficiency. The ECM/EPM monitors numerous engine functions via electronic sensors such as the throttle position (TP) sensor and the heated oxygen sensor (HO2S).



ECM/EPM INPUTS/OUTPUTS

Inputs—Operating Conditions

- Engine Coolant Temperature
- Crankshaft Position
- Exhaust Oxygen Content
- Manifold Absolute Pressure
- Battery Voltage
- Throttle Position
- Fuel Pump Voltage
- Intake Air Temperature
- Camshaft Position

Outputs - System Controlled

- Fuel Control
- Idle Air Control
- Electric Fuel Pump
- Diagnostics:
  - Malfunction Indicator Lamp
  - Data Link Connector (DLC)

ECM/EPM SERVICE PRECAUTIONS

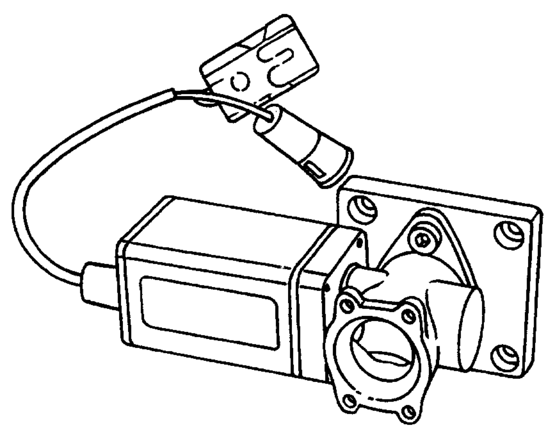
The ECM/EPM is designed to withstand normal current draws associated with engine operation. When servicing the ECM/EPM, observe the following guidelines:

- Do not overload any circuit.
- Do not probe wires for testing. This can cause a voltage drop that would be critical to the operation of the ECM/EPM.
- When testing for opens and shorts, do not ground or apply voltage to any of the ECM/EPM's circuits unless instructed to do so.
- When measuring voltages, use only a digital voltmeter with an input impedance of at least 10 megohms.
- Do not jump start with more than 12 volts. This could cause damage to the electronic components.
- Do not employ any non-standard practices such as charging the battery with an arc welder.
- Take proper precautions to avoid static damage to the ECM/EPM. Refer to "Electrostatic Discharge Damage" for more information.

THROTTLE POSITION (TP) SENSOR

The throttle position (TP) sensor is a potentiometer connected to the throttle shaft on the throttle body which is built into the electronic governor. The ECM/EPM monitors the voltage on the signal line and calculates throttle position. As the throttle valve angle is changed, the TP sensor signal also changes. At a closed throttle position, the output of the TP sensor is low. As the throttle valve opens, the output increases so that at wide open throttle (WOT), the output voltage should be above 4 volts.

The ECM/EPM calculates fuel delivery based on throttle valve angle (operator demand). A broken or loose TP sensor may cause intermittent bursts of fuel from an injector and unstable idle because the ECM/EPM thinks the throttle is moving. A hard failure in the TP sensor 5-Volt reference or signal circuits for greater than 2 consecutive seconds will set either a DTC 12 or DTC 22. A hard failure with the TP sensor ground circuit for more than two consecutive seconds may set DTC 22. If either DTC 12 or DTC 22 are set, the throttle will be forced to a 6% (idle) position.



USE OF CIRCUIT TESTING TOOLS

Do not use a test light to diagnose the engine electrical systems unless specifically instructed by the diagnostic procedures. A test light can put an excessive load on an ECM circuit and result in component damage. For voltage measurements, use only a digital voltmeter with an input impedance of at least 10 megohms.

ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE DAMAGE

Electronic components used in the ECM are often designed to carry very low voltage. Electronic components are susceptible to damage caused by electrostatic discharge. Less than 100 volts of static electricity can cause damage to some electronic components. By comparison, It takes as much as 4000 volts for a person to feel the spark of a static discharge.

There are several ways for a person to become statically charged. The most common methods of charging are by friction and induction.

An example of charging by friction is a person sliding across a seat.

Charge by induction occurs when a person with well-insulated shoes stands near a highly charged object and momentarily touches ground. Charges of the same polarity are drained off, leaving the person highly charged with the opposite polarity. Static charges can cause damage, therefore it is important to-use care when handling and testing electronic components.

To prevent possible electrostatic discharge damage, follow these guidelines:

- Do not touch the ECM connector pins or soldered components on the ECM board.
- Do not open the replacement part package until the part is ready to be installed.
- Before removing the part from the package, ground the package to a known good ground on the equipment.
- If the part has been handled while sliding across a seat, while sitting down from a standing position, or while walking a distance, touch a known good ground before installing the part.

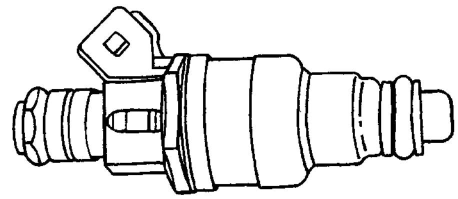
Fuel System

FUEL INJECTOR

The Electronic Fuel Injection (EFI) fuel injector is a solenoid-operated device controlled by the ECM/EPM. The ECM/EPM energizes the solenoid, which opens a valve to allow fuel delivery.

The fuel is injected under pressure in a conical spray pattern at the opening of the intake valve. Excess fuel not used by the injectors passes through the fuel pressure regulator before being returned to the fuel tank.

A fuel injector which is stuck partly open will cause a loss of fuel pressure after the engine is shut down, causing long crank times.



FUEL METERING SYSTEM COMPONENTS

The fuel metering system is made up of the following parts:

- The fuel injectors
- The fuel rail
- The fuel pressure regulator/filter assembly
- The electronic governor
- The ECM/EPM
- The crankshaft position (CKP) sensor
- The camshaft position (CMP) sensor
- The fuel pump
- The fuel pump relay

BASIC SYSTEM OPERATION

The fuel metering system starts with the fuel in the fuel tank. The fuel is drawn up to the fuel pump through a pre-filter. The electric fuel pump then delivers the fuel to the fuel rail through an inane fuel filter. The pump is designed to provide fuel at a pressure above the pressure needed by the injectors. A fuel pressure regulator in the fuel filter assembly keeps fuel available to the fuel injectors at a constant pressure. A return line delivers unused fuel back to the tank.

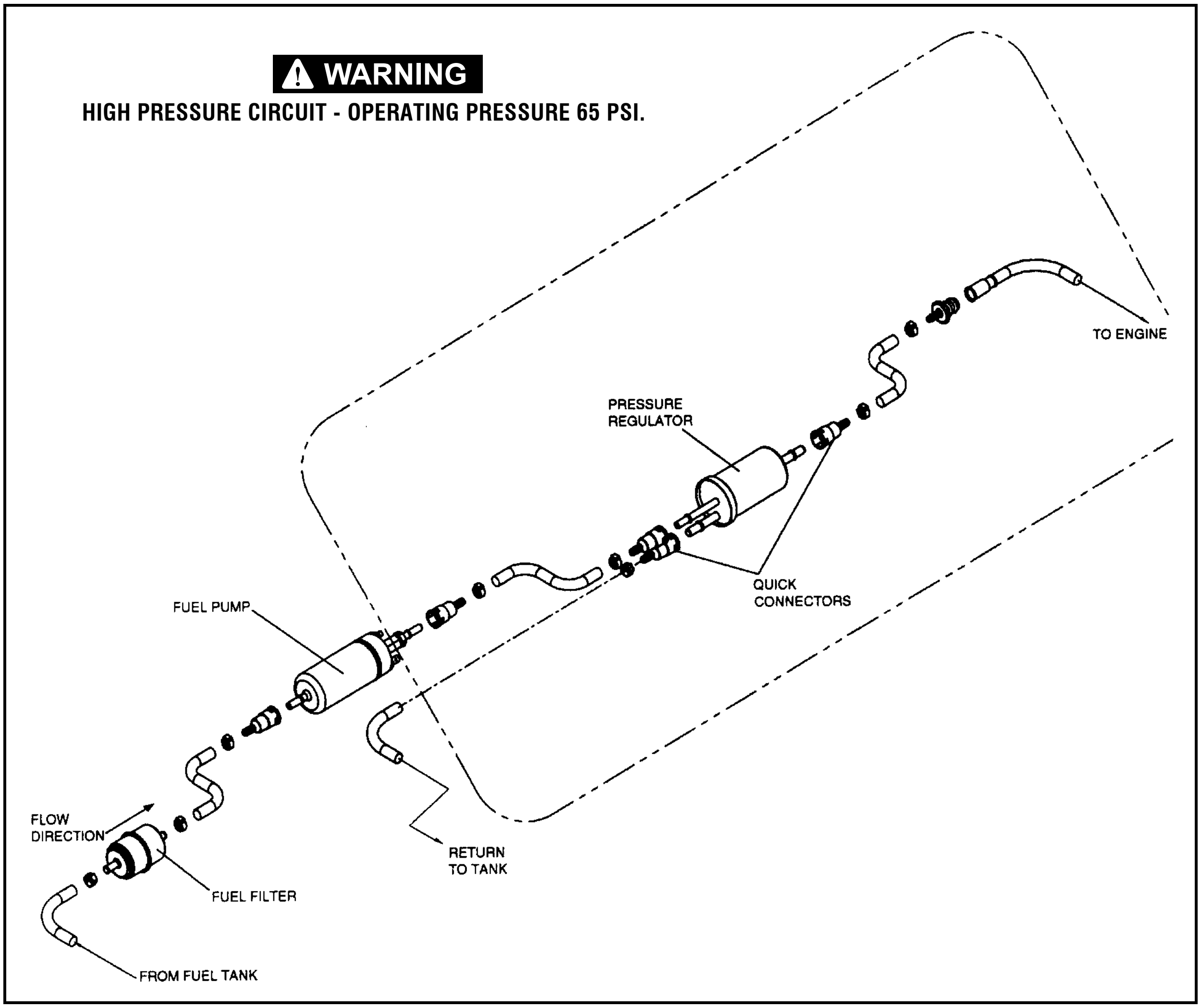


Figure 3-53. Typical Fuel System

FUEL METERING SYSTEM PURPOSE

The basic function of the air/fuel metering system is to control the air/fuel delivery to the engine. Fuel is delivered to the engine by individual fuel injectors mounted in the intake manifold near each intake valve.

The main control sensor is the heated oxygen sensor (H02S) located in the exhaust system. The H02S tells the ECM/EPM how much oxygen is in the exhaust gas. The ECM/EPM changes the air/fuel ratio to the engine by con-trol-ling the amount of time that the fuel injector is "ON." The best mixture to minimize exhaust emissions is 14.7 parts of air to 1 part of gasoline by weight, which provides the most efficient combustion. Because of the constant measuring and adjusting of the air/fuel ratio, the fuel injection system is called a "closed loop" system.

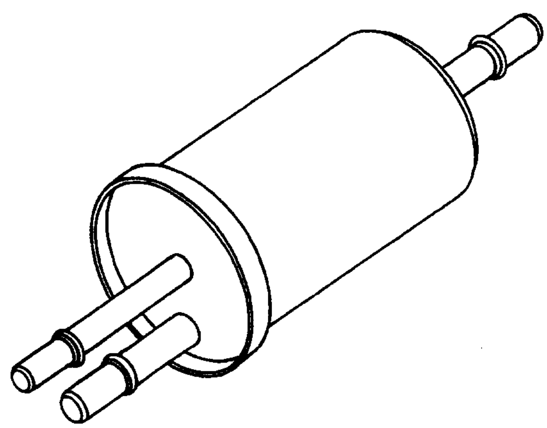
The ECM/EPM monitors signals from several sensors in order to determine the fuel needs of the engine. Fuel is delivered under one of several conditions called "modes." All modes are controlled by the ECM/EPM. Refer to "Open Loop and Closed Loop Operation" for more information.

FUEL PRESSURE REGULATOR

The fuel pressure regulator is a relief valve mounted in the fuel filter. It provides a constant fuel pressure of 441 kPa (64 psi).

If the pressure is too low, poor performance and a DTC 32 will set. If the pressure is too high, excessive odor and/or a DTC 42 will result.

When replacing the fuel filter, be sure to use an identical filter/regulator assembly. A standard fuel filter does not regulate pressure and could cause engine problems or component damage.



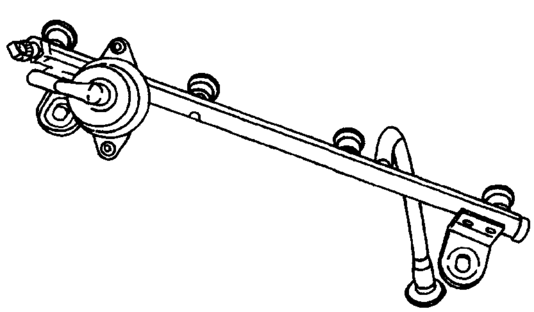
FUEL PUMP ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT

When the key is first turned "ON," the ECM energizes the fuel pump relay for two seconds to build up the fuel pressure quickly. If the engine is not started within two seconds, the ECM/EPM shuts the fuel pump off and waits until the engine is cranked. When the engine is cranked and crankshaft position signal has been detected by the SECM, the ECM/EPM supplies 12 volts to the fuel pump relay to energize the electric fuel pump.

An inoperative fuel pump will cause a "no-start" condition. A fuel pump which does not provide enough pressure will result in poor performance.

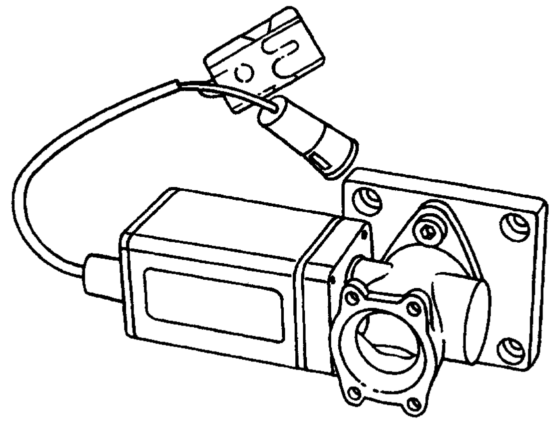
FUEL RAIL

The fuel rail is mounted to the top of the engine and distributes fuel to the individual injectors. Fuel is delivered to the fuel inlet tube of the fuel rail by the fuel lines.



ELECTRONIC GOVERNOR AND THROTTLE BODY

In the 2.5L EFI industrial engine, throttle control is achieved by using an electronic governor which is controlled by the engine control module (ECM).



The electronic governor consists of a throttle body, an electronically-actuated throttle plate, and a built-in throttle position (TP) sensor. There are two pigtails that exit the governor body. The 3-wire pigtail connects the TP sensor to the ECM/EPM. Refer to "Throttle Position (TP) Sensor" for more information.

The 2-wire pigtail carries the throttle signal from the ECM to the governor. Desired engine speeds are stored in the configuration program for each specific application, and can be changed with the ECM/EPM calibration software. When an engine speed is selected with the toggle switch, the ECM/EPM sends the appropriate signal to the governor. This is a pulse-width modulated (PWM) signal which cannot be read with conventional diagnostic tools such as a voltmeter. A 12-volt signal is pulsed on and off at a high rate of speed. The width of the "on" pulse determines the amount of throttle opening. The ECM sends a signal with the appropriate pulse width to the governor based on the operator's choice of switch settings.

The electronic governor also acts as an idle air control (IAC) valve. Changes in engine load are detected by the ECM/EPM by comparing manifold absolute pressure (MAP) with throttle position. When the ECM/EPM detects a change in engine load, it can adjust idle speed by changing the PWM signal to the governor.

OPEN LOOP AND CLOSED LOOP OPERATION

The ECM will operate in the following two modes:

- Open loop
- Closed loop

When the engine is first started, the system is in "open loop" operation. In open loop, the ECM ignores the signal from the heated oxygen sensor (HO2S). it uses a pre-programmed routine to calculate the air/fuel ratio based on inputs from the TP, ECT, and MAP sensors.

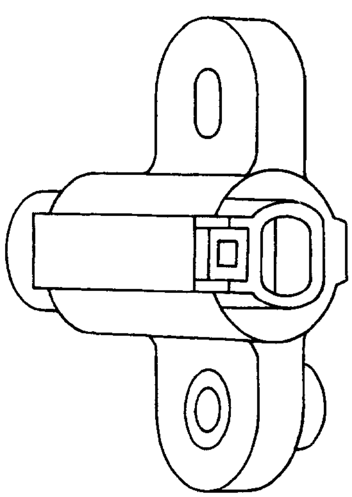
The system remains in open loop until the following conditions are met:

- The HO2S has a varying voltage output showing that it is hot enough to operate properly (this depends on temperature).
- The ECT has reached 160°F (71°C).
- Seven minutes has elapsed since starting the engine.

After these conditions are met, the engine is said to be operating in "closed loop." In closed loop, The ECM continuously adjusts the air/fuel ratio by responding to signals from the HO2S (except at wide-open throttle). When the HO2S reports a lean condition (low sensor signal voltage), the ECM responds by increasing the "on" time of the fuel injectors, thus enriching the mixture. When the HO2S reports a rich condition (high sensor signal Voltages the ECM responds by reducing the "on" time of the fuel injectors, thus leaning out the mixture.

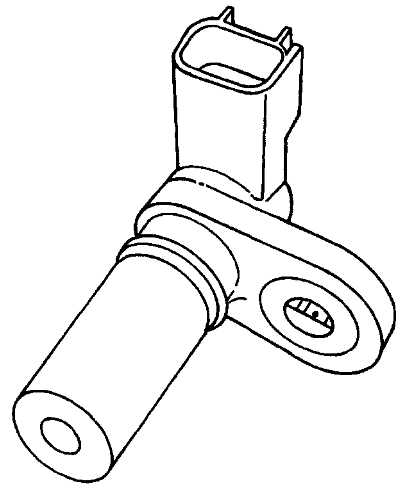
CAMSHAFT POSITION (CMP) SENSOR

The CMP sensor uses a variable reactor sensor to detect camshaft position. The CMP signal is created as piston #1 is a predetermined number of degrees after top dead center on the power stroke.



CRANKSHAFT POSITION (CKP) SENSOR

The crankshaft position (CKP) sensor provides a signal used by the engine control module (ECM) to calculate the ignition sequence. The sensor initiates the reference pulses which the ECM uses to calculate RPM and crankshaft position.



ELECTRONIC IGNITION

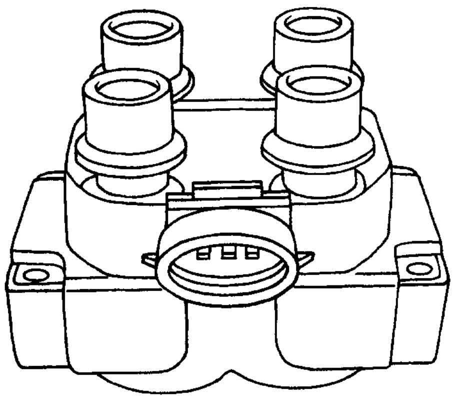
The electronic ignition system controls fuel combustion by providing a spark to ignite the compressed air/fuel w mixture at the correct time. To provide optimum engine performance, fuel economy, and control of exhaust emissions, the ECM controls the spark advance of the ignition system. Electronic ignition has the following advantages over a mechanical distributor system:

- No moving parts
- Less maintenance
- Remote mounting capability
- No mechanical load on the engine
- More coil cooldown time between firing events
- Elimination of mechanical timing adjustments
- Increased available ignition coil saturation time

IGNITION COIL

The electronic ignition system uses a coil pack with one ignition coil for each two cylinders in the engine. Each cylinder is paired with its opposing cylinder in the firing order, so that one cylinder on compression fires simultaneously with the opposing cylinder on exhaust. The spark that occurs in the cylinder on the exhaust stroke is referred to as a "waste spark."

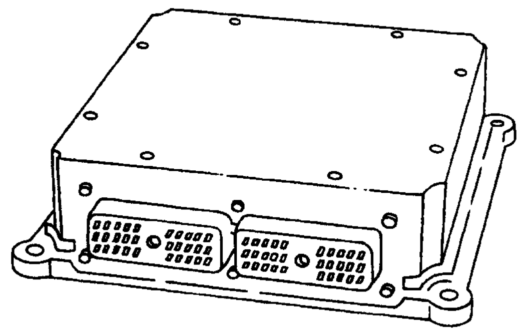
The primary coils in the coil pack are triggered by the "Ignition Coil Feed #1" and "Ignition Coil Feed #2" Signals from the ECM/EPM.



ENGINE CONTROL MODULE/ENGINE PERFORMANCE MODULE (ECM/EPM)

The ECM/EPM is responsible for maintaining proper spark and fuel injection timing for all operating conditions. To provide optimum operation and emissions, the ECM monitors the input signals from the following components in order to calculate spark timing:

- Engine coolant temperature (ECT) sensor
- Intake air temperature (IAT) sensor
- Throttle position sensor
- Crankshaft position sensor



3.15 FORD LPG SYSTEM

NOTE: *+20° F (-6.6° C) is the low temperature limit for LP gas, for both starting and operation. This applies to all LP gas powered engines.*

Description

The LPG system starts at the tank. The liquid propane exits the tank, flows through the fuel lockoff solenoid, flows through the regulator (regulator converts the liquid to a vapor), flows through the megajector, flows through the mixer and into the engine.

Regulator

The regulator accepts LPG liquid at tank pressure (min = 30 psi; max = 312 psi [min = 207 kPa; max = 2151 kPa]) and reduces it to a regulator outlet pressure of 1.5 to 2.5 inches (3.8 to 6.3 cm) of H_2O at idle flow (approx. 750 RPM / no load). This regulator must have engine coolant flowing through it whenever the engine is running.

Megajector

The megajector is an electronic pressure regulator. This electronic regulator outputs a specific pressure needed at the mixer to maintain the desired air to fuel ratio. The megajector accepts LPG vapor at the regulator outlet pressure (1.5 to 2.5 inches [3.8 to 6.3 cm] of H_2O) and reduces it to a pressure value commanded by the EPM. The pressure command is sent by the EPM over the CAN link via the megajector harness. The megajector outlet pressure has units of inches of H_2O. The megajector outlet pressure is defined as the difference between the megajector outlet gas pressure and the balance line pressure (usually at or near barometric pressure depending on air intake restriction). The megajector outlet pressure can vary between -1.00 to -5.00 inches (-2.5 to -12.7 cm) of H_2O depending on the speed and load of the engine. The megajector must be mounted per the 2.5L 2004 Emission Installation Instructions. Torque mounting bolts to a maximum of 60 in.lbs. (7 Nm).

Mixer

The mixer accepts LPG vapor at the megajector outlet pressure (-1.00 to -5.00 inches [-2.5 to -12.7 cm] of H_2O) and mixes it with clean air. This mixture is then sucked into the engine via the actuator.

Lockoff Solenoid

The lockoff solenoid is used to reduce the possibility of backfires. The EPM controls the opening and closing of the lockoff so that as a shutdown is commanded, the lockoff is closed, but the ignition system continues to operate to burn off unburned fuel in the manifold. This will cause longer than usual start times, because the manifold must fill up with fuel again before the engine will fire. This will also cause the engine to run for one to two seconds after ignition is turned off.

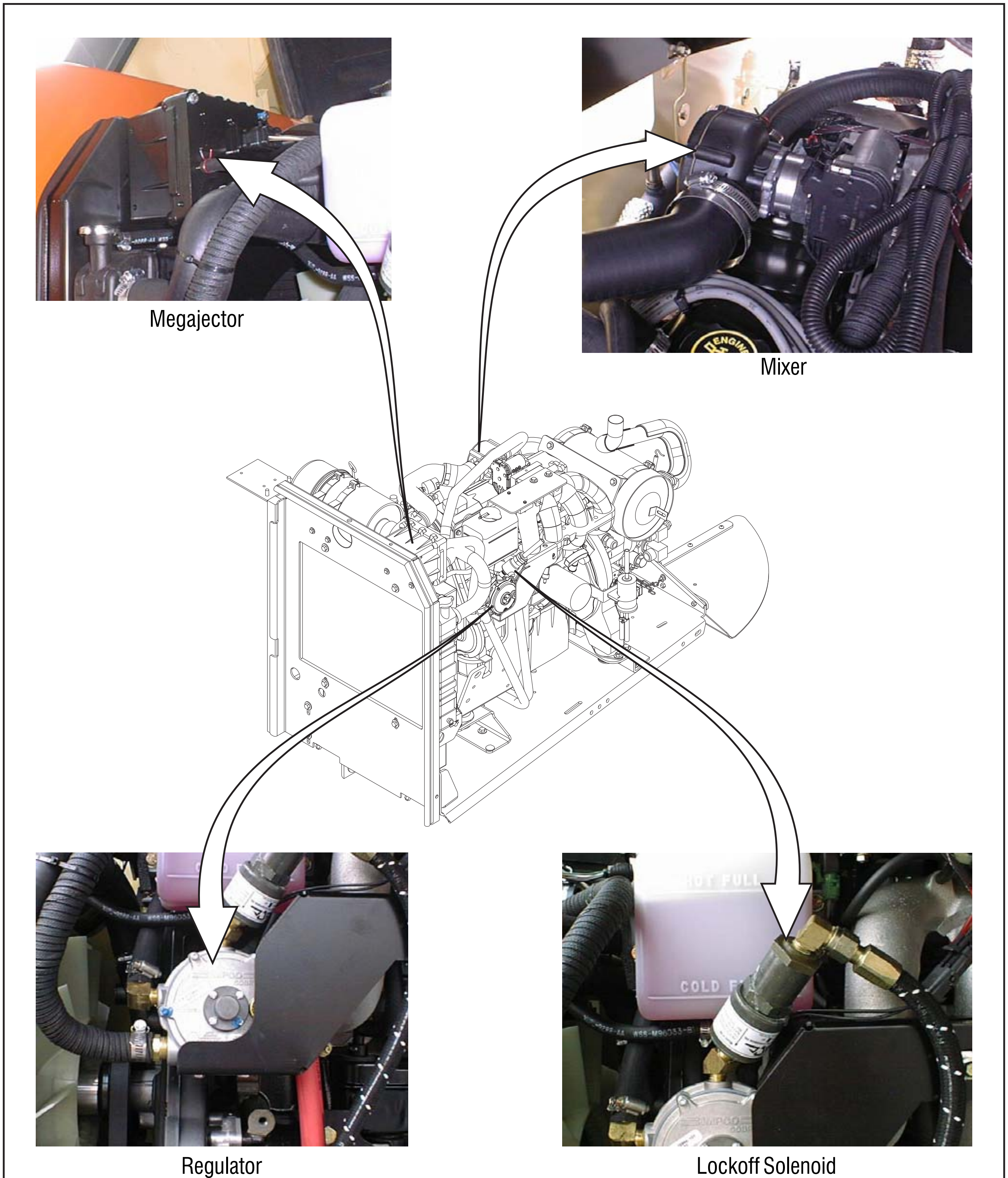


Figure 3-54. Ford LPG System

Megajector Diagnostic Code Descriptions

The following diagnostic codes are specific to the megajector. They will be displayed on the analyzer if the JLG Control System senses a fault dealing with the megajector. Refer to Section 6 - JLG Control System for more information concerning the Control System.

DTC 353 - Megajector delivery pressure higher than expected. This code will set if the difference between the Megajector actual pressure and the Megajector commanded pressure is greater than 4.00 inches (10.1 cm) of H_2O.

a. **Fuel Supply** - Check fuel supply pressure at the megajector inlet fitting. Fuel supply pressure on LPG applications should be between 3-5" (7.6-12.7 cm) H_2O.

b. **Lockoff Solenoid** - Check the lockoff to make sure it is sealing when closed. If it is not completely sealing, it could allow pressure creep in the fuel system.

c. **Reference Line** - Make sure the reference line is in place between the Megajector and the carburetor balance port. Make sure the hose is not kinked or restricted in any way and has no holes in it.

d. **Regulator** - Observe the regulator with the engine running to see if it is icing up. If it's icing up, refer to Engine Cooling System below.

e. **Engine Cooling System** - Make sure the engine cooling system is operating properly and there are no air locks in the system. Make sure the engine is operating at the proper temperature. Check the coolant hoses at the regulator and make sure they are both warm to verify proper coolant circulation.

If the fuel system is operating properly, the Megajector has an internal failure and must be replaced.

DTC 354 - Megajector delivery pressure lower than expected. This code will set if the difference between the Megajector actual pressure and the Megajector commanded pressure is less than -4.00 inches (10.1 cm) of H_2O.

a. **Fuel Supply** - Check fuel supply pressure at the megajector inlet fitting. Fuel supply pressure on LPG applications should be between 3-5" (7.6-12.7 cm) H_2O.

b. **Fuel System Hoses** - Make sure all fuel system hoses are in good condition. They should be clamped tight, free from kinks with no cuts, pinches, etc.

c. **Lockoff Solenoid** - Check the lock off to make sure it is opening properly. If it is not opening completely, it could cause low fuel pressure.

d. **Reference Line** - Make sure the reference line is in place between the Megajector and the carburetor balance port. Make sure the hose is not kinked or restricted in any way and has no holes in it.

e. **Regulator** - Observe the regulator with the engine running to see if it is icing up. If it's icing up, refer to Engine Cooling System below.

f. **Engine Cooling System** - Make sure the engine cooling system is operating properly and there are no air locks in the system. Make sure the engine is operating at the proper temperature. Check the coolant hoses at the regulator and make sure they are both warm to verify proper coolant circulation.

If the fuel system is operating properly, the Megajector has an internal failure and must be replaced.

DTC 355 - Megajector comm. lost. This codes will set if the communication (CAN link) between the Megajector and the EPM is not present.

a. **CAN Circuits** - Check CAN circuits for continuity and shorts to power or ground and for proper connections.

If the CAN circuits are ok and all wiring connections are good, the Megajector has an internal failure and must be replaced.

DTC 361 - Megajector voltage supply high.

a. **Voltage** - Check battery voltage. If the voltage at the battery is greater than 18 volts, either the charging system or the megajector is faulty.

DTC 362 - Megajector voltage supply low.

a. Voltage - Check battery voltage. If the voltage at the battery is less than 9.5 volts:

The battery is faulty

or

The charging system is faulty

or

The Megajector is faulty.

DTC 363 - Megajector Internal Actuator Fault Detection.

a. **Connections** - Check power, ground, and CAN circuits at the Megajector in addition to all electrical connections. Repair as necessary and retest.

b. **Megajector** - Megajector has an internal failure. Contact JLG Industries for further assistance.

DTC 364 - Megajector Internal Circuitry Fault Detection.

a. **Connections** - Check power, ground, and CAN circuits at the Megajector in addition to all electrical connections. Repair as necessary and retest.

b. **Megajector** - Megajector has an internal failure. Contact JLG Industries for further assistance.

DTC 365 - Megajector Internal Comm Fault Detection.

a. **Connections** - Check power, ground, and CAN circuits at the Megajector in addition to all electrical connections. Repair as necessary and retest.

Megajector - Megajector has an internal failure. Contact JLG Industries for further assistance.

Changing from Gasoline to LP Gas

⚠ CAUTION

IT IS POSSIBLE TO SWITCH FROM ONE FUEL SOURCE TO THE OTHER WITHOUT ALLOWING THE ENGINE TO STOP. EXTREME CARE MUST BE TAKEN AND THE FOLLOWING INSTRUCTIONS MUST BE FOLLOWED.

1. Start the engine from the ground control station.
2. Open the hand valve on the LP gas supply tank by turning counterclockwise.

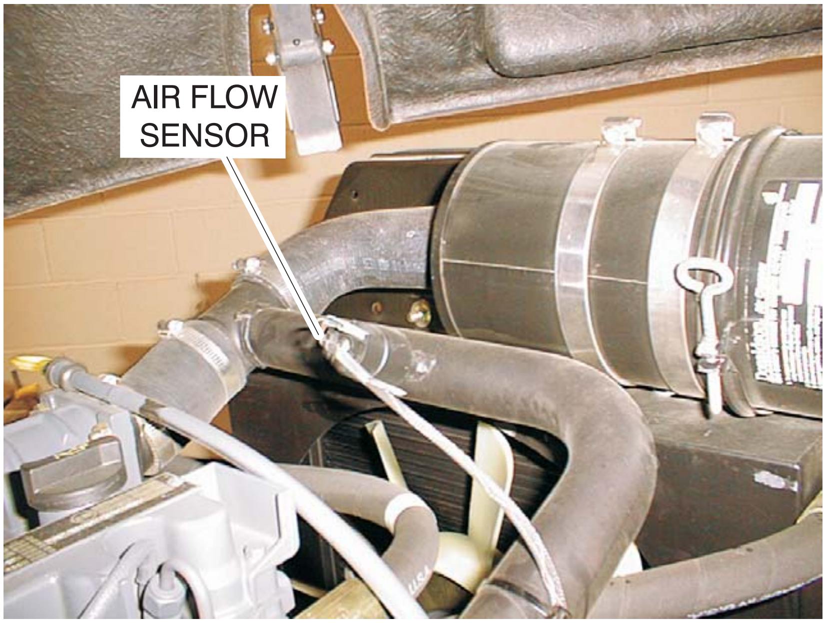
⚠ CAUTION

BE SURE ALL GASOLINE IS EXHAUSTED BEFORE SWITCHING TO LP GAS.

3. While the engine is operating, place the three position LPG/Gasoline switch at the ground control station to the center “off” position. Allow the engine to operate without load, until the engine begins to “stumble” from lack of gasoline.
4. As the engine begins to “stumble”, place the switch to the LPG position, allowing the LP fuel to be sent to the fuel regulator.

Changing from LP Gas to Gasoline

1. With engine operating on LP under a no load condition, throw the LPG/Gasoline switch at the ground control station to the “Gasoline” position.
2. If engine “stumbles” because of lack of gasoline, place the switch to the LPG position until engine regains smoothness, then return the switch to the Gasoline position. Repeat as necessary until engine runs smoothly on gasoline.
3. Close the hand valve on the LP gas supply tank by turning clockwise.



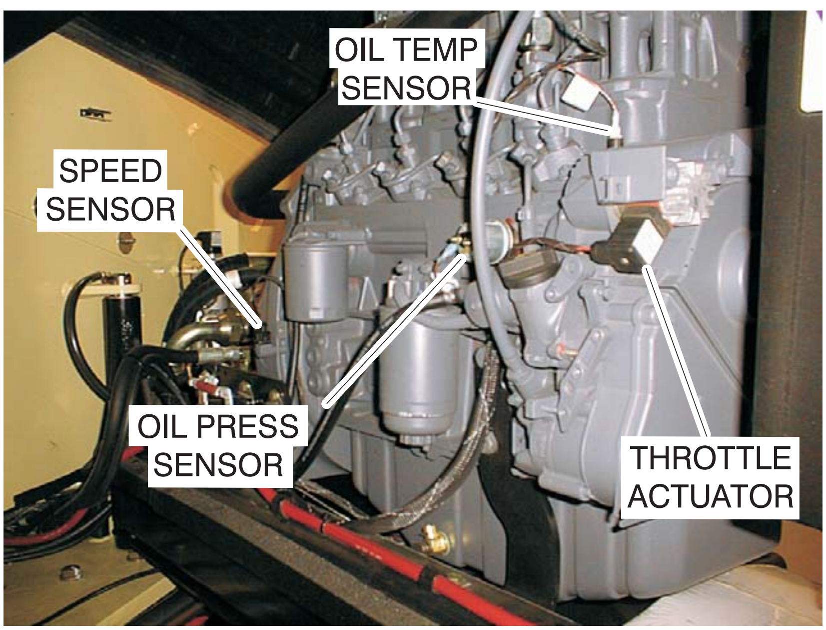
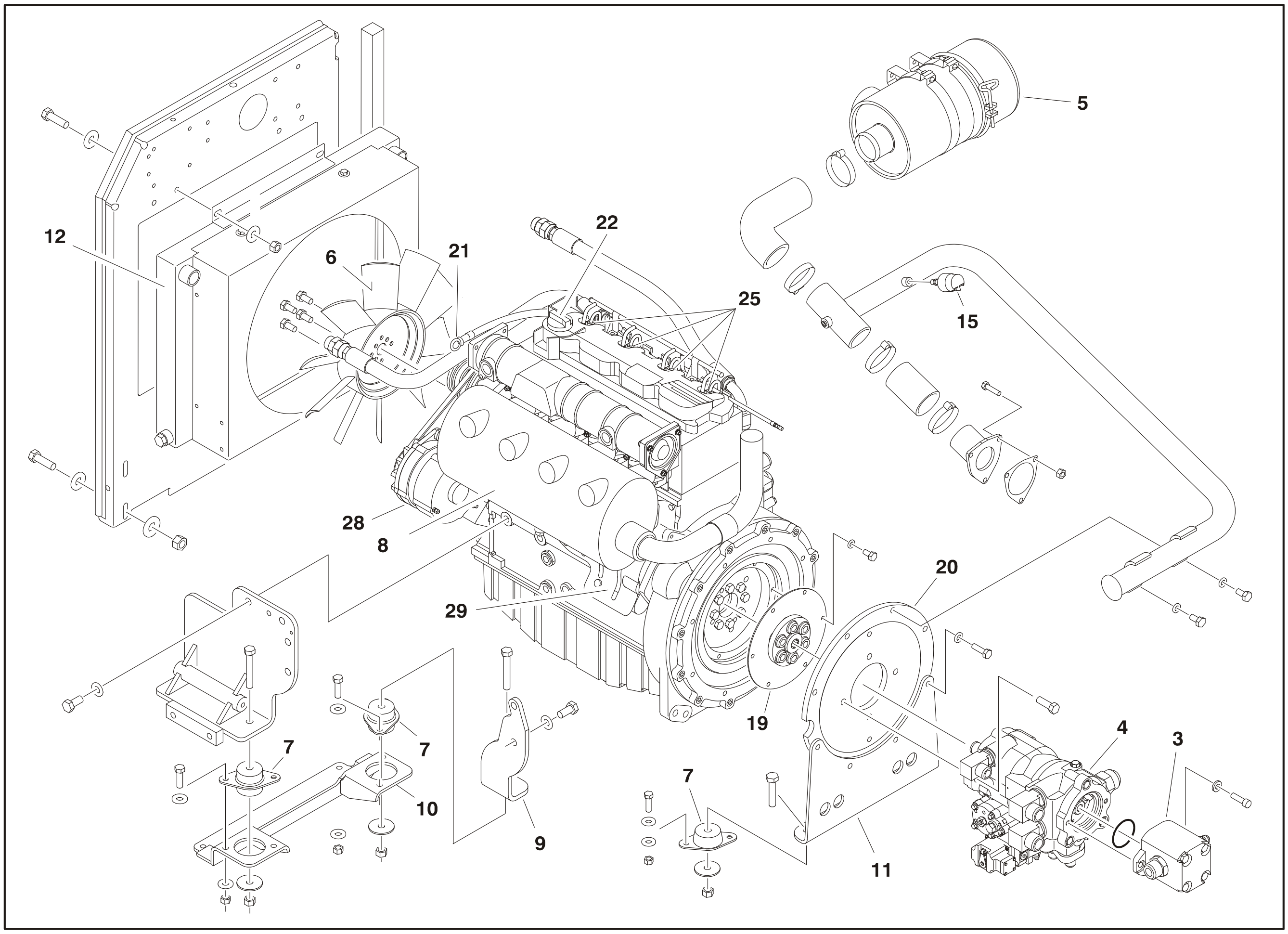
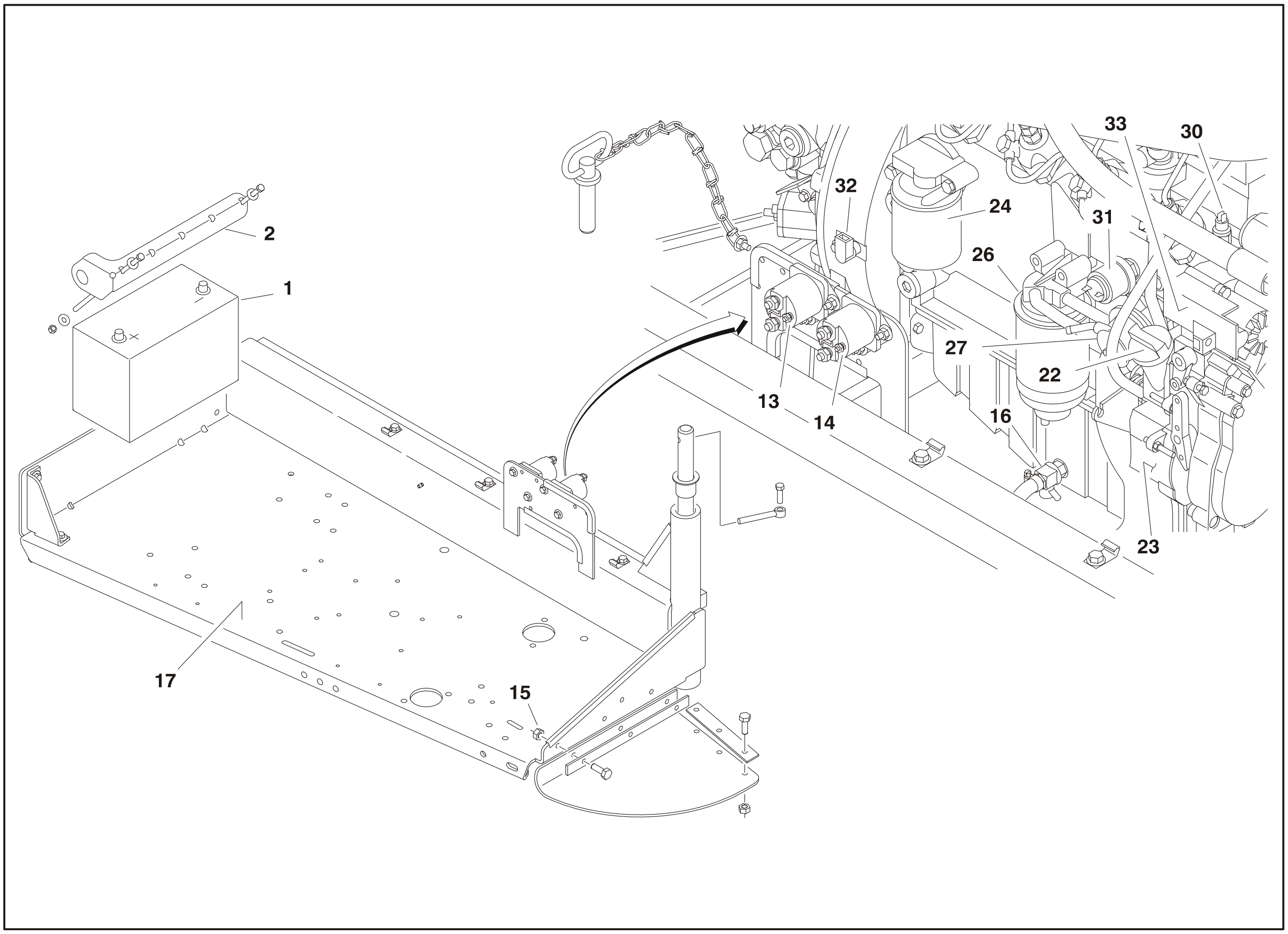


Figure 3-55. Deutz Sensors for JLG Control System



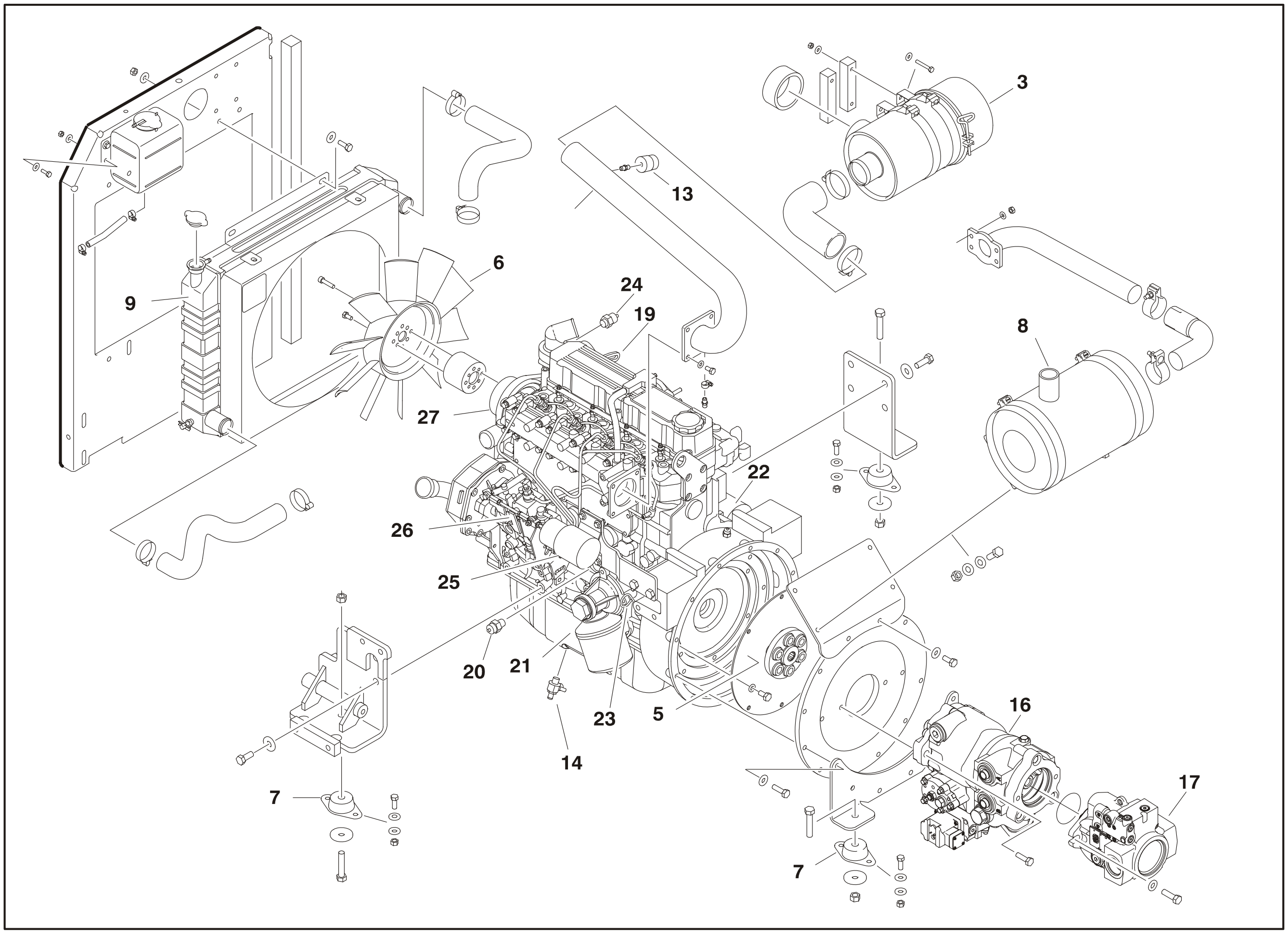
1. Battery
2. Battery Holddown
3. Gear Pump
4. Piston Pump
5. Air Cleaner
6. Fan
7. Motor Mount
8. Muffler
9. Front Right Engine Mounting Plate
10. Front Bottom Engine Mounting Plate
11. Rear Engine Mounting Plate
12. Radiator
13. Starter Relay
14. Aux Pump Relay
15. Restriction Indicator
16. Oil Drain Valve

Figure 3-56. Deutz Engine Installation - Sheet 1 of 2



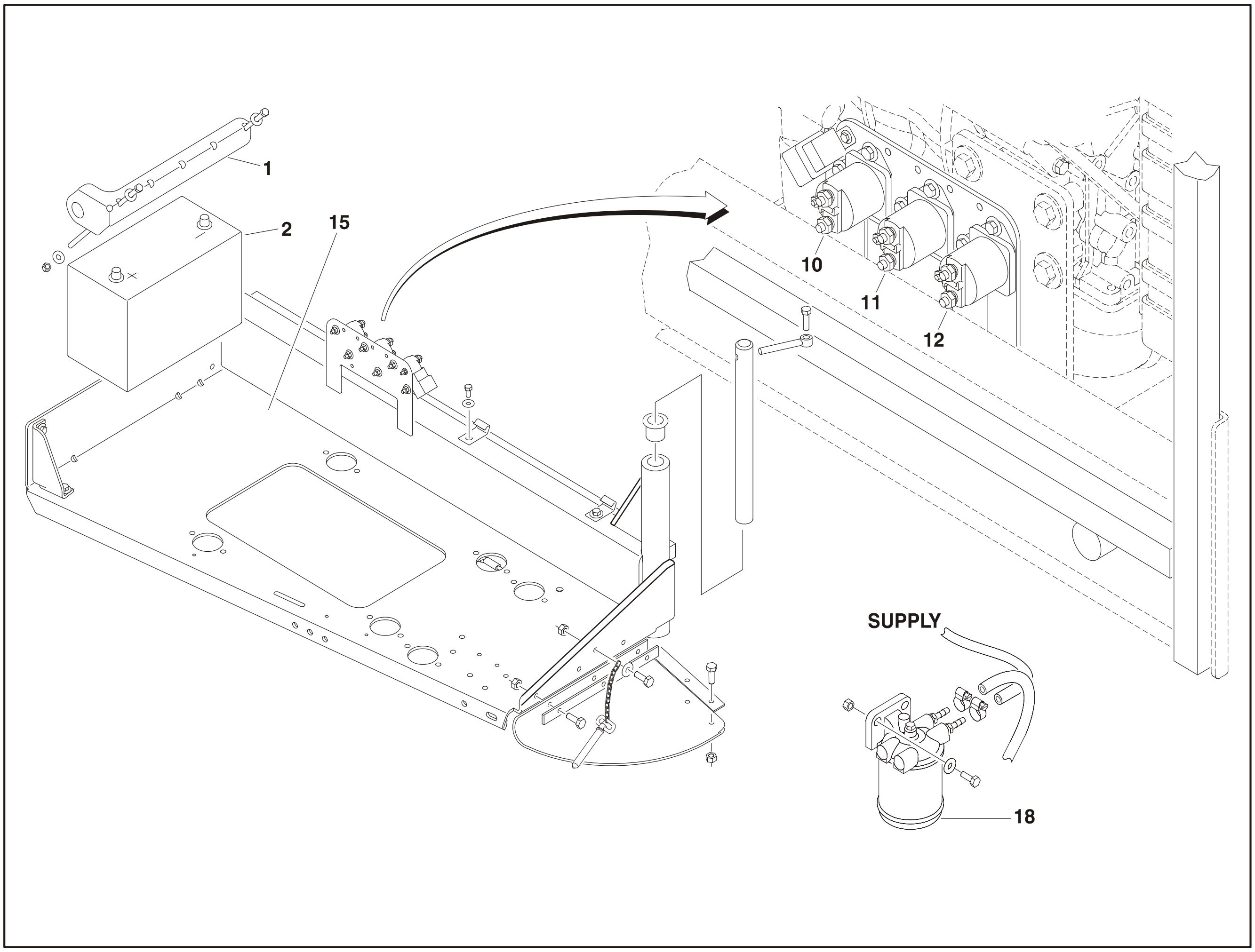
17. Engine Tray	22. Filler Cap	26. Fuel Filter	30. Temperature Sender
18. Engine Mounting Plate	23. Oil Lube Pump	27. Fuel Supply Pump	31. Oil Pressure Sensor
19. Hayes Coupling	24. Oil Filter	28. Alternator	32. Speed Sensor
20. Pump Adapter Plate	25. Injector Pump	29. Starter	33. Throttle Actuator
21. Dipstick			

Figure 3-57. Deutz Engine Installation - Sheet 2 of 2



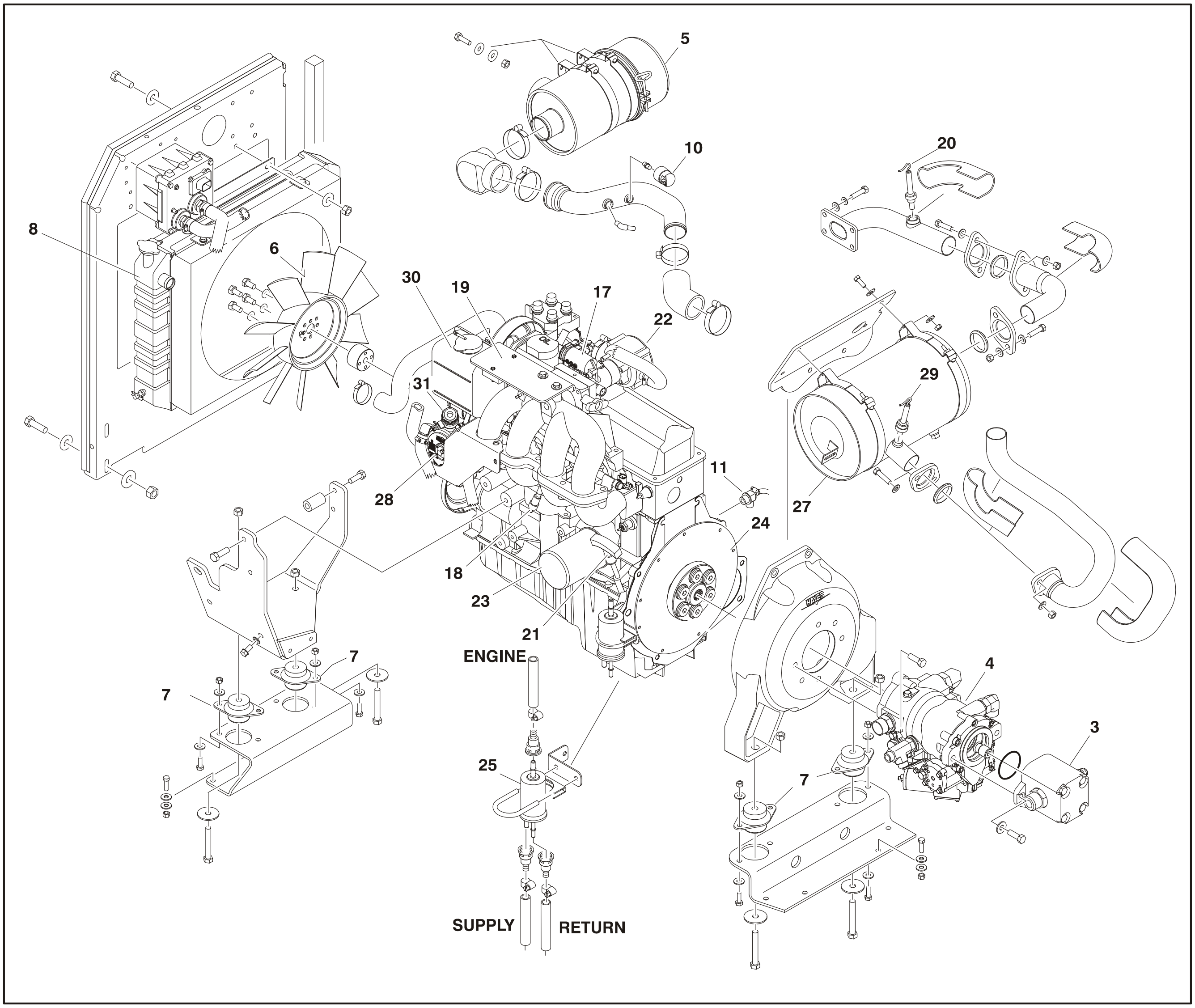
1. Battery Hold-down
2. Battery
3. Air Cleaner
4. Coolant Overflow Container
5. Pump Coupling
6. Fan
7. Engine Mount
8. Muffler
9. Radiator
10. Starter Relay
11. Glow Plug Relay
12. Aux Power Relay
13. Restriction Indicator
14. Oil Drain Valve

Figure 3-58. Caterpillar Engine Installation - Sheet 1 of 2



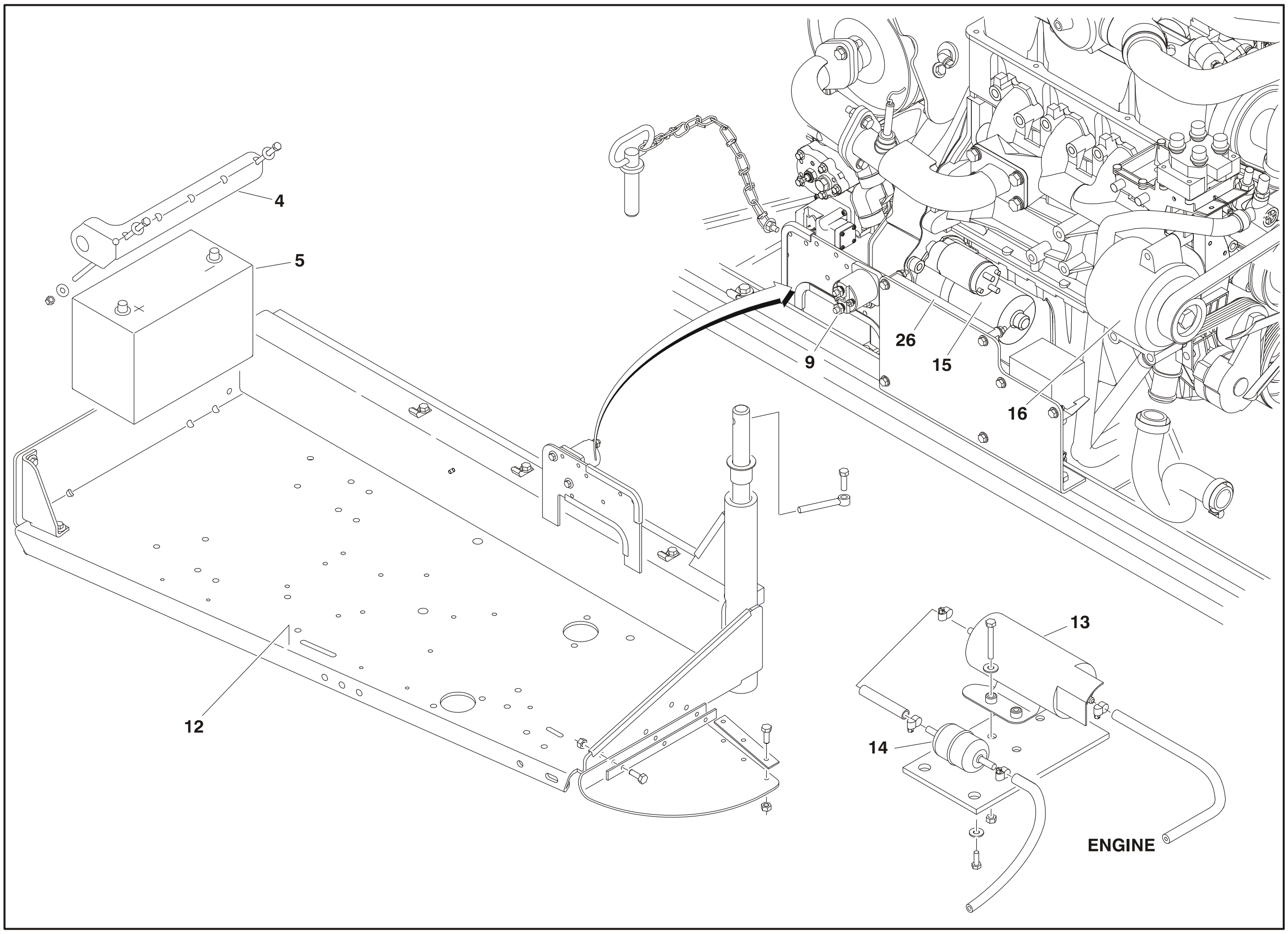
15. Engine Tray	22. Starter
16. Piston Pump	23. Dipstick
17. Gear Pump	24. Engine Temperature Sender
18. Fuel Filter	25. Throttle Actuator
19. Alternator	26. Fuel Supply Pump
20. Oil Pressure Switch	27. Water Pump
21. Oil Filter	

Figure 3-59. Caterpillar Engine Installation - Sheet 2 of 2



1. Battery Hold-down	5. Air Cleaner	9. Aux Power Relay	13. Fuel Pump & Isolator
2. Battery	6. Fan	10. Restriction Indicator	14. Fuel Filter
3. Piston Pump	7. Engine Mount	11. Oil Drain Valve	15. Starter
4. Load-Sensing Pump	8. Radiator	12. Engine Tray	16. Alternator w/Regulator

Figure 3-60. Ford Engine Installation - Sheet 1 of 2



17. Throttle Actuator
18. Air Temperature Sensor
19. MAP Sensor
20. EGR Sensor
21. Dipstick
22. Mixer Assembly
23. Oil Filter
24. Pump Coupling
25. Pressure Regulator
26. EPM Module
27. Muffler
28. LP Regulator
29. EGR Sensor
30. Overflow Bottle
31. Starter

Figure 3-61. Ford Engine Installation - Sheet 2 of 2

3.16 DEUTZ EMR 2 (S/N 84827 TO PRESENT)

The EMR2 consists of the sensors, the control unit and the actuator. Engine-side controls as well as the JLG Control System are connected by means of separate cable harnesses to the EMR control unit.

The sensors attached to the engine provide the electronics in the control unit with all the relevant physical parameters In accordance with the information of the current condition of the engine and the preconditions (throttle position etc.), the EMR2 controls an actuator that operates the control rod of the injection pump and thus doses the fuel quantity in accordance with the performance requirements.

The exact position of the regulating rod is reported back and, if necessary, is corrected, by means of the control rod travel sensor, situated together with the rotation magnets in a housing of the actuator.

The EMR2 is equipped with safety devices and measures in the hardware and software in order to ensure emergency running (Limp home) functions.

In order to switch the engine off, the EMR2 is switched in a de-energized fashion over the ignition switch. A strong spring in the actuator presses the control rod in the de-energized condition into the zero position. As a redundancy measure, an additional solenoid serves for switching off and this, independently of the actuator, also moves the control rod in the de-energized condition into the zero position.

After the programming, that is carried out over the ISO9141 interface, the EMR2 is possesses a motor-specific data set and this is then fixedly assigned to the engine. Included in this are the various application cases as well as the customer's wishes regarding a particular scope of function.

Each EMR2 module is matched by serial number to the engine. Modules cannot be swapped between engines.

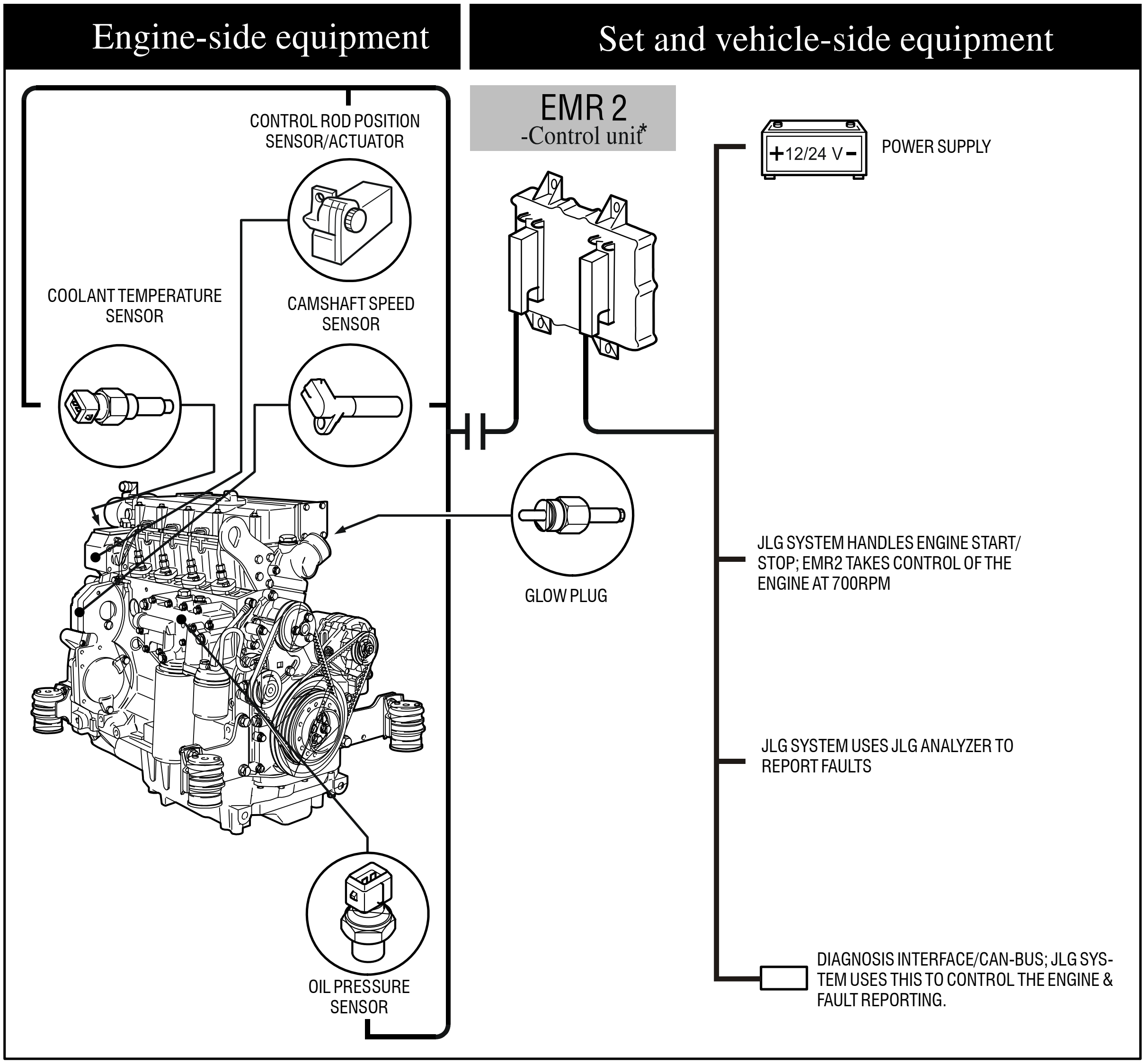


Figure 3-62. EMR 2 Engine Side Equipment

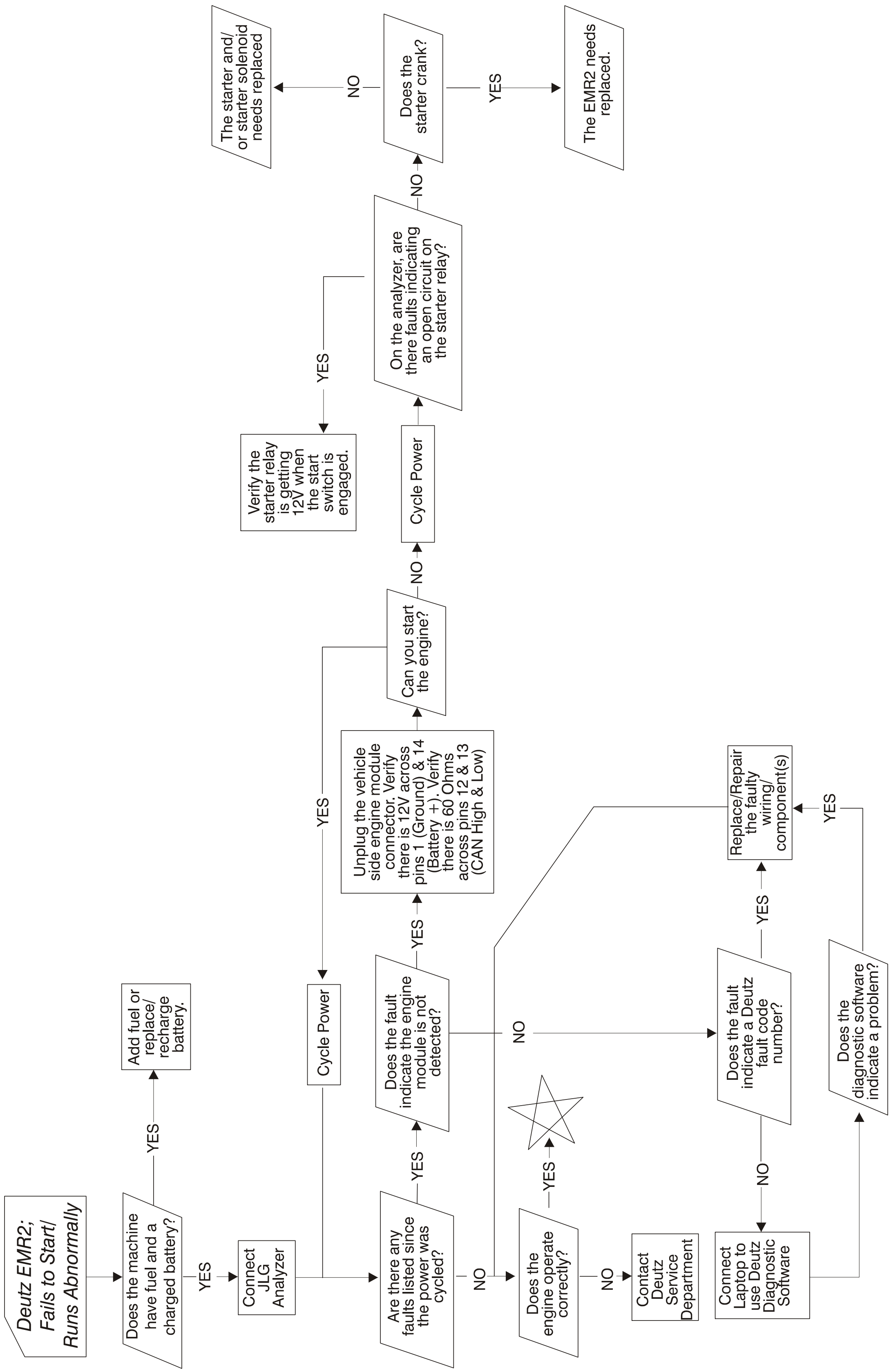


Figure 3-63. Deutz EMR 2 Troubleshooting Flow Chart

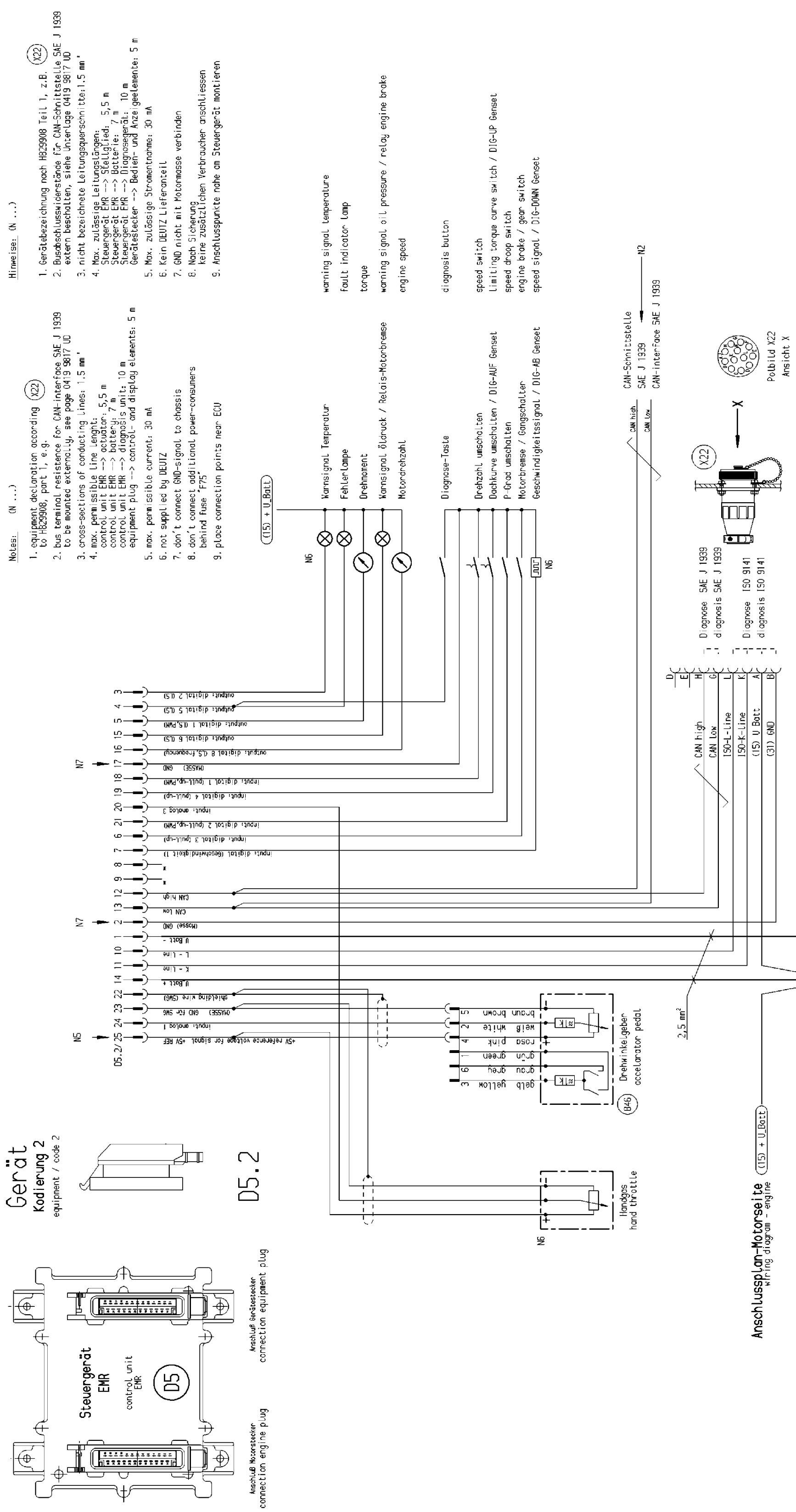


Figure 3-64. Deutz EMR 2 Vehicle Side Connection Diagram

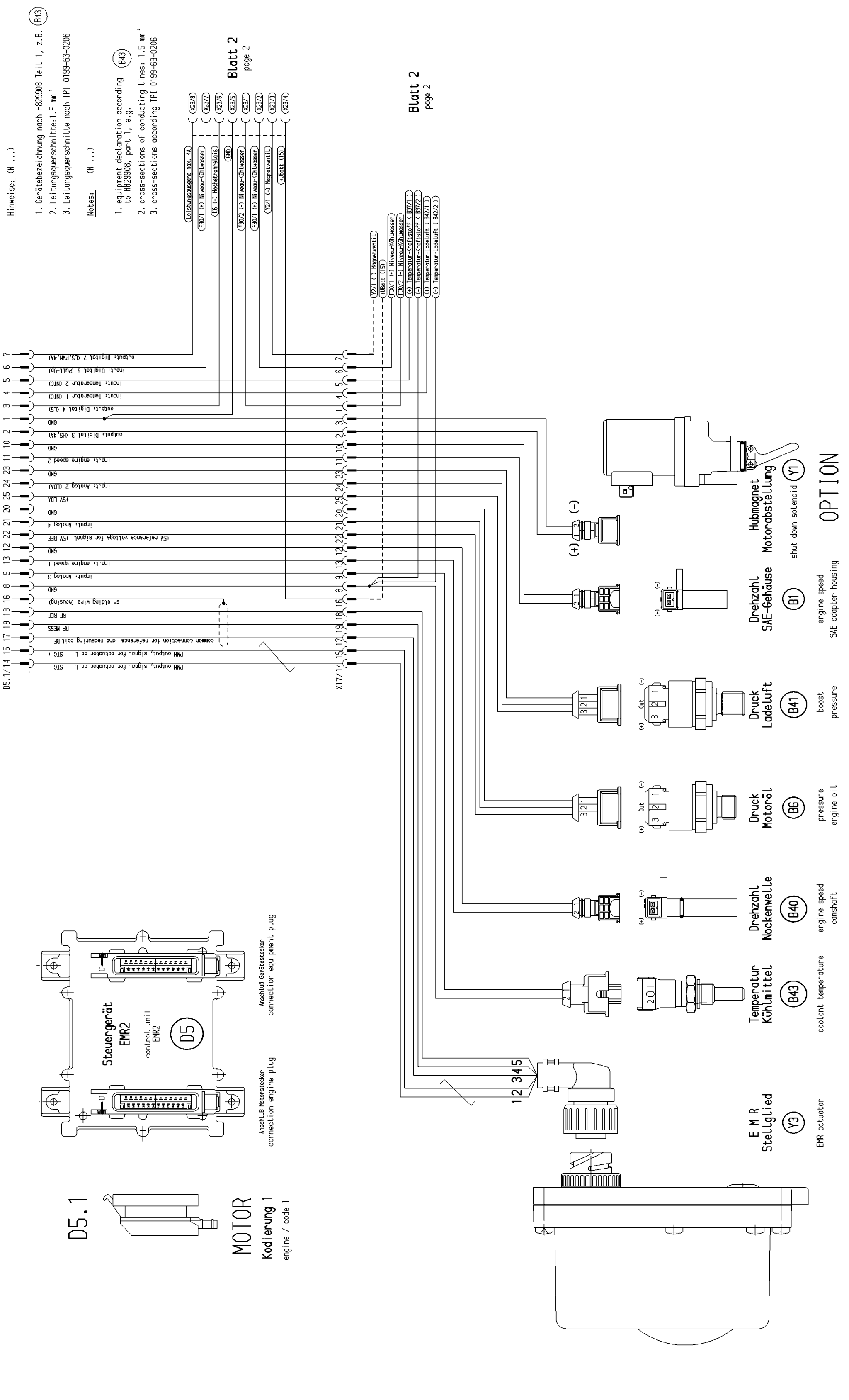


Figure 3-65. Deutz EMR 2 Engine Side Connection Diagram - Sheet 1 of 2

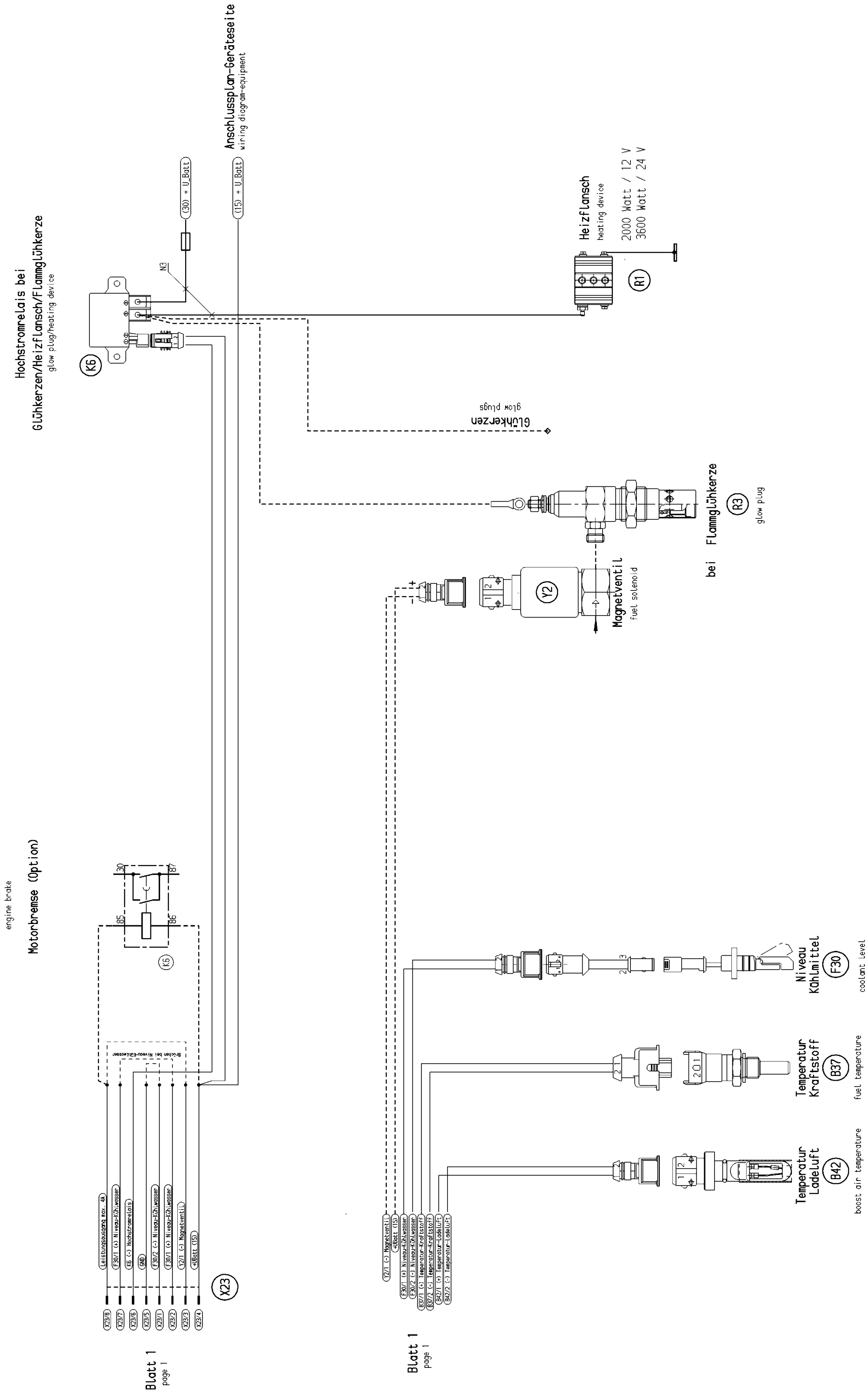
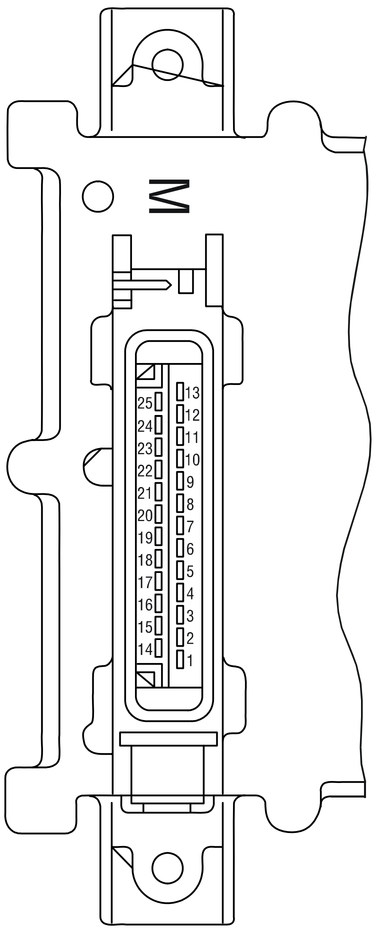


Figure 3-66. Deutz EMR 2 Engine Side Connection Diagram - Sheet 2 of 2

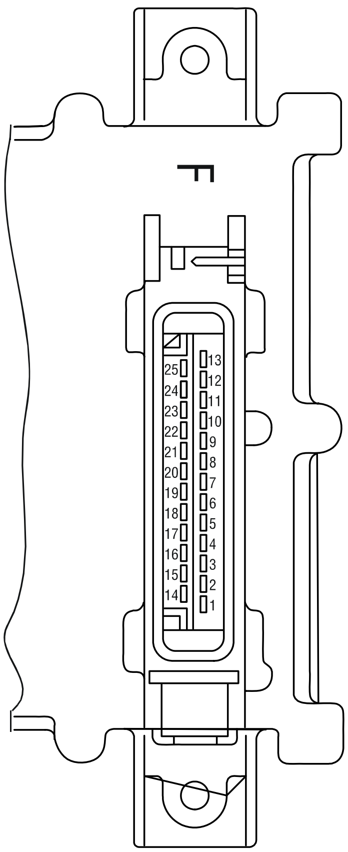


Pin No.	Designation	Description
1	Reserve	Reserve
2	Output: digital 3	Digital output for solenoid 1)
3	Output: digital 4	For heating flange (optional)/ glow plug (optional)
4	Input (optional) Temp 1	Fuel temperature 2)
5	Input (optional) Temp 2	Charge air temperature
6	Input (optional) DigIn 5	Coolant level / oil level
7	Output: PWM2/digital 6	
8	GND	Reference potential for analog signal at pin 9
9	Input: analog 7	Analog input for Coolant temperature sensor (NTC)
10	GND	Reference potential for analog signal at pin 11
11	Multi-function input: speed 2/DigIn 2	Digital input second engine speed (crankshaft) (optional) and speed signal (optional)
12	GND	Reference potential for analog signal at pin 13
13	Input: speed 1	Digital input first engine speed (camshaft)
14	STG -	PWM output, signal for actuator coil
15	STG +	PWM output, signal for actuator coil
16	Screen	Screening regulating rod travel sensor (for lines 17, 18, 19)
17	RF -	General connection for reference and measuring coil
18	RF REF	Analog input, reference signal of the reference coil
19	RF MESS	Analog input, measuring signal of the measuring coil
20	GND	Reference potential for signal at pin 21
21	Input: analog 4/digital 9	Analog input 4 (sensor signal oil pressure sensor) or digital input 9
22	+5 V REF	+5 V Reference voltage for signal at pin 21 (max. 15 mA)
23	GND	Reference potential for signal at pin 24
24	Input: analog 2/digital 7	Analog input 2 (sensor signal charge air) or digital input 7
25	+5 V LDA	+5 V Reference potential for signal at pin 24 (max. 15 mA)

1) For continuous power: < 4 A

2) Corresponds to special function"fuel temperature compensation at the EMR (0211 2571)

Figure 3-67. EMR 2 Engine Plug Pin Identification



Pin-No.	Designation	Description
1	U Batt -	Negative pole at battery (clamp 31)
2	GND	Reference potential for signal
3	Output: digital 2	PWM or digital output, various functions
4	Input / output: DigInOut	Fault lamp and diagnostic button
5	Output: PWM 1/Dig 1	PWM or digital output, various functions
6	Multi-function input: DigIn 3	Genset applications/gear shift/motor brake
7	Input: digital 10/velocity	Speed signal (tacho input)
8	NC	Not occupied
9	NC	Not occupied
10	L-line	Serial ISO 9141 interface
11	K-line	Serial ISO 9141 interface
12	CAN high	Interface for CAN-Bus
13	CAN low	Interface for CAN-Bus
14	U Batt +	Positive pole for battery (clamp 15)
15	Output: digital 5	Digital output, various functions
16	Output: digital 7/Frequency	Frequency, PWM or digital output, various functions
17	Ground	Reference potential for signal at pins 18, 19 and 21
18	Input: digital 1 / PWM 1	PWM 1 or digital input 1, various functions
19	Multi-function input: DigIn 4	Performance curve switching/genset applications
20	Multi-function input: digital 8 / analog 3	Hand hand throttle/genset applications, Digital (8) or analog input (3)
21	Input: digital 2 / PWM 2	PWM 2 or digital input 2, various functions
22	Screen	Screening (e.g. for lines hand throttle or PWG)
23	GND	Reference potential for signal at pin 24
24	Input: analog 1 / digital 6	Analog input 1 (pedal value sensor, PWG) or digital input 6
25	+5 V REF	+5 V Reference voltage for signal at pin 24

Figure 3-68. EMR 2 Vehicle Plug Pin Identification

Fault group	Fault no. (in SERDIA)	Fault locality/ Fault description	SPN	FMI	Cause	Remarks	Help
Zero error display	-	No faults	524287	31	No **active** faults present		
Revolutions / speed acquisition	01	Speed sensor 1	190	8	Sensor failure. Distance from gear too far. Additional fault impulses. Cable joint interrupted.	Governor in emergency operation (if sensor 2 available). Emergency switch-off (if sensor 2 not available or failed). Governor in emergency operation (with sensor 1) Emergency switch-off (if sensor 1 not available or failed).	Check distance. Check cable connection. Check sensor and replace if required.
	03	Speed sensor	84	8	Tacho failed. Additional fault impulses. Cable connection interrupted.	Governor in emergency operation.	Check cable connection and Tacho. Replace if required.
	04	Excess speed switch-off	190	0	Speed was/is in excess of limit.e.	Engine stop.	Check parameter (21). Check speed settings.
					Check PID setting. Check rods. Check actuator and replace if required. Check cable to actuator (impulse on incorrect speed). Check No. of teeth. For vehicles check for possible thrust mode.		
Sensors	07	Charge air pressure	102	2	Fault at corresponding sensor entry (e.g. short circuit or cable break).	With failure of the sensor, the associated monitoring function is de-activated.	Check sensor cable. Check sensor and replace if required. Check fault limits for sensor.
	08	Oil pressure	100	2			
	09	Coolant temperature	110	2			
	10	Charge air temperature	105	2			
	11	Fuel temperature	174	2			

NOTE: SID is equal to 512. To get SPN #, add 512 + number. For example, SID 254 would be 512+254 or an SPN of 766.

Figure 3-69. EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 1 of 5

Fault group	Fault no. (in SERDIA)	Fault locality/ Fault description	SPN	FMI	Cause	Remarks	Help
Functional fault warning	30	Oil pressure warning	100	1	Oil pressure below speed-dependent warning line characteristic	Fault message (disappears when oil pressure is again above recovery limit). After a delay time - fill limitation.	Check engine (oil level, oil pump). Check oil pressure sensor and cable. Check oil pressure warning line characteristic.
	31	Coolant temperature warning	110	0	Coolant temperature has exceeded warning level.	Fault message (disappears when coolant temperature again drops below recovery level). After a delay time - fill limitation.	Check coolant. Check coolant temperature sensor and cable.
	32	Charge air temperature warning	105	0	Charge air temperature has exceeded warning level.	Fault message (disappears when charge air temperature gain drops below recovery level). After a delay time - fill limitation.	Check charge air. Check charge air-temperature sensor and cable.
	34	Coolant level warning	111	1	Switch input "Low coolant level" is active.	Fault message.	Check coolant level. Check coolant level sensor and cable.
	35	Speed warning (with thrust mode operation).	SID 190	14	revolutions was/is above (top) revolution speed limit. "Thrust mode" function is active.		Check parameters. Check speed settings.
					Check PID setting. Check rods. Check actuator and replace if required. Check cable to actuator. Check speed sensor (impulses on incorrect speed). Check No. of teeth. For vehicles check for possible thrust mode.		
	36	Fuel temperature warning	174	0	Fuel-temperature has exceeded warning level.	Fault message (disappears when fuel temperature again drops below recovery level).	Check fuel. Check fuel temperature sensor and cable.

NOTE: SID is equal to 512. To get SPN #, add 512 + number. For example, SID 254 would be 512+254 or an SPN of 766.

Figure 3-70. EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 2 of 5

Fault group	Fault no. (in SERDIA)	Fault locality/ Fault description	SPN	FMI	Cause	Remarks	Help
Functional fault, switch-off	42	Charge air temperature switch-off	105	0	Charge air temperature has exceeded switch-off limit.	Emergency stop	Check charge air. Check charge air-temperature sensor and cable. Check switch-off limit.
	44	Coolant level switch-off	111	1	Switch input “Low coolant level” is active.	Emergency stop. Start lock.	Check coolant level. Check coolant level sensor and cable.
Actuator	50	Feedback	SID 24	12	Actuator not connected. Fault in actuator confirmation.	Emergency switch-off. Actuator cannot be operated.	Check actuator, replace if required. Check cable, check fault limits for “Confirmation”.
	52	Reference feedback	SID 24	13			Check actuator, replace if required. Check cable, check fault limits for “Rifeness confirmation”.
	53	Control travel difference	SID 23	7	Injection pump/actuator jammed or not connected. Difference between nominal/actual control travel is > 10 % of the overall control path.	Fault message (disappears when difference is < 10 %).	Check actuator/actuator rods / injection pump, replace if required. Check actuator cable.
	59	Auto calibration BOSCH-EDC pumps faulty operation	SID 23	13	No automatic actuator equalization possible. Incorrect input of the actuator reference values.	Engine stop / start lock. Governor cannot be taken into use. EDC actuator calibration required.	Check actuator and replaced if required. Check feedback cable. Check fault limits and reference values of the feedback. Program the fault limits for feedback, save values. Switch ignition off and on again.Check again. If faulty, inform DEUTZ-Service and carry out automatic equalization again. Set fault limits again.

NOTE: SID is equal to 512. To get SPN #, add 512 + number. For example, SID 254 would be 512+254 or an SPN of 766.

Figure 3-71. EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 3 of 5

Fault group	Fault no. (in SERDIA)	Fault locality/ Fault description	SPN	FMI	Cause	Remarks	Help
Hardware inputs/ outputs	60	Digital output 3 (Switch-off solenoid, pin M 2)	SID 51	2	Fault (short circuit / cable break) at digital output.	Driver level is switched off.	Check cable of digital output (cable break or short circuit).
	62	Digital output 6, pin M 7	SID 60	2		Fault message.	
	63	Excess voltage switch-off solenoid	SID 51	6			
	67	Error Hand Setp1	91	11			
	68	Error CAN Setp1	898	2			
Communi-cation	70	CAN-Bus controller	SID 231	12	CAN-controller for CAN-bus is faulty. Fault removal despite re-initialising continuously not possible	Application-dependent.	Check CAN connection, terminating resistor (see Chapter 12.4), Check control unit.
	71	CAN interface SAE J 1939	SID 231	9	Overflow in input buffer or a transmission cannot be placed on the bus.		
	74	Cable break, short circuit or bus-error	SID 231	14			Check CAN connection, cable connection. Check sensor and replace if required.
Memory	76	Parameter programming (write EEPROM)	SID 253	12	Fault in parameter programming in the governor fixed value memory.	Emergency switch-off. engine cannot be started.	Switch ignition off and on again. Check again. If faulty inform DEUTZ Service
	77	Cyclic program test	SID 240	12	Constant monitoring of program memory shows error (so-called "Flash-test").		
	78	Cyclic RAM test	SID 254	2	Constant monitoring of working memory shows error.		Note values of parameters (3895 and 3896). Switch ignition off and on again. Check again. If faulty inform DEUTZ Service.

NOTE: SID is equal to 512. To get SPN #, add 512 + number. For example, SID 254 would be 512+254 or an SPN of 766.

Figure 3-72. EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 4 of 5

Fault group	Fault no. (in SERDIA)	Fault locality/ Fault description	SPN	FMI	Cause	Remarks	Help
Control unit hardware	80	Power supply (Actuator)	SID 254	2	Power supply for actuator not in the permissible range.	Fault message (disappears when power again in the normal range).	Switch ignition off and on again. Check again. If faulty inform DEUTZ Service.
	83	Reference voltage 1	SID 254	2	Reference voltage for actuator not in the permissible range.	Fault message (disappears when power again in the normal range). Auxiliary value 5 V	Check voltage supply. Switch ignition off and on again. Check again. If faulty inform DEUTZ Service.
	84	Reference voltage 2	SID 254	2			
	85	Reference voltage 4	SID 254	2			
	86	Internal temperature	171	12	Internal temperature for control unit not in permissible range.	Fault message (disappears when power again in the normal range).	Switch ignition off and on again. Check again. If faulty inform DEUTZ Service.
	87	Atmospheric pressure	108	12	Atmospheric pressure not in permissible range.	Fault message (disappears when power again in normal range). Atmospheric pressure monitoring function de-activated.	
Program logic	90	Parameter fault (EEPROM retrieval or checksum faulty).	SID 253	2	No data found or checksum of data is faulty (note: fault only occurs during setting of parameter / saving or reset.).	Engine cannot be started.	Check data for correct settings. Save parameters. Switch ignition off and on again. Check again. If faulty inform DEUTZ Service.
	93	Stack overflow	SID 240	2	Internal calculation fault (so-called “Stack overflow” fault).	Emergency switch-off. Engine cannot be started.	Note parameters (3897 and 3898). Switch ignition off and on again. Check again. If faulty inform DEUTZ Service.
	94	Internal fault	SID 254	2			

NOTE: SID is equal to 512. To get SPN #, add 512 + number. For example, SID 254 would be 512+254 or an SPN of 766.

Figure 3-73. EMR2 Fault Codes - Sheet 5 of 5

3.17 BIO FUEL IN DEUTZ ENGINES

General

Use of bio fuels is permitted for the compact engines made by DEUTZ.

Distillate fuels with residue oil percentages or mixed fuels may not be used in DEUTZ compact engines.

The DEUTZ vehicle engines are designed for diesel fuels in accordance with EN 590 with a cetane number of at least 51. DEUTZ engines for mobile machinery are designed for a cetane number of at least 45. When using fuels of a low cetane number, disturbing white smoke and ignition misfires are to be expected under some circumstances.

A cetane number of at least 40 is permissible for the US market, therefore special engine models have been developed to avoid starting difficulties, extreme white smoke or increased hydrocarbon emissions (EPA specification - US EPA REGULATIONS FOR LARGE NONROAD COMPRESSION-IGNITION ENGINES).

If the white smoke behavior is unacceptable when using a very low cetane number, the use of ignition improvers is to be recommended as a later remedial measure.

The certification measurements for compliance with the legal emission limits are carried out with the test fuels prescribed by law. These correspond to the diesel fuels in accordance with EN 590 and ASTM D 975. No emission values are guaranteed with the other fuels described. It is the obligation of the owner to check the permission for use of the fuels in accordance with regional regulations.

Bio Fuel

PERMITTED BIO-DIESEL FUELS

Originally only rape seed oil methylester (RME) was sold as a bio-diesel fuel in Europe but fatty acid methylester (FAME) based on other oils have come onto the market increasingly in recent years. However, with the latter there is a risk that the limit values of EN 14214 are not kept in the field. Anyone who uses bio-diesel fuel in DEUTZ engines must therefore choose his supplier very carefully and have him guarantee compliance with the EN 14214 limit values. Since experience has shown that rape seed oil methylester (RME) exceeds the limit values less often that other esters, it is expressly recommended to use only rape seed oil methyester. DEUTZ customers in Germany can additionally ensure the quality by buying bio-diesel fuel with an AGQM certificate (Arbeitsgemeinschaft Qualitäts-Management Biodiesel e.V.).

The use of US bio-diesel based on soy oil methylester is only permissible in mixtures with diesel fuel with a bio-diesel part of a max. 20 weight-%. The US bio-diesel used for the mixture must comply with the ASTM D6751-07a (B100) standard.

APPROVED ENGINES

The 912, 913, 914, 1011, 2011, 1012, 2012, 1013, 2013, 413 and 513 series are approved for bio-diesel from year of manufacture 1993 under compliance with the basic conditions specified below.

BASIC CONDITIONS TO BE OBSERVED

- A power loss of 5-9 % in relation to diesel fuel in accordance with EN 590 is possible due to the lower heating value. Blocking of the fuel injector is not allowed.
- The lubricating oil quality must correspond to TR 0199-99-3002. The lubricating oil change interval must be halved in relation to operation with diesel fuel in accordance with EN 590.
- Standstills of longer than 4 to 6 weeks must be avoided with bio-diesel. Otherwise the engine must be started and stopped with diesel fuel.
- Bio-diesels can be mixed with normal diesel fuel but the basic conditions described in this subsection apply for mixtures. Mixtures with up to 5 % (m/m) bio-diesel (B5) which have recently been on sale at European fuel stations are excepted. These fuels must be treated like normal diesel fuels because EN 590 expressly permits adding up to 5 % (m/m) bio-diesel in accordance with EN 14214.
- Approx. 30-50 hours after changing over from diesel fuel to bio-diesel, the fuel filter should be changed as a preventive measure to avoid a drop in performance due to clogged fuel filters. Deposited fuel ageing products are dissolved by bio-diesel and transported into the fuel filter. They should not be changed immediately but after approx. 30 to 50 hours because the dissolving of dirt takes a certain amount of time.

PLANT OIL

NOTICE

PURE PLANT OILS (E.G. RAPE SEED OIL, SOY OIL, PALM OIL) ARE NOT CLASSIFIED AS BIO-DIESEL AND EXHIBIT PROBLEMATICAL PROPERTIES FOR DIESEL ENGINE OPERATION (STRONG TENDENCY TO COKE, RISK OF PISTON SEIZURE, EXTREMELY HIGH VISCOSITY, POOR EVAPORATION BEHAVIOR.

The conversion of DEUTZ engines to rape seed oil fuel operation with conversion kits and modified tanks systems of various manufacturers is not allowed and leads to loss of warranty rights.

Biological Contamination In Fuels

SYMPTOMS

The following symptoms may indicate that a fuel tank is contaminated by micro-organisms:

- Internal tank corrosion,
- Filter blockage and the associated loss of power due to gel-like deposits on the fuel filter (especially after long standstills)

CAUSE

Micro-organisms (bacteria, yeasts, funguses) can form bio-sludge under unfavorable conditions (favoured particularly by heat and water).

Penetration by water is usually caused by condensation of the water in the air. Water does not dissolve in fuel so that the penetrating water collects at the bottom of the tank. The bacteria and funguses grow in the watery phase, at the phase boundary to the fuel phase, from which they draw their nutrition. There is an increased risk especially with bio-diesel (FAME).

PREVENTIVE MEASURES

- Keep the storage tank clean, regular cleaning of the tank by specialist companies
- Installation of fuel pre-filters with water traps, especially in countries with frequently fluctuating fuel qualities and high percentage of water.

If the fuel system and storage tank have already been attacked by micro-organisms. The biocide must be dosed according to the manufacturer's specifications.

- Avoid direct exposure of the storage tank to sunlight
- Use smaller storage tanks with corresponding low dwell times of the stored fuel

FUEL ADDITIVES

The use of fuel additives is not permitted. The flow improvers mentioned above are an exception. Use of unsuitable additives will result in loss of warranty.

3.18 GM ENGINE GENERAL MAINTENANCE

Maintenance of the Drive Belt

The serpentine drive belt utilizes a spring loaded tensioner which keeps the belt properly adjusted. The drive belt is an integral part of the cooling and charging systems and should be inspected frequently.

When inspecting the belts check for:

- Cracks or breaks
- Chunking of the belt
- Splits
- Material hanging from the belt
- Glazing and hardening
- Damaged or improperly aligned pulleys
- Improperly performing tensioner

Check the belt tensioner by pressing down on the midway point of the longest stretch between pulleys. The belt should not depress beyond 1/2 inch (13mm). If the depression is more than allowable adjust the tension.

NOTICE

THE ENGINE MANUFACTURER DOES NOT RECOMMEND THE USE OF "BELT DRESSING" OR "ANTI SLIPPING AGENTS" ON THE DRIVE BELT.

Engine Electrical System Maintenance

The engine electrical system incorporates computers and microprocessors to control the engine ignition, fuel control, and emissions. Due to the sensitivity of the computers to good electrical connections periodic inspection of the electrical wiring is necessary. When inspecting the electrical system use the following:

- Check and clean the battery terminal connections and insure the connections are tight
- Check the battery for any cracks or damage to the case
- Check the Positive and Negative battery cables for any corrosion build up, rubbing or chafing, check connection on the chassis to insure they are tight
- Check the entire engine wire harness for rubbing chafing, cuts or damaged connections, repair if necessary
- Check all wire harness connectors to insure they are fully seated and locked
- Check ignition coil and spark plug cables for hardening, cracking, chafing, separation, split boot covers and proper fit
- Replace spark plugs at the proper intervals as prescribed in the engine manufacturer's manual
- Check to make sure all electrical components are fitted securely
- Check the ground and platform control stations to insure all warning indicator lights are functioning

Checking/Filling Engine Oil Level

NOTICE

AN OVERFILLED CRANKCASE (OIL LEVEL OVER THE SPECIFIED FULL MARK) CAN CAUSE AN OIL LEAK, A FLUCTUATION OR DROP IN THE OIL PRESSURE, AND ROCKER ARM "CLATTER" IN THE ENGINE.

NOTICE

CARE MUST BE TAKEN WHEN CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL. OIL LEVEL MUST BE MAINTAINED BETWEEN THE "ADD" MARK AND "FULL" MARK ON THE DIPSTICK.

To ensure that you are not getting a false reading, make sure the following steps are taken to before check the oil level.

1. Stop the engine if in use.
2. Allow sufficient time (approximately 5 minutes) for the oil to drain back into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick. Wipe with a clean cloth or paper towel and reinstall. Push the dipstick all the way into the dipstick tube.
4. Remove the dipstick and note the oil level.
5. Oil level must be between the "FULL" and "ADD" marks.

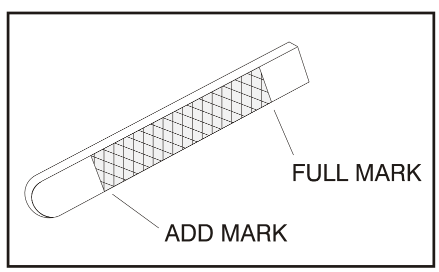


Figure 3-74. Engine Oil Dip Stick

6. If the oil level is below the "ADD" mark, proceed to Step 7 and 8 and reinstall the dipstick into the dipstick tube.
7. Remove the oil filter cap from the valve rocker arm cover.
8. Add the required amount of oil to bring the level up to but not over "FULL" mark on the dipstick.
9. Reinstall the oil fill cap to the valve rocker cover and wipe away any excess oil.

Changing The Engine Oil

NOTICE

WHEN CHANGING THE OIL, ALWAYS CHANGE THE OIL FILTER. CHANGE OIL WHEN THE ENGINE IS WARM FROM OPERATION AS THE OILS WILL FLOW FREELY AND CARRY AWAY MORE IMPURITIES.

To change the oil use the following steps:

1. Start the engine and run until it reaches normal operating temperature.
2. Stop the engine.
3. Remove the drain plug and allow the oil to drain.
4. Remove and discard the oil filter and its sealing ring.
5. Coat the sealing ring on the filter with clean engine oil and wipe the sealing surface on the filter mounting surface to remove any dust, dirt and debris. Tighten the filter securely (follow the filter manufacturers instructions). Do not over tighten.
6. Check the sealing ring on drain plug for any damage, replace if necessary, wipe the plug with a clean rag, and wipe the sealing surface on the pan and reinstall the pan plug. Do not over tighten.
7. Fill the crankcase with oil.
8. Start the engine and check for oil leaks.
9. Stop the engine and check the oil level to insure the oil level is at "FULL".
10. Dispose of the oil and filter in a safe manner.

Coolant Fill Procedure - Dual Fuel Engine

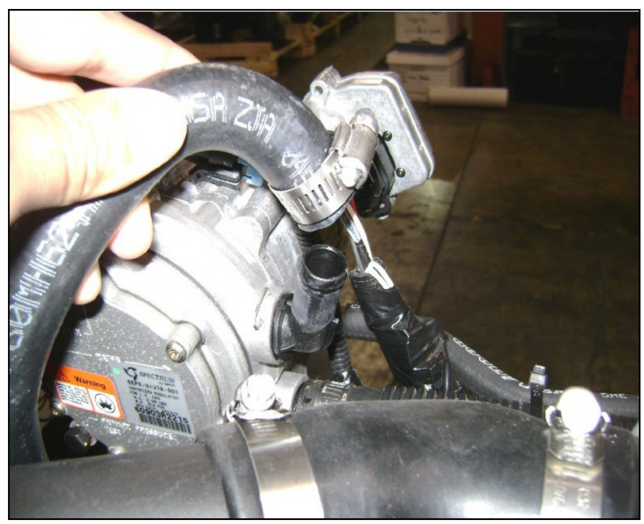
NOTICE

DAMAGE TO THE ENGINE COULD OCCUR IF NOT PROPERLY FILLED WITH COOLANT. LPG FUELED ENGINES ARE MOST PRONE TO CREATING AN AIR LOCK DURING A COOLANT FILL OPERATION DUE TO THE ELECTRONIC PRESSURE REGULATOR (EPR) BEING THE HIGHEST POINT IN THE COOLING SYSTEM. AN EPR THAT APPEARS TO HAVE FROST FORMING ON IT IS A SIGN THAT THE ENGINE COOLING SYSTEM CONTAINS AIR. THE APPEARANCE AND TEMPERATURE OF THE EPR SHOULD BE MONITORED DURING THE COOLANT FILL OPERATION. A WARM EPR IS AN INDICATION THAT THE COOLING SYSTEM IS PROPERLY FILLED AND FUNCTIONING.

⚠ CAUTION

MAKE SURE ENGINE IS COOL BEFORE PERFORMING ANY MAINTENANCE WORK.

1. Loosen the worm gear clamp on the coolant line running into the EPR as shown below and remove the hose from the EPR. Place a rag under the hose to prevent coolant from running onto the engine/machine.



2. Remove the radiator cap. Fill the radiator with coolant until coolant starts to appear from the previously removed hose at the EPR. Reinstall the hose back onto the EPR and continue to fill radiator with coolant.

3. With the radiator cap still removed, start the engine and run until the thermostat opens. The thermostat opens at 170° F (77° C), which can be checked using the JLG handheld analyzer.

NOTICE

WHILE ENGINE IS RUNNING, AIR AND/OR STEAM MAY BE PRESENT COMING FROM THE RADIATOR. THIS IS NORMAL.

4. After running the engine for 5 minutes after it has reached operating temperature, shut the engine off and continue to step 5.

⚠ CAUTION

WITH THE ENGINE RUNNING OR WHEN SHUTTING OFF THE ENGINE, SOME HEATED COOLANT MAY SPILL OUT DUE TO AIR "BURPING" OUT OF THE SYSTEM WITH THE RADIATOR CAP OFF.

5. Next, verify that the 2 coolant hoses on the EPR are warm. If they are not warm repeat step 3 and 4, otherwise continue to step 6.

NOTICE

A PROPERLY PURGED COOLING SYSTEM WILL YIELD A WARM UPPER RADIATOR HOSE AND A WARM EPR HOSE. IF THE UPPER RADIATOR HOSE AND/OR EPR HOSE ARE NOT WARM TO THE TOUCH AFTER THE ENGINE HAS RUN FOR 5-8 MINUTES AFTER REACHING OPERATING TEMPERATURE, THE SYSTEM MAY STILL CONTAIN AIR. IT MAY BE NECESSARY TO REPEAT THE ABOVE STEPS.

6. Fill radiator with coolant as needed and install the radiator cap. Next, remove the cap off the coolant recovery bottle and fill just below the HOT FULL line and reinstall the caps.

3.19 GM ENGINE DUAL FUEL SYSTEM

The Dual Fuel system allows the operator to operate the vehicle on either gasoline or LPG by positioning a selector switch in the operator's platform. When the operator places the selector switch in the gasoline mode the gasoline fuel pump is energized. While in the gasoline mode the LPG fuel lock-off is isolated and will not energize. In addition the gasoline injector circuit is enabled and injector pulses are provided to each injector and the ECM calibration for gasoline is also enabled. When the operator selects the LPG mode the Low Pressure LPG lock-off is energized and fuel from the LPG tank flows to the Electronic Pressure Regulator (EPR). The EPR receives an electronic signal to position the secondary lever for the start or run positions and when the engine begins to crank the mixer air valve will rise and fuel will begin flowing to engine. During this mode the gasoline fuel pump is isolated and will not be activated. The primary components of the gasoline dual fuel system are the gasoline tank, electric fuel pump and filter, fuel supply line, injector rail and injectors and the fuel pressure regulator. The primary components of the LPG dual fuel system are the LPG fuel tank, in-fuel filter, LPG Low Pressure lock-off, Electronic Pressure Regulator (EPR) and the fuel mixer module. The LPG fuel system operates at pressures which range from 14.0 inches (355.60 mm) of water column up to 312 psi (21.5 BAR).

Components which are shared by both systems include the Electronic Throttle Control and the ECM. The ECM contains a dual calibration; one controls the gasoline fuel system during gasoline operation and one controls the LPG fuel system during LPG operation.

Fuel Filter

Propane fuel like all other motor fuels is subject to contamination from outside sources. Refueling of the equipment's tank and removal of the tank from the equipment can inadvertently introduce dirt and other foreign matter into the fuel system. It is therefore necessary to filter the fuel prior to entering the fuel system components downstream of the tank. An inline fuel filter has been installed in the fuel system to remove the dirt and foreign matter from the fuel. The inline filter is replaceable as a unit only. Maintenance of the filter is critical to proper operation of the fuel system and should be replaced as Section 1. In severe operating condition more frequent replacement of the filter may be necessary.

Electric Lock Off

The Electric Lock Off device is an integrated assembly. When energized the solenoid opens the valve and allows the Propane fuel to flow through the device. The valve opens during cranking and run cycles of the engine. The lock off supply voltage is controlled by the engine control module (ECM).

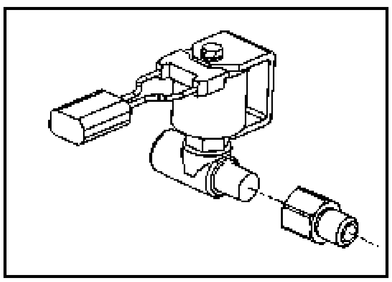
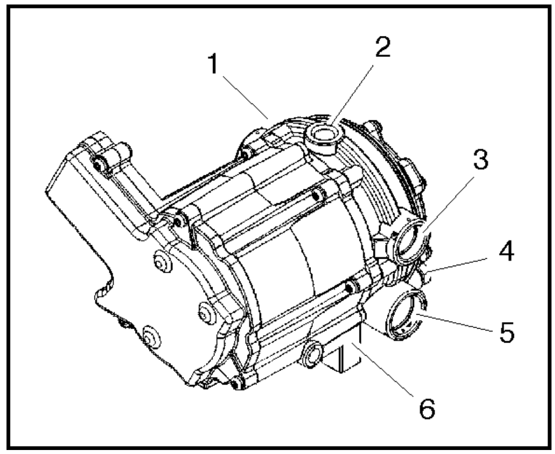


Figure 3-75. Electric Fuel Lock Off

EPR Assembly

The EPR assembly is a combination Low Pressure Regulator and a Voice Coil Assembly. The Voice coil is an electronic actuator which is controlled by an internal microprocessor. The microprocessor provides output data to the ECM and receives input data over a CAN BUS connection. The internal microprocessor receives electrical signals from the Fuel Pressure Sensor FPS and the Fuel Temperature Pressure FTP and communicates the data to the ECM. The ECM uses the FPS and FTP data to calculate the location of the secondary lever in the LPR and sends that data back to the EPR via the CAN BUS. The internal microprocessor in the EPR will then output a signal, which causes the voice coil to move and position the secondary lever to the correct location.



1. Pressure Regulator Section
2. Fuel Inlet
3. Coolant Passage
4. Primary Test Port
5. Secondary Test Port
6. Voice Coil Section

Figure 3-76. EPR Assembly

Low Pressure Regulator (LPR)

The LPR is a combination vaporizer, pressure regulating device. The LPR is a negative pressure, two stage regulator that is normally closed when the engine is not running. When the engine is cranking or running, a partial vacuum is created in the fuel line which connects the regulator to the mixer. This partial vacuum opens the regulator permitting fuel to flow to the mixer.

Propane fuel enters the primary port of the LPR and passes through the primary jet and into the primary/exchanger chamber. As the propane passes through the heat exchanger the fuel expands and creates pressure inside the chamber. The pressure rises as the fuel expands when the pressure rises above 1.5 psi (10.34 kpa), sufficient pressure is exerted on the primary diaphragm to cause the diaphragm plate to pivot and press against the primary valve pin thus closing off the flow of fuel. This action causes the flow of fuel into the regulator to be regulated.

When the engine is cranking, sufficient vacuum will be introduced into the secondary chamber from the mixer drawing the secondary diaphragm down onto the spring loaded lever and opening the secondary valve allowing vaporized fuel to pass to the mixer. This mechanical action in conjunction with the EPR reactions causes the downward action on the secondary lever causing it to open wider allowing more fuel to flow to the mixer.

⚠ WARNING

THE VOICE COIL SECTION OF THE EPR ASSEMBLY IS AN EMISSIONS CONTROL DEVICE AND CANNOT BE REBUILT. IF THE COIL ASSEMBLY FAILS TO OPERATE PROPERLY, REPLACE IT WITH AN OEM REPLACEMENT PART ONLY.

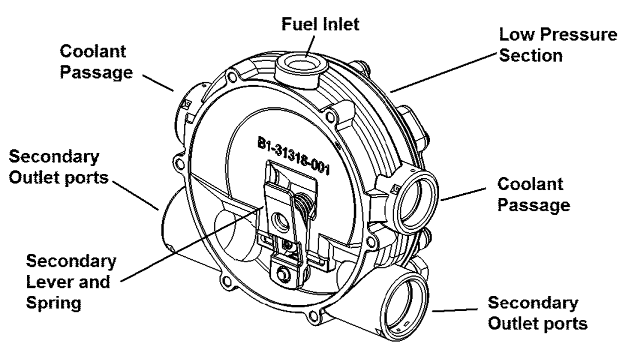


Figure 3-77. Low Pressure Regulators

Air Fuel Mixer

The air valve mixer is an air-fuel metering device and is completely self-contained. The mixer is an air valve design, utilizing a relatively constant pressure drop to draw fuel into the mixer from cranking to full load. The mixer is mounted in the air stream ahead of the throttle control device.

When the engine begins to crank, it draws in air with the air valve covering the inlet, negative pressure begins to build. This negative pressure signal is communicated to the top of the air valve chamber through 4 vacuum ports in the air valve assembly. A pressure/force imbalance begins to build across the air valve diaphragm between the air valve vacuum chamber and the atmospheric pressure below the diaphragm. The air valve vacuum spring is calibrated to generate from 4.0 inches (101.6 mm) of water column at start to as high as 14.0 inches (355.60 mm) of water column at full throttle. The vacuum being created is referred to as Air Valve Vacuum (AVV). As the air valve vacuum reaches 4.0 inches (101.6mm) of water column, the air valve begins to lift against the air valve spring. The amount of AVV generated is a direct result of the throttle position. At low engine speed the air valve vacuum is low and the air valve position is low thus creating a small venturi for the fuel to flow. As the engine speed increase the AVV increases and the air valve is lifted higher thus creating a much larger venturi. This air valve vacuum is communicated from the mixer venture to the LPR secondary chamber via the low pressure fuel supply hose. As the AVV increases in the secondary chamber the secondary diaphragm is drawn further down forcing the secondary valve lever to open wider.

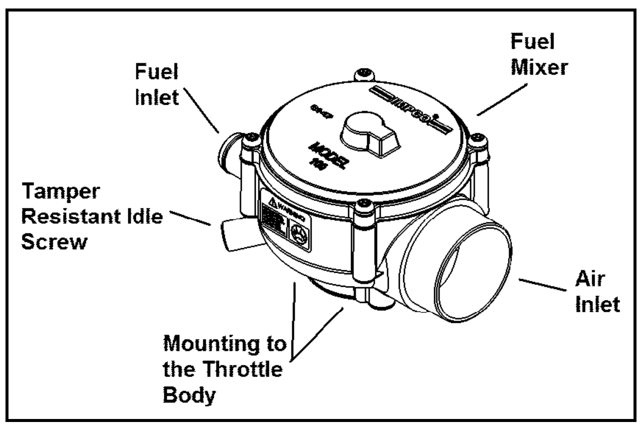


Figure 3-78. Air Fuel Mixer

Electronic Throttle Control (ETC)

Engine speed and load control is maintained by an ETC device. Speed and load control are determined by the ECM. Defaults programmed into the ECM software and throttle position sensors allow the ECM to maintain safe operating control over the engine. The Electronic Throttle Control device or "throttle body assembly" is connected to the intake manifold of the engine. The electronic throttle control device utilizes an electric motor connected to the throttle shaft. When the engine is running electrical signals are sent from the equipment controls to the engine ECM when the operator depresses an equipment function switch. The ECM then sends an electrical signal to the motor on the electronic throttle control to increase or decrease the angle of the throttle blade thus increasing or decreasing the air/fuel flow to the engine.

The electronic throttle control device also incorporates two internal Throttle Position Sensors (TPS) which provide output signals to the ECM as to the location of the throttle shaft and blade. The TPS information is used by the ECM to correct speed and load control as well as emission control.

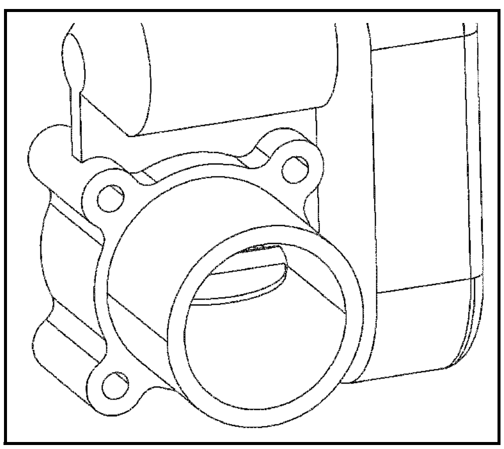


Figure 3-79. ETC throttle control device

Engine Control Module

To obtain maximum effect from the catalyst and accurate control of the air fuel ratio the emission certified engine is equipped with an onboard computer or Engine Control Unit (ECM). The ECM is a 32 bit controller which receives input data from sensors fitted to the engine and fuel system and then outputs various signals to control engine operation.

One specific function of the controller is to maintain "closed loop fuel control". Closed loop fuel control is accomplished when the exhaust gas oxygen sensor (HEGO) mounted in the exhaust system sends a voltage signal to the controller. The controller then calculates any correction that may need to be made to the air fuel ratio. The controller then outputs signals to the EPR to correct the amount of fuel being supplied to the mixer. At the same time the ECM may correct the throttle blade position to correct speed and load of the engine.

The controller also performs diagnostic functions on the fuel system and notifies the operator of malfunctions by turning on a Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) mounted in the Ground Control Station and the Platform Control Station. Malfunctions in the system are identified by a Diagnostic Code number. In addition to notifying the operator of the malfunction in the system the controller also stores the information about the malfunction in its memory.

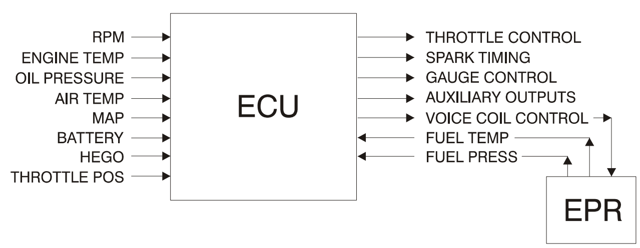


Figure 3-80. LPG Engine Control Unit (ECM)

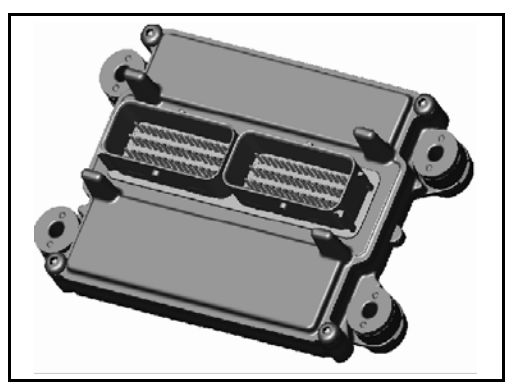


Figure 3-81. ECM Assembly

Heated Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensor

There are two Heated Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensors (HEGO). The first HEGO is mounted in the exhaust system downstream of the engine. It is used to measure the amount of oxygen present in the exhaust stream and communicate that to the ECM via an electrical signal. The amount of oxygen present in the exhaust stream indicates whether the fuel/air ratio is too rich or too lean. If the HEGO sensor signal indicates that the exhaust stream is too rich the ECM will decrease or lean the fuel mixture during engine operation, if the mixture is too lean the ECM will richen the mixture. The ECM continuously monitors the HEGO sensor output. If a rich or lean condition is present for an extended period of time, and the ECM cannot correct the condition, the ECM will set a diagnostic code and turn on the MIL light in control box.

The second HEGO is mounted in the exhaust system after the muffler. It measures the amount of oxygen in the exhaust system after the catalyst treatment has been completed in the muffler. If the ECM detects that the catalytic action in the muffler is not sufficient and fuel correction cannot correct the malfunction the MIL light is illuminated in the control box and a DTC code will stored in the computer.

NOTICE

THE HEATED EXHAUST GAS OXYGEN SENSOR IS AN EMISSION CONTROL DEVICE. IF THE HEGO FAILS TO OPERATE, REPLACE IT WITH AN OEM REPLACEMENT PART. THE HEGO SENSOR IS SENSITIVE TO SILICONE OR SILICONE BASED PRODUCTS AND CAN BECOME CONTAMINATED. AVOID USING SILICONE SEALERS OR HOSES TREATED WITH SILICONE LUBRICANTS IN THE AIR STREAM OR FUEL LINES.

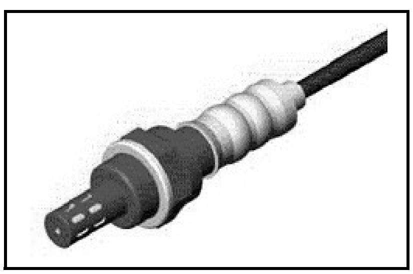


Figure 3-82. Heated Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensor (HEGO)

Gasoline Multi Point Fuel Injection System (MPFI)

The primary components of the Gasoline Multi Point Fuel Injection (MPFI) fuel system are the fuel tank, electric fuel pump, fuel pressure and temperature sensor manifold, fuel filter and fuel rail.

Gasoline Fuel Pump

The Gasoline is stored as a liquid in the fuel tank and in drawn into the fuel system by an electric fuel pump. The fuel pump will receive a signal from the ECM to prime the fuel system for approximately 2 seconds prior to start. Priming of the fuel system provides for a quicker start, when the engine begins to crank.

Gasoline Pressure And Temperature Sensor Manifold

This engine is equipped with a fuel injector rail that does not have a pressure regulator or a return circuit to the fuel tank. Fuel pressure for this engine is regulated by the engine's ECM. The ECM receive fuel pressure and temperature feedback from the gasoline fuel sensor manifold and uses this information to control the ground side of the fuel pump. Fuel pressure is regulated by the ECM pulse width modulating (PWM) the fuel pump. The fuel pressure and temperature sensor manifold has a return or "bleed" circuit that connects back to the fuel tank. This circuit is used to bleed off any vapor that develops in the line and return a small amount of fuel to the tank. The fuel comes from the fuel tank and passes through the fuel pump. Fuel exits the fuel pump, passes through the filter and then enters the fuel pressure and temperature manifold assembly. Fuel flows through the feed circuit and is delivered to the fuel injector rail. Fuel that enters the bleed circuits through they bypass valve in the manifold is returned to the fuel tank.

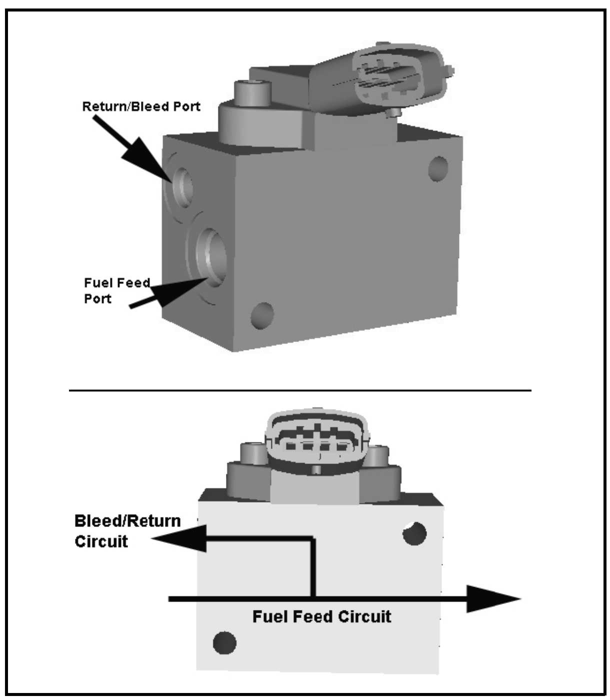


Figure 3-83. Gasoline Fuel Pressure and Temperature Manifold Assembly

Fuel Filter

After the fuel is drawn into the fuel pump, the fuel flows through the gasoline fuel filter. The fuel filter will trap small particles as the fuel passes through the filter to remove debris and prevents the fuel pressure and temperature manifold and fuel injectors from becoming damaged. Maintenance of the fuel filter is required as indicated in Section 1.

Fuel Injector Rail

Fuel flows from the fuel pressure and temperature manifold assembly to the fuel rails where the fuel is delivered to the fuel injectors. The fuel rail also contains a Schrader valve which is utilized to test the regulated pressure of the fuel system.

Fuel Injector

The fuel supply is maintained on the top of the injector from the injector rail. The injector is fed a "pulse" signal through the wire harness which causes the injector to open. During regular operating conditions the ECM controls the opening and duration of opening of the injector. During lower RPM operation the injector signals or "pulses" are less frequent then when the engine is operating at higher RPMs. The engine has been calibrated to deliver the precise amount of fuel for optimum performance and emission control.

3.20 GM ENGINE FUEL SYSTEM REPAIR

Propane Fuel System Pressure Relief

CAUTION

THE PROPANE FUEL SYSTEM OPERATES AT PRESSURES UP TO 312 PSI (21.5 BAR). TO MINIMIZE THE RISK OF FIRE AND PERSONAL INJURY, RELIEVE THE PROPANE FUEL SYSTEM PRESSURE (WHERE APPLICABLE) BEFORE SERVICING THE PROPANE FUEL SYSTEM COMPONENTS.

To relieve propane fuel system pressure:

1. Close the manual shut-off valve on the propane fuel tank.
2. Start and run the vehicle until the engine stalls.
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

NOTICE

RESIDUAL VAPOR PRESSURE WILL BE PRESENT IN THE FUEL SYSTEM. ENSURE THE WORK AREA IS WELL VENTILATED BEFORE DISCONNECTING ANY FUEL LINE.

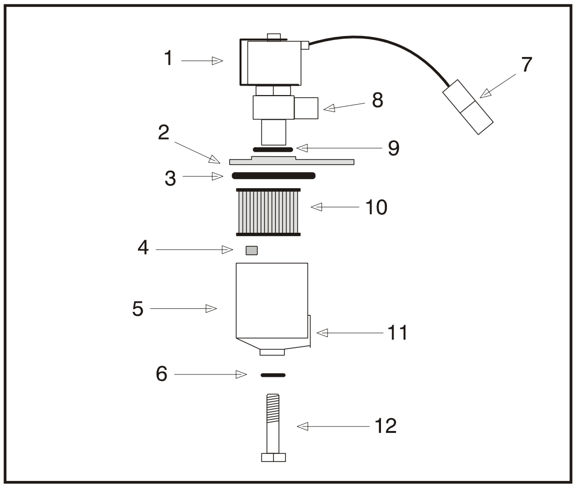
Propane Fuel System Leak Test

CAUTION

NEVER USE AN OPEN FLAME OF ANY TYPE TO CHECK FOR PROPANE FUEL SYSTEM LEAKS.

Always inspect the propane fuel system for leaks after performing service. Check for leaks at the fittings of the serviced or replaced component. Use a commercially available liquid leak detector or an electronic leak detector. When using both methods, use the electronic leak detector first to avoid contamination by the liquid leak detector.

Propane Fuel Filter Replacement



1. Electric Lock Off Solenoid	7. Electrical Connector
2. Mounting Plate	8. Fuel Outlet
3. Housing Seal	9. O-ring
4. Filter Magnet	10. Filter
5. Filter Housing	11. Fuel Inlet
6. Seal	12. Retaining Bolt

Figure 3-84. Filter Lock Assembly

REMOVAL

1. Relieve the propane fuel system pressure. Refer to Propane Fuel System Pressure Relief.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Slowly loosen the Filter housing retaining bolt and remove it.
4. Pull the filter housing from the Electric lock off assembly.
5. Locate Filter magnet and remove it.
6. Remove the filter from the housing.
7. Remove and discard the housing seal.
8. Remove and discard the retaining bolt seal.
9. Remove and discard mounting plate to lock off O-ring seal.

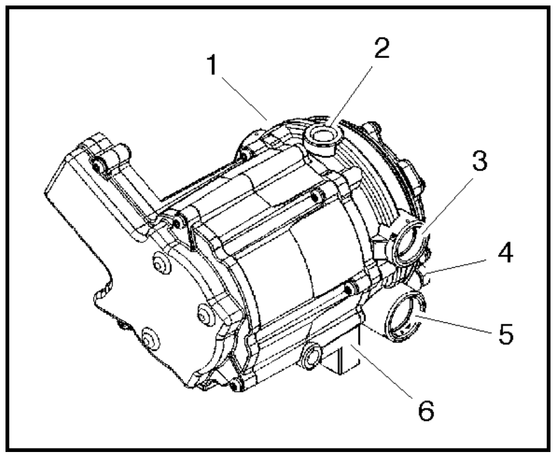
INSTALLATION

NOTICE

BE SURE TO REINSTALL THE FILTER MAGNET INTO THE HOUSING BEFORE INSTALLING NEW SEAL.

1. Install the mounting plate to lock off O-ring seal.
2. Install the retaining bolt seal.
3. Install the housing seal.
4. Drop the magnet into the bottom of the filter housing.
5. Install the filter into the housing.
6. Install the retaining bolt into the filter housing.
7. Install the filter up to the bottom of the electric lock off.
8. Tighten the filter retaining bolt to 106 in lbs (12 Nm).
9. Open manual shut-off valve. Start the vehicle and leak check the propane fuel system at each serviced fitting Refer to Propane Fuel System Leak Test.

Electronic Pressure Regulator (EPR) Assembly Replacement



1. Pressure Regulator Section	4. Primary Test Port
2. Fuel Inlet	5. Secondary Test Port
3. Coolant Passage	6. Voice Coil Section

Figure 3-85. EPR Assembly

The EPR assembly is a made up of two separate components. The Voice Coil Section is not serviceable and can only be replaced as an assembly. The pressure regulator section is serviceable and will be detailed in this section.

REMOVAL

1. Relieve the propane fuel system pressure. Refer to Propane Fuel System Pressure Relief.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Slowly remove the fuel inlet fitting at the Electric Lock Off.

NOTE: *Residual vapor pressure will be present in the fuel system.*

4. Disconnect the electrical connector to the Electric Lock off.

5. Remove the Electric Lock Off from the regulator.
6. Remove the lock pin from the vapor fitting on the regulator housing and remove the fitting and hose and retain the pin.
7. Remove the lock pin from the pressure sensor on the regulator housing and remove the Sensor and retain the pin.
8. Using a clamp pliers pinch off the hoses on the coolant lines to the regulator
9. Remove the lock pin from both the water fittings on the regulator housing and remove the fittings and hoses and retain the pin
10. Disconnect the EPR electrical connector
11. Remove the (3) three nuts from the EPR isolators and the EPR mounting bracket
12. Remove the EPR from the bracket
13. Remove the (3) three mounting isolators

INSTALLATION

NOTICE

DO NOT USE TEFLON TAPE ON ANY FUEL FITTING. USE A LIQUID PIPE THREAD SEALANT WHEN INSTALLING FITTINGS.

CHECK ALL THE O-RINGS ON THE VAPOR AND WATER FITTINGS FOR ANY DAMAGE REPLACE IF NECESSARY.

LUBE ALL THE O-RINGS WITH AN O-RING LUBE BEFORE INSTALLING.

1. Install the three (3) rubber isolators to the bottom of the EPR
2. Install the EPR assembly to the bracket and tighten the retaining nuts.

NOTE: *Do not over tighten the isolators and cause a separation of the isolators.*

3. Install the fuel temperature sensor into the regulator opening and lock in place with the locking pin, connect the electrical connector.
4. Insert the fuel vapor line and fitting into the regulator port and lock in place with the locking pin.
5. Install both the water hoses and fittings into the regulator and lock in place with the locking pin remove the clamp pliers from the hoses.
6. Install the electric lock off into the regulator inlet and tighten into proper location, connect the electrical connector.
7. Connect the fuel supply line and tighten until fully seated.
8. Connect the EPR electrical connector.
9. Open the manual valve.
10. Start the vehicle and leak check the propane fuel system at each serviced fitting Refer to Propane Fuel System Leak Test.

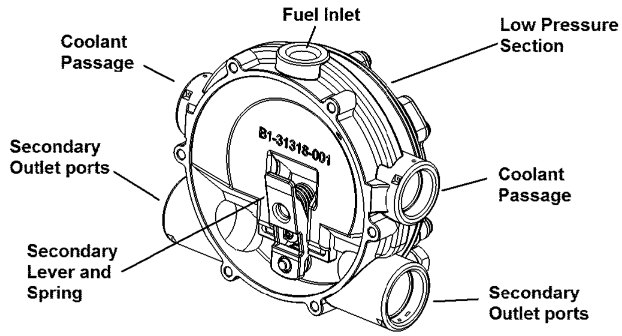


Figure 3-86. Pressure Regulator Section

PRESSURE REGULATOR SECTION REMOVAL

1. Remove the EPR refer to EPR Removal Procedure.
2. Remove the six (6) regulator to voice coil screws using the special tool and separate the regulator from the actuator.

NOTICE

DO NOT REMOVE THE SECONDARY DIAPHRAGM RETAINING PLATE AND DIAPHRAGM THIS WILL VOID THE WARRANTY OF THE ACTUATOR SECTION.

PRESSURE REGULATOR SECTION INSTALLATION

1. Install the regulator to the actuator section using the six (6) retaining screws and tighten 70 in lbs (8 Nm).
2. Install the EPR refer to EPR Installation.

Temperature Manifold Absolute Pressure (TMAP) Sensor

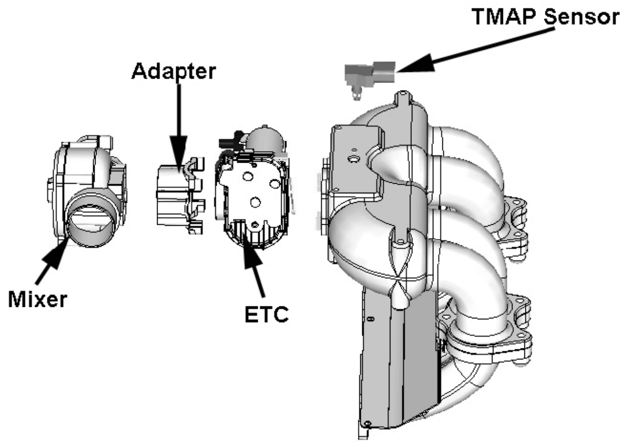


Figure 3-87. (TMAP) Sensor & Electronic Throttle Control (ETC)

REMOVAL

1. Disconnect the TMAP electrical connector.
2. Remove the two retaining bolts.
3. Remove the TMAP.

INSTALLATION

NOTE: *Apply a small amount of O-ring lubricant before installation.*

1. Install in the TMAP.
2. Tighten retaining bolts to 62 lb-in (7 Nm).
3. Start the vehicle and check for proper operation.

Electronic Throttle Control Replacement

See Figure 3-87.

REMOVAL

1. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
2. Remove the air intake duct.
3. Release the hose clamp on the vapor fuel line and remove the vapor hose.
4. Disconnect the TMAP electrical connector.
5. Disconnect the electronic throttle control connector.
6. Remove the manifold to throttle body adapter bolts and remove the throttle body mixer assembly.
7. Pull the throttle body assembly from the adapter.
8. Remove electronic throttle control device.
9. Remove the O-rings gasket and discard.

INSTALLATION

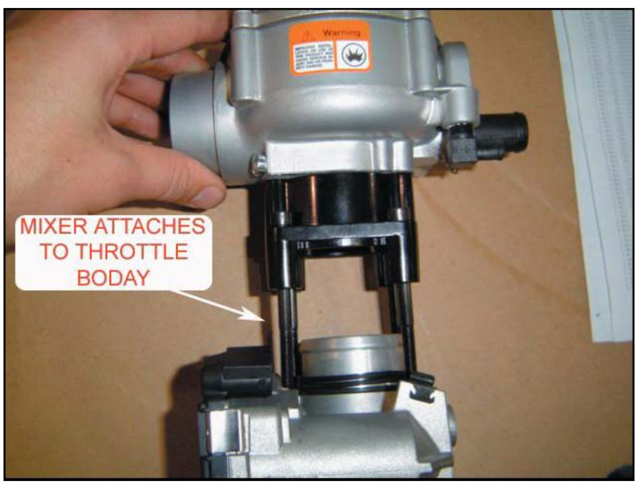
NOTICE

LIGHTLY LUBRICATE BOTH THROTTLE CONTROL DEVICE TO ADAPTER O-RINGS.

1. Install the O-ring on throttle body. Press it down to the bottom of the surface.

2. Install the two quad seals. Install one seal at a time to insure the seal does not roll. The seal must sit flat on the throttle body.

3. Attach mixer and throttle body together. The two parts do not bolt together; they will be secured when you mount it on the intake. Notice the orientation of the air inlet and throttle body cover.



4. Place gasket on intake manifold and attach mixer/throttle assembly to manifold.

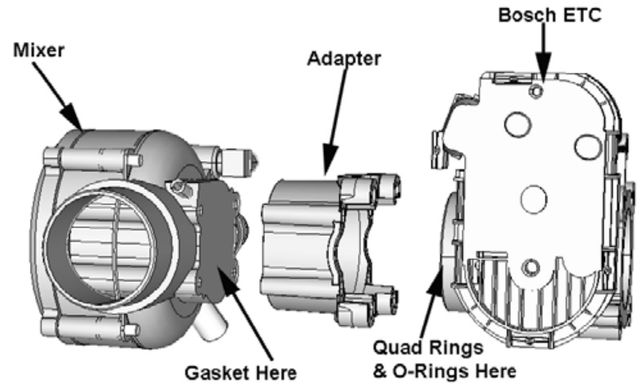


Figure 3-88. Mixer Assembly

MIXER REPLACEMENT

See Figure 3-88.

REMOVAL

1. Remove the Throttle control device Refer to Electronic Throttle Body Replacement.
2. Remove the four (4) bolts to the throttle control device to mixer adapter bolts.
3. Remove and discard the mixer to adapter gasket.

INSTALLATION

NOTICE

COVER THROTTLE BODY ADAPTER OPENING TO PREVENT DEBRIS FROM ENTERING ENGINE UNTIL REASSEMBLY.

1. Install Mixer to adapter gasket onto the mixer.
2. Install the mixer to the throttle control device to mixer adapter and secure with the 4 retaining screws. Tighten 80 lb-in (9 Nm)
3. Install Throttle body. Refer to Electronic Throttle Control Device Replacement.
4. Start the engine and leak check all fittings and connections.

Coolant Hose Replacement

REMOVAL

1. Drain the coolant.
2. Using hose clamp pliers, disconnect both hose clamps on each hose.
3. Remove the hose from each of the fittings.

INSTALLATION

***NOTE:** Use hose material and lengths specified by JLG.*

1. Install the hose clamps to each hose and set the clamp back on each hose to make installation easier.
2. Fit the hose to the fittings.
3. Secure by positioning each of the clamps.

Vapor Hose Replacement

REMOVAL

1. Using hose clamp pliers disconnect both hose clamps.
2. Remove the vapor hose from each fitting.

INSTALLATION

NOTICE

THE VAPOR SUPPLY HOSE IS SPECIFICALLY DESIGNED, DO NOT USE HOSE MATERIAL OR LENGTH OTHER THAN JLG SPECIFIED PARTS.

1. Install hose clamps and set back on each hose.
2. Reinstall the vapor hose to each fitting.
3. Reset clamps.
4. Start engine and check for leaks.

Engine Control Module Replacement

REMOVAL

1. Disconnect Negative battery cable.
2. Remove controller from mounting bracket.
3. Push connector lock back to unlock connector.
4. Unplug controller and remove.

INSTALLATION

NOTICE

THE CONTROLLER IS CALIBRATED FOR EACH ENGINE VERIFY YOU HAVE THE CORRECT CONTROLLER

1. Plug connector into controller.
2. Push lock into place.
3. Mount controller into mounting bracket.
4. Reconnect the battery cable.
5. Start engine.
6. Check for any DTC codes and clear.
7. Verify engine is in closed loop and no warning lights are illuminated.

Heated Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensor Replacement

REMOVAL

1. Disconnect Negative battery cable.
2. Disconnect the O2 sensor electrical connector.
3. Using an O2 Sensor socket, remove the O2 Sensor and discard.

INSTALLATION

NOTICE

BEFORE INSTALL THE O2 SENSOR LUBRICATE THREADS WITH ANTI-SEIZE COMPOUND GM P/N 5613695 OR EQUIVALENT. AVOID GETTING COMPOUND ON THE SENSOR TIP.

1. Install O2 sensor. Tighten to 30 lb-ft (41 Nm).
2. Start engine.
3. Check for any DTC codes and clear.
4. Verify engine is in closed loop and no warning lights are illuminated.

3.21 GM ENGINE LPG FUEL SYSTEM DIAGNOSIS

Fuel System Description

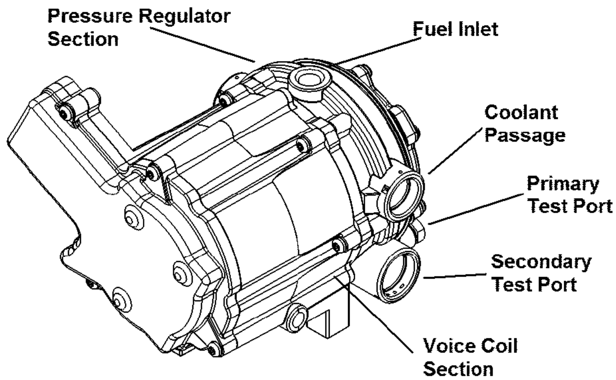


Figure 3-89. EPR Assembly

To maintain fuel and emission control on the LPG fuel system the Engine Control Units (ECM) relies on numerous engine sensor and output data from the Electronic Pressure Regulator (EPR). The ECM will then determine the target fuel calibration and command the EPR to reposition the voice coil to the proper position which, subsequently reposition the secondary lever in the pressure regulator to maintain proper control. The EPR and ECM will continue to communicate back and forth during normal operation.

In the event that the EPR fails to communicate or the Communications Area Network (CAN) cable fails to transmit data the regulator will operate in an open loop configuration. As the air valve vacuum in the mixer venturi is communicated to the secondary chamber of the regulator the secondary diaphragm will be drawn in a downwards motion. This downward motion will cause the secondary lever to open thus allowing more fuel to enter the mixer.

In the (LPR) the fuel is vaporized and the pressure reduced in two stages. The first stage reduces the pressure to approximately 1.0 to 3.0 psi (6.8 to 20.6 kPa). The second stage reduces the pressure to approximately negative 1.5" of water column.

The fuel is then drawn from the secondary chamber of the LPR by the vacuum generated by air flowing through the mixer. This vacuum signal is also used to generate lift for the mixer air valve. This vacuum signal is most commonly referred to as air valve vacuum. In the mixer, the fuel mixes with the air entering the engine. This air/ fuel mixture is then drawn into the engine for combustion.

Diagnostic Aids

This procedure is intended to diagnose a vehicle operating on LPG. If the vehicle will not continue to run on LPG, refer to Hard Start for preliminary checks. Before proceeding with this procedure, verify that the vehicle has a sufficient quantity of fuel and that liquid fuel is being delivered to the LPR. Also, ensure that the manual shut off valve on the LPG tank is fully opened and that the excess flow valve has not been activated.

Tools Required:

- 7/16 Open end wrench (for test port plugs)
- DVOM (GM J 39200, Fluke 88 or equivalent).
- 12 volt test light

Diagnostic Scan Tool

- Diagnostic Display tool.

Pressure Gauges

- IMPCO ITK-2 Test kit
- Water Column Gauge / Manometer (GM 7333-6 or equivalent).
- 0-10 PSI Gauge

Test Description

The numbers below refer to step numbers on the diagnostic table.

5. This step determines if the LPR requires replacement

6. This step determines if the problems are in the mechanical side of the Pressure Regulator or the Electronic Voice Coil

10. This step determines if the Mixer requires replacement

14. This step determines if the Lock Off requires replacement

17. This step determines if the Fuel Filter requires replacement.

Table 3-11. LPF Fuel System Diagnosis

STEP	ACTION	VALUE(S)	YES	NO
1	Were you referred to this procedure by a DTC diagnostic chart?	- -	Go to Step 3	Go to Step 2
2	Perform the On Board Diagnostic (OBD) System Check. Are any DTCs present in the ECM?	- -	Gotothe applicable DTC Table	Go to Step 3
3	Verify that the LPG fuel tank has a minimum of 1/4 tank of fuel, that the manual valve is open and the tank quick connect is fully engaged Does the vehicle have fuel?	- -	Go to Step 4	- -
4	1. Connect a water column gauge or a manometer to the secondary test port of the low pressure regulator (LPR). 2. Start the engine and allow it to reach operating temperature. Does the engine start and run?	- -	Go to Step 5	Go to Step 8
5	With the engine idling, observe the pressure reading for the LPR secondary pressure. Does the fuel pressure fluctuate rhythmically OUTSIDE the specified range?	-1.0" to -2.0" w.c	Go to Step 25	Go to Step 6
6	1. Disconnect the EPR electrical connectors. NOTE: This action will cause a DTC to be set by the ECM 2. With the engine idling observe the pressure reading on the secondary test port. Is the fuel pressure WITHIN the specified range?	-1.0" to -2.0" w.c	Go to Fuel Control System Diagnosis	Go to Step 7
7	1. Inspect the air intake stream between the mixer assembly and the throttle body for leaks. 2. Inspect the fuel hose connection between the LPR and mixer assembly for damage or leakage. 3. Inspect any vacuum hoses for leaks Was a problem found and corrected?	- -	Go to Step 26	Go to Step 22
8	1. Connect a water column gauge or a manometer to the secondary test port of the low pressure regulator (LPR). 2. Crank the engine and observe the pressure reading for the LPR secondary pressure. Does the fuel pressure indicate a vacuum is present?	- -	Go to Step 12	Go to Step 9
9	1. Remove Air induction hose to the mixer 2. Observe the air valve for movement while the engine is cranking. Note: Movement of the air valve will be minimal at cranking speeds. Does the air valve move when the engine is cranked?	- -	Go to Step 11	Go to Step 10
10	1. Inspect the air intake stream to the mixer assembly and the throttle body for vacuum leaks. 2. Inspect the vacuum hoses from the mixer for proper connection and condition. Was a problem found and repaired?	- -	Go to Step 26	Go to Step 24
11	Inspect the fuel hose connection between the LPR and the mixer assembly for damage or leakage. Was a problem found and repaired?	- -	Go to Step 26	Go to Step 12
12	1. Connect a 0-10 psi gauge to the primary test port of the low pressure regulator (LPR). 2. Crank the engine and observe the pressure reading for the LPR primary pressure. Is the fuel pressure ABOVE the specified value?	1- 3 PSI	Go to Step 22	Go to Step 13

Table 3-11. LPF Fuel System Diagnosis

STEP	ACTION	VALUE(S)	YES	NO
13	1. Turn OFF the ignition. 2. Disconnect the LPL connector. 3. Install a test light between the pins of the LPL connector. 4. Crank the engine. The test light should illuminate. Does the test light illuminate?	- -	Go to Step 14	Go to Step 16
14	Using a DVOM, check the resistance of the low pressure lock-off (LPL). Is the resistance within the specified range?	12W - 16W	Go to Step 15	Go to Step 23
15	1. Turn the ignition OFF. 2. Close the manual shut-off valve on the LPG tank. CAUTION: When disconnecting LPG fuel lines, liquid LPG may be present. Perform this step in a well ventilated area. 3. Loosen the fuel inlet hose fitting at the inlet of the LPL. Was fuel present when the fitting was loosened?	- -	Go to Step 23	Go to Step 17
16	1. Turn OFF the ignition. 2. Connect the test light to chassis ground and probe pin A of the LPL connector. 3. Crank the engine. The test light should illuminate. Does the test light illuminate?	- -	Go to Step 20	Go to Step 21
17	1. Remove the LPG fuel filter / LPL. 2. Remove the filter from the LPL. 3. Empty the contents of the inlet side of the LPG fuel filter onto a clean surface. 4. Inspect the contents of the LPG fuel filter for an excessive amount of foreign material or water. If necessary, locate and repair the source of contamination. 5. Verify the LPG fuel filter is not restricted or plugged. Was a problem found?	- -	Go to Step 19	Go to Step 18
18	The fuel supply system or hoses are plugged or restricted, locate and repair the problem. Is the action complete?	- -	Go to Step 26	- -
19	Replace the fuel filter. Refer to Fuel Filter Replacement. Is the action complete?	- -	Go to Step 26	- -
20	Repair the open in the lock-off ground circuit. Is the action complete?	- -	Go to Step 26	- -
21	Repair the open in the lock-off power circuit. Is the action complete?	- -	Go to Step 26	- -
22	Replace the low pressure regulator (LPR). Refer to Low Pressure Regulator Replacement. Is the action complete?	- -	Go to Step 26	- -
23	Replace the lock-off. Refer to Lock-off Replacement. Is the action complete?	- -	Go to Step 26	- -
24	Replace the mixer assembly. Refer to Fuel Mixer Replacement. Is the action complete?	- -	Go to Step 26	- -

Table 3-11. LPF Fuel System Diagnosis

STEP	ACTION	VALUE(S)	YES	NO
25	The fuel supply system is operating normally, if a failure of the control solenoids is suspected. Refer to Fuel Control System Diagnosis. 1. Install the test plug in the LPR secondary chamber. 2. If you were sent to this routine by another diagnostic chart, return to the previous diagnostic procedure. Is the action complete?	--	System OK	--
26	1. Disconnect all test equipment 2. Install the primary and secondary test port plugs. 3. Start the engine. 4. Using SNOOP or equivalent, leak check the test port plugs. Is the action complete?	--	System OK	--

Table 3-12. Symptom Diagnosis

Checks	Action
Important Preliminary Checks	
Before Using This Section	Before using this section, you should have performed On Board Diagnostic Check and determined that: 1. The Control Module and MIL (Malfunction Indicator Lamp) are operating correctly. 2. There are no Diagnostic Trouble Codes (DTCs) stored, or a DTC exists but without a MIL. Several of the following symptom procedures call for a careful visual and physical check. The visual and physical checks are very important. The checks can lead to correcting a problem without further checks that may save valuable time.
LPG Fuel System Check	1. Verify the customer complaint. 2. Locate the correct symptom table. 3. Check the items indicated under that symptom. 4. Operate the vehicle under the conditions the symptom occurs. Verify HEGO switching between lean and rich. **IMPORTANT! Normal HEGO switching indicates the LPG fuel system is in closed loop and operating correctly at that time.**
Visual and Physical Checks	[2] Check all ECM system fuses and circuit breakers. [2] Check the ECM ground for being clean, tight and in its proper location. [2] Check the vacuum hoses for splits, kinks and proper connections. [2] Check thoroughly for any type of leak or restriction. [2] Check for air leaks at all the mounting areas of the intake manifold sealing surfaces. [2] Check for proper installation of the mixer module assembly. [2] Check for air leaks at the mixer assembly. [2] Check the ignition wires for the following conditions: - Cracking - Hardness - Proper routing - Carbon tracking [2] Check the wiring for the following items: - Proper connections, pinches or cuts. [2] The following symptom tables contain groups of possible causes for each symptom. The order of these procedures is not important. If the scan tool readings do not indicate the problems, then proceed in a logical order, easiest to check or most likely to cause first.
Intermittent	
DEFINITION: The problem may or may not turn ON the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) or store a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC).	
Preliminary Checks	[2] Refer to Important Preliminary Checks. [2] Do not use the DTC tables. If a fault is an intermittent, the use of the DTC tables may result in the replacement of good parts.
Faulty Electrical Connections or Wiring	[2] Faulty electrical connections or wiring can cause most intermittent problems. [2] Check the suspected circuit for the following conditions: - Faulty fuse or circuit breaker - Connectors poorly mated - Terminals not fully seated in the connector (backed out) - Terminals not properly formed or damaged - Terminal to wires poorly connected - Terminal tension insufficient. [2] Carefully remove all the connector terminals in the problem circuit in order to ensure the proper contact tension. If necessary, replace all the connector terminals in the problem circuit in order to ensure the proper contact tension. [2] Checking for poor terminal to wire connections requires removing the terminal from the connector body.
Operational Test	If a visual and physical check does not locate the cause of the problem, drive the vehicle with a scan tool. When the problem occurs, an abnormal voltage or scan reading indicates the problem may be in that circuit.

Table 3-12. Symptom Diagnosis

Checks	Action
Intermittent Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)	The following components can cause intermittent MIL and no DTC(s): [2] A defective relay, Control Module driven solenoid, or a switch that can cause electrical system interference. Normally, the problem will occur when the faulty component is operating. [2] The improper installation of electrical devices, such as lights, 2-way radios, electric motors, etc. [2] The ignition secondary voltage shorted to a ground. [2] The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) circuit or the Diagnostic Test Terminal intermittently shorted to ground. [2] The Control Module grounds.
Loss of DTC Memory	To check for the loss of the DTC Memory: 1. Disconnect the TMAP sensor. 2. Idle the engine until the Malfunction Indicator Lamp illuminates. The ECM should store a TMAP DTC. The TMAP DTC should remain in the memory when the ignition is turned OFF. If the TMAP DTC does not store and remain, the ECM is faulty
Additional Checks	
No Start	
DEFINITION: The engine cranks OK[22]but does not start.	
Preliminary Checks	Refer to Important Preliminary Checks.
Control Module Checks	If a scan tool is available: [2] Check for proper communication with both the ECM [2] Check the fuse in the ECM battery power circuit. Refer to Engine Controls Schematics. [2] Check battery power, ignition power and ground circuits to the ECM. Refer to Engine Control Schematics. Verify voltage and/or continuity for each circuit.
Sensor Checks	[2] Check the TMAP sensor. [2] Check the Magnetic pickup sensor (RPM).
Fuel System Checks	**Important:** A closed LPG manual fuel shut off valve will create a no start condition. [2] Check for air intake system leakage between the mixer and the throttle body. [2] Verify proper operation of the low pressure lock-off solenoids. [2] Check the fuel system pressures. Refer to the LPG Fuel System Diagnosis. [2] Check for proper mixer air valve operation.
Ignition System Checks	Note: LPG being a gaseous fuel requires higher secondary ignition system voltages for the equivalent gasoline operating conditions. [2] Check for the proper ignition voltage output with J 26792 or the equivalent. [2] Verify that the spark plugs are correct for use with LPG (R42LTS) [2] Check the spark plugs for the following conditions: - Wet plugs - Cracks - Wear - Improper gap - Burned electrodes - Heavy deposits [2] Check for bare or shorted ignition wires. [2] Check for loose ignition coil connections at the coil.
Engine Mechanical Checks	**Important:** The LPG Fuel system works on a fumigation principle of fuel introduction and is more sensitive to intake manifold leakage than the gasoline fuel supply system. [2] Check for the following: - Vacuum leaks - Improper valve timing - Low compression - Bent pushrods - Worn rocker arms - Broken or weak valve springs - Worn camshaft lobes.

Table 3-12. Symptom Diagnosis

Checks	Action
Exhaust System Checks	[2] Check the exhaust system for a possible restriction: - Inspect the exhaust system for damaged or collapsed pipes - Inspect the muffler for signs of heat distress or for possible internal failure. [2] Check for possible plugged catalytic converter. Refer to Restricted Exhaust System Diagnosis
Hard Start	
DEFINITION: The engine cranks OK, but does not start for a long time. The engine does eventually run, or may start but immediately dies.	
Preliminary Checks	[2] Refer to Important Preliminary Checks. [2] Make sure the vehicle's operator is using the correct starting procedure.
Sensor Checks	[2]Check the Engine Coolant Temperature sensor with the scan tool. Compare the engine coolant temperature with the ambient air temperature on a cold engine. IF the coolant temperature reading is more than 5 degrees greater or less than the ambient air temperature on a cold engine, check for high resistance in the coolant sensor circuit. Refer to DTC 111 [2] Check the Crankshaft Position (CKP) sensor. [2]Check the Throttle position (TPS) sensor.
Fuel System Checks	Important: A closed LPG manual fuel shut off valve will create an extended crank OR no start condition. [2] Verify the excess flow valve in the LPG manual shut-off valve is not tripped. [2] Check mixer module assembly for proper installation and leakage. [2] Verify proper operation of the low pressure lock-off solenoids. [2] Verify proper operation of the EPR [2] Check for air intake system leakage between the mixer and the throttle body. [2] Check the fuel system pressures. Refer to the Fuel System Diagnosis.
Ignition System Checks	Note: LPG being a gaseous fuel requires higher secondary ignition system voltages for the equivalent gasoline operating conditions. [2] Check for the proper ignition voltage output with J 26792 or the equivalent. [2] Verify that the spark plugs are correct for use with LPG (R42LTS) [2] Check the spark plugs for the following conditions: - Wet plugs - Cracks - Wear - Improper gap - Burned electrodes - Heavy deposits [2] Check for bare or shorted ignition wires. [2] Check for moisture in the distributor cap if applicable. [2] Check for loose ignition coil connections. **Important:** 1. If the engine starts but then immediately stalls, Check the Crankshaft Position (CKP). 2. Check for improper gap, debris or faulty connections.
Engine Mechanical Checks	Important: The LPG Fuel system works on a fumigation principle of fuel introduction and is more sensitive to intake manifold leakage than the gasoline fuel supply system. [2] Check for the following: - Vacuum leaks - Improper valve timing - Low compression - Bent pushrods - Worn rocker arms - Broken or weak valve springs - Worn camshaft lobes. [2] Check the intake and exhaust manifolds for casting flash.

Table 3-12. Symptom Diagnosis

Checks	Action
Exhaust System Checks	2 Check the exhaust system for a possible restriction: - Inspect the exhaust system for damaged or collapsed pipes - Inspect the muffler for signs of heat distress or for possible internal failure. 2 Check for possible plugged catalytic converter. Refer to Restricted Exhaust System Diagnosis or Exhaust System in the GM Base Engine Service Manual
Additional Checks	2
Cuts Out, Misses	
DEFINITION: A surging or jerking that follows engine speed, usually more pronounced as the engine load increases which is not normally felt above 1500 RPM. The exhaust has a steady spitting sound at idle, low speed, or hard acceleration for the fuel starvation that can cause the engine to cut-out.	
Preliminary Checks	2 Refer to Important Preliminary Checks.
Ignition System Checks	2 Start the engine. 2 Wet down the secondary ignition system with water from a spray bottle, and look/listen for arcing or misfiring as you apply water. 2 Check for proper ignition output voltage with spark tester J 26792. 2 Check for a cylinder misfire. 2 Verify that the spark plugs are correct for use with LPG (R42LTS) 2 Remove the spark plugs in these cylinders and check for the following conditions: 2 Insulation cracks 2 Wear 2 Improper gap 2 Burned electrodes 2 Heavy deposits 2 Visually/Physically inspect the secondary ignition for the following: 2 Ignition wires for arcing, cross-firing and proper routing 2 Ignition coils for cracks or carbon tracking
Engine Mechanical Checks	2 Perform a cylinder compression check. 2 Check the engine for the following: - Improper valve timing - Bent pushrods - Worn rocker arms - Worn camshaft lobes. - Broken or weak valve springs. 2 Check the intake and exhaust manifold passages for casting flash.
Fuel System Checks	2 Check the fuel system - plugged fuel filter, low fuel pressure, etc. Refer to LPG Fuel System Diagnosis. 2 Check the condition of the wiring to the low pressure lock-off solenoid.
Additional Check	Check for Electromagnetic Interference (EMI). 2 EMI on the reference circuit can cause a missing condition. 2 Monitoring the engine RPM with a scan tool can detect an EMI. 2 A sudden increase in the RPM with little change in the actual engine RPM, indicates EMI is present. 2 If the problem exists, check the routing of the secondary wires and the ground circuit.

Table 3-12. Symptom Diagnosis

Checks	Action
Hesitation, Sag, Stumble	
DEFINITION: The vehicle has a momentary lack of response when depressing the accelerator. The condition can occur at any vehicle speed. The condition may cause the engine to stall if it's severe enough.	
Preliminary Checks	Refer to Important Preliminary Checks.
Fuel System Checks	[2] Check the fuel pressure. Refer to LPG Fuel System Diagnosis. [2] Check for low fuel pressure during a moderate or full throttle acceleration. If the fuel pressure drops below specification, there is possibly a faulty low pressure regulator or a restriction in the fuel system. [2] Check the Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP) sensor response and accuracy. [2] Check LPL electrical connection [2] Check the mixer air valve for sticking or binding. [2] Check the mixer module assembly for proper installation and leakage. [2] Check the EPR electrical connections.
Ignition System Checks	Note: LPG being a gaseous fuel requires higher secondary ignition system voltages for the equivalent gasoline operating conditions. If a problem is reported on LPG and not gasoline, do not discount the possibility of a LPG only ignition system failure and test the system accordingly. [2] Check for the proper ignition voltage output with J 26792 or the equivalent. [2] Verify that the spark plugs are correct for use with LPG (R42LTS) [2] Check for faulty spark plug wires [2] Check for fouled spark plugs.
Additional Check	[2] Check for manifold vacuum or air induction system leaks [2] Check the generator output voltage.
Backfire	
DEFINITION: The fuel ignites in the intake manifold, or in the exhaust system, making a loud popping noise.	
Preliminary Check	[2] Refer to Important Preliminary Checks.
Ignition System Checks	**Important! LPG, being a gaseous fuel, requires higher secondary ignition system voltages for the equivalent gasoline operating conditions. The ignition system must be maintained in peak condition to prevent backfire.** [2] Check for the proper ignition coil output voltage using the spark tester J26792 or the equivalent. [2] Check the spark plug wires by connecting an ohmmeter to the ends of each wire in question. If the meter reads over 30,000 ohms, replace the wires. [2] Check the connection at each ignition coil. [2] Check for deteriorated spark plug wire insulation. [2] Check the spark plugs. The correct spark plugs for LPG are (R42LTS) [2] Remove the plugs and inspect them for the following conditions: - Wet plugs - Cracks - Wear - Improper gap - Burned electrodes - Heavy deposits
Engine Mechanical Check	Important! The LPG Fuel system works on a fumigation principle of fuel introduction and is more sensitive to intake manifold leakage than a gasoline fuel supply system. [2] Check the engine for the following: - Improper valve timing - Engine compression - Manifold vacuum leaks - Intake manifold gaskets - Sticking or leaking valves - Exhaust system leakage [2] Check the intake and exhaust system for casting flash or other restrictions.
Fuel System Checks	[2] Perform a fuel system diagnosis. Refer to LPG Fuel System Diagnosis.

Table 3-12. Symptom Diagnosis

Checks	Action
Lack of Power, Sluggishness, or Sponginess	
DEFINITION: The engine delivers less than expected power. There is little or no increase in speed when partially applying the accelerator pedal.	
Preliminary Checks	² Refer to Important Preliminary Checks. ² Refer to the LPG Fuel system OBD System Check ² Compare the customer's vehicle with a similar unit. Make sure the customer has an actual problem. Do not compare the power output of the vehicle operating on LPG to a vehicle operating on gasoline as the fuels do have different drive feel characteristics ² Remove the air filter and check for dirt or restriction. ² Check the vehicle transmission Refer to the OEM transmission diagnostics.
Fuel System Checks	² Check for a restricted fuel filter, contaminated fuel, or improper fuel pressure. Refer to LPG Fuel System Diagnosis. ² Check for the proper ignition output voltage with the spark tester J 26792 or the equivalent. ² Check for proper installation of the mixer module assembly. ² Check all air inlet ducts for condition and proper installation. ² Check for fuel leaks between the LPR and the mixer. ² Verify that the LPG tank manual shut-off valve is fully open. ² Verify that liquid fuel (not vapor) is being delivered to the LPR.
Sensor Checks	² Check the Heated Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensor (HEGO) for contamination and performance. Check for proper operation of the MAP sensor. ² Check for proper operation of the TPS sensor.
Exhaust System Checks	² Check the exhaust system for a possible restriction: - Inspect the exhaust system for damaged or collapsed pipes - Inspect the muffler for signs of heat distress or for possible internal failure. - Check for possible plugged catalytic converter.
Engine Mechanical Check	Check the engine for the following: ² Engine compression ² Valve timing ² Improper or worn camshaft. Refer to Engine Mechanical in the Service Manual.
Additional Check	² Check the ECM grounds for being clean, tight, and in their proper locations. ² Check the generator output voltage. ² If all procedures have been completed and no malfunction has been found, review and inspect the following items: ² Visually and physically, inspect all electrical connections within the suspected circuit and/or systems. ² Check the scan tool data.
Poor Fuel Economy	
DEFINITION: Fuel economy, as measured by refueling records, is noticeably lower than expected. Also, the economy is noticeably lower than it was on this vehicle at one time, as previously shown by an by refueling records.	
Preliminary Checks	² Refer to Important Preliminary Checks. ² Check the air cleaner element (filter) for dirt or being plugged. ² Visually (Physically) check the vacuum hoses for splits, kinks, and proper connections. ² Check the operators driving habits for the following items: - Is there excessive idling or stop and go driving? - Are the tires at the correct air pressure? - Are excessively heavy loads being carried? - Is their often rapid acceleration? ² Suggest to the owner to fill the fuel tank and to recheck the fuel economy. ² Suggest that a different operator use the equipment and record the results.
Fuel System Checks	² Check the LPR fuel pressure. Refer to LPG Fuel System Diagnosis. ² Check the fuel system for leakage.
Sensor Checks	² Check the Temperature Manifold Absolute Pressure (TMAP) sensor.

Table 3-12. Symptom Diagnosis

Checks	Action
Ignition System Checks	^{2} Verify that the spark plugs are correct for use with LPG (R42LTS) ^{2} Check the spark plugs. Remove the plugs and inspect them for the following conditions: - Wet plugs - Cracks - Wear - Improper gap - Burned electrodes - Heavy deposits ^{2} Check the ignition wires for the following items: - Cracking - Hardness - Proper connections
Cooling System Checks	^{2} Check the engine thermostat for always being open or for the wrong heat range
Additional Check	^{2} Check the transmission shift pattern. Refer to the OEM Transmission Controls section the Service Manual. ^{2} Check for dragging brakes.
Rough, Unstable, or Incorrect Idle, Stalling	
DEFINITION: The engine runs unevenly at idle. If severe enough, the engine or vehicle may shake. The engine idle speed may vary in RPM. Either condition may be severe enough to stall the engine.	
Preliminary Check	Refer to Important Preliminary Checks.
Sensor Checks	^{2}Check for silicon contamination from fuel or improperly used sealant. The sensor will have a white powdery coating. The sensor will result in a high but false signal voltage (rich exhaust indication). The ECM will reduce the amount of fuel delivered to the engine causing a severe driveability problem. ^{2}Check the Heated Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensor (HEGO) performance: ^{2}Check the Temperature Manifold Absolute Pressure (TMAP) sensor response and accuracy.
Fuel System Checks	^{2}Check for rich or lean symptom that causes the condition. Drive the vehicle at the speed of the complaint. Monitoring the oxygen sensors will help identify the problem. ^{2}Check for a sticking mixer air valve. ^{2}Verify proper operation of the EPR. ^{2}Perform a cylinder compression test. Refer to Engine Mechanical in the Service Manual. ^{2}Check the LPR fuel pressure. Refer to the LPG Fuel System Diagnosis. ^{2}Check mixer module assembly for proper installation and connection.
Ignition System Checks	^{2}Check for the proper ignition output voltage using the spark tester J26792 or the equivalent. ^{2} Verify that the spark plugs are correct for use with LPG (R42LTS) ^{2}Check the spark plugs. Remove the plugs and inspect them for the following conditions: - Wet plugs - Cracks - Wear - Improper gap - Burned electrodes - Blistered insulators - Heavy deposits ^{2}Check the spark plug wires by connecting an ohmmeter to the ends of each wire in question. If the meter reads over 30,000 ohms, replace the wires.
Additional Checks	**Important:** The LPG Fuel system works on a fumigation principle of fuel introduction and is more sensitive to intake manifold leakage than the gasoline fuel supply system. ^{2}Check for vacuum leaks. Vacuum leaks can cause a higher than normal idle and low throttle angle control command. ^{2}Check the ECM grounds for being clean, tight, and in their proper locations. ^{2}Check the battery cables and ground straps. They should be clean and secure. Erratic voltage may cause all sensor readings to be skewed resulting in poor idle quality.

Table 3-12. Symptom Diagnosis

Checks	Action
Engine Mechanical Check	[2] Check the engine for the following: - Broken motor mounts - Improper valve timing - Low compression - Bent pushrods - Worn rocker arms - Broken or weak valve springs - Worn camshaft lobes
Surges/Chuggles	
DEFINITION: The engine has a power variation under a steady throttle or cruise. The vehicle feels as if it speeds up and slows down with no change in the accelerator pedal.	
Preliminary Checks	Refer to Important Preliminary Checks.
Sensor Checks	[2] Check Heated Exhaust Gas Oxygen Sensor (HEGO) performance.
Fuel System Checks	[2] Check for Rich or Lean symptom that causes the condition. Drive the vehicle at the speed of the complaint. Monitoring the oxygen sensors will help identify the problem. [2] Check the fuel pressure while the condition exists. Refer to LPG Fuel System Diagnosis. [2] Verify proper fuel control solenoid operation. [2] Verify that the LPG manual shut-off valve is fully open. [2] Check the in-line fuel filter for restrictions.
Ignition System Checks	[2] Check for the proper ignition output voltage using the spark tester J26792 or the equivalent. [2] Verify that the spark plugs are correct for use with LPG (R42LTS) [2] Check the spark plugs. Remove the plugs and inspect them for the following conditions: - Wet plugs - Cracks - Wear - Improper gap - Burned electrodes - Heavy deposits - Check the Crankshaft Position (CKP) sensor.
Additional Check	[2] Check the ECM grounds for being clean, tight, and in their proper locations. [2] Check the generator output voltage. [2] Check the vacuum hoses for kinks or leaks. [2] Check Transmission

Table 3-13. DTC to SPN/FMI Cross Reference Chart

DTC	Description	SPN Code	FMI Code
16	Crank Never Synced at Start	636	8
91	Fuel Pump Low Voltage	94	4
92	Fuel Pump High Voltage	94	3
107	MAP Low Voltage	106	4
108	MAP High Pressure	106	16
111	IAT Higher Than Expected 1	105	15
112	IAT Low Voltage	105	4
113	IAT High Voltage	105	3
116	ECT Higher Than Expected 1	110	15
117	ECT Low Voltage	110	4
118	ECT High Voltage	110	3
121	TPS 1 Lower Than TPS 2	51	1
122	TPS 1 Signal Voltage Low	51	4
123	TPS 1 Signal Voltage High	51	3
127	IAT Higher Than Expected 2	105	0
129	BP Low Pressure	108	1
134	EGO 1 Open/Inactive	724	10
154	EGO 2 Open/Inactive	520208	10
171	Adaptive Learn High Gasoline	520200	0
172	Adaptive Learn Low Gasoline	520200	1
182	Fuel Temp Gasoline Low Voltage	174	4
183	Fuel Temp Gasoline High Voltage	174	3
187	Fuel Temp LPG Low Voltage	520240	4
188	Fuel Temp LPG High Voltage	520240	3
217	ECT Higher Than Expected 2	110	0
219	Max Govern Speed Override	515	15
221	TPS 2 Signal Voltage Low	51	0
222	TPS 2 Signal Low Voltage	520251	4
223	TPS 2 Signal High Voltage	520251	3
261	Injector Driver 1 Open	651	5
262	Injector Driver 1 Shorted	651	6
264	Injector Driver 2 Open	652	5
265	Injector Driver 2 Shorted	652	6
267	Injector Driver 3 Open	653	5
268	Injector Driver 3 Shorted	653	6
270	Injector Driver 4 Open	654	5
271	Injector Driver 4 Shorted	654	6
336	Crank Sync Noise	636	2
337	Crank Loss	636	4
341	Cam Sync Noise	723	2
342	Cam Sensor Loss	723	4
420	Gasoline Cat Monitor	520211	10
524	Oil Pressure Low	100	1

Table 3-13. DTC to SPN/FMI Cross Reference Chart

DTC	Description	SPN Code	FMI Code
562	System Voltage Low	168	17
563	System Voltage High	168	15
601	Flash Checksum Invalid	628	13
604	RAM Failure	630	12
606	COP Failure	629	31
642	External 5V Reference Low	1079	4
643	External 5V Reference High	1079	3
685	Power Relay Open	1485	5
686	Power Relay Shorted	1485	4
687	Power Relay Short to Power	1485	3
1111	Fuel Rev Limit	515	16
1112	Spark Rev Limit	515	0
1151	Closed Loop Multiplier High LPG	520206	0
1152	Closed Loop Multiplier Low LPG	520206	1
1155	Closed Loop Multiplier High Gasoline	520204	0
1156	Closed Loop Multiplier Low Gasoline	520204	1
1161	Adaptive Learn High LPG	520202	0
1162	Adaptive Learn Low LPG	520202	1
1165	LPG Cat Monitor	520213	10
1171	LPG Pressure Higher Than Expected	520260	0
1172	LPG Pressure Lower Than Expected	520260	1
1173	EPR Comm Lost	520260	31
1174	EPR Voltage Supply High	520260	3
1175	EPR Voltage Supply Low	520260	4
1176	EPR Internal Actuator Fault	520260	12
1177	EPR Internal Circuitry Fault	520260	12
1178	EPR Internal Comm Fault	520260	12
1612	RTI 1 loss	629	31
1613	RTI 2 Loss	629	31
1614	RTI 3 Loss	629	31
1615	A/D Loss	629	31
1616	Invalid Interrupt	629	31
1625	Shutdown Request	1384	31
1626	CAN Tx Failure	639	12
1627	CAN Rx Failure	639	12
1628	CAN Address Conflict Failure	639	13
1629	Loss of TSC 1	639	31
2111	Unable to Reach Lower TPS	51	7
2112	Unable to Reach Higher TPS	51	
2135	TPS 1/2 Simultaneous Voltages	51	31
2229	BP Pressure High	108	0

SECTION 4. BOOM & PLATFORM

4.1 BOOM ROPE TORQUING PROCEDURES

1. Position boom in fully down and fully retracted position.

Model	600S	600SJ/660SJ
Dim. A	10.4" (26.5 cm)	19.1" (48.6 cm)
Dim. B (ref. only)	9" (23 cm)	9" (23 cm)

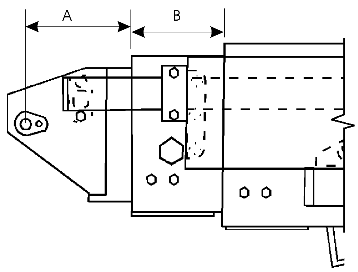


Figure 4-1. Dimensions of Boom Sections

2. Clamp both threaded ends of wire rope to prevent rotation.

NOTE: *Do not clamp on threads.*

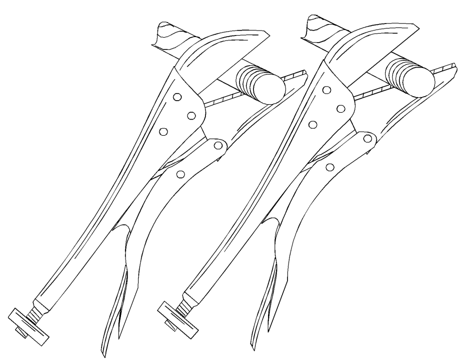


Figure 4-2. Clamping Wire Ropes

3. Install adjusting nuts (or remove nylon collar locknuts if re-adjusting) to both retract and extend wire ropes.
4. Torque retract adjusting nuts (platform end) to 15 ft. lbs. (20 Nm) alternating between the two wire ropes and keeping approximately the same amount of thread beyond the adjusting nut.

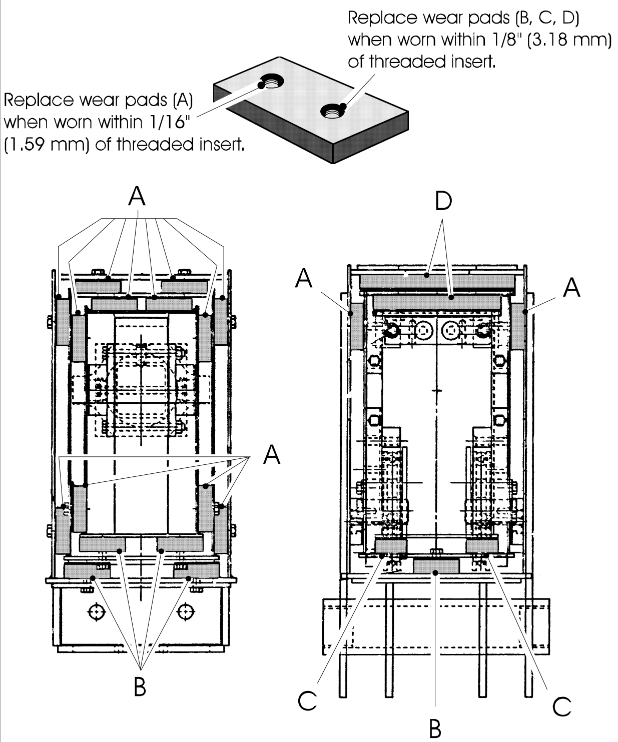
NOTE: *Do not allow wire rope to rotate. This may damage the wire rope.*

5. Repeat the torque procedure in step #4 to the extend wire ropes (turntable end).
6. Extend the boom 2 - 3 feet using the telescope function. Repeat step #4.
7. Retract the boom 1 - 2 feet using the telescope function. Do not bottom out telescope cylinder. Repeat step #5.
8. Extend the boom approximately 2 - 3 feet again and check torque on the retract wire ropes.
9. Retract the boom without bottoming out telescope cylinder and check torque on the extend wire ropes.

NOTE: *Step #8 and #9 may need to be repeated to equalize the torque on all 4 wire ropes.*

10. After all wire ropes have been properly torqued, install nylon collar locknuts. Remove all clamping devices and install all covers and guards. Check the boom for proper function.

4.2 WEAR PADS



PAD	THICKNESS OF NEW PAD	REPLACE WHEN WORN TO:
A	5/8"	9/16"
B	3/4"	5/8"
C	3/4"	5/8"
D	3/4"	5/8"

NOTE

Wear Pads are made of polyethylene; these pads run on polyurethene painted surfaces with no paint removed and no lubrication applied.

Figure 4-3. Location and Thickness of Wear Pads

Main Boom

1. Shim up wear pads to within 1/32 inch (.79 mm) tolerance between wear pad and adjacent surface.
2. Replace wear pads when worn within 1/16 inch (1.59 mm) and 1/8 inch (3.18 mm) - B, C, D of threaded insert. See Location and Thickness Of Wear Pads.
3. Adjusting wear pads, removing or adding shims, bolt length must also be changed.
   a. When adding shims, longer bolts must be used to ensure proper thread engagement in insert.
   b. When shims are removed, shorter bolts must be used so bolt does not protrude from insert and come into contact with boom surface.

4.3 WIRE ROPE

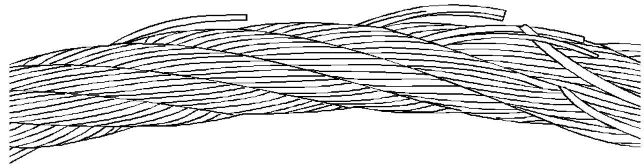
Each day before using the machine:

1. Raise the main boom to approximately horizontal.
2. Extend and retract the boom sections.
3. Check for delayed movement of the fly section, which indicates loose wire ropes.

Inspection

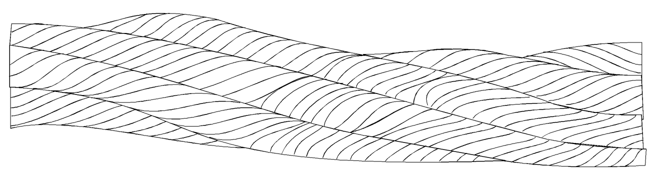
NOTE: *The pictures in this paragraph are just samples to show the replacement criteria of the rope.*

1. Inspect ropes for broken wires, particularly valley wire breaks and breaks at end terminations.



Flexing a wire rope can often expose broken wires hidden in valleys between strands.

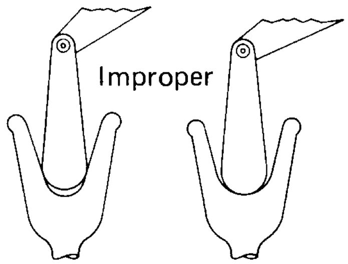
2. Inspect ropes for corrosion.
3. Inspect ropes for kinks or abuse.



A kink is caused by pulling down a loop in a slack line during improper handling, installation, or operation.

4. Inspect sheaves for condition of bearings/pins. (See Dimension Of Sheaves for proper dimension.)
5. Inspect sheaves for condition of flanges. (See Dimension Of Sheaves for proper dimension.)

6. Inspect sheaves with a groove wearout gauge for excessive wear.



Observe the groove so that it may be clearly seen whether the contour of the gauge matches the contour of the bottom of the groove.

7. Ropes passing inspection should be lubricated with wire rope lubricant before reassembly.

Three Month Inspection

1. Remove boom covers and visually (with flashlight) inspect the ropes for rust, broken wires, frays, abuse, or any signs of abnormalities.
2. Check rope tension by deflecting the ropes by hand...properly tensioned ropes should have little or no movement.

Eight Year Inspection

1. Mandatory wire rope and sheave replacement.

   Additional inspection required if:

   a. Machine is exposed to hostile environment or conditions.

   b. Erratic boom operation or unusual noise exists.

   c. Machine is idle for an extended period.

   d. Boom is overloaded or sustained a shock load.

   e. Boom exposed to electrical arc...wires may be fused internally.

Replacement Criteria

1. Sheaves and wire rope must be replaced as sets.
2. Rusted or corroded wire ropes.
3. Kinked, “bird caged”, or crushed ropes.
4. Ropes at end of adjustment range.
5. Sheaves failing wearout gage inspection.
6. Ropes with 6 total broken wires in one rope lay, 3 in one strand in one rope lay, 1 valley break, or 1 break at any end termination.

4.4 BOOM MAINTENANCE

Removal

1. Remove the platform/support as follows:

   a. Disconnect electrical cable from control console.

   b. Remove the eight (8) bolts securing the platform to the platform support, then remove the platform.

   c. Using an overhead crane or suitable lifting device, strap support the platform support.

   d. Remove the six (6) bolts and locknuts securing the support to the rotator.

   e. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the rotator shaft, then remove the support from the rotator.

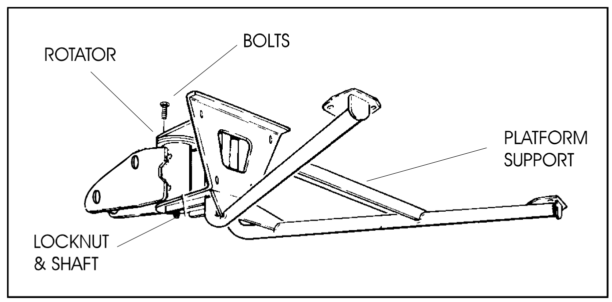


Figure 4-4. Location of Components - Platform Support

2. Remove the rotator and slave level cylinder from the fly boom as follows:

   a. Tag and disconnect hydraulic lines to rotator. Use suitable container to retain any residual hydraulic fluid. Cap hydraulic lines and ports.

   b. Remove hardware from pin #1. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer remove pin #1 from the fly boom.

   c. Supporting the rotator, remove the hardware from pin #2. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove pin #2 from the fly boom and remove the rotator.

   d. Telescope the fly section out approximately 20 inches (50.8 cm) to gain access to the slave leveling cylinder.

   e. Supporting the slave, cylinder remove the hardware from pin #3. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer remove pin #3 from the fly boom.

   f. Tag and disconnect hydraulic lines to the slave leveling cylinder. Use a suitable container to retain any residual hydraulic fluid. Cap hydraulic lines and ports. Remove the slave cylinder.

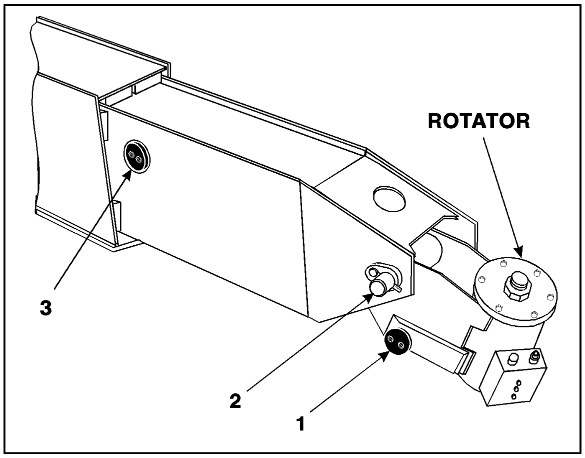


Figure 4-5. Location of Components - Rotator and Leveling Cylinder

3. Remove the powertrack from the boom as follows:

a. Disconnect wiring harness from ground control box.

NOTICE

HYDRAULIC LINES AND PORTS SHOULD BE CAPPED IMMEDIATELY AFTER DISCONNECTING LINES TO AVOID ENTRY OF CONTAMINANTS INTO SYSTEM.

b. Tag and disconnect hydraulic lines from boom to control valve. Use a suitable container to retain any residual hydraulic fluid. Cap hydraulic lines and ports.

c. Disconnect the dual capacity indicator limit switch from side of boom section.

d. Remove hydraulic lines and electrical cables from powertrack.

e. Using a suitable lifting equipment, adequately support powertrack weight along entire length.

f. Remove bolts #1 securing the push tube on the fly boom section.

g. Remove bolts #2 securing the push tube on the mid boom section.

h. With powertrack support and using all applicable safety precautions, remove bolts #3 and #4 securing rail to the base boom section. Remove powertrack from boom section.

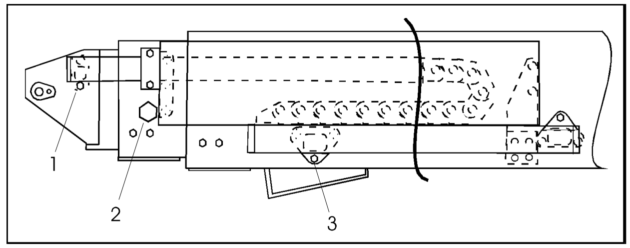


Figure 4-6. Location of Components - Boom Powertrack

4. Remove boom assembly from machine as follows:

a. Using suitable lifting equipment, adequately support boom assembly weight along entire length.

NOTICE

HYDRAULIC LINES AND PORTS SHOULD BE CAPPED IMMEDIATELY AFTER DISCONNECTING LINES TO AVOID ENTRY OF CONTAMINANTS INTO SYSTEM.

b. Tag and disconnect hydraulic lines from telescope cylinder. Use a suitable container to retain any residual hydraulic fluid. Cap hydraulic lines and ports.

c. Remove hardware securing the lift cylinder rod end to the base boom section.

d. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the lift cylinder pin from the base boom.

e. Remove hardware securing the master cylinder rod end to the base boom section.

f. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the master cylinder pin from the base boom.

g. Remove hardware securing the pushbar to the turntable upright.

NOTICE

WHEN REMOVING PIN FROM PUSHBAR. CARE MUST BE TAKEN NOT TO DROP THE PUSHBAR ONTO THE WIRE ROPE ADJUSTMENT THREADS. FAILURE TO DO SO WILL RESULT IN DAMAGING THREADS.

h. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the push bar pin from the turntable upright.

i. Remove hardware securing the boom pivot pin to the turntable upright.

j. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the pivot pin from the turntable upright.

k. Using all applicable safety precautions, carefully lift boom assembly clear of turntable and lower to ground or suitably supported work surface.

Disassembly of Boom Sections

1. Remove hardware securing the push bar to aft end of the telescope cylinder, then remove pin from cylinder.
2. Remove hardware securing the cover plate on the bottom front of the base boom section.

NOTE: *Do not allow wire rope to rotate. This may damage the wire rope.*

3. Clamp both threaded ends of wire rope to prevent rotation. Note: Do not clamp on threads. Remove jam nuts and nuts which secure the wire rope adjustments to the bottom front of the base boom section.

NOTE: *Step 4 is only applicable to CE specification machines.*

4. Remove the spring mounting plate, spring, and proximity switch from the aft end of the base section.

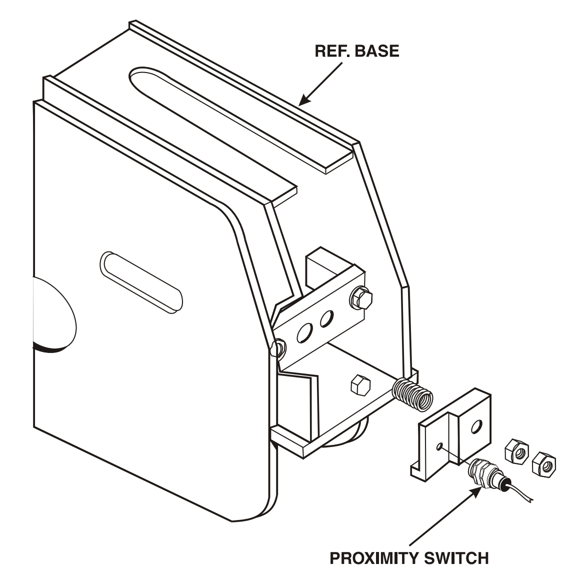


Figure 4-7. Disassembly of Proximity Switch Assembly

5. Remove hardware securing the wire rope adjustment block to aft end of the base boom section and remove the block.
6. Remove hardware securing the telescope cylinder to aft end of the mid boom section.

NOTICE

WHEN REMOVING THE TELESCOPE CYLINDER FROM THE BOOM, IT MAY BE NECESSARY AT SOME POINT IN ORDER TO CLEAR ASSEMBLIES MOUNTED WITHIN THE BOOM. CARE MUST BE TAKEN TO MOVE THE CYLINDER SLOWLY FROM THE BOOM. DAMAGE TO COMPONENTS MAY RESULT FROM FORCIBLE IMPACT WITH THESE ASSEMBLIES.

7. Remove bolts securing wire rope attach bar to top of fly boom section.
8. Pull the telescope cylinder and wire ropes partially from aft end of the base boom section; secure the cylinder with a suitable sling and lifting device at approximately the center of gravity.

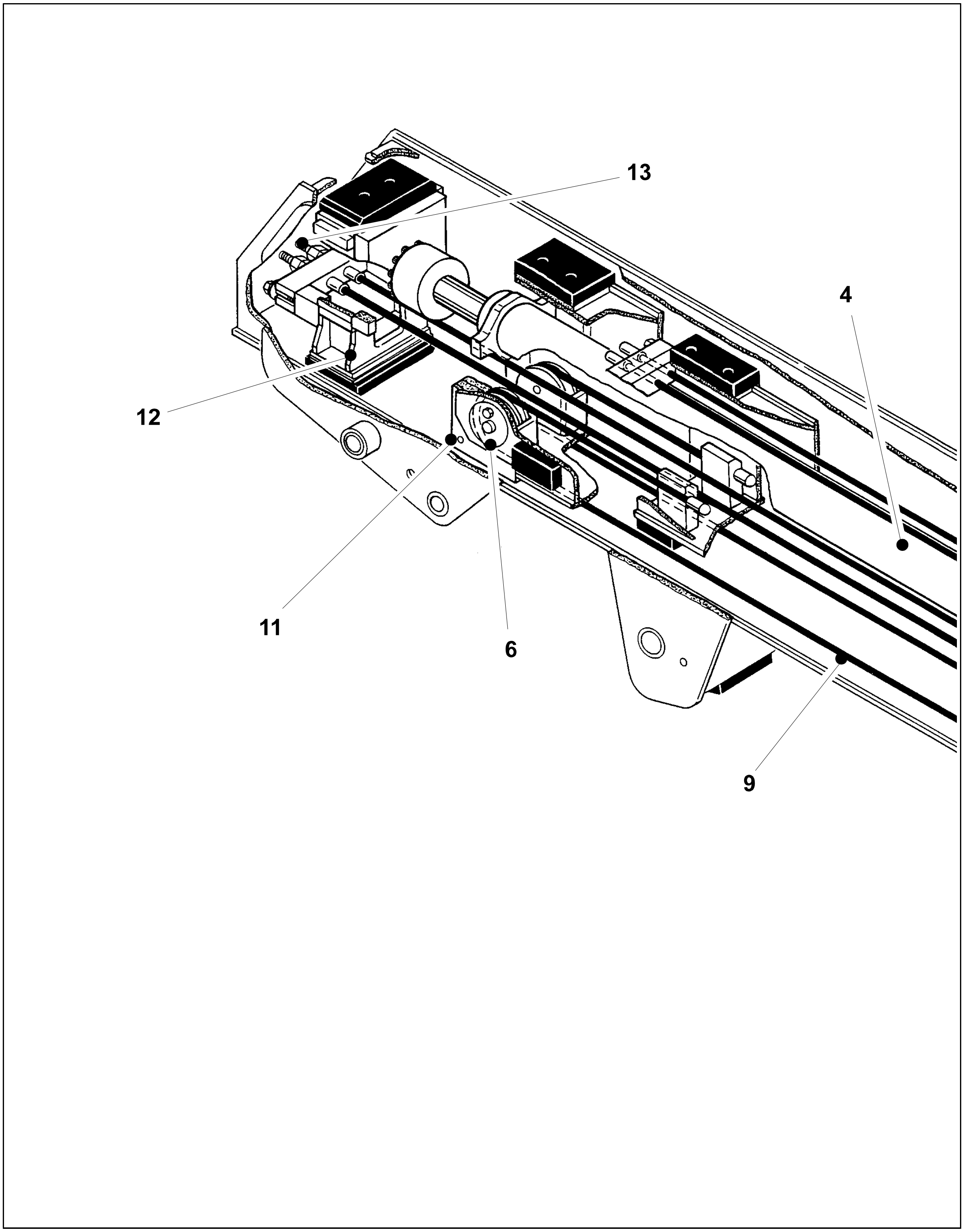


Figure 4-8. Boom Assembly Cutaway - Sheet 1 of 3

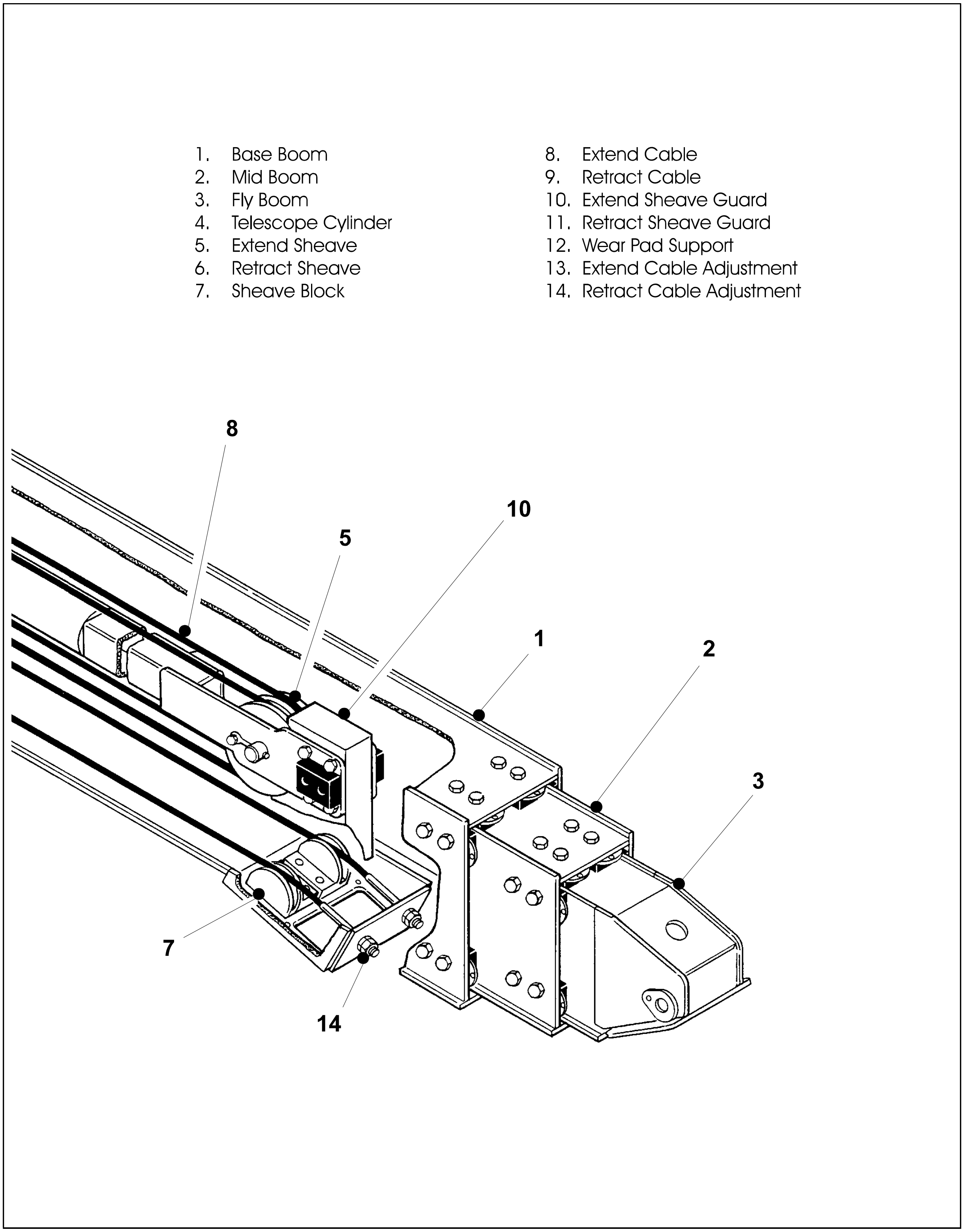


Figure 4-9. Boom Assembly Cutaway - Sheet 2 of 3

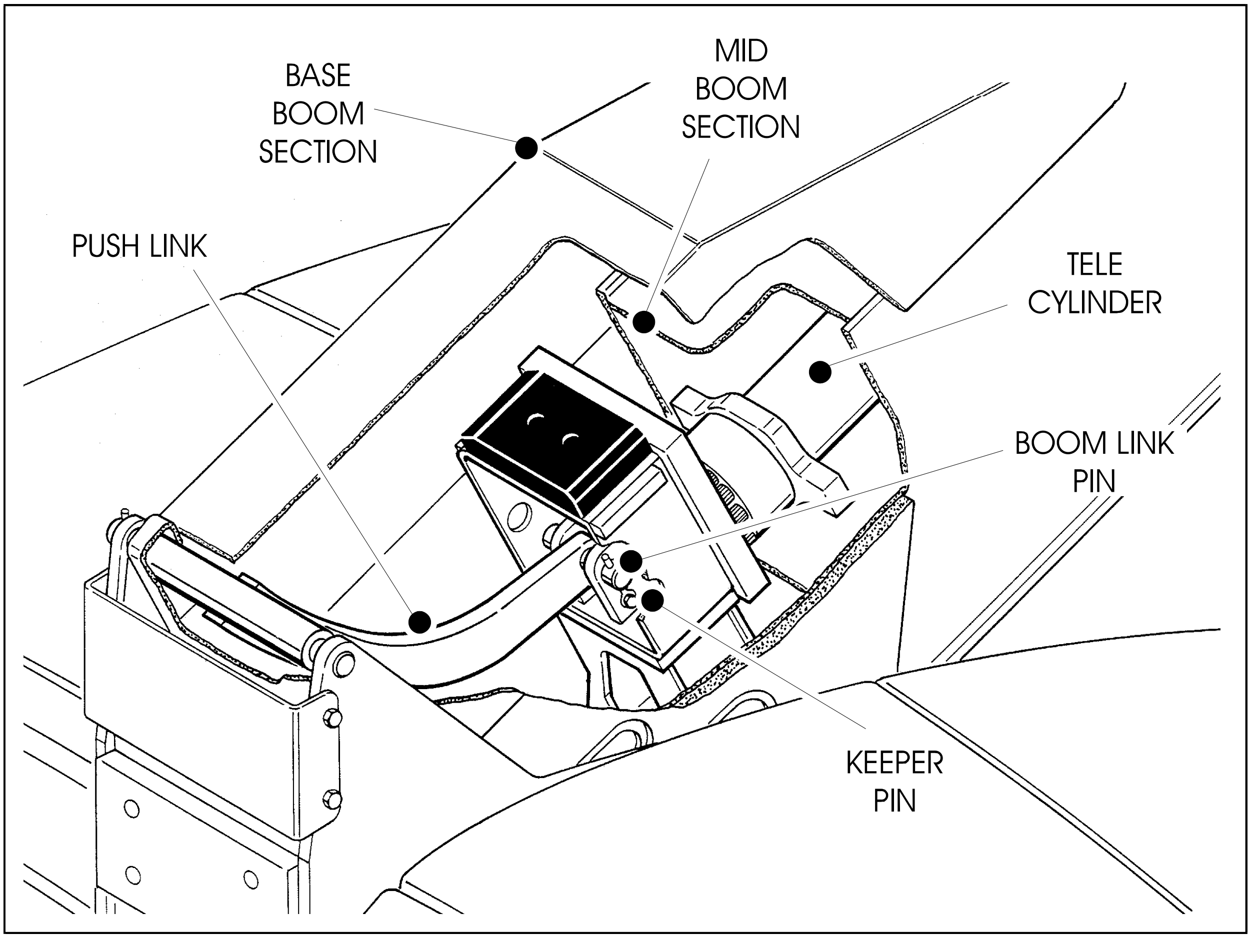


Figure 4-10. Boom Assembly Cutaway - Sheet 3 of 3

8. Carefully remove the telescope cylinder and sheave assembly. Place telescope cylinder on a suitable trestle.

a. Remove hardware from the wear pads; remove wear pads from cylinder.

b. Remove hardware from the wire rope guard; remove guard from cylinder.

c. Remove hardware from the sheave pin; remove pin and sheave from cylinder.

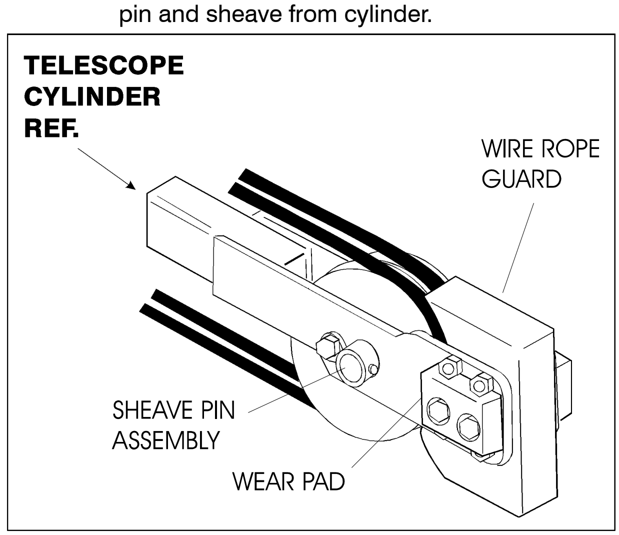


Figure 4-11. Disassembly of Sheave Assembly

9. Remove hardware which secures the wear pads to the front of base boom section; remove wear pads from the top, sides and bottom of the base boom section.

10. Using an overhead crane or suitable lifting device, remove mid and fly boom sections from base section. Note: When removing mid and fly boom sections from base boom section, retract wire rope must be dragged along with boom sections.

11. Remove hardware which secures the wear pads to the aft end of mid boom section; remove the wear pads from the top, sides and bottom of the mid boom section.

12. Remove hardware which secures the sheave guards and sheave assemblies to mid boom section, remove sheave assemblies from mid boom section.

13. Remove hardware which secures the wear pads to the front of mid boom section; remove wear pads from the top, sides and bottom of the mid boom section.

14. Using an overhead crane or suitable lifting device, remove fly boom section from mid section. Note: When removing fly boom section from mid boom section, retract wire rope must be dragged along with fly boom section.

15. Remove hardware which secures the wear pads to the aft end of fly boom section; remove wear pads from the top, sides and bottom of the fly boom section.

16. When removing wire rope from fly boom section, push the cable into fly boom. Route wire rope back through holes in the side of the fly boom section.

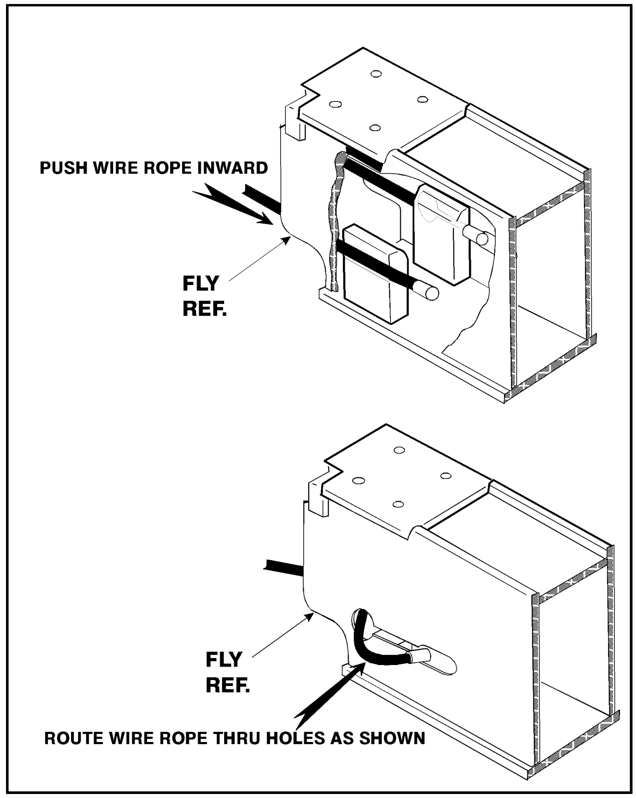


Figure 4-12. Disassembly Wire Rope Routing Procedure

Inspection

NOTE: *When inspecting pins and bearings Refer to the guidelines established in Section 2 - General.*

1. Inspect all sheaves (extend and retract wire ropes and telescope cylinder) for excessive groove wear, burrs or other damage. Replace sheaves as necessary.

NOTE: *To check the size, contour and amount of wear, a groove gauge is used. Replace the sheave if worn as shown in the following drawing.*

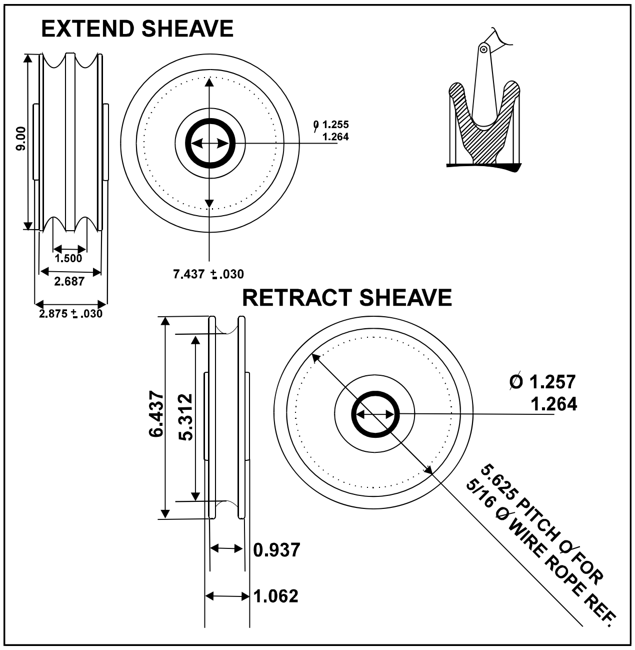


Figure 4-13. Dimension of Sheaves When New

2. Inspect extend and retract wire rope sheave bearings for wear, scoring, or other damage, and for ovality.
3. Inspect extend wire rope and retract wire rope sheave pins for scoring, tapering and ovality. Replace pins as necessary.
4. Inspect telescope cylinder sheave pin for scoring, tapering and ovality. Replace pins as necessary.
5. Inspect boom pivot pin for wear, scoring, tapering and ovality, or other damage. Replace pins as necessary.
6. Inspect telescope cylinder attach point for scoring, tapering and ovality. Replace pins as necessary.
7. Inspect upper lift cylinder attach pin for wear, scoring, tapering and ovality, or other damage. Ensure pin surfaces are protected prior to installation. Replace pins as necessary.
8. Inspect inner diameter of boom pivot bushing for scoring, distortion, wear, or other damage. Replace bearing as necessary.
9. Inspect all wear pads for excessive wear or other damage. Replace pads when worn to within 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) of threaded insert.
10. Inspect extend and retract wire rope attach point components for cracks, stretching, distortion, or other damage. Replace components as necessary.
11. Inspect all threaded components for damage such as stretching, thread deformation, or twisting. Replace as necessary.
12. Inspect structural units of boom assembly for bending, cracking, separation of welds, or other damage. Replace boom sections as necessary.

Assembly

NOTE: *When installing fly section wear pads, install same number and thickness of shims as were removed during disassembly.*

1. Measure inside dimensions of the base and mid sections to determine the number of shims required for proper lift.
2. Measure inside dimensions of the mid section to determine the number of shims required for proper lift.
3. Install side, top and bottom wear pads to the aft end of fly section; shim evenly to the measurements of the inside of mid section.
4. Install retract wire ropes into aft end of fly section, route wire ropes thru holes in side of fly boom section and pull into slot.

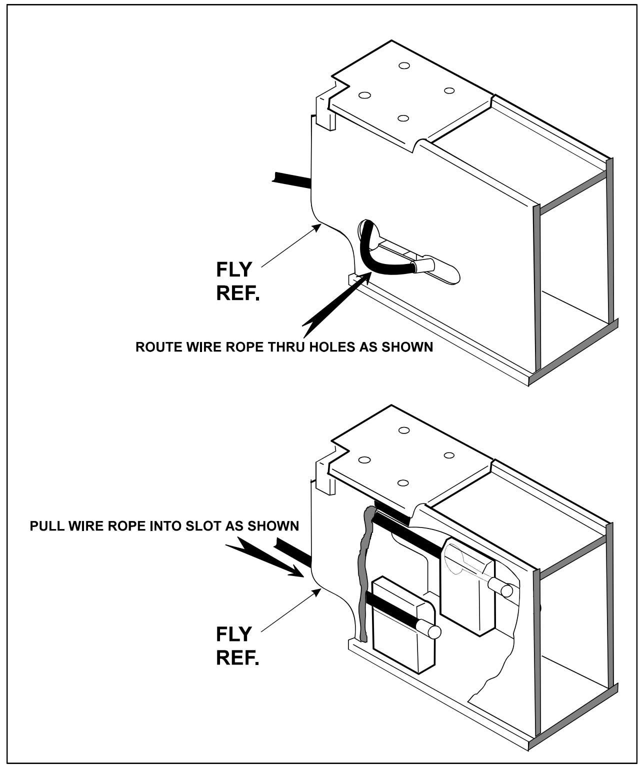


Figure 4-14. Routing Installation of Retract Wire Ropes

5. Install side, top and bottom wear pads to the aft end of mid section; shim evenly to the measurements of the inside of mid section.

⚠ CAUTION

WHEN ASSEMBLING BOOM SECTIONS, ENSURE THAT THE BOOM SLIDING TRAJECTORIES HAVE BEEN CLEARED OF CHAINS, TOOLS, AND OTHER OBSTRUCTIONS.

6. Shim the insides of the boom sections for a total of 1/16 inch (0.062) clearance (if the action is centered, there will be 1/32 clearance on each side).

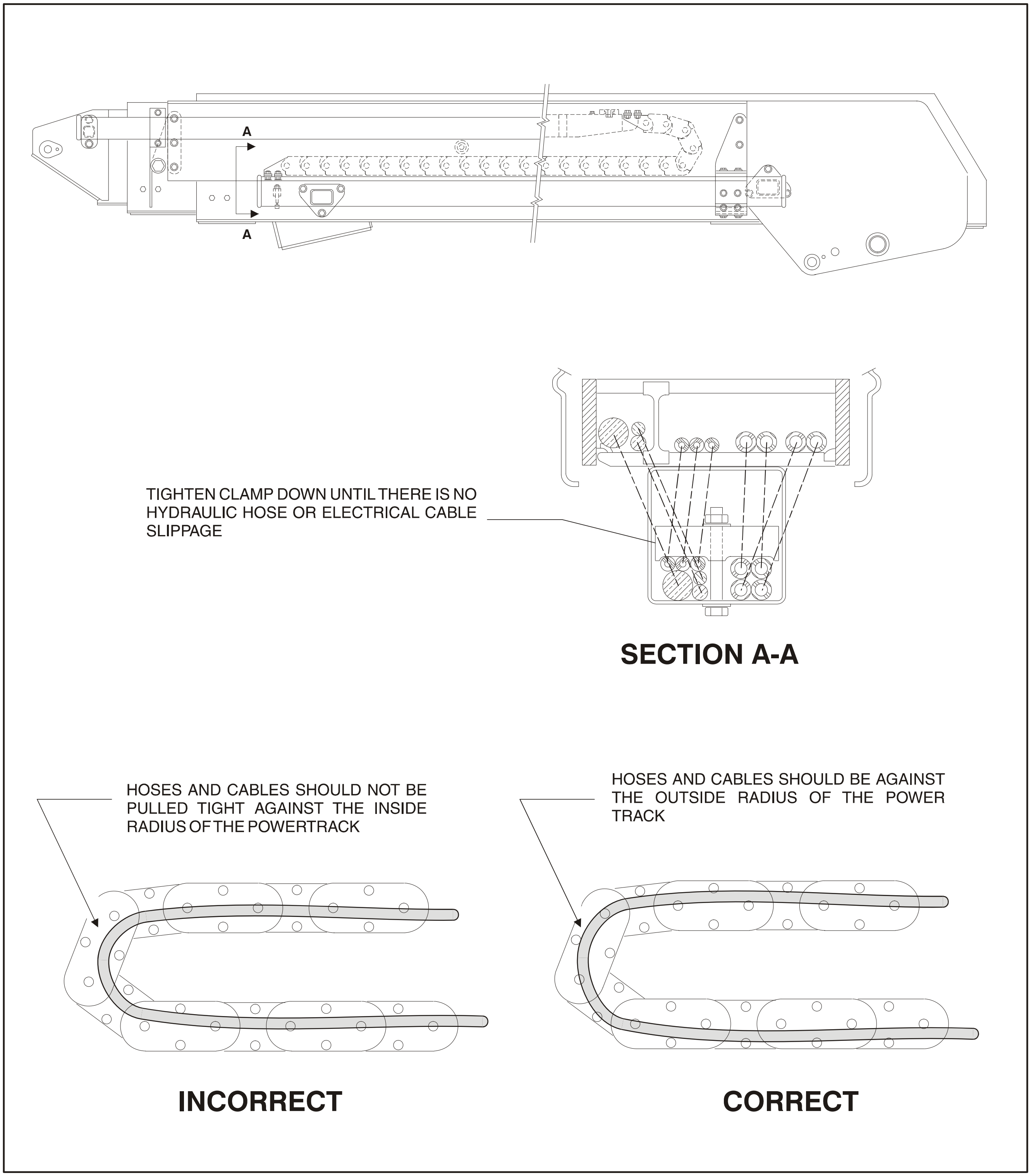


Figure 4-15. Boom Powertrack Installation

7. Slide fly boom section into the mid boom section. Shim boom, if necessary, for a total of 1/16 inch (0.062) clearance.

8. Install wear pads into the forward position of the mid boom section. Shim boom, if necessary, for a total of 2/10 inch (0.20) clearance.

9. Properly position the retraction wire rope sheaves assemblies at the aft end of the mid boom section; ensure all sheave-to-mounting block attachment holes align. Install the sheave pins and secure them with mounting hardware. Position retract wire ropes onto the sheaves.

10. Install sheave guards to aft end of mid boom section and secure with mounting hardware.

11. Slide mid boom section into the base boom section. Allow the retraction wire ropes to trail between the bottom surfaces of boom sections. Shim boom, if necessary, for a total of 1/16 inch (0.062) clearance.

12. Install wear pads into the forward position of the base boom section. Shim boom, if necessary, for a total of 2/10 inch (0.20) clearance.

13. Install sheave block to bottom of base boom section and adjust block so that retract wire ropes do not come into contact with boom surfaces.

14. Install wire rope threaded ends thru attachment holes in the bottom of base boom section. Loosely install nuts and jam nuts onto the threaded ends of wire ropes.

15. Align the telescope cylinder barrel-to-sheave attachment point. Install extend sheave pin through the telescope cylinder barrel and sheave assembly; secure pin with mounting hardware.

16. Route extend wire ropes around extend sheave and secure wire ropes to the telescope cylinder.

17. Install extend wire rope mounting blocks to threaded ends of wire ropes. Loosely install nuts and jam nuts onto the threaded ends of wire ropes.

NOTE: *When installing wire ropes, care must be taken not to twist or cross the wire ropes.*

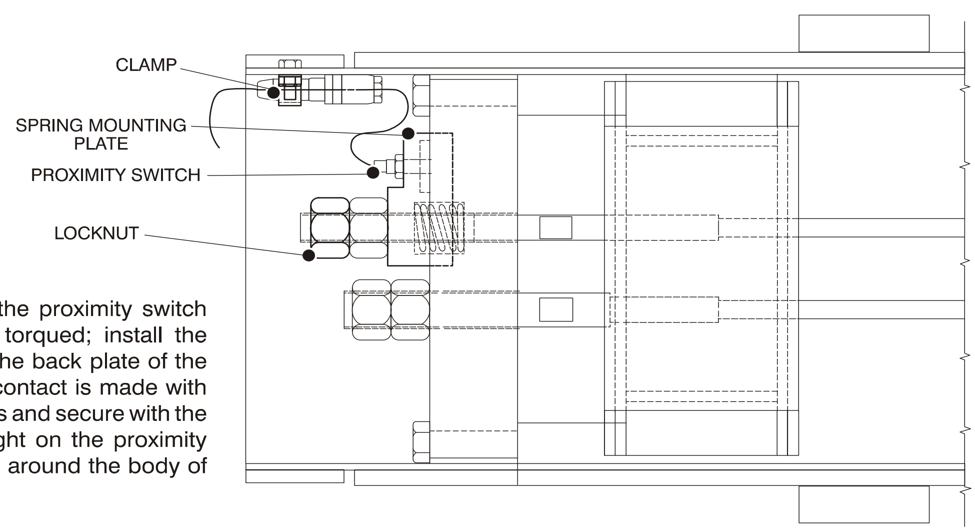
NOTE: *For non CE specification machines, skip step 18 and proceed to step 19.*

18. Install extend wire rope mounting blocks, proximity mounting plate and spring to threaded ends of wire ropes. Loosely install nuts and jam nuts onto the threaded ends of wire ropes. Refer to Figure 4-16., Installing the Proximity Switch.

19. Secure the sling and lifting device at the telescope cylinder's approximate center of gravity, and lift the cylinder to the aft end of the boom assembly.

NOTICE

WHEN INSERTING THE TELESCOPE CYLINDER INTO THE BOOM, IT MAY BE NECESSARY AT SOME POINT TO TURN THE CYLINDER SLIGHTLY IN ORDER TO CLEAR ASSEMBLIES MOUNTED WITHIN THE BOOM. CARE MUST BE TAKEN TO MOVE THE CYLINDER SLOWLY INTO POSITION. DAMAGE TO COMPONENTS MAY RESULT FROM FORCIBLE IMPACT WITH THESE ASSEMBLIES.



NOTE: To avoid damaging the proximity switch after the locknut has been torqued; install the proximity switch screw into the back plate of the spring mounting plate until contact is made with the front plate. Back off 4 turns and secure with the jam nut. Be sure that the light on the proximity switch is lit. Install the clamp around the body of the cable connector.

Figure 4-16. Installing the Proximity Switch

20. Align the cylinder with the slots at aft end of mid boom section, then secure cylinder with mounting hardware.

21. Align holes in aft end of the fly boom section with holes in wire rope mounting block, then secure with mounting hardware.

22. Align holes in aft end of the mid boom section with holes in wire rope mounting block, then secure with mounting hardware.

NOTE: *Boom wire ropes must be torqued after installation of the boom assembly.*

23. Align holes in rod end of the telescope cylinder with holes in push bar. Install push bar pin and secure with mounting hardware.

23. Install the hydraulic lines and electrical cables, and the harnessing powertrack components as follows:

a. Align holes in powertrack rail with attachment holes in side of the base boom section. Secure the rail with mounting hardware.

b. Install powertrack to rail with mounting hardware.

c. Attach push tube bracket to the side of the mid boom section with mounting hardware.

NOTE: *Do not over tighten attach bolt on push tube bracket. It should pivot freely.*

d. Install slide block and wear pads to the powertrack rail with mounting hardware.

e. Install powertrack to push tube with mounting hardware.

f. Carefully feed the hoses and electrical cables through the aft end of the powertrack rail, powertrack and push tube.

g. Ensure all hoses and cables are properly routed through the powertrack rail, powertrack and push tube. Tighten or install all clamping or securing apparatus to the hoses or cables, as necessary.

h. Install powertrack cover and push tube rods with mounting hardware.

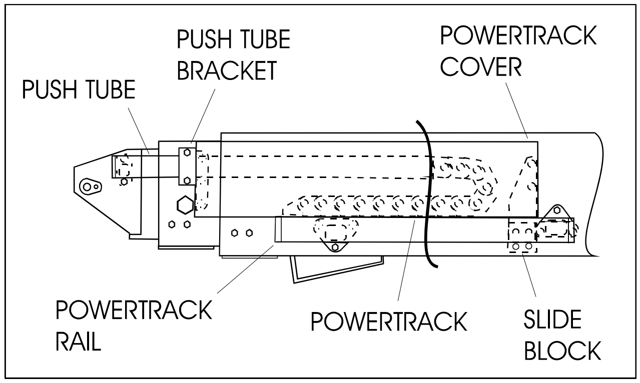


Figure 4-17. Reassembly of Components - Boom Powertrack Assembly

Installation

1. Using a suitable lifting device, position boom assembly on turntable so that the pivot holes in both boom and turntable are aligned.

2. Install boom pivot pin, ensuring that location of hole in pin is aligned with attach point on turntable.

3. If necessary, gently tap pin into position with soft headed mallet. Secure pin mounting hardware.

4. Align push bar pivot hole with pivot holes in turntable. Install push bar pivot pin, ensuring that location of hole in pin is aligned with attach point on turntable.

5. If necessary, gently tap pin into position with soft headed mallet. Secure pin mounting hardware.

6. Connect all wiring to the ground control box.

7. Connect all hydraulic lines running along side of boom assembly.

8. Using all applicable safety precautions, operate lifting device in order to position boom lift cylinder so that holes in the cylinder rod end and boom structure are aligned. Insert the lift cylinder pin, ensuring that location of hole in pin is aligned with attach point on boom.

9. Align holes in boom structure with hole in master cylinder. Insert the master cylinder pin, ensuring that location of hole in pin is aligned with attach point on boom.

10. Adjust retract and extend cables to the proper torque. Refer to paragraph 2-6, boom cable torque procedures.

11. Using all applicable safety precautions, operate machine systems and raise and extend boom fully, noting the performance of the extension cycle.

12. Retract and lower boom, noting the performance of the retraction cycle.

4.5 ARTICULATING JIB BOOM

Removal

1. For platform/support removal see platform/support removal diagram. See Section 4.4, Boom Maintenance.

2. Position the articulating jib boom level with ground.

3. Remove mounting hardware from slave leveling cylinder pin #1. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the cylinder pin from articulating jib boom.

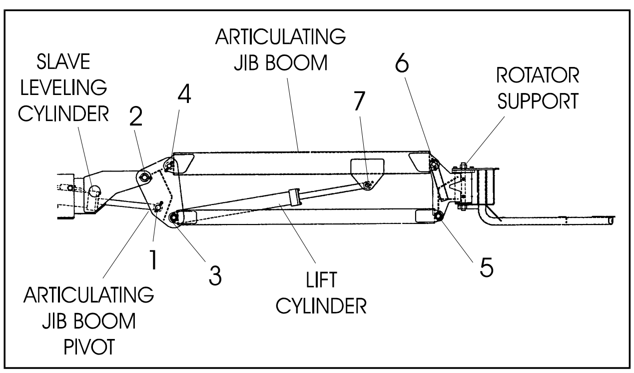


Figure 4-18. Location of Components - Articulating Jib Boom

4. Remove mounting hardware from articulating jib boom pivot pin #2. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the pivot pin from boom assembly.

Disassembly

1. Remove mounting hardware from articulating jib boom pivot pins #3 and #4. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the pins from articulating jib boom pivot weldment.

2. Remove mounting hardware from rotator support pins #5 and #6. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the pins from rotator support.

3. Remove mounting hardware from lift cylinder pin #7. Using a suitable brass drift and hammer, remove the cylinder pin from articulating jib boom.

Inspection

NOTE: *When inspecting pins and bearings refer to Section 2 - General.*

1. Inspect articulating fly boom pivot pin for wear, scoring, tapering and ovality, or other damage. Replace pins as necessary.

2. Inspect articulating fly boom pivot attach points for scoring, tapering and ovality, or other damage. Replace pins as necessary.

3. Inspect inner diameter of articulating fly boom pivot bearings for scoring, distortion, wear, or other damage. Replace bearings as necessary.

4. Inspect lift cylinder attach pin for wear, scoring, tapering and ovality, or other damage. Ensure pin surfaces are protected prior to installation. Replace pins as necessary.

5. Inspect inner diameter of rotator attach point bearings for scoring, distortion, wear, or other damage. Replace bearing as necessary.

6. Inspect all threaded components for damage such as stretching, thread deformation, or twisting. Replace as necessary.

7. Inspect structural units of articulating jib boom assembly for bending, cracking, separation of welds, or other damage. Replace boom sections as necessary.

Assembly

NOTE: *For location of components See Section 4-18., Location of Components - Articulating Jib Boom.*

1. Align lift cylinder with attach holes in articulating jib boom. Using a soft head mallet, install cylinder pin #7 into articulating jib boom and secure with mounting hardware.
2. Align rotator support with attach hole in articulating jib boom. Using a soft head mallet, install rotator support pin #6 into articulating jib boom and secure with mounting hardware.
3. Align bottom tubes with attach holes in rotator support. Using a soft head mallet, install rotator support pin #5 into articulating jib boom and secure with mounting hardware.
4. Align articulating jib boom with attach hole in articulating jib boom pivot weldment. Using a soft head mallet, install rotator support pin #4 into articulating jib boom and secure with mounting hardware.
5. Align bottom tubes with attach holes in articulating jib boom pivot weldment. Using a soft head mallet, install rotator support pin #3 into articulating jib boom pivot weldment and secure with mounting hardware.
6. Align articulating jib boom pivot weldment with attach holes in fly boom assembly. Using a soft head mallet, install pivot pin #2 into fly boom assembly and secure with mounting hardware.
7. Align the slave leveling cylinder with attach holes in articulating jib boom pivot weldment. Using a soft head mallet, install slave leveling cylinder pin #1 into articulating jib boom pivot weldment and secure with mounting hardware.

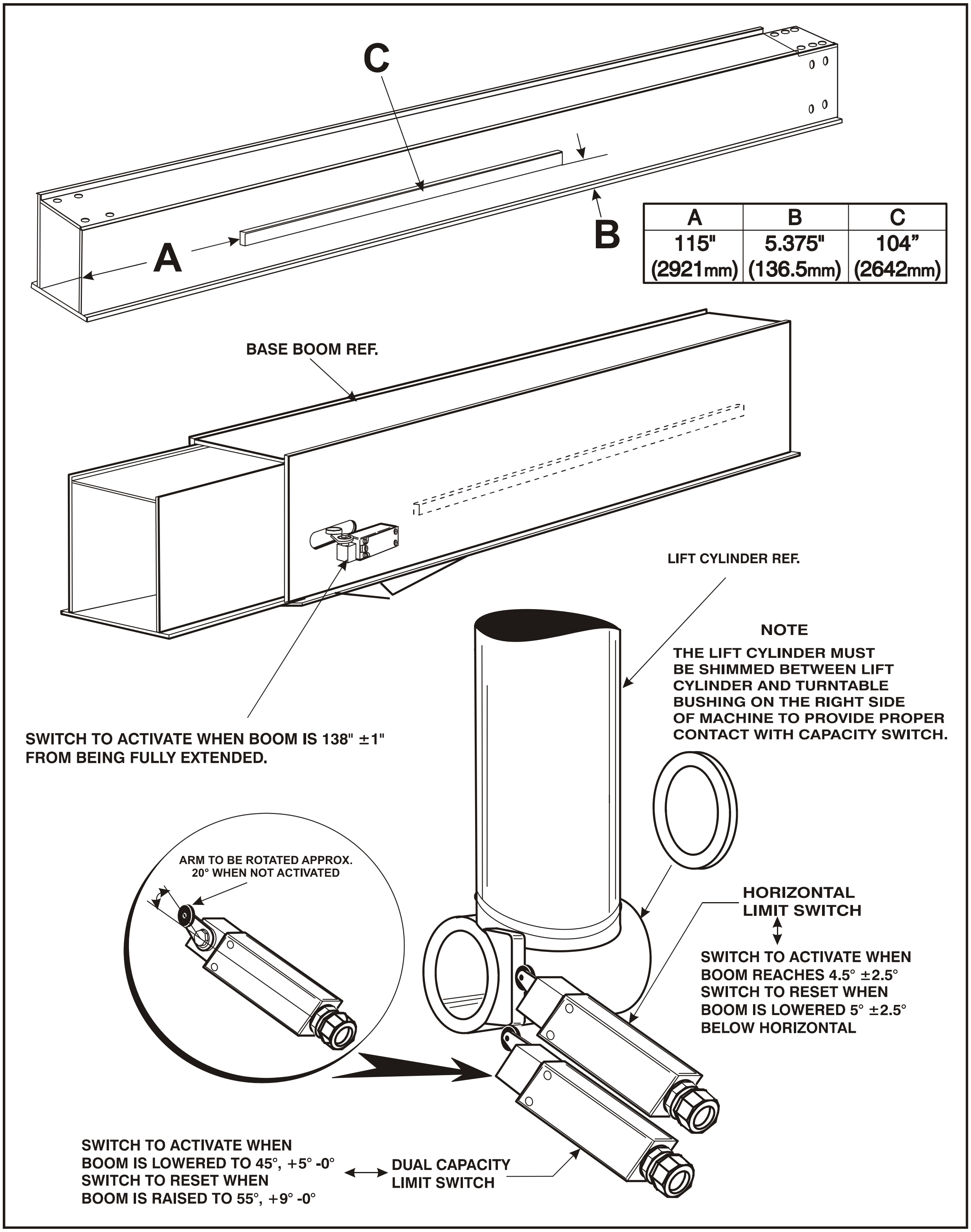
4.6 LIMIT SWITCHES AND CAM VALVE ADJUSTMENT

Adjust switches and cam valve as shown in Figure 4-19., Horizontal Limit and Dual Capacity Limit Switches Adjustments and Figure 4-20., Transport Switch Adjustments - CE Machines Only.

4.7 BOOM CLEANLINESS GUIDELINES

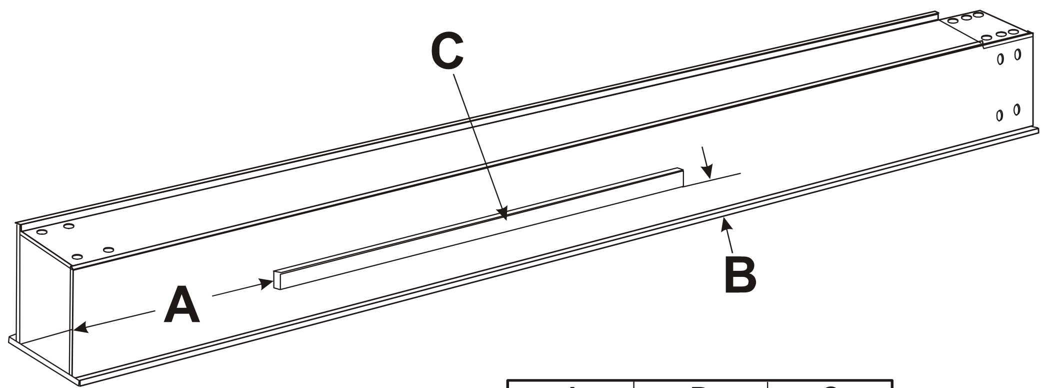
The following are guidelines for internal boom cleanliness for machines that are used in excessively dirty environments.

1. JLG recommends the use of the JLG Hostile Environment Package to keep the internal portions of a boom cleaner and to help prevent dirt and debris from entering the boom. This package reduces the amount of contamination which can enter the boom but does not eliminate the need for more frequent inspections and maintenance when used in these types of environments.
2. JLG recommends that you follow all guidelines for servicing your equipment in accordance with the instructions outlined in the JLG Service & Maintenance Manual for your machine. Periodic maintenance and inspection is vital to the proper operation of the machine. The frequency of service and maintenance must be increased as environment, severity and frequency of usage requires.
3. Debris and foreign matter inside of the boom can cause premature failure of components and should be removed. Methods to remove debris should always be done using all applicable safety precautions outlined in the JLG Operation & Safety Manual and the JLG Service & Maintenance Manuals.
4. The first attempt to remove debris from inside the boom must be to utilize pressurized air to blow the debris toward the nearest exiting point from the boom. Make sure that all debris is removed before operating the machine.
5. If pressurized air cannot dislodge the debris, then water with mild solvents applied via a pressure washer can be used. Again the method is to wash the debris toward the nearest exiting point from the boom. Make sure that all debris is removed, that no “puddling” of water has occurred, and that the boom internal components are dry prior to operating the machine. Make sure you comply with all federal and local laws for disposing of the wash water and debris.
6. If neither pressurized air nor washing of the boom dislodges and removes the debris, then disassemble the boom in accordance to the instructions outlined in the JLG Service & Maintenance Manual to remove the debris.



A	B	C
115" (2921mm)	5.375" (136.5mm)	104” (2642mm)

Figure 4-19. Horizontal Limit and Dual Capacity Limit Switches Adjustments



A	B	C
16.1" (409.5mm)	5.375" (136.5mm)	205" (5207mm)

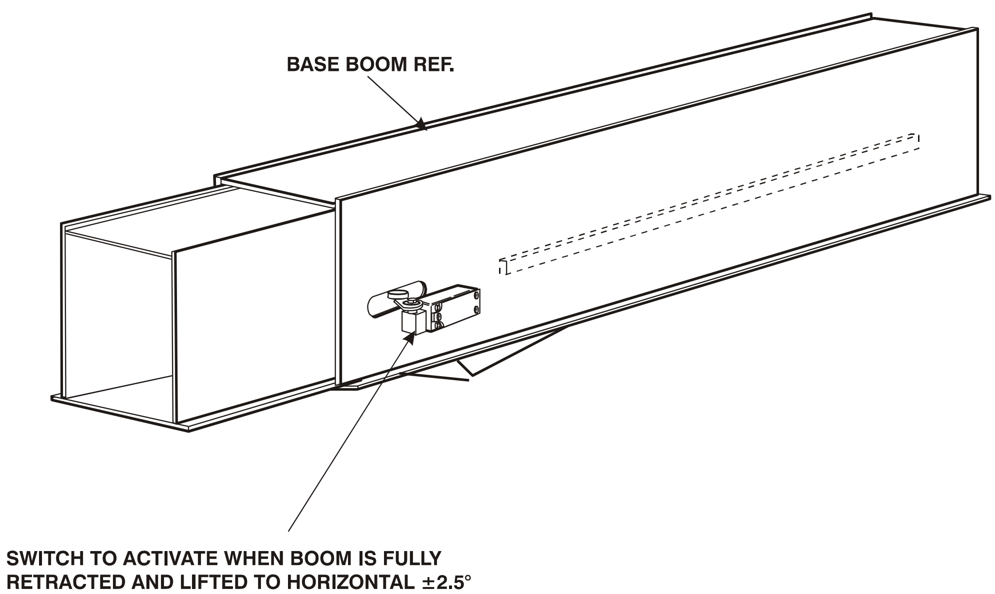


Figure 4-20. Transport Switch Adjustments - CE Machines Only

4.8 PLATFORM

Platform Sections Replacement

The platform is made up of five sections: floor, right side, left side, back (console box mounting.) and gate. The sections are secured with huck magna grip fastener and collars. Replace damaged platform sections as follows:

1. Support the huck collar with a sledge hammer or other suitable support.
2. Using a hammer and chisel, remove the collar from the fastener as shown in the diagram below.

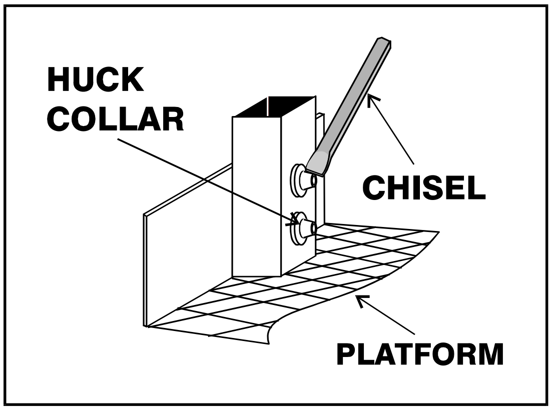


Figure 4-21. Platform Section Replacement

3. When installing new section of platform replace huck fasteners with 1/4 x 20 NC x 2 1/4" grade 5 bolts, flatwashers and locknuts.
4. When installing a new gate to platform, replace rivets with 1/4 x 20 NC x 2 “grade 5 bolts, flatwashers and locknuts.

4.9 ROTATOR - HELAC (PRIOR TO S/N 0300130779)

Disassembly

1. Place actuator on a clean workbench.
2. Remove all hydraulic fittings.
3. Using a suitable hammer and chisel remove the portion of end cap securing setscrew.

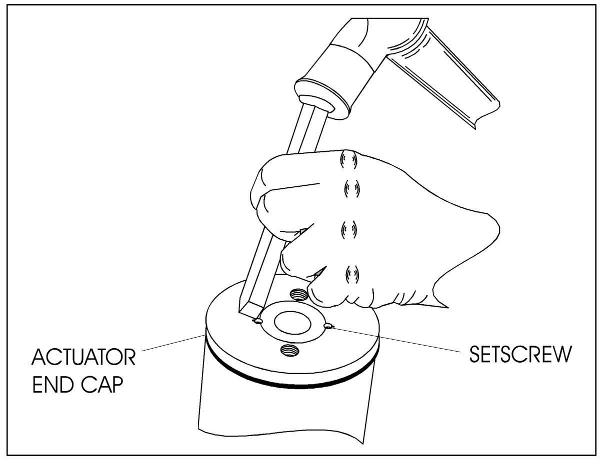


Figure 4-23. Removing Portion of End Cap

4. Using a torch, apply heat to the setscrews on the bottom of actuator.

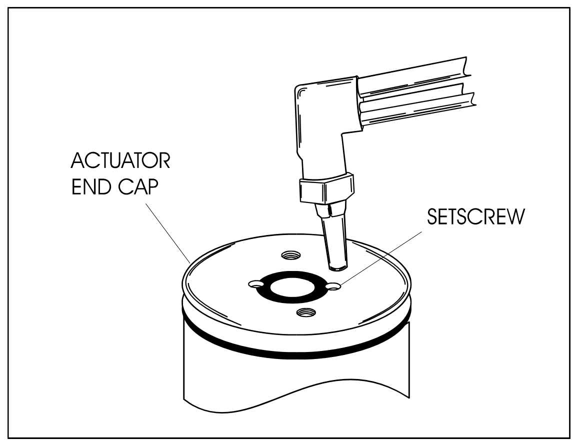


Figure 4-24. Heating Setscrew

5. Remove the two (2) setscrew (4) from bottom of actuator (1). Discard setscrew.

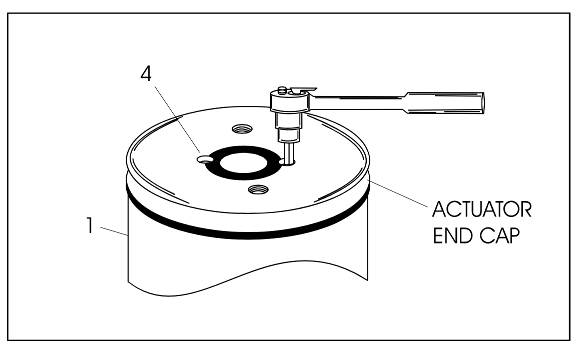
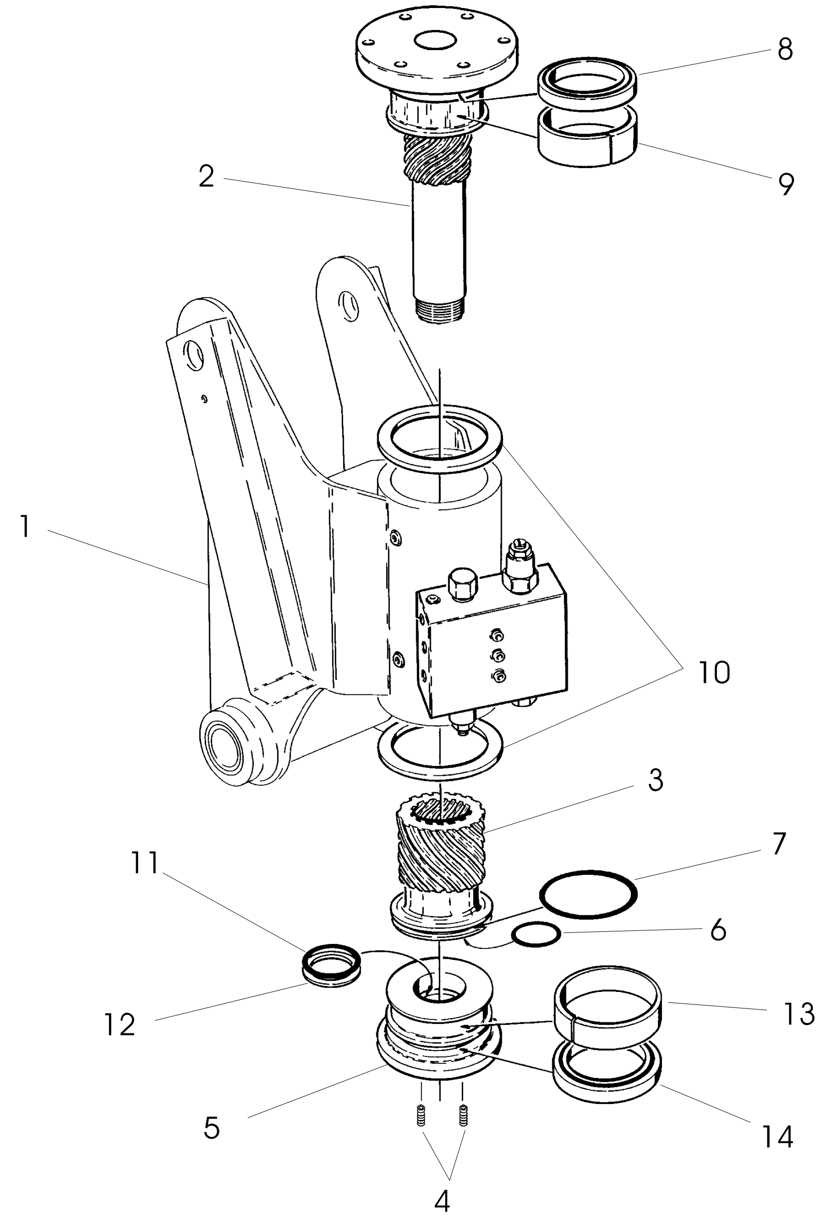


Figure 4-25. Removing Setscrew



1.	Housing/Ring Gear Assembly	6.	Rod Seal	11.	Cap Seal
2.	Shaft	7.	Piston Seal	12.	Back-up Ring
3.	Piston/Sleeve Assembly	8.	Bearing Packing	13.	Cap Bearing
4.	Setscrews	9.	Shaft Bearing	14.	Bearing Packing
5.	End Cap	10.	Thrust Ring		

Figure 4-22. Rotator Assembly (Helac)

6. Place two (2) 3/8"x16NC bolts in threaded holes in bottom of the actuator. Using a suitable bar, unscrew the end cap (5). Remove the end cap from actuator (1).

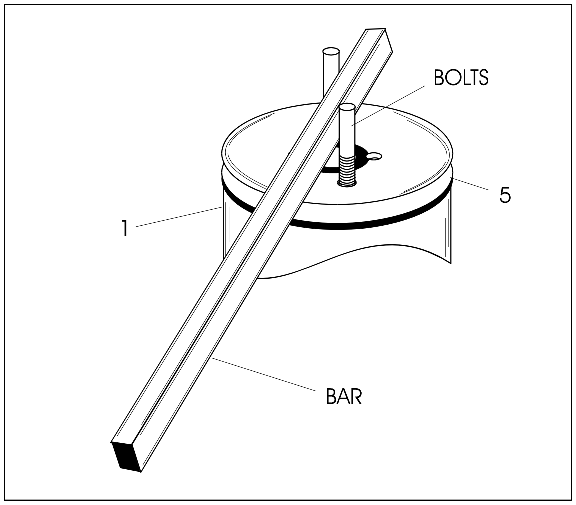


Figure 4-26. Removing End Cap

7. Remove the shaft (2) from piston sleeve (3) and the actuator housing (1).

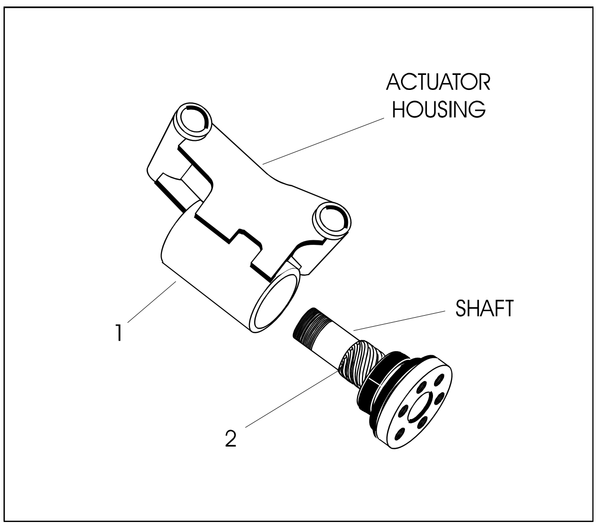


Figure 4-27. Removing Shaft from Housing

8. Remove piston sleeve (3) from housing (1).

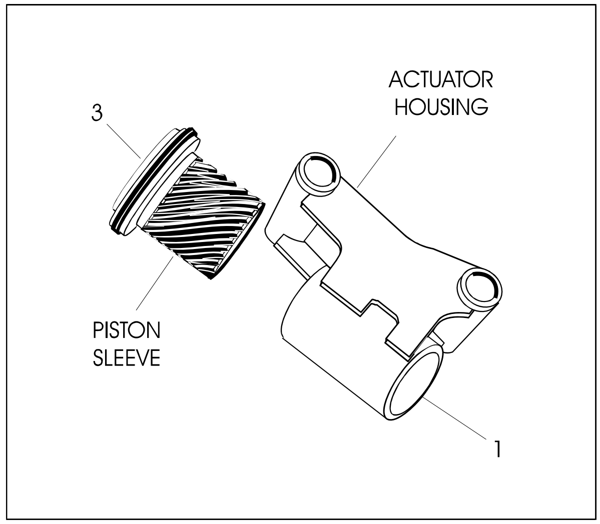


Figure 4-28. Removing Sleeve from Housing

9. Remove all seals and bearings from grooves. Discard seals.

Inspection

1. Clean all parts thoroughly.
2. Closely inspect all parts for excessive wear, cracks and chips. Replace parts as necessary.

NOTE: *A small amount of wear in the spline teeth will have little effect on the actuator strength. New spline sets are manufactured with a backlash of about 0.005 in. per mating set. After long service, a backlash of about 0.015 per set may still be acceptable in most cases, depending on the required accuracy of the application.*

3. Check the ring gear for wear and weld damage to the pins.
4. Inspect the cylinder bore for wear and scratches.

Assembly

NOTE: *Lubricate all seals and o-rings with clean hydraulic oil prior to assembly.*

1. Install new seal (7) and bearing (6) on the piston sleeve (3).

NOTE: *Apply a coat of grease to the thrust ring before sliding onto the shaft.*

2. Install new seal (8), thrust ring (10) and bearing (9) on shaft (2).

NOTE: *Apply a coat of grease to the thrust ring before sliding onto the end cap.*

3. Install new seals (11), back-up ring (12), cap bearing (13), bearing packing (14) and thrust ring (10) on end cap (5).
4. Place the actuator in the vertical position, install the piston sleeve (3) in timed relation to the housing (1).

NOTICE

DO NOT MISALIGN THE SLEEVE TOO MUCH ANY ONE WAY, AS IT WILL MARK THE CYLINDER BORE.

NOTE: *The timing marks (the small punch marks on the face of each gear), must be aligned for proper shaft orientation. (See Actuator Timing.)*

5. Install the shaft (2) into housing (1) by aligning the proper punched timing marks. (See Actuator Timing.)
6. Temporarily tape the threaded portion of the shaft will help installation past the shaft seals (masking tape).
7. The end cap (5) is torqued to 40 - 50 ft. lbs. (54 - 68 Nm), such that the actuator begins rotation at approximately 100 psi (6.895 Bar) pressure.
8. The end cap must be secured against the shaft by installing axial set screws (4).

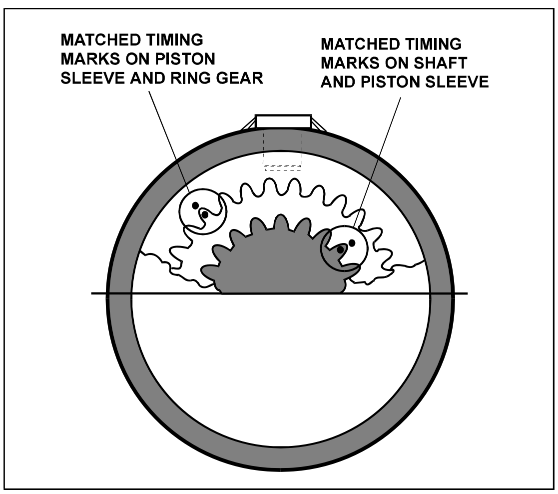
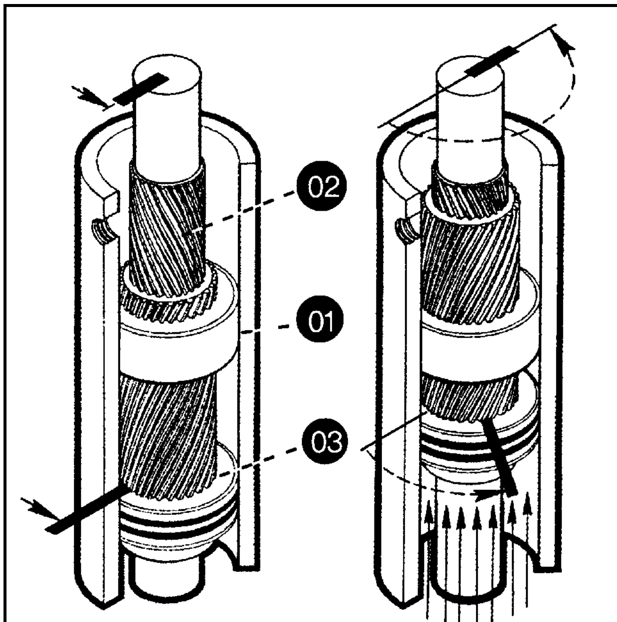


Figure 4-29. Actuator Timing

4.10 ROTARY ACTUATOR (S/N 0300130779 TO PRESENT)

Theory of Operation

The L20 Series rotary actuator is a simple mechanism that uses the sliding spline operating concept to convert linear piston motion into powerful shaft rotation. Each actuator is composed of a housing with integrated gear teeth (01) and only two moving parts: the central shaft with integrated bearing tube and mounting flange (02), and the annular piston sleeve (03). Helical spline teeth machined on the shaft engage matching splines on the in- side diameter of the piston. The outside diameter of the piston carries a second set of splines, of opposite hand, which engage with matching splines in the housing. As hydraulic pressure is applied, the piston is displaced axially within the housing - similar to the operation of a hydraulic cylinder - while the splines cause the shaft to rotate. When the control valve is closed, oil is trapped inside the actuator, preventing piston movement and locking the shaft in position.



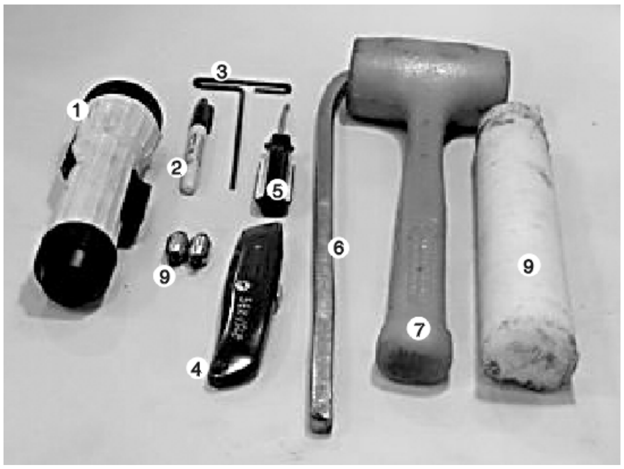
Bars indicate starting positions of piston and shaft. Arrows indicate direction they will rotate. The housing with integral ring gear remains stationary.

As fluid pressure is applied, the piston is displaced axially while the helical gearing causes the piston and shaft to rotate simultaneously. The double helix design compounds rotation: shaft rotation is about twice that of the piston.

The shaft is supported radially by the large upper radial bearing and the lower radial bearing. Axially, the shaft is separated from the housing by the upper and lower thrust washers. The end cap is adjusted for axial clearance and locked in position by set screws or pins.

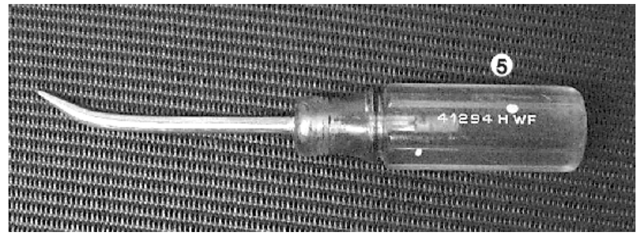
Required Tools

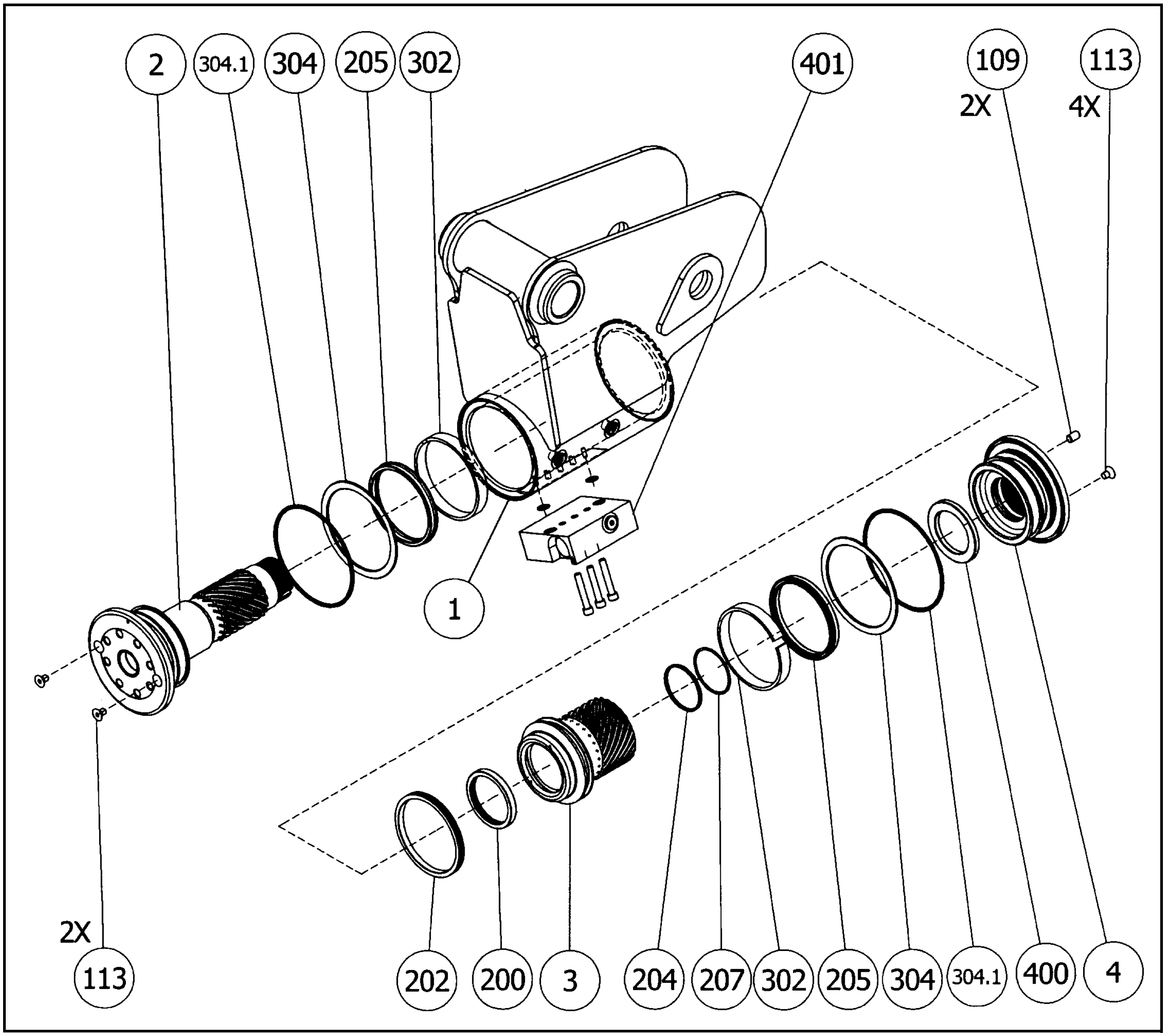
Upon assembly and disassembly of the actuator there are basic tools required. The tools and their intended functions are as follows:



1. Flashlight - helps examine timing marks, component failure and overall condition.
2. Felt Marker - match mark the timing marks and outline troubled areas.
3. Allen wrench - removal of port plugs and set screws.
4. Box knife - removal of seals.
5. Seal tool - assembly and disassembly of seals and wear guides.
6. Pry bar - removal of end cap and manual rotation of shaft.
7. Rubber mallet- removal and installation of shaft and piston sleeve assembly.
8. Nylon drift - installation of piston sleeve
9. End cap dowel pins - removal and installation of end cap (sold with Helac seal kit).

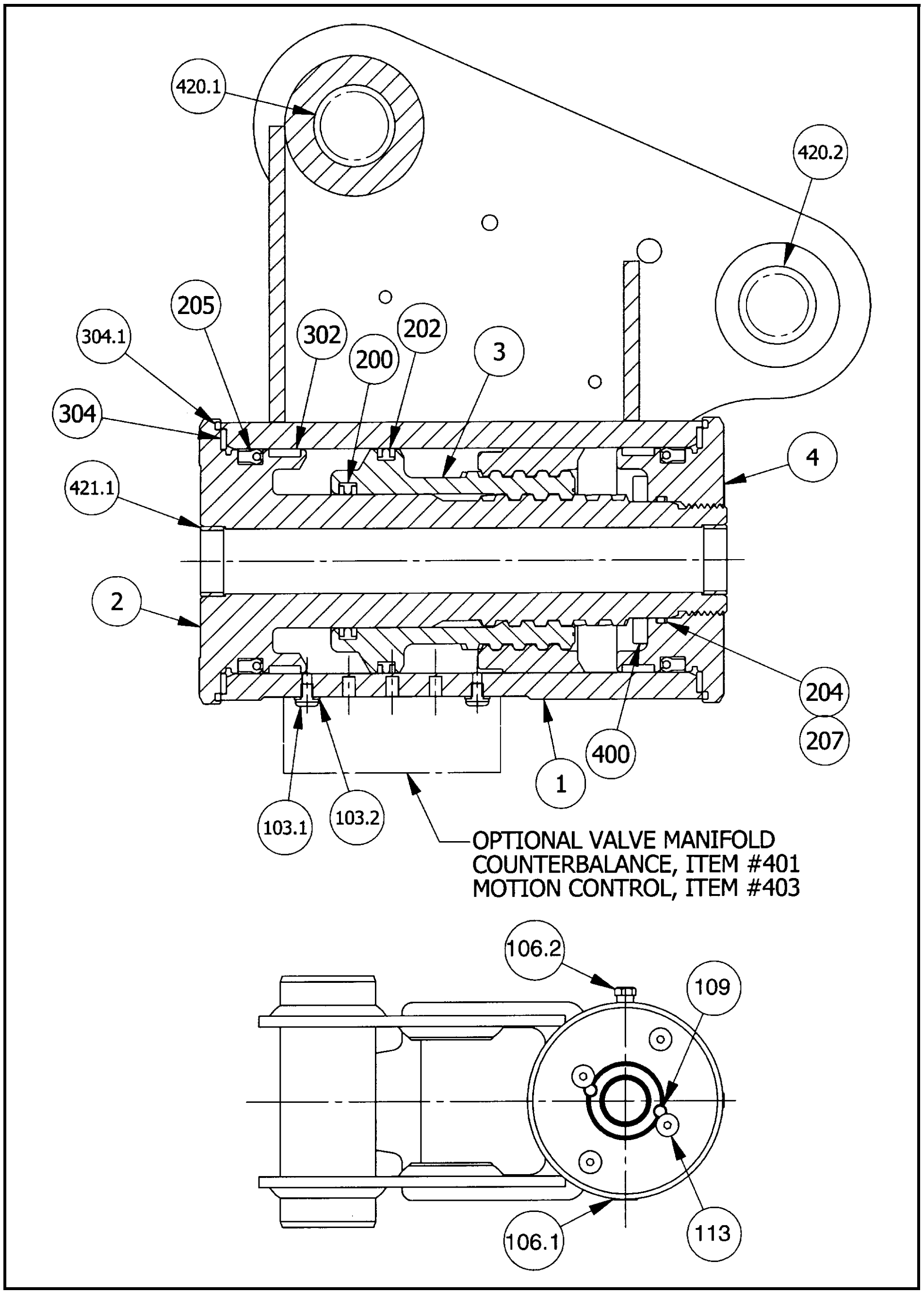
The seal tool is merely a customized standard flat head screwdriver. To make this tool you will need to heat the flat end with a torch. Secure the heated end of the screwdriver in a vice and physically bend the heated end to a slight radius. Once the radius is achieved round off all sharp edges of the heated end by using a grinder. There may be some slight modifications for your own personal preference.





PARTS	HARDWARE	SEALS	BEARINGS	ACCESSORIES
1. Housing	103.1. Screw	200. T-Seal	302. Wear Guide	400. Stop Tube
2. Shaft	103.2 . Washer	202. T-Seal	304. Thrust Washer	420.1 Bushing
3. Piston Sleeve	106.1. Port Plug	204. O-ring		420.2 Bushing
4. End Cap	106.2. Port Plug	205. Cup Seal		421.1 Bushing
	109 . Lock Pin	207. Backup Ring		
	113. Capscrew	304.1. Wiper Seal		

Figure 4-30. Rotary Actuator - Exploded View

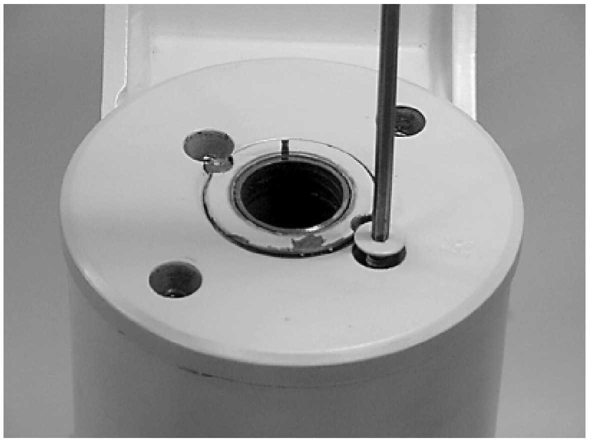


PARTS	HARDWARE	SEALS	BEARINGS	ACCESSORIES
1. Housing	103.1. Screw	200. T-Seal	302. Wear Guide	400. Stop Tube
2. Shaft	103.2 . Washer	202. T-Seal	304. Thrust Washer	420.1 Bushing
3. Piston Sleeve	106.1. Port Plug	204. O-ring		420.2 Bushing
4. End Cap	106.2. Port Plug	205. Cup Seal		421.1 Bushing
	109 . Lock Pin	207. Backup Ring		
	113. Capscrew	304.1. Wiper Seal		

Figure 4-31. Rotary Actuator - Assembly Drawing

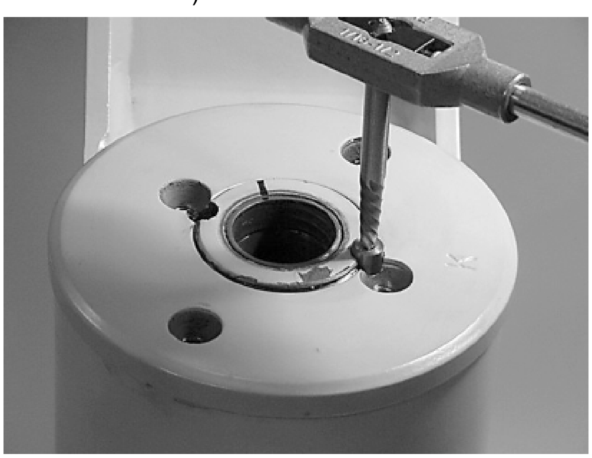
Disassembly

1. Remove the capscrews (113) over end cap lock pins (109).



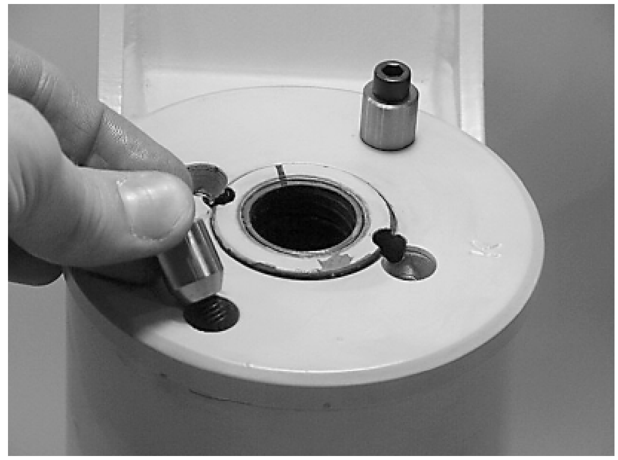
2. Using a 1/8” (3.18mm) drill bit, drill a hole in the center of each lock pin to a depth of approximately 3/16” (4.76mm).

3. Remove the lock pins using an ”Easy Out” (a size #2 is shown).



If the pin will not come out with the ”Easy Out”, use 5/1 6” drill bit to a depth of 1/2” (12.7mm) to drill out the entire pin.

4. Install the end cap (4) removal tools provided with the Helac seal kit.

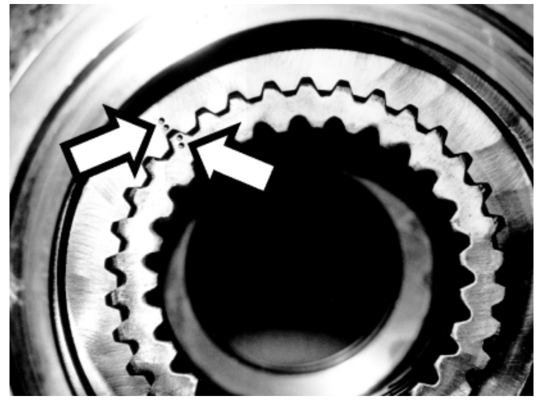


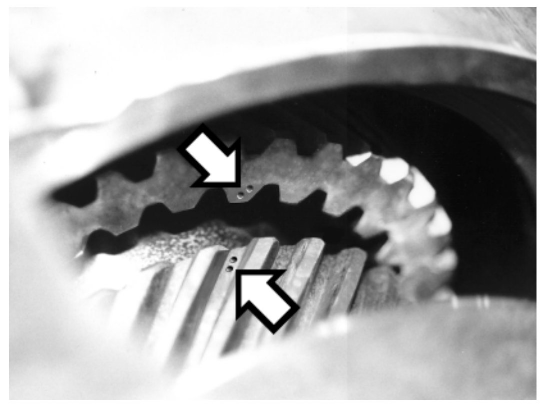
5. Using a metal bar, or something similar, unscrew the end cap (4) by turning it counter clockwise.

6. Remove the end cap (4) and set aside for later inspection.

7. Remove the stop tube if included. The stop tube is an available option to limit the rotation of the actuator.

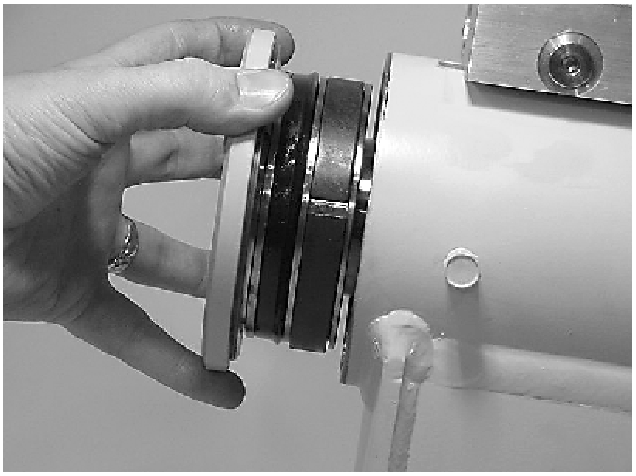
8. Every actuator has timing marks for proper engagement.





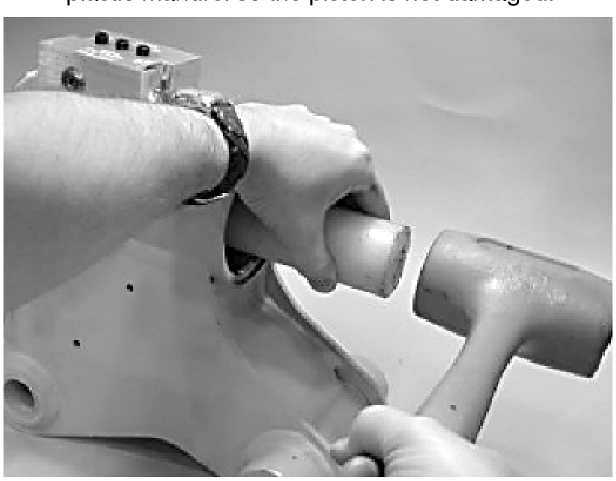
9. Prior to removing the shaft, (2), use a felt marker to clearly indicate the timing marks between shaft and piston. This will greatly simplify timing during assembly.

10. Remove the shaft (2). It may be necessary to strike the threaded end of the shaft with a rubber mallet.

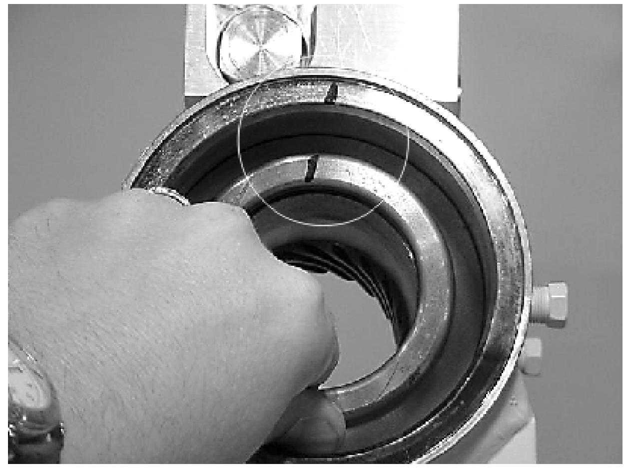


11. Before removing the piston (3), mark the housing (1) ring gear in relation to the piston O.D. gear. There should now be timing marks on the housing (1) ring gear, the piston (3) and the shaft (2).

12. To remove the piston (3) use a rubber mallet and a plastic mandrel so the piston is not damaged.

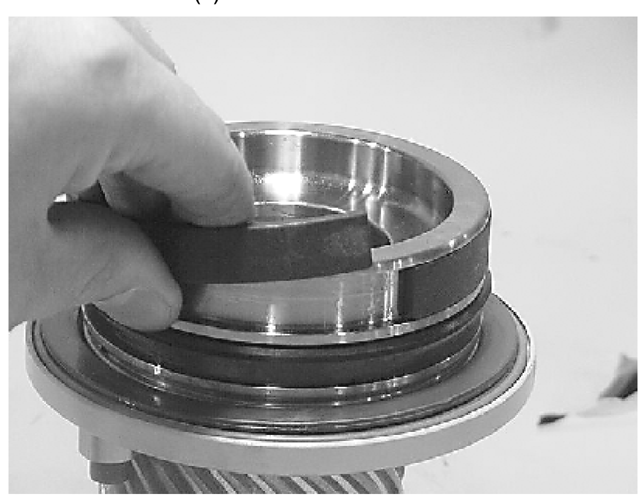


13. At the point when the piston gear teeth come out of engagement with the housing gear teeth, mark the piston and housing with a marker as shown.

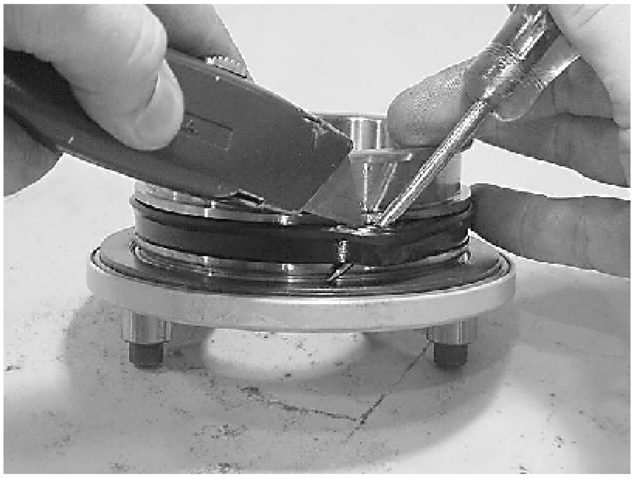


14. Remove the o-ring (204) and backup ring (207) from end cap (4) and set aside for inspection.

15. Remove the wear guides (302) from the end cap (4) and shaft (2).



16. To remove the main pressure seals (205), it is easiest to cut them using a sharp razor blade being careful not to damage the seal groove.



17. Remove the thrust washers (304), from the end cap (4) and shaft (2).

18. Remove the wiper seal (304.1) from its groove in the end cap (4) and shaft (2).

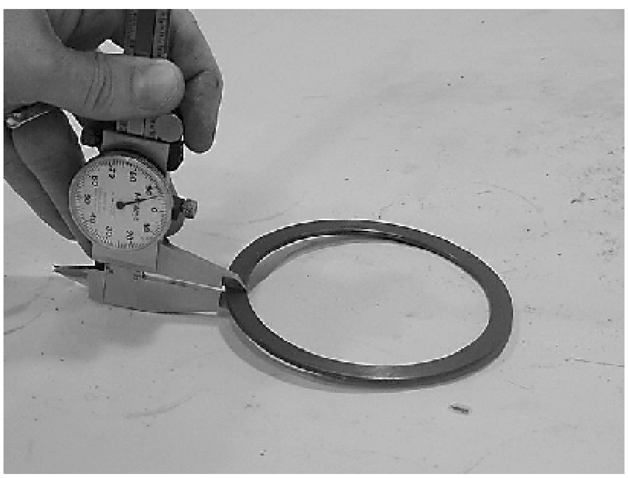
19. Remove the piston O.D. seal (202).

20. Remove the piston I.D. seal (200). You may now proceed to the inspection process.

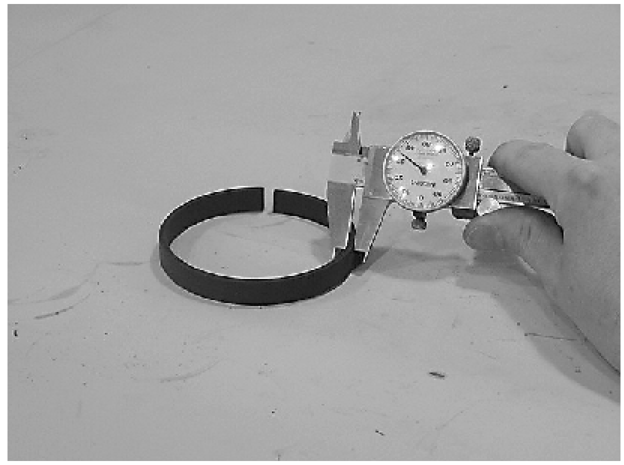
Inspection

1. Clean all parts in a solvent tank and dry with compressed air prior to inspecting. Carefully inspect all critical areas for any surface finish abnormalities: Seal grooves, bearing grooves, thrust surfaces, rod surface, housing bore and gear teeth.

2. Inspect the thrust washers (304) for rough or worn edges and surfaces. Measure it's thickness to make sure it is within specifications (Not less than 0.092" or 2.34 mm).

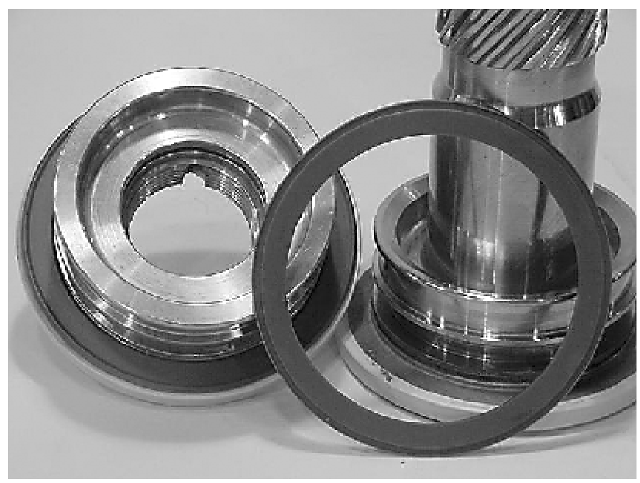


3. Inspect the wear guide condition and measure thickness (not less than 0.123" or 3.12 mm).

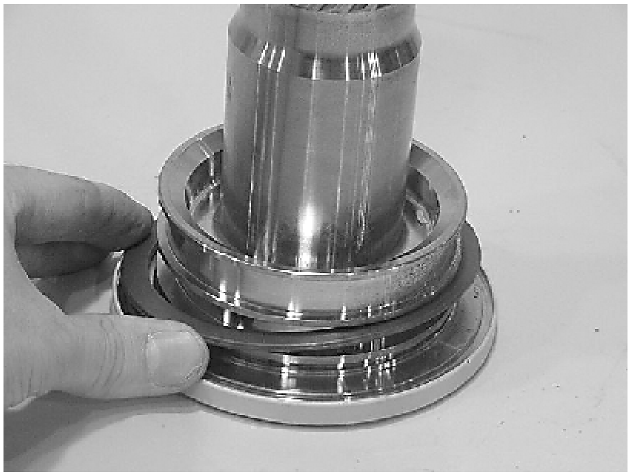


Assembly

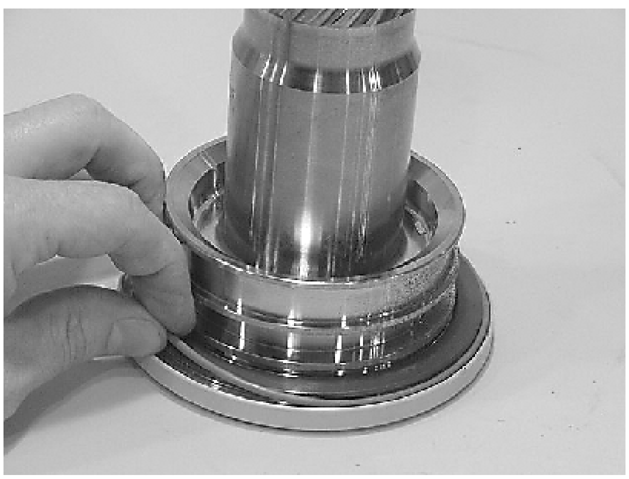
1. Gather all the components and tools into one location prior to re-assembly. Use the cut away drawing to reference the seal orientations.



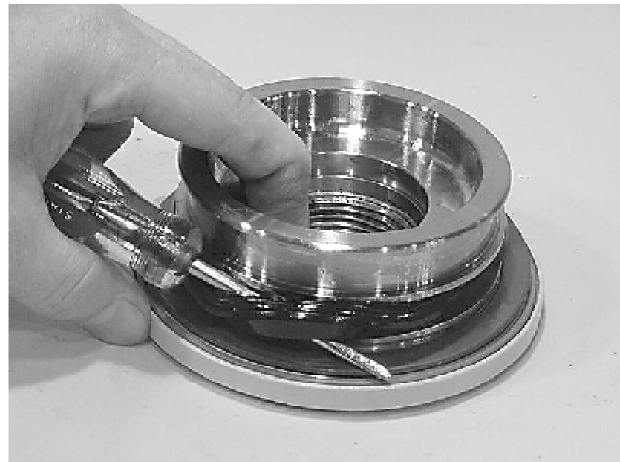
2. Install the thrust washer (304) onto shaft (2) and end cap (4).



3. Install the wiper seal (304.1/green 0-ring) into it's groove on the shaft (2) and end cap (4) around the outside edge of the thrust washer (304).



4. Using a seal tool install the main pressure seal (205) onto shaft (2) and end cap (4). Use the seal tool in a circular motion.



5. Install the wear guide (302) on the end cap (4) and shaft (2).

6. Install the inner T-seal (200) into the piston (3) using a circular motion.

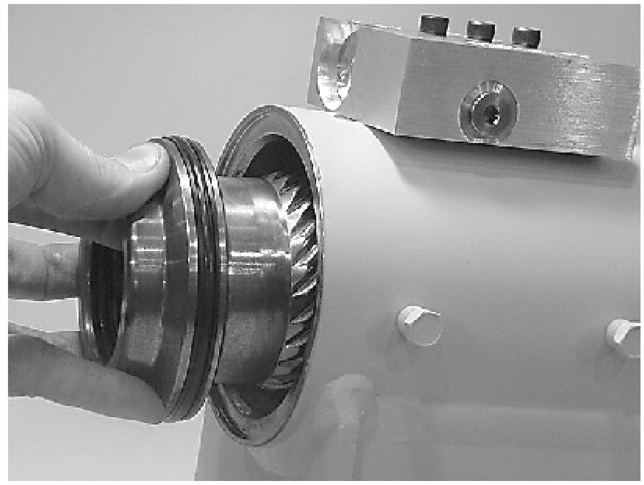
Install the outer T-seal (202) by stretching it around the groove in a circular motion.

Each T-seal has 2 back-up rings (see drawing for orientation).

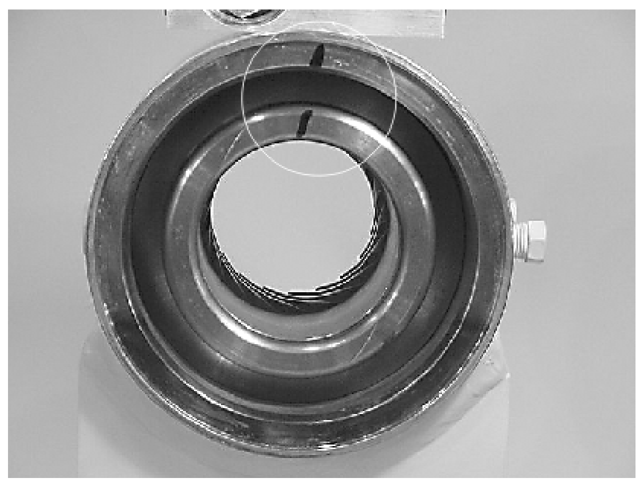
Beginning with the inner seal (200) insert one end of b/u ring in the lower groove and feed the rest in using a circular motion. Make sure the wedged ends overlap correctly.

Repeat this step for the outer seal (202).

7. Insert the piston (3) into the housing (1) as shown, until the outer piston seal (202) is touching inside the housing bore.

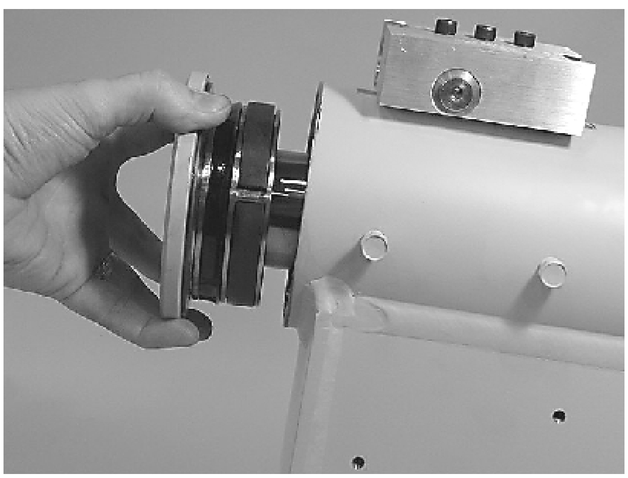


8. Looking from the angle shown, rotate the piston (3) until the marks you put on the piston and the housing (1) during disassembly line up as shown. Using a rubber mallet, tap the piston into the housing up to the point where the gear teeth meet.

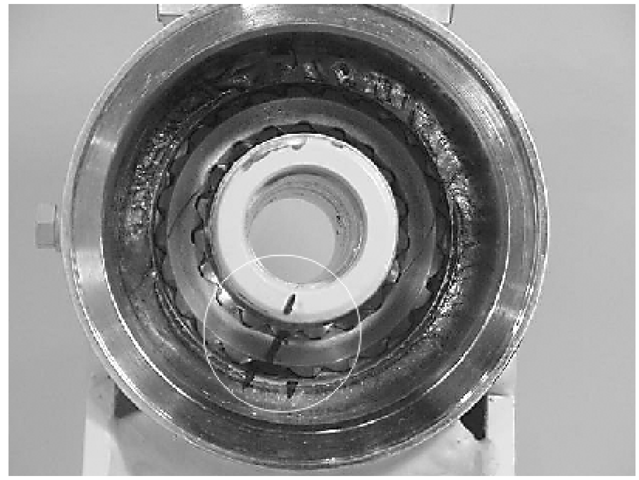


9. Looking from the opposite end of the housing (1) you can see if your timing marks are lining up. When they do, tap the piston (3) in until the gear teeth mesh together. Tap the piston into the housing the rest of the way until it bottoms out.

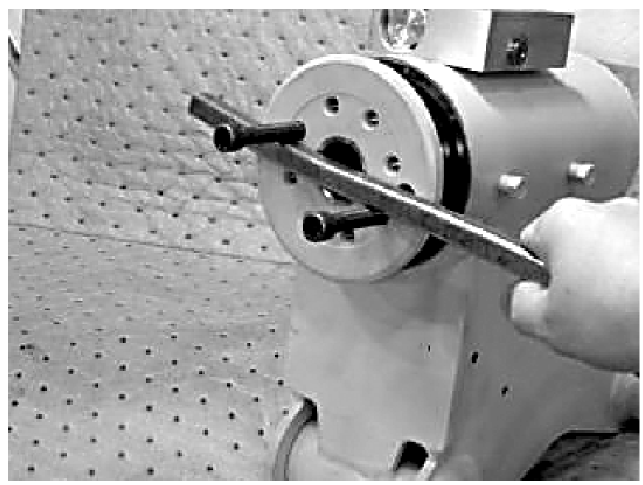
10. Install the shaft (2) into the piston (3). Be careful not to damage the seals. Do not engage the piston gear teeth yet.



11. Looking from the view shown, use the existing timing marks to line up the gear teeth on the shaft (2) with the gear teeth on the inside of the piston (3). Now tap the flange end of the shaft with a rubber mallet until the gear teeth engage.

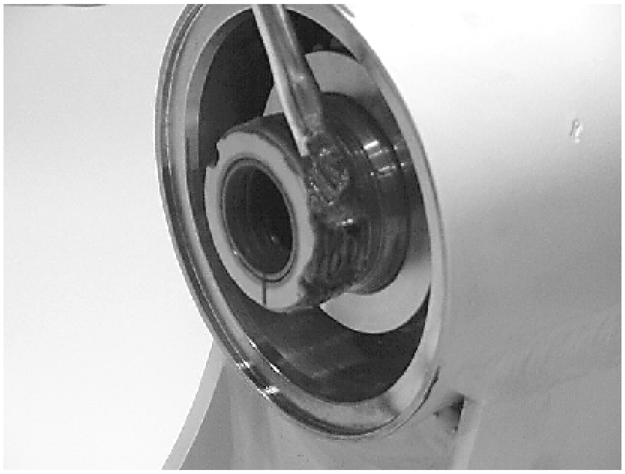


12. Install 2 bolts in the threaded holes in the flange. Using a bar, rotate the shaft in a clockwise direction until the wear guides are seated inside the housing bore.



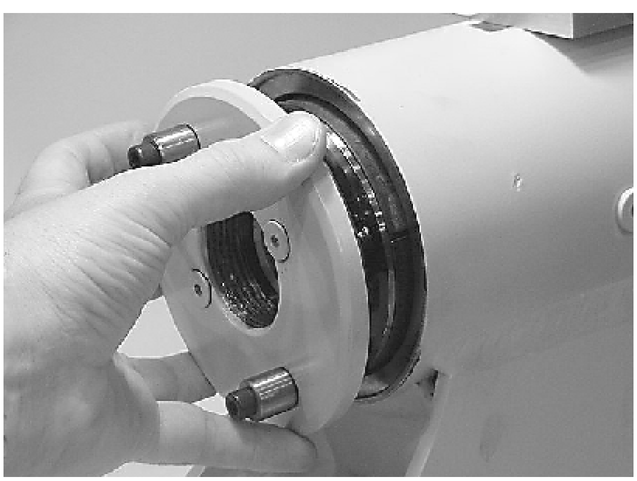
13. Install the stop tube onto the shaft end. Stop tube is an available option to limit the rotation of an actuator.

14. Coat the threads on the end of the shaft with anti-seize grease to prevent galling.

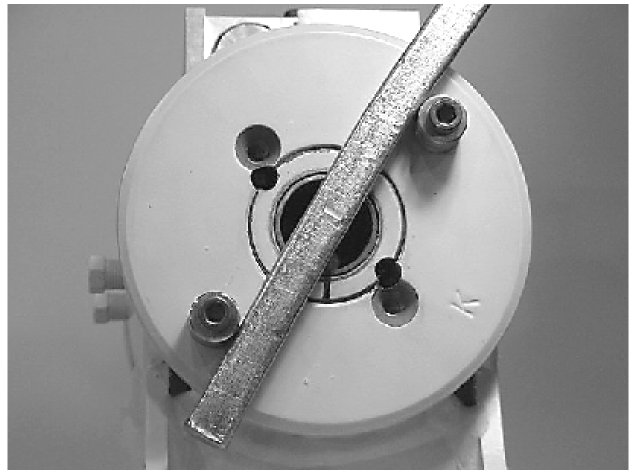


15. Install the 0-ring (204) and back-up ring (207) into the inner seal groove on the end cap (4).

16. Thread the end cap (4) onto the shaft (2) end. Make sure the wear guide stays in place on the end cap as it is threaded into the housing (1).

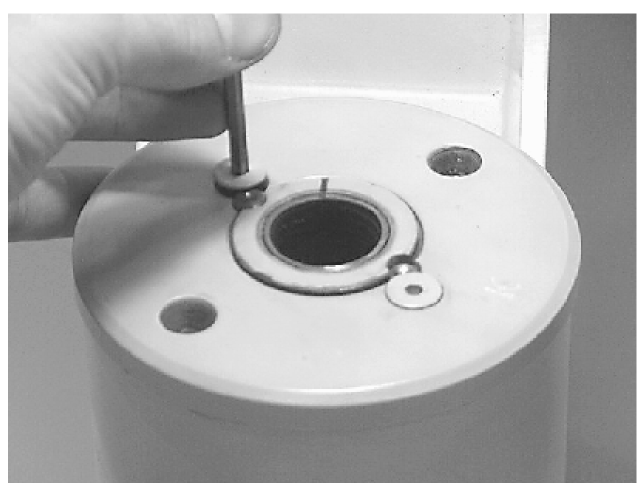


17. Tighten the end cap (4). In most cases the original holes for the lock pins will line up.



18. Place the lock pins (109) provided in the Helac seal kit in the holes with the dimple side up. Then, using a punch, tap the lock pins to the bottom of the hole.

19. Insert the set screws (113) over the lock pins. Tighten them to 25 in. lbs. (2.825 Nm).



Installing Counterbalance Valve

Refer to Figure 4-32., Rotator Counterbalance Valve.

1. Make sure the surface of the actuator is clean, free of any contamination and foreign debris including old Loctite.
2. Make sure the new valve has the O-rings in the counterbores of the valve to seal it to the actuator housing.
3. The bolts that come with the valve are grade 8 bolts. New bolts should be installed with a new valve. Loctite #242 should be applied to the shank of the three bolts at the time of installation.
4. Torque the 1/4-inch bolts 110 to 120 inch pounds (12.4 to 13.5 Nm). Do not torque over 125 inch pounds (14.1 Nm). Torque the 5/16-inch bolts 140 inch pounds (15.8 Nm). Do not torque over 145 inch pounds (16.3 Nm).

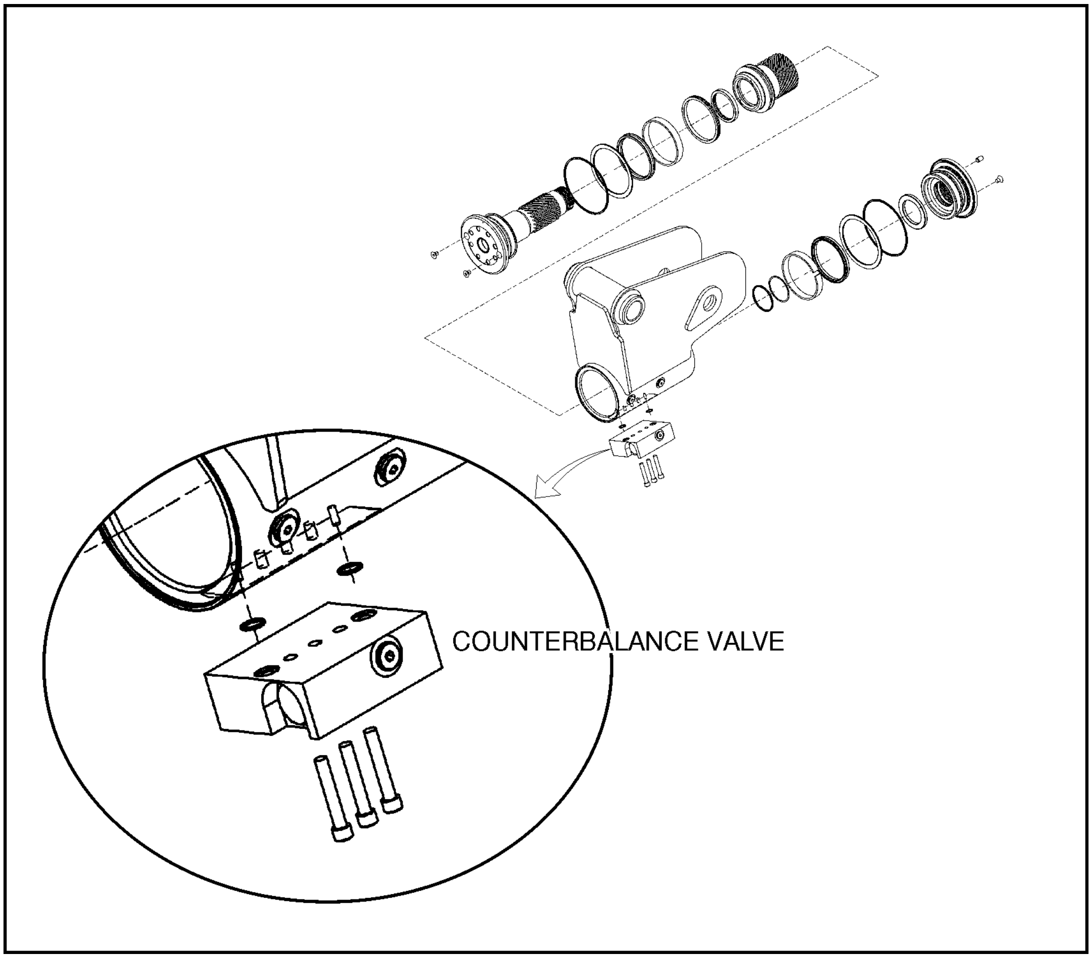


Figure 4-32. Rotator Counterbalance Valve

Testing the Actuator

If the equipment is available, the actuator should be tested on a hydraulic test bench. The breakaway pressure — the pressure at which the shaft begins to rotate — should be approximately 400 psi (28 bar). Cycle the actuator at least 25 times at 3000 psi (210 bar) pressure. After the 25 rotations, increase the pressure to 4500 psi (315 bar) to check for leaks and cracks. Perform the test again at the end of the rotation in the opposite direction.

TESTING THE ACTUATOR FOR INTERNAL LEAKAGE

If the actuator is equipped with a counterbalance valve, plug the valve ports. Connect the hydraulic lines to the housing ports. Bleed all air from the actuator (see Installation and Bleeding) Rotate the shaft to the end of rotation at 3000 psi (210 bar) and maintain pressure. Remove the hydraulic line from the non-pressurized side.

Continuous oil flow from the open housing port indicates internal leakage across the piston. Replace the line and rotate the shaft to the end of rotation in the opposite direction. Repeat the test procedure outlined above for the other port. If there is an internal leak, disassemble, inspect and repair.

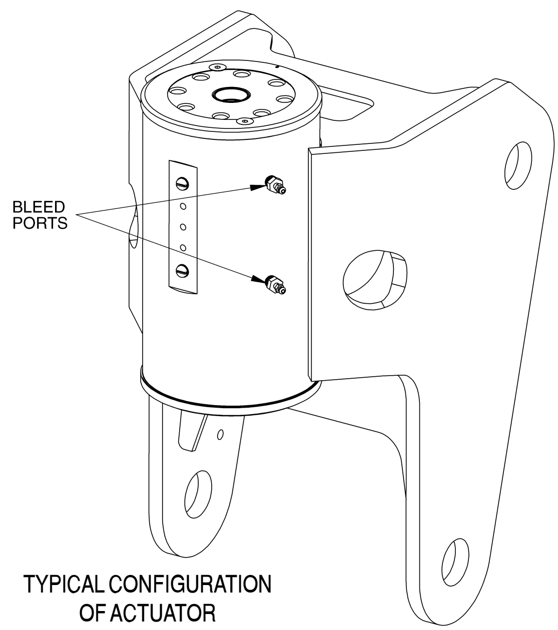
Installation and Bleeding

After installation of the actuator on the equipment, it is important that all safety devices such as tie rods or safety cables are properly reattached.

To purge air from the hydraulic lines, connect them together to create a closed loop and pump hydraulic fluid through them. Review the hydraulic schematic to determine which hydraulic lines to connect. The linear feet and inside diameter of the hydraulic supply lines together with pump capacity will determine the amount of pumping time required to fully purge the hydraulic system.

Bleeding may be necessary if excessive backlash is exhibited after the actuator is connected to the hydraulic system. The following steps are recommended when a minimum of two gallons (8 liters) is purged.

1. Connect a 3/16" inside diameter x 5/16" outside diameter x 5 foot clear, vinyl drain tube to each of the two bleed nipples. Secure them with hose clamps. Place the vinyl tubes in a clean 5-gallon container to collect the purged oil. The oil can be returned to the reservoir after this procedure is completed.



TYPICAL CONFIGURATION
OF ACTUATOR

2. With an operator in the platform, open both bleed nipples 1/4 turn. Hydraulically rotate the platform to the end of rotation (either clockwise or counterclockwise), and maintain hydraulic pressure. Oil with small air bubbles will be seen flowing through the tubes. Allow a 1/2 gallon of fluid to be purged from the actuator.

3. Keep the fittings open and rotate the platform in the opposite direction to the end position. Maintain hydraulic pressure until an additional 1/4 gallon of fluid is pumped into the container.

4. Repeat steps 2 & 3. After the last 1/2 gallon is purged, close both bleed nipples before rotating away from the end position.

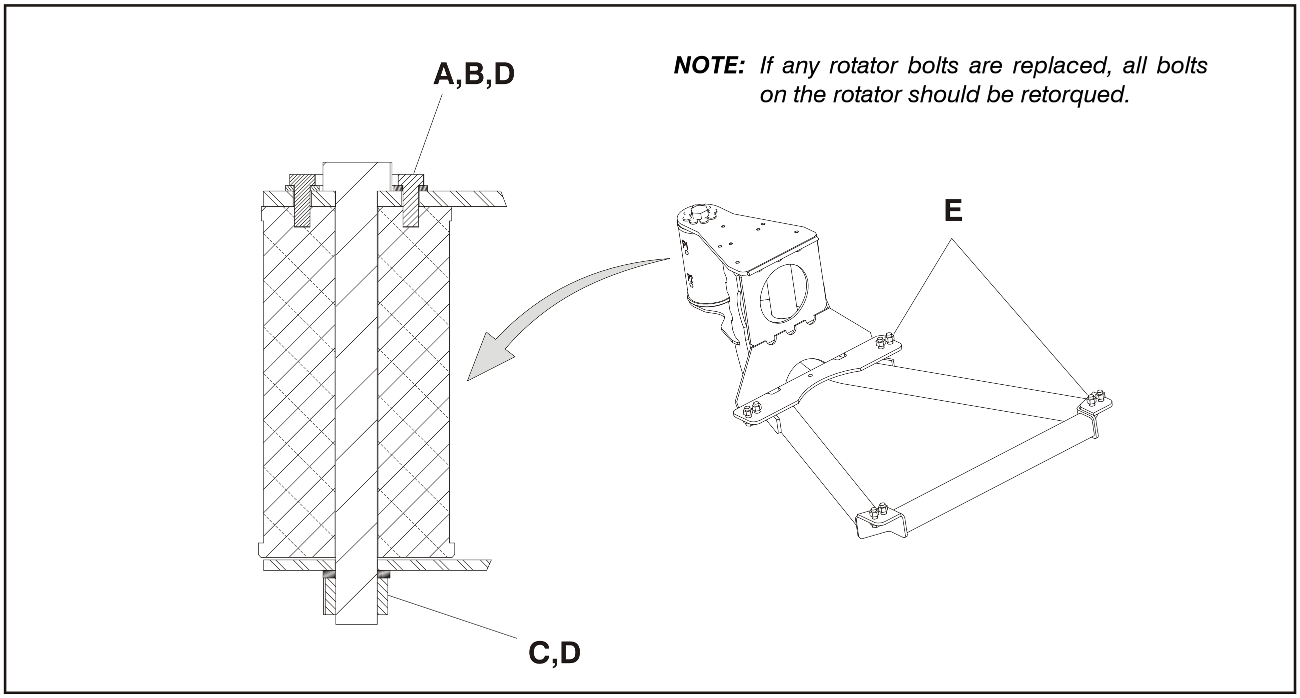
Troubleshooting

Table 4-1. Troubleshooting

Problem	Cause	Solution
1. Shaft rotates slowly or not at all	a. Insufficient torque output b. Low rate of fluid flow c. Control or counterbalance valve has internal leak d. Piston and/or shaft seal leak e. Corrosion build-up on the thrust surfaces f. Swollen seals and composite bearings caused by incompatible hydraulic fluid	a. Verify correct operating pressure. Do not exceed OEM's pressure specifications. Load may be above maximum capacity of the actuator. b. Inspect ports for obstructions and hydraulic lines for restrictions and leaks. c. Disconnect hydraulic lines and bypass valve. Leave valve ports open and operate the actuator through housing ports (do not exceed OEM's operating pressure). The valve must be replaced if a steady flow of fluid is seen coming from the valve ports. d. Remove the plug and the housing's valve ports. Operate the actuator through the housing ports. Conduct the internal leakage test as described in the Testing section on page 24 of this manual. e. Re-build the actuator. Remove all rust then polish. Replacement parts may be needed. f. Re-build the actuator. Use fluid that is compatible with seals and bearings.
2. Operation is erratic or not responsive	a. Air in actuator	a. Purge air from actuator. See bleeding procedures.
3. Shaft will not fully rotate	a. Twisted or chipped gear teeth b. Port fittings are obstructing the piston	a. Check for gear binding. Actuator may not be able to be re-built and may need to be replaced. Damage could be a result of overload or shock. b. Check thread length of port fittings. Fittings should during stroke not reach inside the housing bore.
4. Selected position cannot be maintained	a. Control or counterbalance valve has internal leak b. Piston and/or shaft seal leak c. Air in actuator	a. Disconnect hydraulic lines and bypass valve. Leave valve ports open and operate the actuator through housing ports (do not exceed OEM's operating pressure). The valve must be replaced if a steady flow of fluid is seen coming from the valve ports. b. Remove the plug and the housing's valve ports. Operate the actuator through the housing ports. Conduct the internal leakage test as described in the Testing section on page 24 of this manual. c. Purge air from actuator. See bleeding procedures

4.11 FOOT SWITCH ADJUSTMENT

Adjust so that functions will operate when pedal is at center of travel. If switch operates within last 1/4 in. (6.35 mm) of travel, top or bottom, it should be adjusted.



A Torque to 50 ft.lbs. (68 Nm)
B Loctite #242
C Torque to 480 ft. lbs. (650 Nm)
D Check torque every 150 hours of operation
E Torque to 85 ft. lbs. (115 Nm)

Figure 4-33. Platform Support Torque Values

SECTION 5. HYDRAULICS

5.1 CYLINDERS - THEORY OF OPERATION

Systems Incorporating Double Acting Cylinders

Cylinders are of the double acting type. Systems incorporating double acting cylinders are as follows: Slave Level, Master Level, Lift, Telescope, Articulating Jib Boom Lift, Axle Lockout and Steer. A double acting cylinder is one that requires oil flow to operate the cylinder rod in both directions. Directing oil (by actuating the corresponding control valve to the piston side of the cylinder) forces the piston to travel toward the rod end of the barrel, extending the cylinder rod (piston attached to rod). When the oil flow is stopped, movement of rod will stop. By directing oil to the rod side of the cylinder, the piston will be forced in the opposite direction and the cylinder rod will retract.

Systems Incorporating Holding Valves

Holding valves are used in the Lift, Telescope, Lockout, Slave Level and Articulating Jib Boom Lift circuits to prevent retraction of the cylinder rod should a hydraulic line rupture or a leak develop between the cylinder and its related control valve.

5.2 CYLINDER CHECKING PROCEDURE

NOTE: *Cylinder check must be performed anytime a system component is replaced or when improper system operation is suspected.*

Cylinders Without Counterbalance Valves - Master Cylinder and Steer Cylinder

1. Using all applicable safety precautions, activate engine and fully extend cylinder to be checked. Shut down engine.
2. Carefully disconnect hydraulic hoses from retract port of cylinder. There will be some initial weeping of hydraulic fluid which can be caught in a suitable container. After the initial discharge, there should be no further drainage from the retract port.
3. Activate engine and extend cylinder.
4. If cylinder retract port leakage is less than 6-8 drops per minute, carefully reconnect hose to port and retract cylinder. If leakage continues at a rate of 6-8 drops per minute or more, cylinder repair must be made.
5. With cylinder fully retracted, shut down engine and carefully disconnect hydraulic hose from cylinder extend port.
6. Activate engine and retract cylinder. Check extend port for leakage.
7. If extend port leakage is less than 6-8 drops per minute, carefully reconnect hose to extend port, than activate cylinder through one complete cycle and check for leaks. If leakage continues at a rate of 6-8 drops per minute or more, cylinder repairs must be made.

Cylinders With Single Counterbalance Valve

(Upper Lift Cylinder)

NOTICE

OPERATE ALL FUNCTIONS FROM GROUND CONTROL STATION ONLY.

1. Using all applicable safety precautions, activate hydraulic system.

⚠ WARNING

WHEN WORKING ON THE MAIN LIFT CYLINDER, RAISE THE BOOM TO HORIZONTAL AND PLACE A BOOM PROP APPROXIMATELY 1 INCH (2.54 CM) BELOW THE MAIN BOOM. DO NOT WORK ON THE CYLINDER WITHOUT A SUITABLE PROP IN PLACE.

2. Shut down hydraulic system and allow machine to sit for 10-15 minutes. If machine is equipped with bang-bang or proportional control valves, turn IGNITION SWITCH to ON, move control switch or lever for applicable cylinder in each direction, then turn IGNITION SWITCH to OFF. If machine is equipped with hydraulic control valves, move control lever for applicable cylinder in each direction. This is done to relieve pressure in the hydraulic lines. Carefully remove hydraulic hoses from appropriate cylinder port block.
3. There will be initial weeping of hydraulic fluid, which can be caught in a suitable container. After the initial discharge, there should be no further leakage from the ports. If leakage continues at a rate of 6-8 drops per minute or more, the counterbalance valve is defective and must be replaced.

4. To check piston seals, carefully remove the counterbalance valve from the retract port. After initial discharge, there should be no further leakage from the ports. If leakage occurs at a rate of 6-8 drops per minute or more, the piston seals are defective and must be replaced.

5. If no repairs are necessary or when repairs have been made, replace counterbalance valve and carefully connect hydraulic hoses to cylinder port block.

6. If used, remove lifting device from upright or remove prop from below main boom, activate hydraulic system and run cylinder through one complete cycle to check for leaks.

Cylinders With Dual Counterbalance Valves

(Articulating Jib Boom Lift, and Slave), Slave Level, Lower Lift, Upright level, Main Telescope and Tower Telescope)

NOTICE

OPERATE ALL FUNCTIONS FROM GROUND CONTROL STATION ONLY.

1. Using all applicable safety precautions, activate hydraulic system.

⚠ WARNING

IF WORKING ON THE TOWER BOOM LIFT CYLINDER, RAISE TOWER BOOM HALFWAY, FULLY ELEVATE MAIN BOOM WITH TELESCOPE CYLINDER FULLY RETRACTED AND ATTACH AN OVERHEAD CRANE TO THE UPRIGHT FOR SUPPORT, LEAVING APPROXIMATELY 1 INCH (2.54 CM) OF SLACK IN CHAIN OR SLING FOR TEST PURPOSES. IF WORKING ON THE UPRIGHT LEVEL, RAISE THE TOWER BOOM HALFWAY, THEN RAISE MAIN BOOM TO HORIZONTAL AND POSITION A SUITABLE BOOM PROP APPROXIMATELY 1 INCH (2.54 CM) BELOW MAIN BOOM. IF WORKING ON THE PLATFORM LEVEL CYLINDER, STROKE PLATFORM LEVEL CYLINDER FORWARD UNTIL PLATFORM SITS AT A 45 DEGREES ANGLE.

2. Shut down hydraulic system and allow machine to sit for 10-15 minutes. If machine is equipped with bang-bang or proportional control valves, turn IGNITION SWITCH to ON, move control switch or lever for applicable cylinder in each direction, then turn IGNITION SWITCH to OFF. If machine is equipped with hydraulic control valves, move control lever for applicable cylinder in each direction. This is done to relieve pressure in the hydraulic lines. Carefully remove hydraulic hoses from appropriate cylinder port block.

3. There will be initial weeping of hydraulic fluid, which can be caught in a suitable container. After the initial discharge, there should be no further leakage from the ports. If leakage continues at a rate of 6-8 drops per minute or more, the counterbalance valve is defective and must be replaced.

4. To check piston seals, carefully remove the counterbalance valve from the retract port. After initial discharge, there should be no further leakage from the ports. If leakage occurs at a rate of 6-8 drops per minute or more, the piston seals are defective and must be replaced.

5. If no repairs are necessary or when repairs have been made, replace counterbalance valve and carefully connect hydraulic hoses to cylinder port block.

6. If used, remove lifting device from upright or remove prop from below main boom, activate hydraulic system and run cylinder through one complete cycle to check for leaks.

5.3 CYLINDER REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION

Main Boom Telescope Cylinder Removal

1. Place machine on a flat and level surface, with main boom in the horizontal position.

2. Shut down engine. Support main boom basket end with a prop. (See Figure 5-1., Boom Positioning and Support, Cylinder Repair).

NOTICE

HYDRAULIC LINES AND PORTS SHOULD BE CAPPED IMMEDIATELY AFTER DISCONNECTING LINES TO AVOID THE ENTRY OF CONTAMINANTS INTO THE SYSTEM.

3. Tag and disconnect hydraulic lines to telescope cylinder. Use a suitable container to retain any residual hydraulic fluid. Cap hydraulic lines and ports.

4. Remove the hardware securing cover plate on bottom of the base boom section and remove cover.

NOTE: *Do not allow cable to rotate. This may damage the cable.*

5. Clamp both threaded ends of cable to prevent rotation. Note: Do not clamp on threads. Remove jam nuts and loosen adjustment nuts so there is slack in the cables. (See Section 4 - Boom & Platform).

6. Remove the hardware securing push bar to turntable and telescope cylinder.

7. Using a suitable brass drift, carefully drive the push bar pins from the telescope cylinder rod and turntable.

8. Remove hardware securing cable adjustment block to aft end of the base boom section and remove block.

9. Remove hardware securing telescope cylinder to aft end of the mid boom section.

NOTICE

WHEN REMOVING THE TELESCOPE CYLINDER FROM THE BOOM, IT MAY BE NECESSARY AT SOME POINT TO TURN THE CYLINDER SLIGHTLY IN ORDER TO CLEAR ASSEMBLIES MOUNTED WITHIN THE BOOM. CARE MUST BE TAKEN TO MOVE THE CYLINDER SLOWLY INTO POSITION: DAMAGE TO COMPONENTS MAY RESULT FROM FORCIBLE IMPACT WITH THESE ASSEMBLIES.

10. Remove bolts securing cable attach bar to top of fly boom section.

11. Pull the telescope cylinder and cables partially from aft end of the base boom section; secure the cylinder with a suitable sling and lifting device at approximately the center of gravity.

12. Carefully remove the telescope cylinder and sheave assembly. Place telescope cylinder on a suitable trestle.

Main Boom Telescope Cylinder Installation

1. Route extend cables around extend sheave and secure cables to the telescope cylinder.

2. Install extend cables mounting blocks to threaded ends of cables. Loosely install nuts and jam nuts onto the threaded end of cables.

NOTE: *When installing cables care must be taken not to twist or cross the cables.*

3. Secure the sling and lifting device at the telescope cylinder's approximate center of gravity, and lift the cylinder to the aft end of the boom assembly.

4. Install extend cable mounting blocks to threaded ends of cables. Loosely install nuts and jam nuts onto the threaded ends of cables.

NOTE: *When installing cables, care must be taken not to twist or cross the cables.*

5. Secure the sling and lifting device at the telescope cylinder's approximate center of gravity, and lift the cylinder to the aft end of the boom assembly.

NOTICE

WHEN INSERTING THE TELESCOPE CYLINDER INTO THE BOOM, IT MAY BE NECESSARY AT SOME POINT TO TURN THE CYLINDER SLIGHTLY IN ORDER TO CLEAR ASSEMBLIES MOUNTED WITHIN THE BOOM. CARE MUST BE TAKEN TO MOVE THE CYLINDER SLOWLY INTO POSITION: DAMAGE TO COMPONENTS MAY RESULT FROM FORCIBLE IMPACT WITH THESE ASSEMBLIES.

6. Carefully install the telescope cylinder barrel end support into slots in mid boom and secure with blocks and bolts. Use Loctite #242 on bolts.

7. Align holes in aft end of the fly boom section with holes in cable mounting block, then secure with mounting hardware.

8. Align holes in aft end of the base boom section with holes in cable mounting block, then secure with mounting hardware.

9. Remove cylinder port plugs and hydraulic line caps and correctly attach lines to cylinder ports.

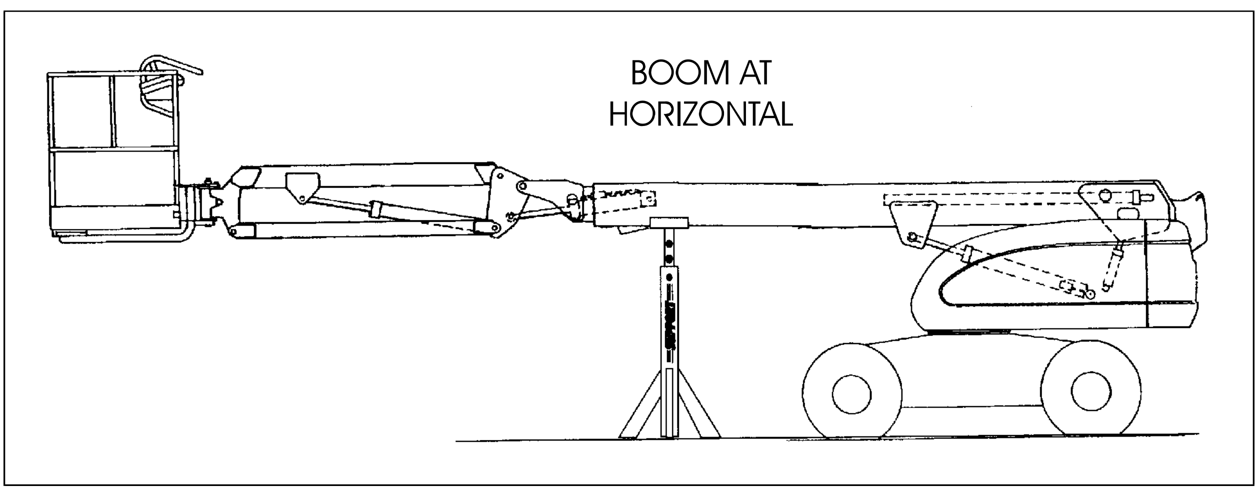


Figure 5-1. Boom Positioning and Support, Cylinder Repair

10. Align holes in rod end of the telescope cylinder with holes in push bar. Install push bar pin and secure with mounting hardware.
11. Align holes in push bar with holes in turntable. Install push bar pin and secure with mounting hardware.

NOTE: *Boom cables must be torqued after installation of the telescope cylinder. (See Section 4.1, Boom Rope Torquing Procedures)*

Main Boom Lift Cylinder Removal

1. Place the machine on a flat and level surface. Start the engine and place the main boom in the horizontal position. Shut down engine and prop the boom. (See Figure 5-1., Boom Positioning and Support, Cylinder Repair)
2. Remove the hardware retaining the cylinder rod attach pin to the boom. Using a suitable brass drift, drive out the cylinder rod attach pin.
3. Using auxiliary power, retract the lift cylinder rod completely.
4. Disconnect, cap and tag the main boom lift cylinder hydraulic lines and ports.
5. Remove barrel end attach pin retaining hardware. Using a suitable brass drift drive out the barrel end attach pin from the turntable.
6. Remove the cylinder from the turntable and place in a suitable work area.

Main Boom Lift Cylinder Installation

1. Install lift cylinder in place using suitable slings or supports, aligning attach pin mounting holes on the turntable.
2. Using a suitable drift, drive the barrel end attach pin through the mounting holes in the lift cylinder and the turntable. Secure in place with the pin retaining hardware.
3. Remove cylinder port plugs and hydraulic line caps and correctly attach lines to cylinder ports.
4. Using auxiliary power, extend the cylinder rod until the attach pin hole aligns with those in the boom. Using a suitable soft mallet, drive the cylinder rod attach pin through the boom and lift cylinder. Secure the pin in place with attaching hardware.
5. Remove boom prop and overhead crane. Activate hydraulic system.
6. Using all applicable safety precautions, operate the boom functions. Check for correct operation and hydraulic leaks. Secure as necessary.
7. Check fluid level of hydraulic tank and adjust as necessary.

5.4 CYLINDER REPAIR

NOTE: *The following are general procedures that apply to all of the cylinders on this machine. Procedures that apply to a specific cylinder will be so noted.*

Disassembly

NOTICE

DISASSEMBLY OF THE CYLINDER SHOULD BE PERFORMED ON A CLEAN WORK SURFACE IN A DIRT FREE WORK AREA.

1. Connect a suitable auxiliary hydraulic power source to the cylinder port block fitting.

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT FULLY EXTEND CYLINDER TO THE END OF STROKE. RETRACT CYLINDER SLIGHTLY TO AVOID TRAPPING PRESSURE.

2. Operate the hydraulic power source and extend the cylinder. Shut down and disconnect the power source. Adequately support the cylinder rod, if applicable.
3. If applicable, remove the cartridge-type holding valve and fittings from the cylinder port block. Discard o-rings.

4. Place the cylinder barrel into a suitable holding fixture.

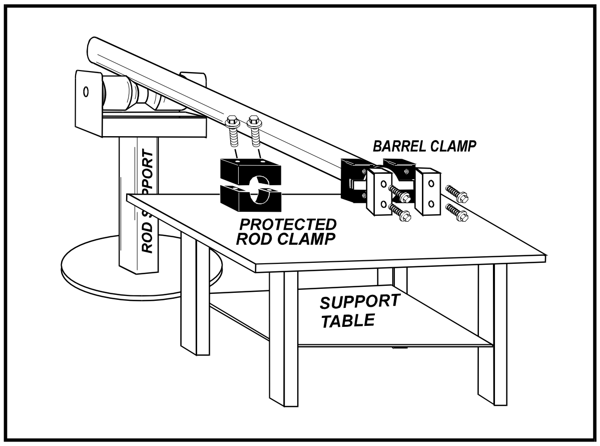


Figure 5-2. Cylinder Barrel Support

5. Mark cylinder head and barrel with a center punch for easy realignment. Using an allen wrench, loosen the eight (8) cylinder head retainer cap screws, and remove cap screws from cylinder barrel.

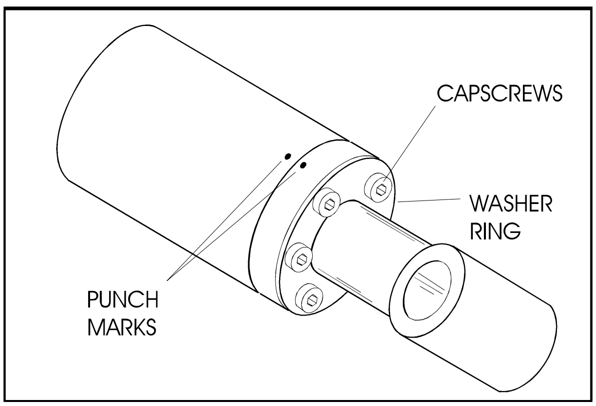
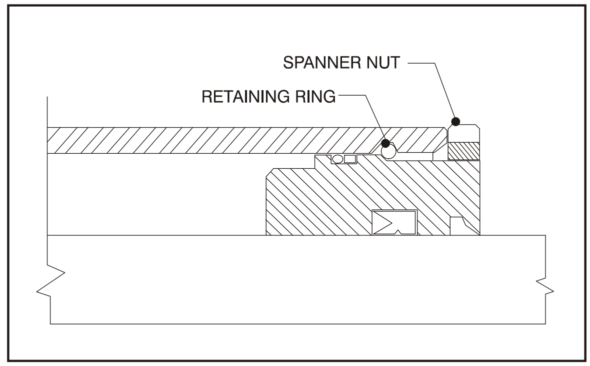


Figure 5-3. Cap Screw Removal

NOTE: *Steps 6 and 7 apply only to the steer cylinder.*

6. Using a spanner wrench, loosen the spanner nut retainer, and remove spanner nut from cylinder barrel.

7. Being careful not to mar the surface of the rod, use a punch or wooden dowel and hammer to drive the rod guide about one inch down into the cylinder bore. Using a screw driver, carefully push one end of the round retaining ring back towards the inside of the cylinder and then slip the screwdriver tip under that end. Pull the ring out of the groove toward the wall mouth. Once one end of the retaining ring is free from the groove, the remainder can be easily pried free using ones fingers or pliers.



8. Attach a suitable pulling device to the cylinder rod port block end or cylinder rod end, as applicable.

NOTICE

EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN REMOVING THE CYLINDER ROD, HEAD, AND PISTON. AVOID PULLING THE ROD OFF-CENTER, WHICH COULD CAUSE DAMAGE TO THE PISTON AND CYLINDER BARREL SURFACES.

9. With the barrel clamped securely, apply pressure to the rod pulling device and carefully withdraw the complete rod assembly from the cylinder barrel.

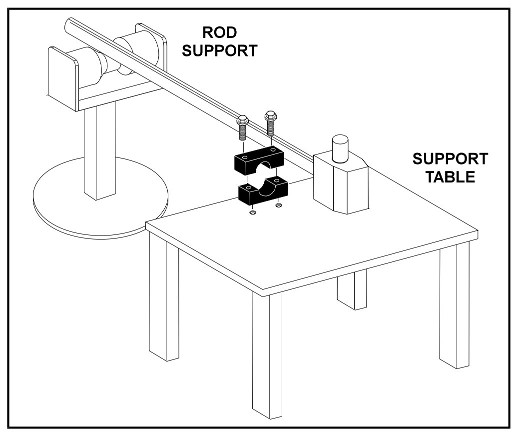


Figure 5-4. Cylinder Rod Support

10. Using suitable protection, clamp the cylinder rod in a vise or similar holding fixture as close to the piston as possible.

NOTE: *Step 11 applies only to the steer cylinder.*

11. Loosen and remove nut which attaches the piston to the rod, and remove the piston.

12. Loosen and remove the cap screw(s), if applicable, which attach the tapered bushing to the piston.

13. Insert the cap screw(s) in the threaded holes in the outer piece of the tapered bushing. Progressively tighten the cap screw(s) until the bushing is loose on the piston.
14. Remove the bushing from the piston.

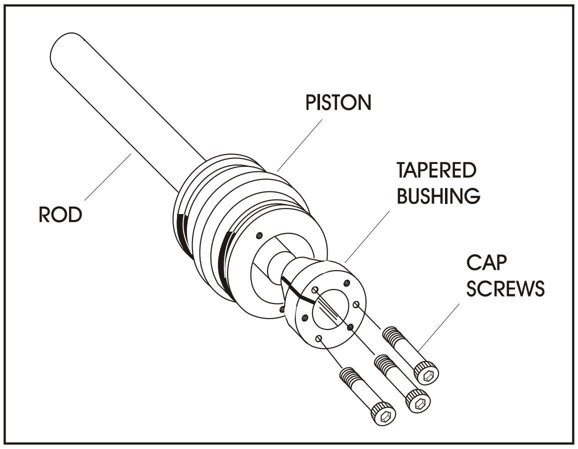


Figure 5-5. Tapered Bushing Removal

15. Screw the piston CCW, by hand, and remove the piston from cylinder rod.
16. Remove and discard the piston o-rings, seal rings, and backup rings.
17. Remove piston spacer, if applicable, from the rod.
18. Remove the rod from the holding fixture. Remove the cylinder head gland and retainer plate, if applicable. Discard the o-rings, back-up rings, rod seals, and wiper seals.

Cleaning and Inspection

1. Clean all parts thoroughly in an approved cleaning solvent.
2. Inspect the cylinder rod for scoring, tapering, ovality, or other damage. If necessary, dress rod with Scotch Brite or equivalent. Replace rod if necessary.
3. Inspect threaded portion of rod for excessive damage. Dress threads as necessary.
4. Inspect inner surface of cylinder barrel tube for scoring or other damage. Check inside diameter for tapering or ovality. Replace if necessary.
5. Inspect threaded portion of barrel for damage. Dress threads as necessary.
6. Inspect piston surface for damage and scoring and for distortion. Dress piston surface or replace piston as necessary.
7. Inspect threaded portion of piston for damage. Dress threads as necessary.
8. Inspect seal and o-ring grooves in piston for burrs and sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces as necessary.
9. Inspect cylinder head inside diameter for scoring or other damage and for ovality and tapering. Replace as necessary.
10. Inspect threaded portion of head for damage. Dress threads as necessary.
11. Inspect seal and o-ring grooves in head for burrs and sharp edges. Dress applicable surfaces as necessary.
12. Inspect cylinder head outside diameter for scoring or other damage and ovality and tapering. Replace as necessary.
13. If applicable, inspect rod and barrel bearings for signs of correct excessive wear or damage. Replace as necessary.
    a. Thoroughly clean hole, (steel bushing) of burrs, dirt etc. to facilitate bearing installation.
    b. Inspect steel bushing for wear or other damage. If steel bushing is worn or damaged, rod/barrel must be replaced.
    c. Lubricate inside of steel bushing with WD40 prior to bearing installation.
    d. Using an arbor of the correct size, carefully press the bearing into steel bushing.

NOTE: *Install pin into the composite bearing dry. Lubrication is not required with nickel plated pins and bearings.*

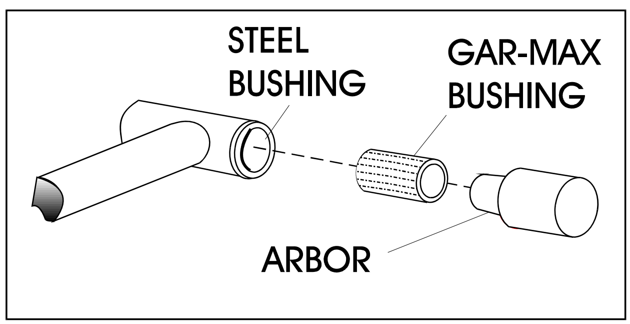


Figure 5-6. Composite Bearing Installation

14. Inspect travel limiting collar or spacer for burrs and sharp edges. If necessary, dress inside diameter surface with Scotch Brite or equivalent.
15. If applicable, inspect port block fittings and holding valve. Replace as necessary.
16. Inspect the oil ports for blockage or the presence of dirt or other foreign material. Repair as necessary.
17. If applicable, inspect piston rings for cracks or other damage. Replace as necessary.

Assembly

NOTE: *Prior to cylinder assembly, ensure that the proper cylinder seal kit is used. See your JLG Parts Manual.*

Apply a light film of hydraulic oil to all components prior to assembly.

1. A special tool is used to install a new rod seal into the applicable cylinder head gland groove.

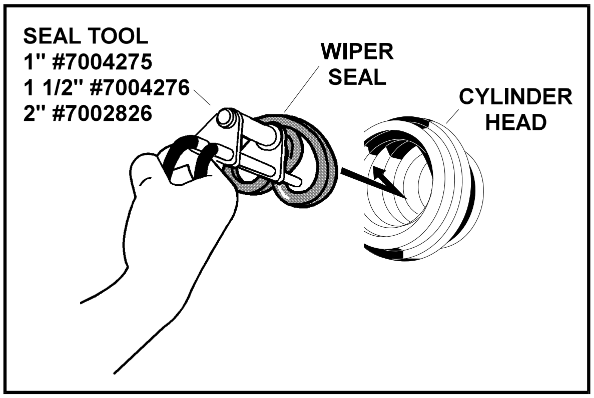


Figure 5-7. Rod Seal Installation

NOTICE

WHEN INSTALLING 'POLY-PAK' PISTON SEALS, ENSURE SEALS ARE INSTALLED PROPERLY. REFER TO WIPER SEAL INSTALLATION FOR CORRECT SEAL ORIENTATION. IMPROPER SEAL INSTALLATION COULD RESULT IN CYLINDER LEAKAGE AND IMPROPER CYLINDER OPERATION.

NOTICE

WHEN INSTALLING THE WIPER SEAL ON THE LOWER (TOWER) LIFT CYLINDER, APPLY LOCTITE #609 ON THE WIPER SEAL IN THREE EVENLY SPACED PLACES TO AID IN RETENTION OF THE SEAL.

2. Use a soft mallet to tap a new wiper seal into the applicable cylinder head gland groove. Install a new wear ring into the applicable cylinder head gland groove.

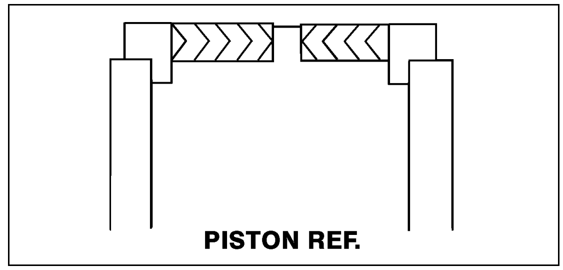


Figure 5-8. Poly-Pak Piston Seal Installation

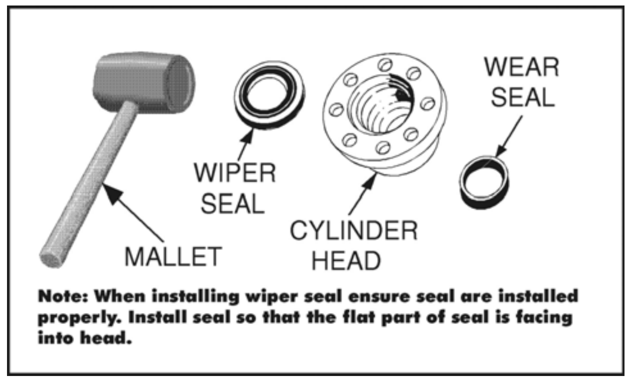


Figure 5-9. Wiper Seal Installation

3. Place a new "O-ring and back-up seal in the applicable outside diameter groove of the cylinder head.

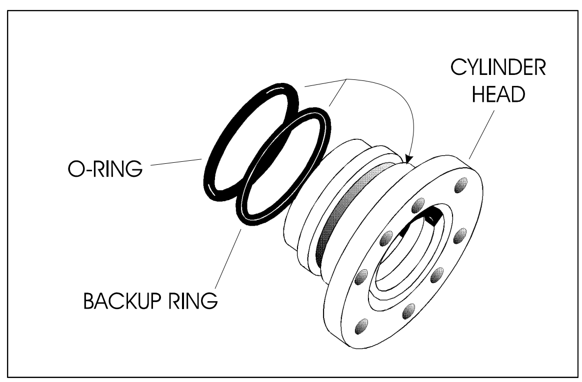


Figure 5-10. Installation of Head Seal Kit

4. Install washer ring onto rod, carefully install the head gland on the rod, ensuring that the wiper and rod seals are not damaged or dislodged. Push the head along the rod to the rod end, as applicable.

5. Carefully slide the piston spacer on the rod.

NOTE: *Upper telescope cylinder piston has an o-ring installed inside the spacer.*

6. If applicable, correctly place new o-ring in the inner piston diameter groove. (The backup ring side facing the O-ring is grooved.)

7. If applicable, correctly place new seals and guide lock rings in the outer piston diameter groove. (A tube, with I.D. slightly larger than the O.D.of the piston is recommended to install the solid seal.)

NOTE: *The backup rings for the solid seal have a radius on one side. This side faces the solid seal.(See magnified insert in Figure 5-11.)The split of seals and backup rings are to be positioned so as not to be in alignment with each other.*

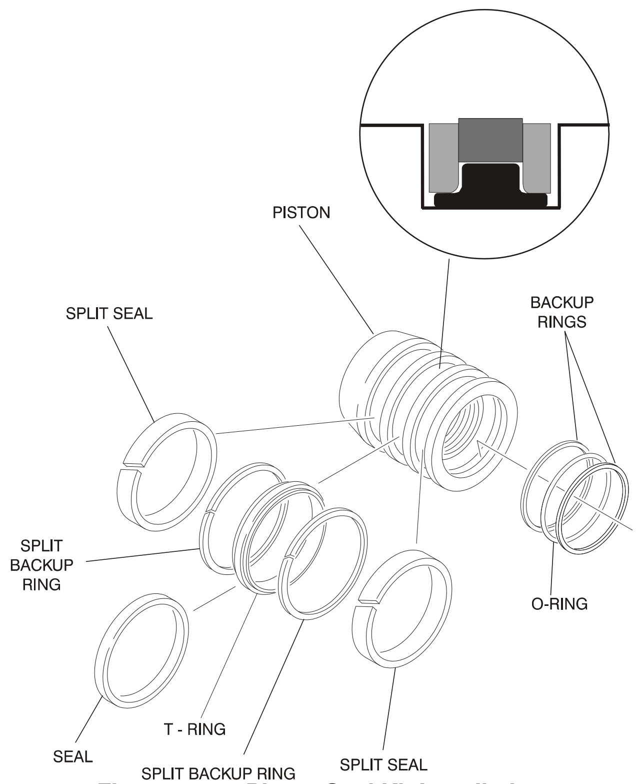


Figure 5-11. Piston Seal Kit Installation

8. Using suitable protection, clamp the cylinder rod in a vise or similar holding fixture as close to piston as possible.

9. Carefully thread the piston on the cylinder rod hand tight, ensuring that the o-ring and back-up rings are not damaged or dislodged.

10. Thread piston onto rod until it abuts the spacer end and install the tapered bushing.

NOTE: *When installing the tapered bushing, piston and mating end of rod must be free of oil.*

⚠ WARNING

WHEN REBUILDING THE MASTER, SLAVE, LOWER LIFT, UPPER LIFT, ARTICULATING FLY BOOM LIFT, UPRIGHT LEVEL, TOWER TELESCOPE, OR UPPER TELESCOPE CYLINDERS, TIGHTEN SECURELY. (SEE TABLE 5-1, CYLINDER HEAD AND TAPERED BUSHING TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS).

11. Assemble the tapered bushing loosely into the piston and insert JLG capscrews (not vendor capscrews) through the drilled holes in the bushing and into the tapped holes in the piston.

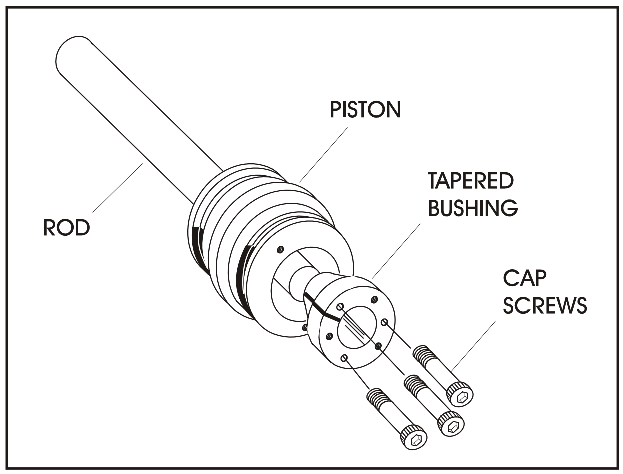


Figure 5-12. Tapered Bushing Installation

12. Tighten the capscrews evenly and progressively in rotation to the specified torque value. (See Table 5-1, Cylinder Head and Tapered Bushing Torque Specifications).

13. After the screws have been torqued, tap the tapered bushing with a hammer (16 to 24 oz.) and brass shaft (approximately 3/4" in diameter) as follows;

    a. Place the shaft against the cylinder rod and in contact with the bushing in the spaces between the capscrews.

b. Tap each space once; this means the tapered bushing is tapped 3 times as there are 3 spaces between the capscrews.

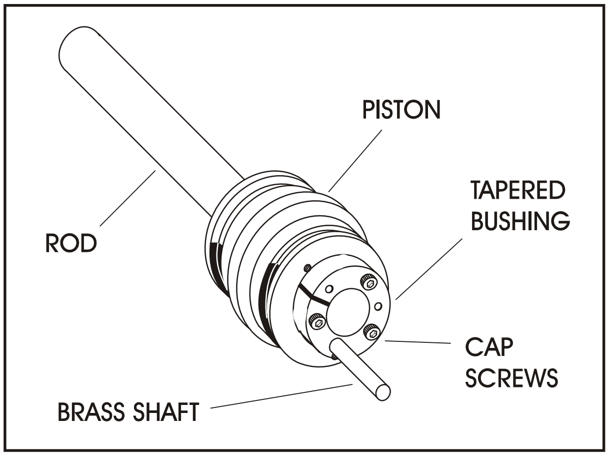


Figure 5-13. Seating the Tapered Bearing

14. Retorque the capscrews evenly and progressively in rotation to the specified torque value. (See Table 5-1, Cylinder Head and Tapered Bushing Torque Specifications).

15. Remove the cylinder rod from the holding fixture.

16. Place new guide locks and seals in the applicable outside diameter grooves of the cylinder piston. (See Figure 5-11.)

17. Position the cylinder barrel in a suitable holding fixture.

NOTICE

EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE TAKEN WHEN INSTALLING THE CYLINDER ROD, HEAD, AND PISTON. AVOID PULLING THE ROD OFF-CENTER, WHICH COULD CAUSE DAMAGE TO THE PISTON AND CYLINDER BARREL SURFACES.

18. With barrel clamped securely, and while adequately supporting the rod, insert the piston end into the barrel cylinder. Ensure that the piston loading o-ring and seal ring are not damaged or dislodged.

19. Continue pushing the rod into the barrel until the cylinder head gland can be inserted into the barrel cylinder.

20. Secure the cylinder head gland using the washer ring and socket head bolts. (See Table 5-1.)

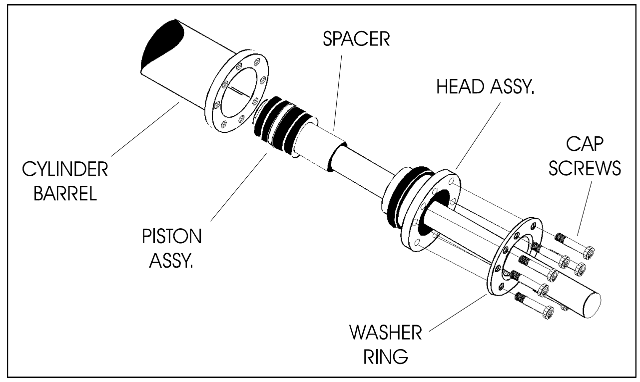


Figure 5-14. Rod Assembly Installation

21. After the cylinder has been reassembled, the rod should be pushed all the way in (fully retracted) prior to the reinstallation of any holding valve or valves.

22. If applicable, install the cartridge-type holding valve and fittings in the rod port block, using new o-rings as applicable. (See Table 5-2, Holding Valve Torque Specifications).

Table 5-1. Cylinder Head and Tapered Bushing Torque Specifications

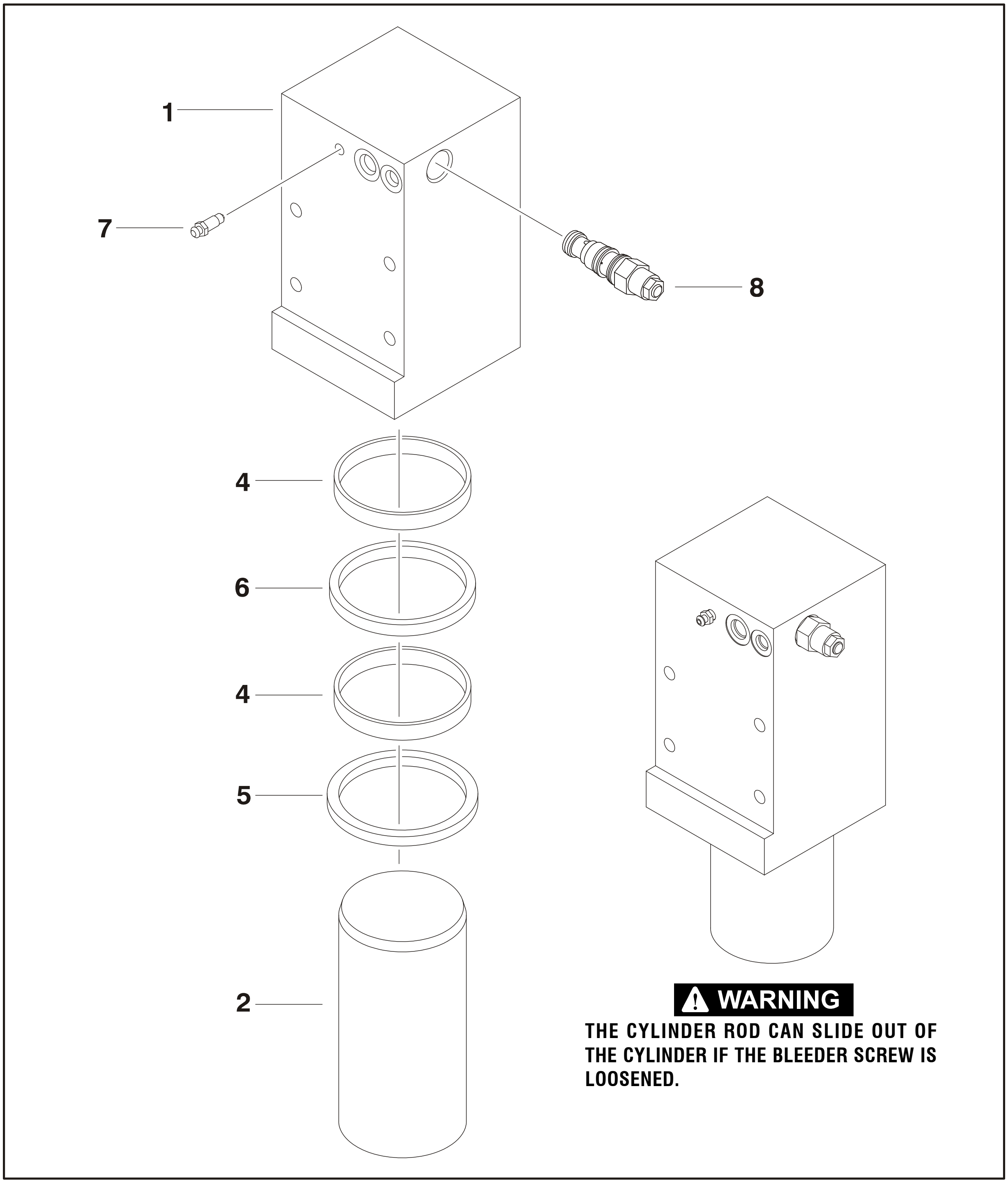
Description	Head Torque Value (Wet)	Tapered Bushing Torque Value (Wet)
Lift Cylinder	240 ft. lbs. (325 Nm)	30 ft. lbs. (41 Nm)
Articulating Lift Cylinder	30 ft. lbs. (41 Nm)	5 ft. lbs. (9 Nm)
Slave Cylinder	30 ft. lbs. (41 Nm)	5 ft. lbs. (9 Nm)
Master Cylinder	30 ft. lbs. (41 Nm)	5 ft. lbs. (9 Nm)
Telescope Cylinder	50 ft. lbs. (68 Nm)	9 ft. lbs. (12 Nm)
Lockout Cylinder	80 ft. lbs. (109 Nm)	N/A
Articulating Slave Cylinder	50 ft. lbs. (68 Nm)	9 ft. lbs. (12 Nm)
Articulating Master Cylinder	50 ft. lbs. (68 Nm)	9 ft. lbs. (12 Nm)
Steer Cylinder Piston Nut Torque Specifications		
Steer Cylinder	LBS.	NM
	150 ft. lbs	204 Nm

Table 5-2. Holding Valve Torque Specifications

Description	Torque Value
SUN - 7/8 HEX M20 X 1.5 THDS.	30-35 ft. lbs. (41-48 Nm)
SUN - 1 1/8 HEX 1 -14 UNS THDS.	45-50 ft. lbs. (61-68 Nm)
SUN - 1 1/4 HEX M36 X 2 THDS.	150-160 ft. lbs. (204-217 Nm)
RACINE - 1 1/8 HEX 1 1/16 - 12 THDS.	50-55 ft. lbs. (68-75 Nm)
RACINE - 1 3/8 HEX 1 3/16 - 12 THDS.	75-80 ft. lbs. (102-109 Nm)
RACINE - 1 7/8 HEX 1 5/8 - 12 THDS.	100-110 ft. lbs. (136-149 Nm)

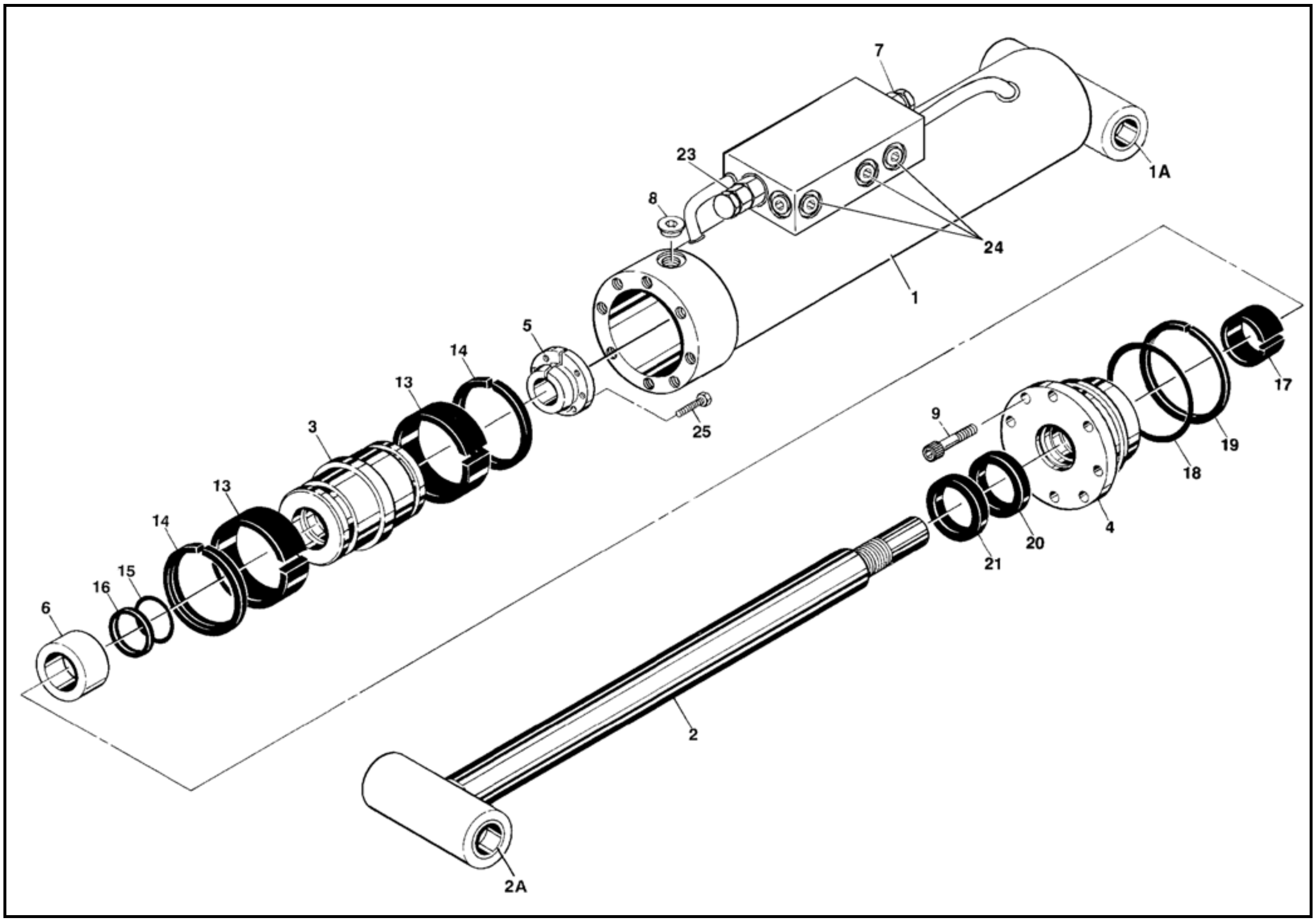
NOTICE

IF THE CYLINDER IS TO BE TESTED PRIOR TO INSTALLATION ON THE MACHINE, EXTREME CARE SHOULD BE USED TO INSURE THAT THE OUTER END OF THE ROD IS SUPPORTED. USE EITHER A TRAVELING OVERHEAD HOIST, FORK-LIFT, OR OTHER MEANS TO SUPPORT THE OVERHANGING WEIGHT OF THE EXTENDING ROD.



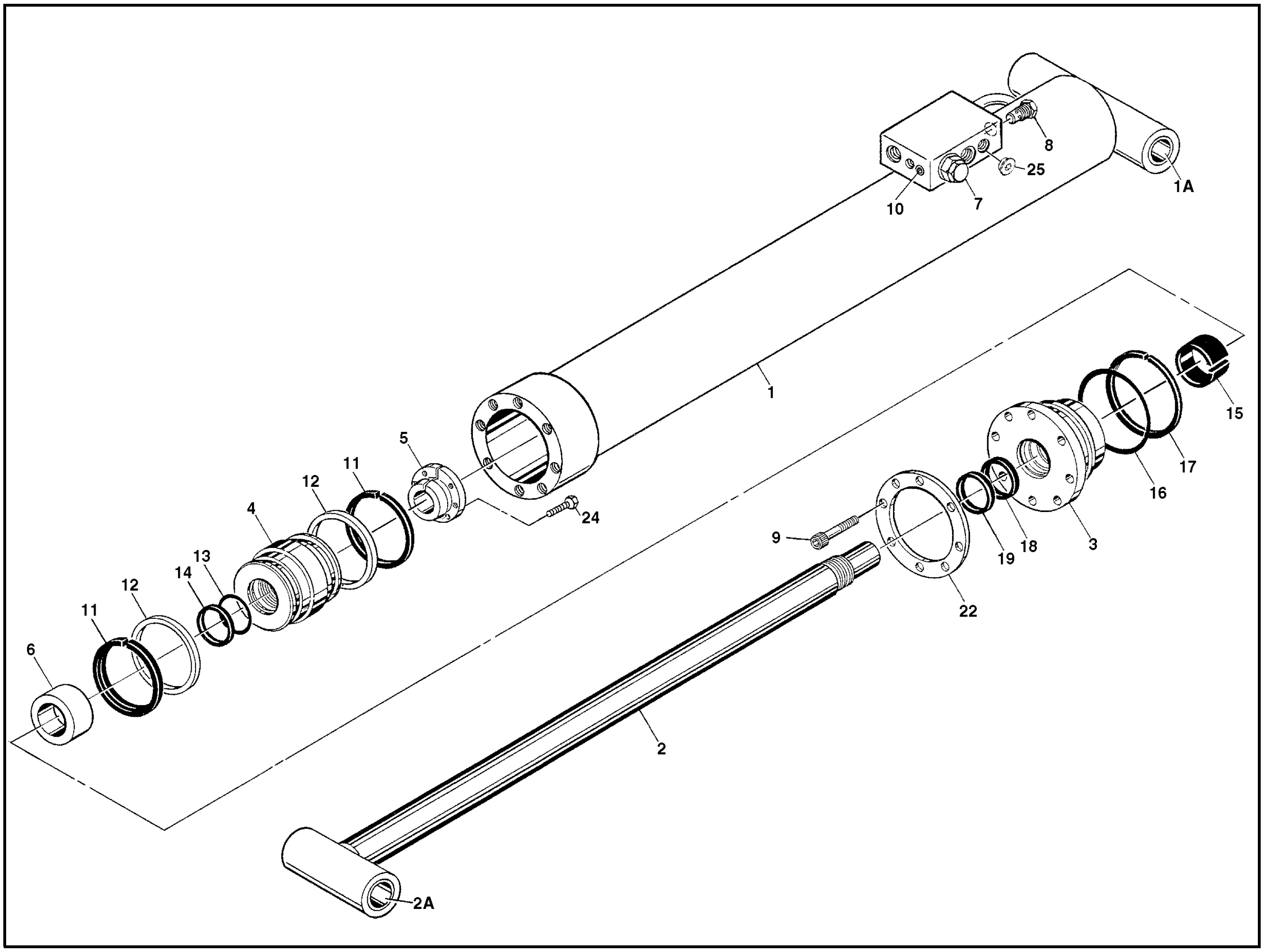
1. Barrel
2. Rod
3. Not Used
4. Wear Ring
5. Wiper Ring
6. Rod Seal
7. Bleeder
8. Cartridge Valve

Figure 5-15. Axle Lockout Cylinder



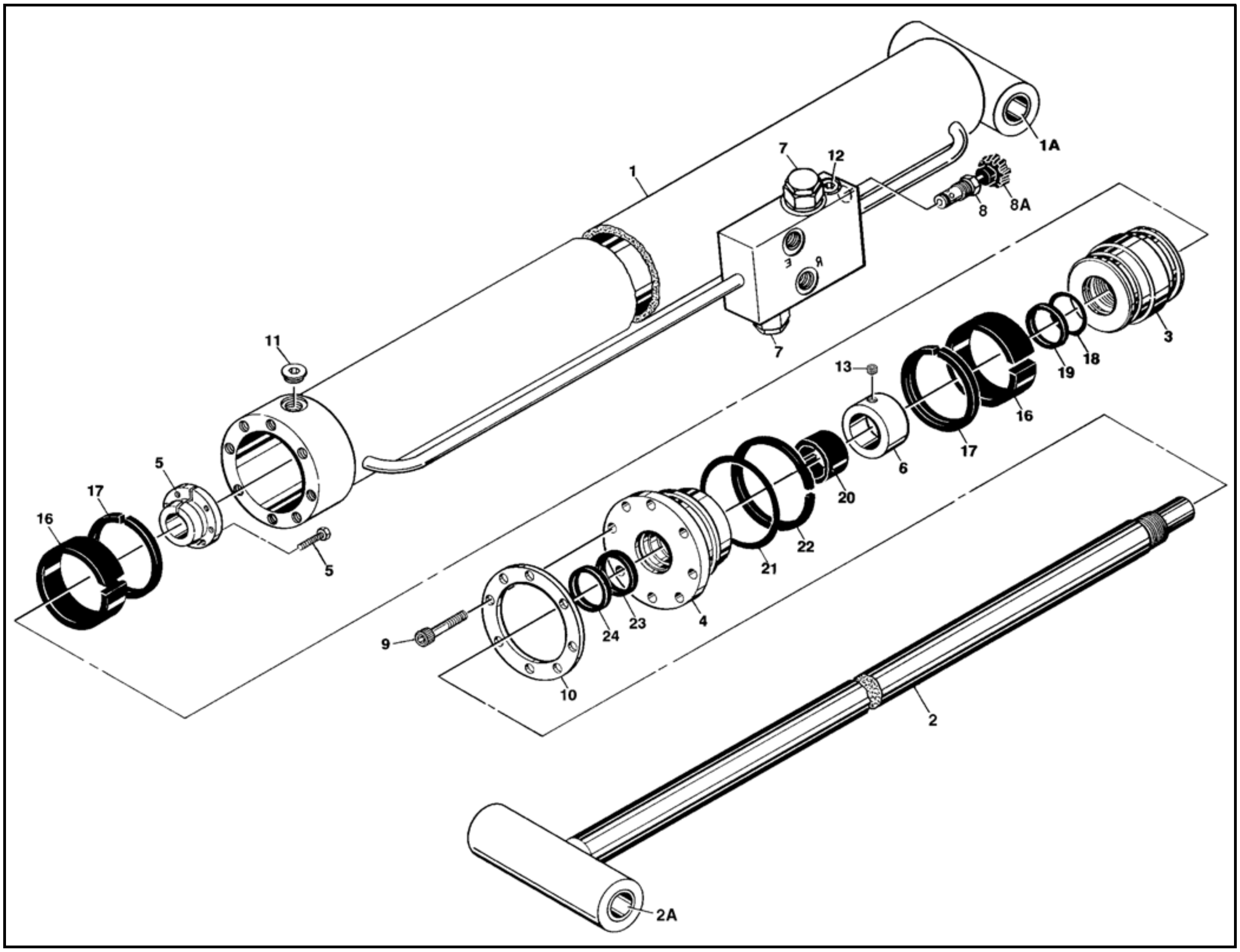
1. Barrel	8. O-Ring Plug	17. Wear Ring
1A. Bushing	9. Socket Head Capscrew	18. O-Ring
2. Rod	10. Washer Ring	19. Back-Up Ring
2A. Bushing	11. Loctite #242 (Not Shown)	20. Rod Seal
3. Piston	12. Locking Primer (Not Shown)	21. Wiper Ring
4. Head	13. Seal	22. Not Used
5. Tapered Bushing	14. Lock Ring	23. Valve Cartridge
6. Spacer	15. O-Ring	24. O-Ring Plug
7. Cartridge Valve	16. Back-Up Ring	25. Socket Head Screw

Figure 5-16. Level Cylinder



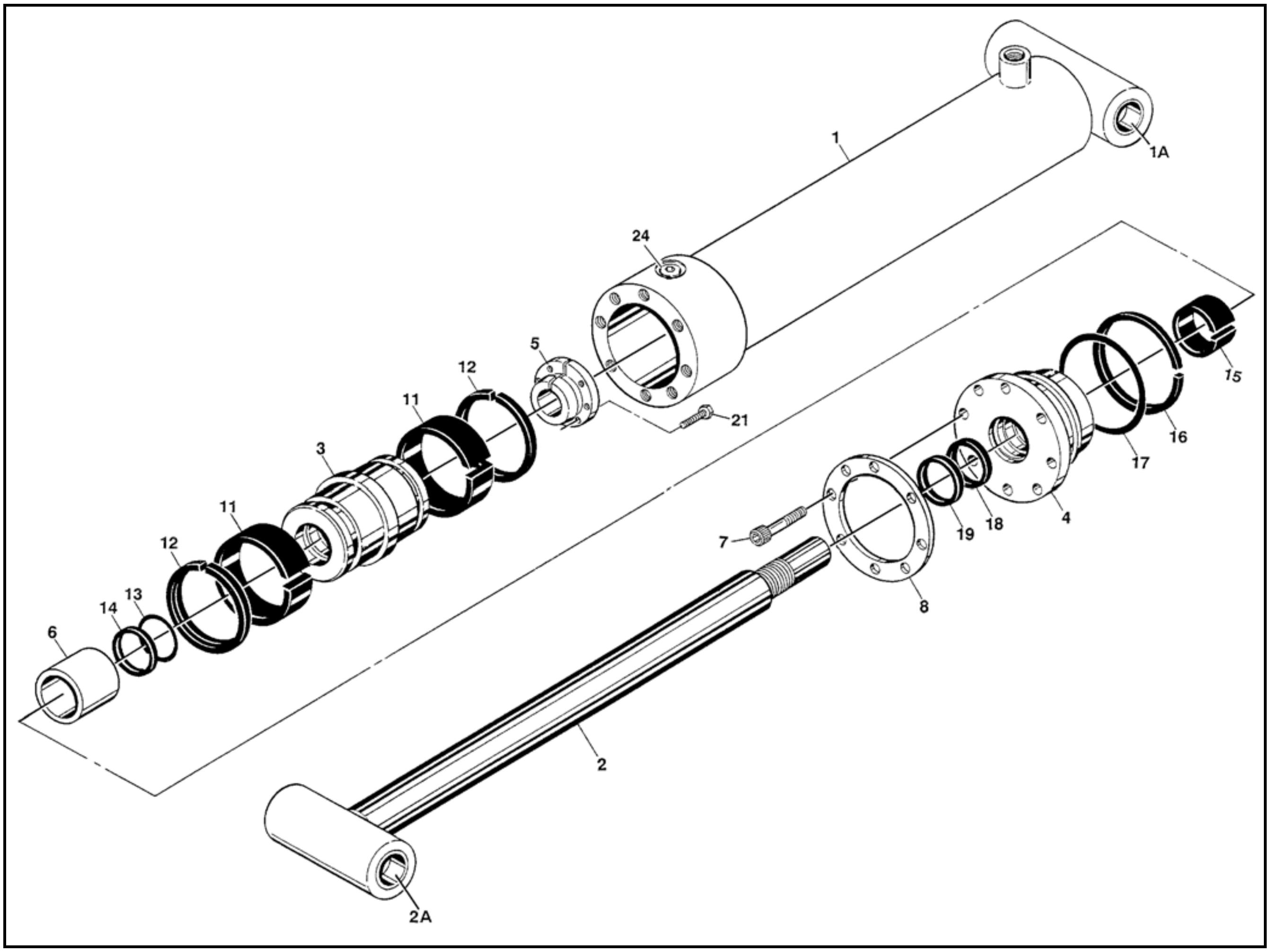
1. Barrel	6. Spacer	13. O-Ring	20. Loctite #242 (Not Shown)
1A. Bushing	7. Cartridge Valve	14. Back-Up Ring	21. Locking Primer (Not Shown)
2. Rod	8. Cartridge Valve	15. Wear Ring	22. Washer Ring
2A. Bushing	9. Socket Head Capscrew	16. O-Ring	23. Not Used
3. Head	10. O-Ring Plug	17. Back-Up Ring	24. Socket Head Screw
4. Piston	11. Lock Ring	18. Rod Seal	25. O-Ring Plug
5. Tapered Bushing	12. Hydrolock Seal	19. Wiper	26. Loctite #609 (Not Shown)

Figure 5-17. Lift Cylinder



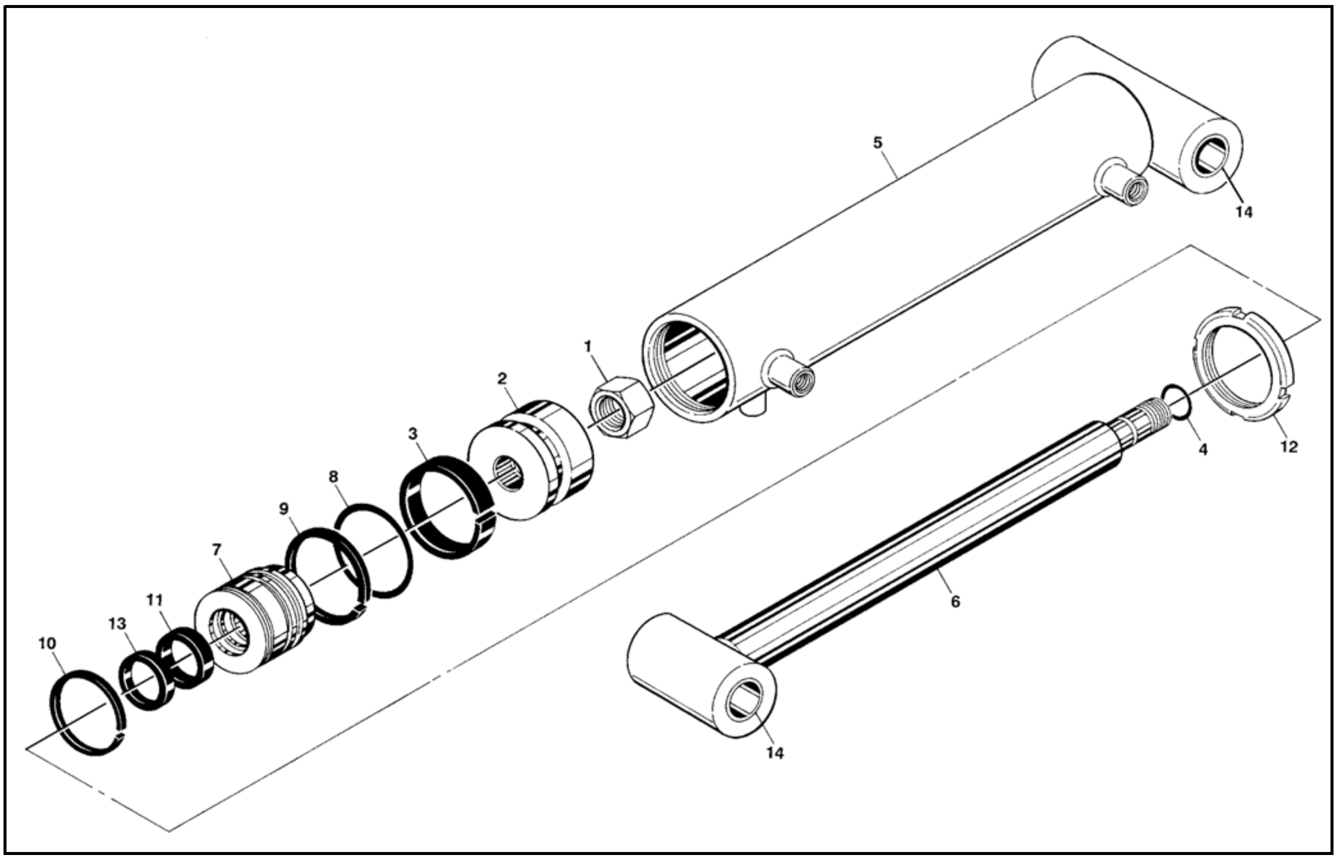
1. Barrel
1A. Bushing
2. Rod
2A. Bushing
3. Piston
4. Head
5. Tapered Bushing
6. Spacer
7. Cartridge Valve
8. Cartridge Valve
8A. Knob
9. Socket Head Capscrew
10. Washer Ring
11. O-Ring Plug
12. O-Ring Plug
13. Setscrew
14. Loctite #242 (Not Shown)
15. Locking Primer (Not Shown)
16. Seal
17. Lock Ring
18. O-Ring
19. Back-Up Ring
20. Wear Ring
21. O-Ring
22. Back-Up Ring
23. Rod Seal
24. Wiper
25. Loctite #609 (Not Shown)
26. Socket Head Capscrew

Figure 5-18. Jib Lift Cylinder



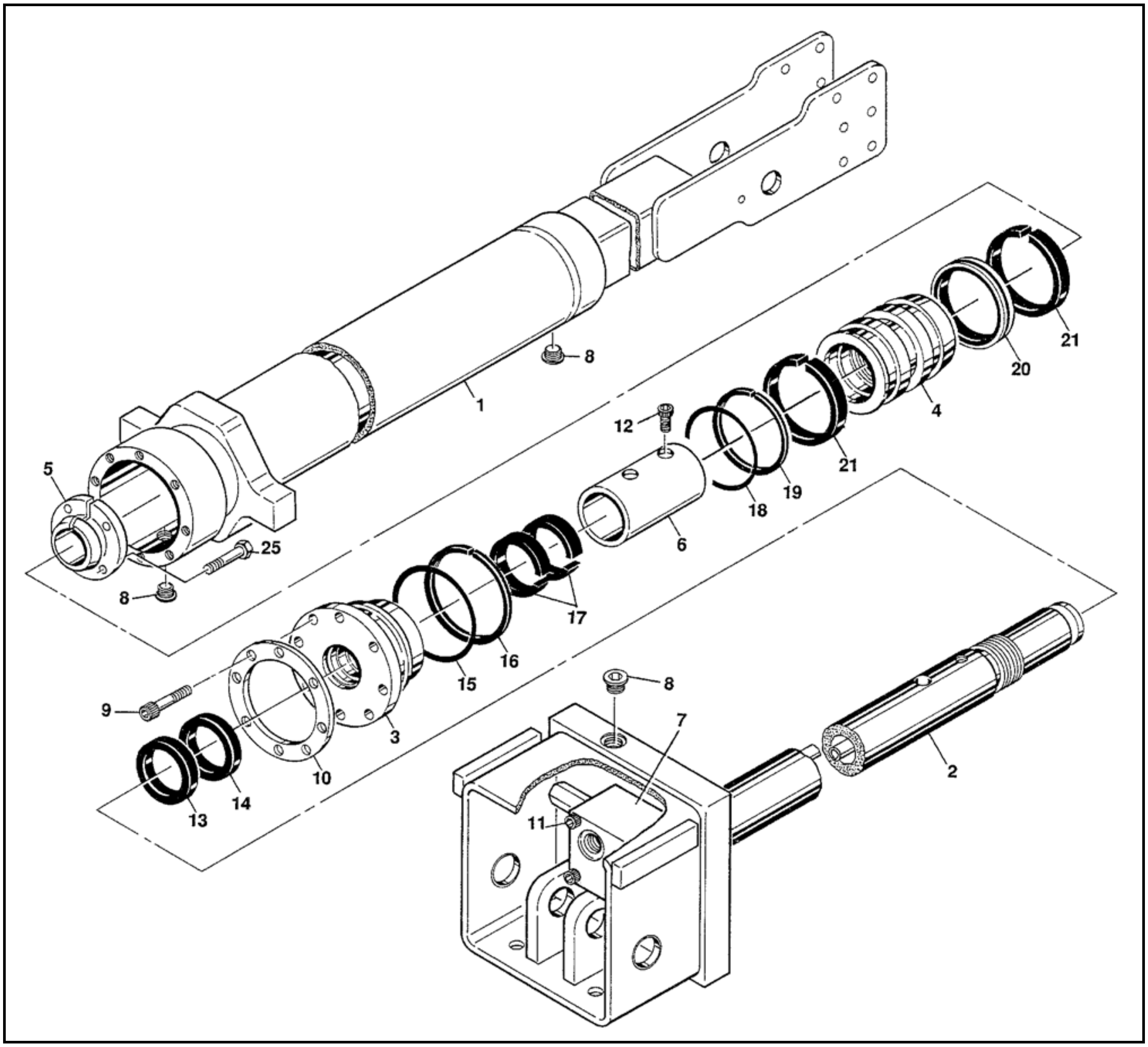
1. Barrel	6. Spacer	13. O-Ring	20. Not Used
1A. Bushing	7. Capscrew	14. Back-Up Ring	21. Socket Head Capscrew
2. Rod	8. Washer Ring	15. Wear Ring	22. Loctite #609 (Not Shown)
2A. Bushing	9. Loctite #242 (Not Shown)	16. O-Ring	23. Not Used
3. Piston	10. Locking Primer (Not Shown)	17. Back-Up Ring	24. Plug Fitting
4. Head	11. Seal	18. Rod Seal	
5. Tapered Bushing	12. Lock Ring	19. Wiper	

Figure 5-19. Master Cylinder



1. Locknut	6. Rod	11. Lip Seal
2. Piston	7. Capscrew	12. Spanner Nut
3. Seal	8. O-Ring	13. Wiper
4. O-Ring	9. Back-Up Ring	14. Bushing
5. Barrel	10. Retainer Ring	

Figure 5-20. Steer Cylinder



1. Barrel	7. Valve	13. Wiper	19. Back-Up Ring
2. Rod	8. O-Ring Plug	14. Rod Seal	20. T-Seal
3. Head	9. Capscrew	15. O-Ring	21. Wear Ring
4. Piston	10. Washer Ring	16. Back-Up Ring	22. Loctite #242 (Not Shown)
5. Tapered Bushing	11. Capscrew	17. Wear Ring	23. Locking Primer (Not Shown)
6. Spacer	12. Capscrew	18. O-Ring	24. Not Used

Figure 5-21. Telescope Cylinder

5.5 VARIABLE DISPLACEMENT PUMP (M46 SERIES)

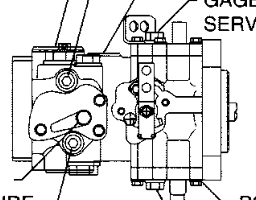
Troubleshooting

GAUGE INSTALLATION

It will be necessary to install a high pressure gauge into the system pressure gauge ports to check the setting of the high pressure relief valves.

Measuring the charge pump inlet vacuum will help locate restrictions in the inlet lines, filter, etc.

Case pressure readings can help locate restrictions in the return lines, oil cooler, and return filter.



Gauge Information		
M1	System Pressure Port A	10, 000 PSI or 600 Bar Gauge
		9/16-18 O-ring Fitting
M2	System Pressure Port B	10, 000 PSI or 600 Bar Gauge
		9/16-18 O-ring Fitting
M3	Charge Pressure	1000 PSI or 60 Bar Gauge
		9/16-18 O-ring Fitting or Tee into Charge Pressure Filter Outlet Line
L1 L2	Case Pressure	1000 PSI or 60 Bar Gauge
		1-1/16-12 O-ring Fitting
S	Charge Pump Inlet Vacuum	Vacuum Gauge
		Tee into Charge Pump Inlet Line
M4	Servo Pressure	1000 PSI or 60 Bar Gauge
		9/16-18 O-ring Fitting
M5	Servo Pressure	1000 PSI or 60 Bar Gauge
		9/16-18 O-ring Fitting

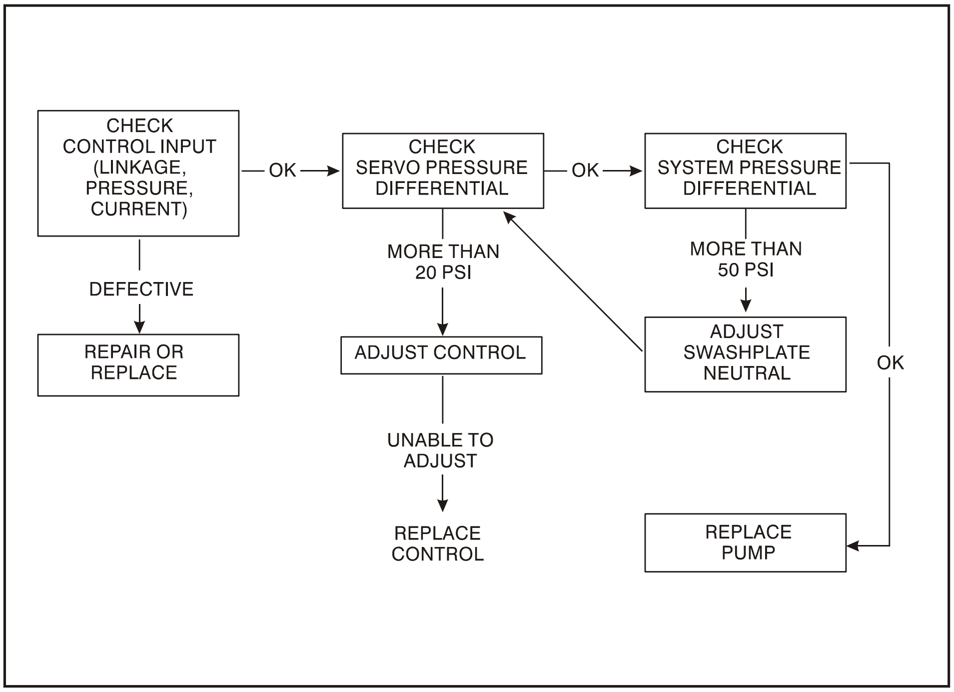


Figure 5-22. Troubleshooting - Neutral Difficult or Impossible to Find

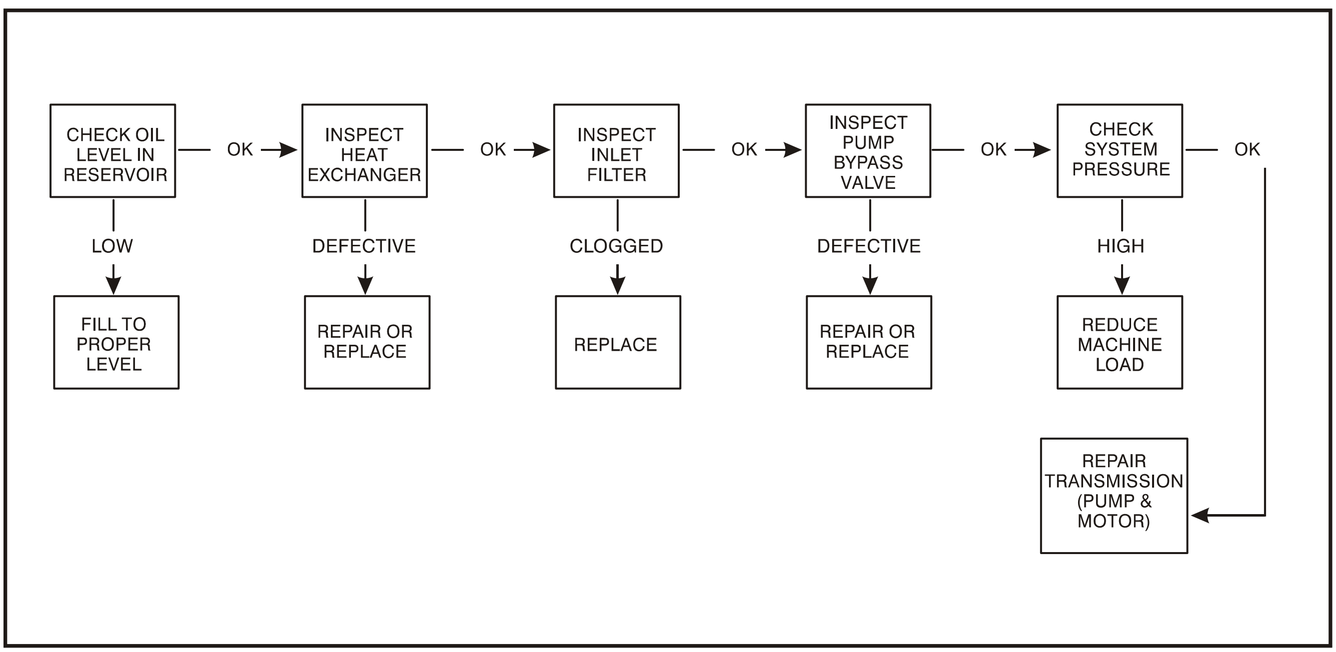


Figure 5-23. Troubleshooting - System Operating Hot

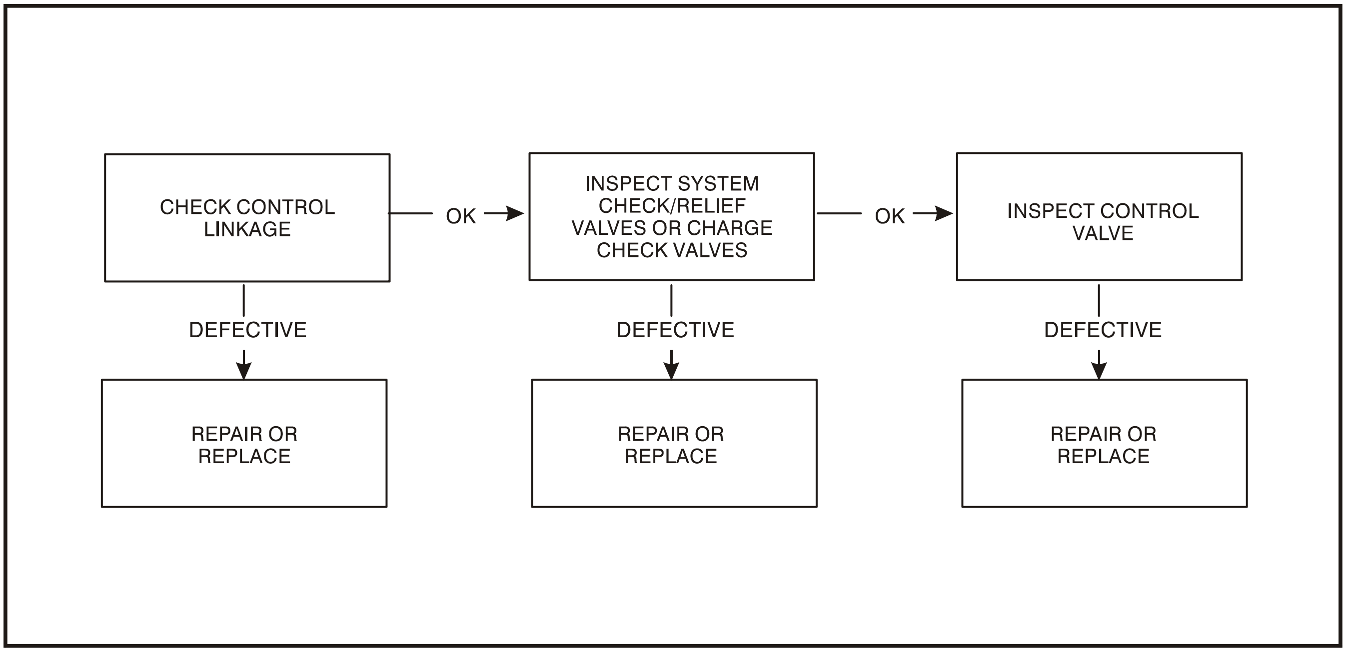


Figure 5-24. Troubleshooting - Transmission Operates in One Direction Only

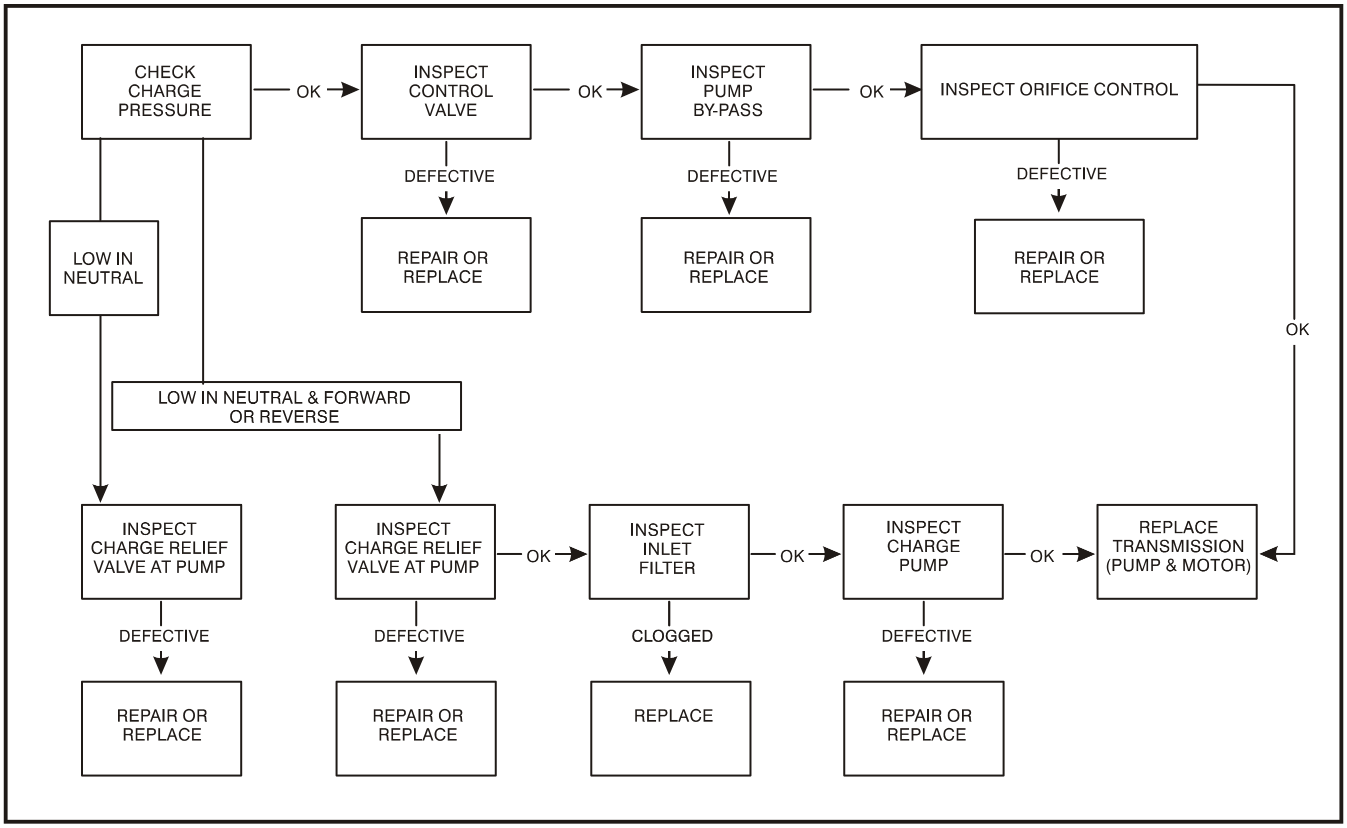


Figure 5-25. Troubleshooting - System Response is Sluggish

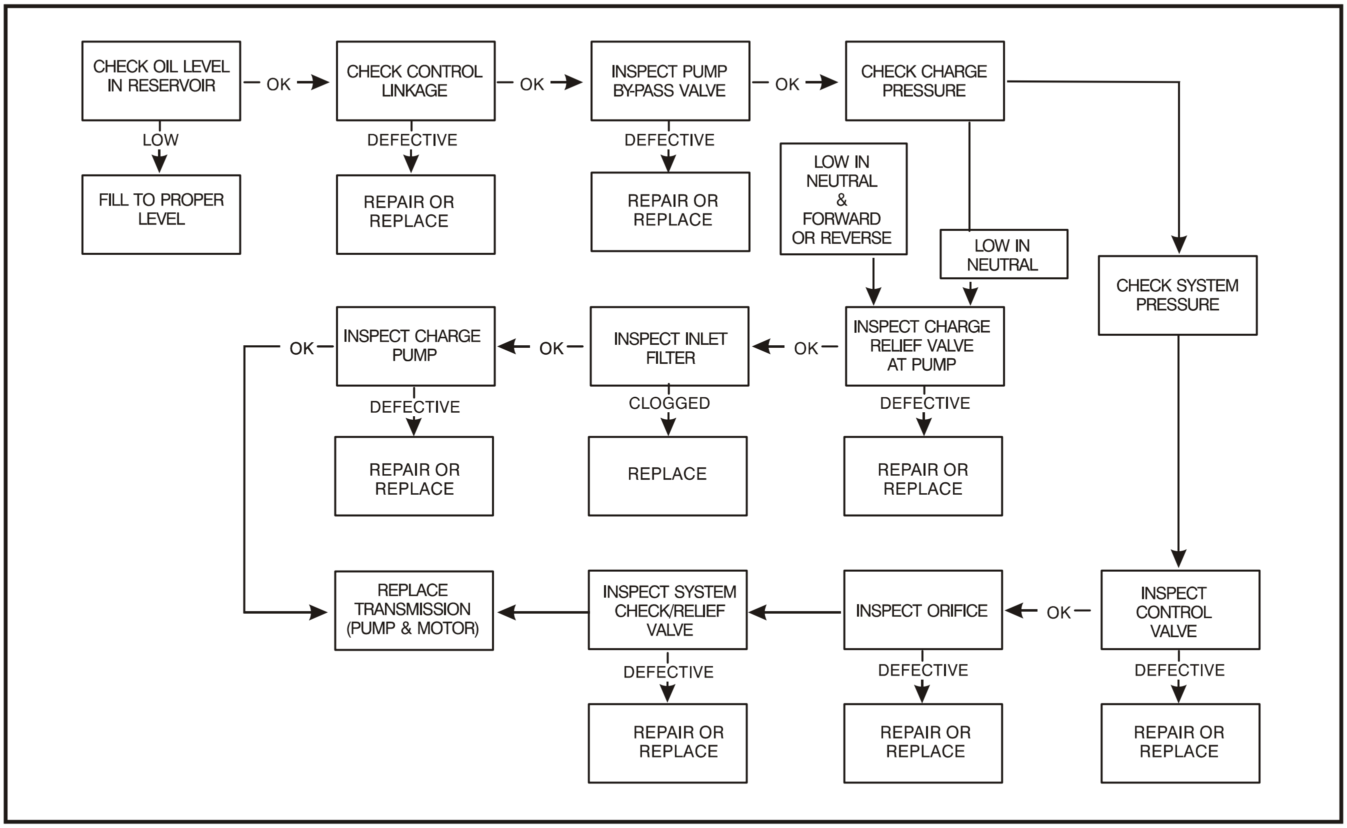
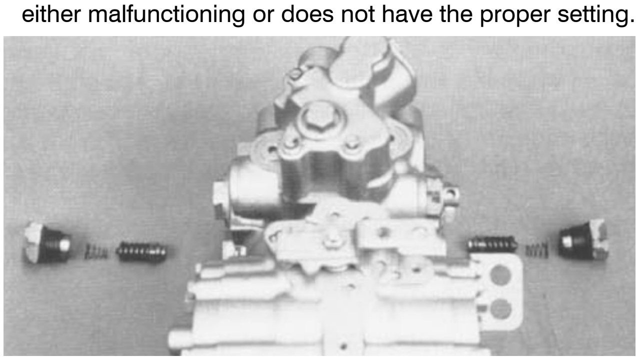


Figure 5-26. Troubleshooting - System Will Not Operate in Either Direction

Inspections and Adjustments

CHECK/HIGH PRESSURE RELIEF VALVES

The system check/relief valves have the dual purpose of providing make-up oil during by-directional rotation and providing protection from system over pressure. When the problem occurs in one direction only, interchange the check/relief valves to see if the problem changes to the other direction. If so, one check/relief valve cartridge is either malfunctioning or does not have the proper setting.



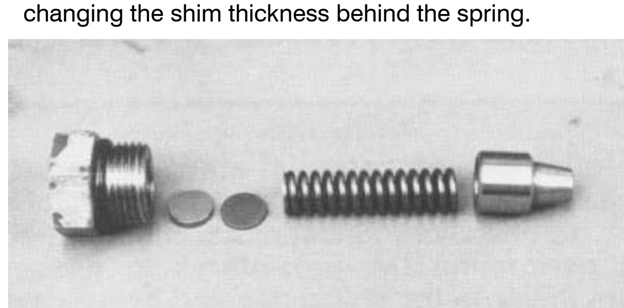
NOTICE

THE RELIEF VALVES ARE FACTORY SET AND SHOULD NOT BE TAMPERED WITH EXCEPT FOR REPLACING THE ENTIRE CARTRIDGE. DISASSEMBLY MAY CHANGE THE SETTING AND CAUSE ERRATIC UNIT OPERATION OR PREMATURE FAILURE.

PUMP CHARGE RELIEF VALVE

If charge pressure is low (less than 220 psi [15.2 Bar] above case pressure), the charge relief valve should be inspected. Inspect for foreign material holding the poppet open, and for scoring or wear on the poppet and seat in the housing.

Adjustments of the charge pressure is accomplished by changing the shim thickness behind the spring.

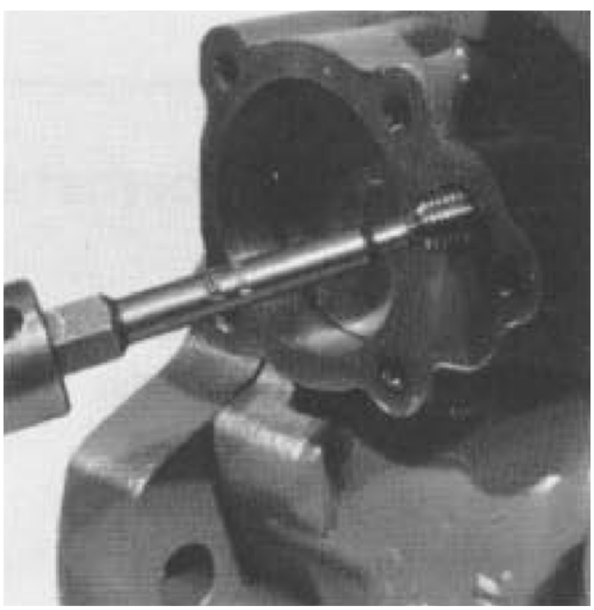


ELECTRICAL DISPLACEMENT CONTROL ORIFICES

NOTE: *The pump should have two control orifices located under the servo covers.*

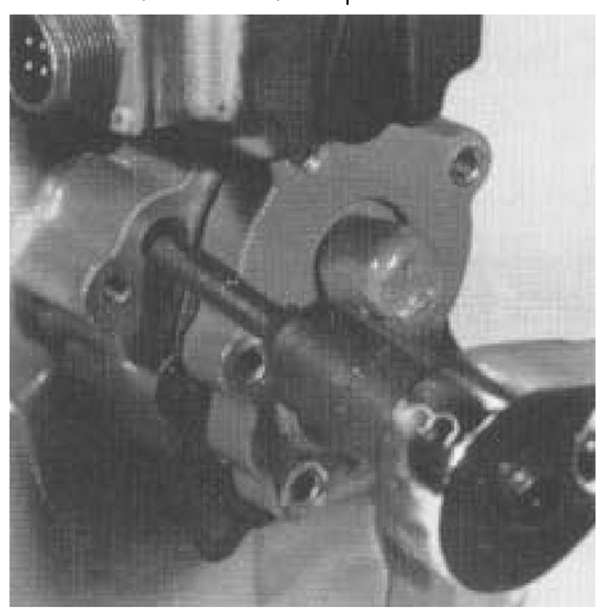
1. With a 7/16" wrench, remove the five bolts from the servo cover opposite the neutral adjustment (cover without the adjustment screw).

2. With a 7/32" internal wrench, remove and inspect the orifice.



3. Remove the bolts from the servo cover on the neutral adjustment side. Install a spacer or sprocket, approximately 0.75 in. (19 mm) long, under the servo cover opposite the neutral adjustment.

4. Re-install the bolts and tighten until the servo cover on the neutral adjustment side of the pump separates 0.125 in. (3 mm) from the housing. Turn the cover and remove and inspect the orifice.

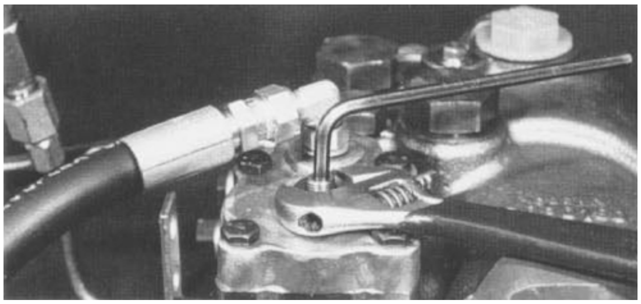


NOTE: *The Displacement Control may first have to be removed in order to rotate the servo cover.*

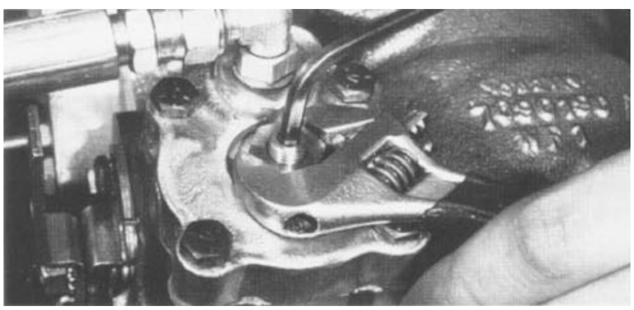
5. Remove spacer, re-install orifices, gaskets, and covers. Torque grade 5 bolts 8 to 11 ft.lbs. (10.8 to 14.9 Nm) and grade 8 bolts 11 to 13 ft.lbs. (14.9 to 17.8 Nm).

SWASHPLATE NEUTRAL ADJUSTMENT

1. Using a low pressure line (500 psi [35 Bar] min.), cross port servo port F to servo port G. This removes the effects of any control pressure on the servo piston.



2. Install pressure gauges (10,000 psi [690 Bar]) in the system pressure gauge ports. Start the engine and slowly accelerate to normal operating RPM.
3. Remove the protective cap and loosen the servo lock nut while holding the servo adjustment screw in position.



4. Turn the servo adjustment screw until the two system pressure gauge readings are equal.
5. Turn the servo adjustment screw clockwise until one of the system pressures starts to increase.

6. Noting the amount of rotation, turn the servo adjustment screw counter-clockwise until the other system pressure starts to increase.
7. Turn the servo adjustment screw clockwise half the amount of rotation noted above.
8. While holding the servo adjustment screw from turning, torque the servo lock nut 13 to 18 ft.lbs. (17.6 to 24.4 Nm). Stop the engine, install a new protective cap, remove the servo cross-port line, and proceed to the appropriate control adjustment.

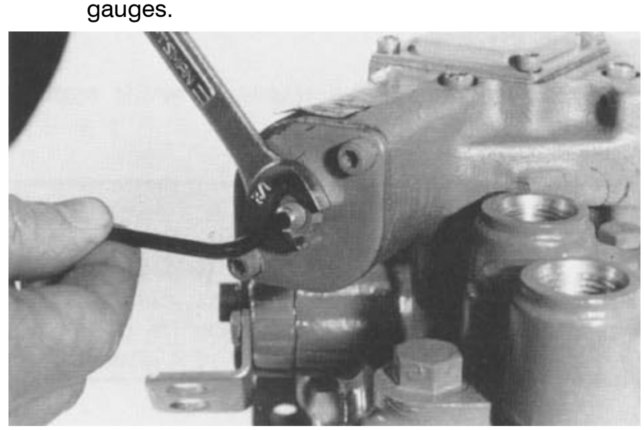
EDC NEUTRAL ADJUSTMENT

1. Remove the electrical connector at the EDC. Remove the servo cross port line (installed while making the swash plate neutral adjustment) and install a 0 to 300 PSI (0 to 21 BAR) gauge in each servo port.

⚠ WARNING

THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURE MAY REQUIRE THE MACHINE TO BE DISABLED (WHEELS RAISED OFF THE GROUND, WORK FUNCTION DISCONNECTED, ETC.) WHILE PERFORMING THE PROCEDURES IN ORDER TO PREVENT INJURY TO THE TECHNICIAN AND BYSTANDERS.

2. Start the engine and accelerate to normal operating RPM.
3. Loosen lock nut with 1/2” wrench and slowly rotate the neutral adjustment screw, with 5/32” internal hex wrench, until the pressure is equal on both servo gauges.



4. Slowly rotate the neutral adjustment screw until one of the servo gauges starts to increase in pressure.
5. Noting the amount of rotation, slowly rotate the neutral adjust screw in the opposite direction until the other servo gauge begins to increase in pressure.
6. Turn the neutral adjust screw back one - half the amount noted above. Hold the neutral adjust screw and torque the lock nut to 25 to 30 in.lbs. (2.8 to 3.4 NM).
7. Stop the engine. Connect the control input. Remove the servo pressure gauges. Return the machine to normal operating condition. Restart the engine and assure that the hydrostatic system is in neutral.

Minor Repair and Replacement

Minor repairs may be performed, following the procedures in this section.

Cleanliness is a primary means of assuring satisfactory transmission life, on either new or repaired units. Cleaning parts by using solvent wash and air drying is usually adequate. As with any precision equipment, all parts must be kept free of foreign materials and chemicals.

Protect all exposed sealing surfaces and open cavities from damage and foreign material.

It is recommended that all gaskets and O-rings be replaced. Lightly lubricate all O-rings with clean petroleum jelly prior to assembly. All gasket sealing surfaces must be cleaned prior to installing new gaskets.

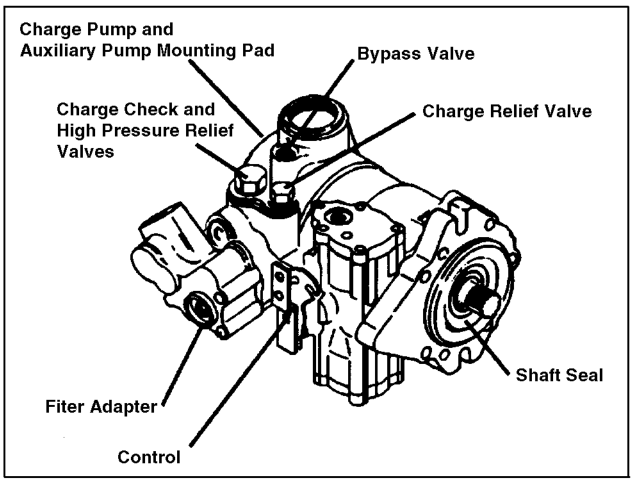


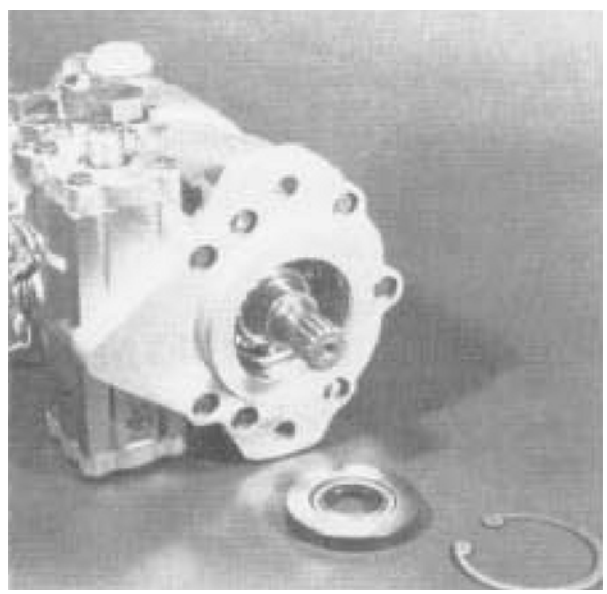
Figure 5-27. Variable Displacement Pump

SHAFT SEAL

Lip type shafts are used on Series 40 - M46 pumps and motors. These seals can be replaced without major disassembly of the unit. However, replacement of the shaft seal requires removal of the pump from the machine.

1. Remove the retaining ring from the housing.

2. Carefully remove the seal from the housing bore. The face of the seal may be punctured with a sharp instrument (such as a screw driver) to aid in prying the seal out, or a slide hammer type puller may be used to remove the seal. Care must be taken so as not to damage the housing bore or shaft. Once removed, the seal is not reusable.

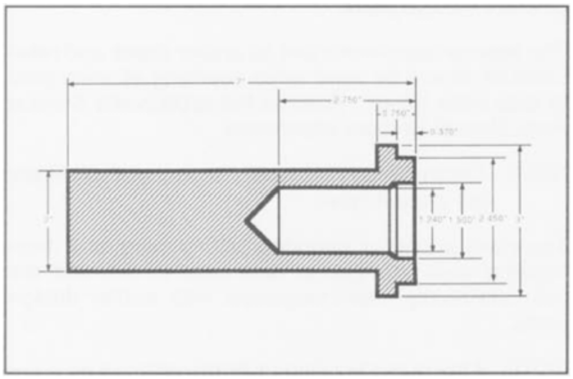


3. Prior to installing the new seal, inspect the sealing area on the shaft for rust, wear, or contamination. Polish the sealing area on the shaft if necessary.

4. Wrap the spline or key end of the shaft with thin plastic to prevent damage to the seal lip during installation. Lubricate the inside diameter of the new seal with petroleum jelly.

NOTE: *The outside diameter of the seal may be lightly coated with sealant (such as Loctite High Performance Sealant #59231) prior to installation. This will aid in preventing leaks caused by damage to the housing seal bore.*

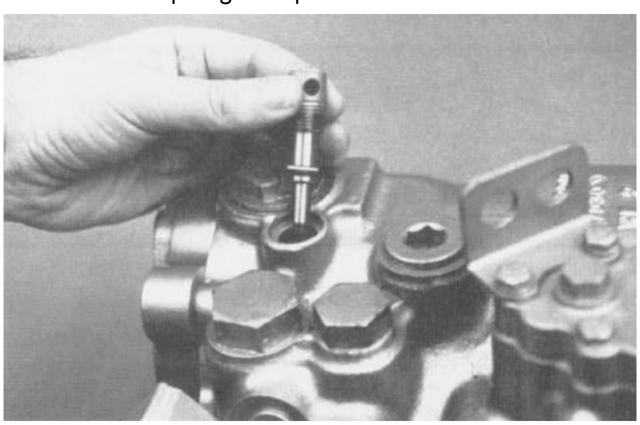
5. Slide the new seal over the shaft and press it into the housing bore. Be careful not to damage seal. A seal installer tool can be made to aid in installing the seal.



6. Reinstall the seal retaining ring.

BYPASS VALVE (PUMP)

1. Unscrew the bypass valve from the housing. Inspect the valve and mating seat for damage or foreign material. It is recommended that the O-ring and back - up ring be replaced.

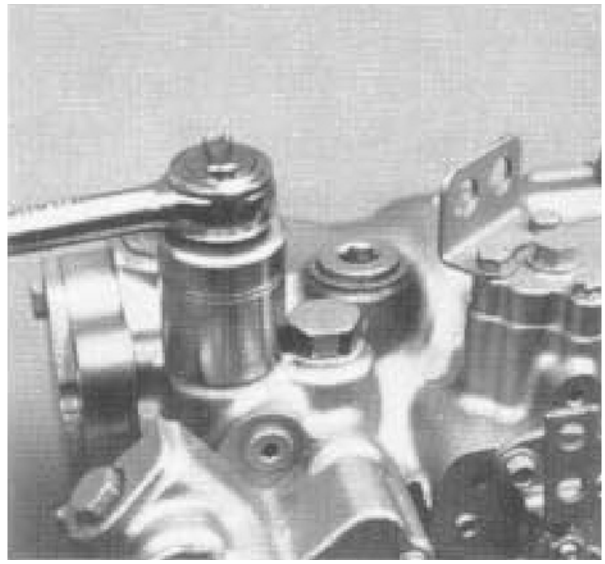


NOTE: *Bypass valves are available with integral bypass orifices for specific applications. Refer to the appropriate Service Parts Manual for more information.*

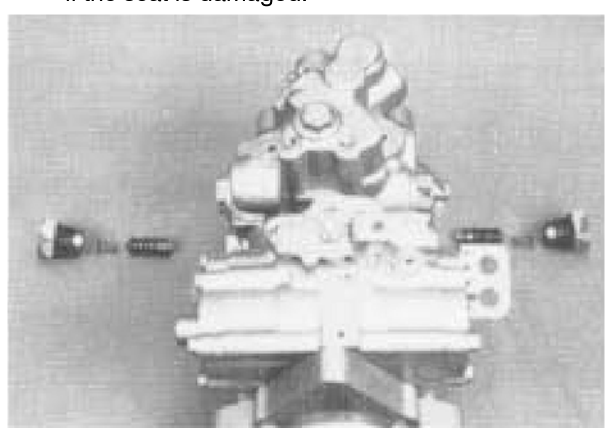
2. Reinstall the bypass valve into the housing. Torque to 7 to 10 ft. lbs. (9.5 - 13.6 Nm).

CHARGE CHECK AND HIGH PRESSURE RELIEF VALVES

1. Remove the charge check and high pressure relief valve hex plug.



2. Remove the spring and check poppet or valve cartridge from the housing. Inspect the valve and mating seat in the housing for damage or foreign material. It will be necessary to replace the housing if the seat is damaged.



3. Several designs of charge check and high pressure relief valves have been used. Do not attempt to mix different vintage parts.

The appropriate check valve kit and/ or check and relief valve kit should be used. Refer to appropriate Service Parts Manual.

NOTE: *Always replace ball type charge check valves with the poppet type.*

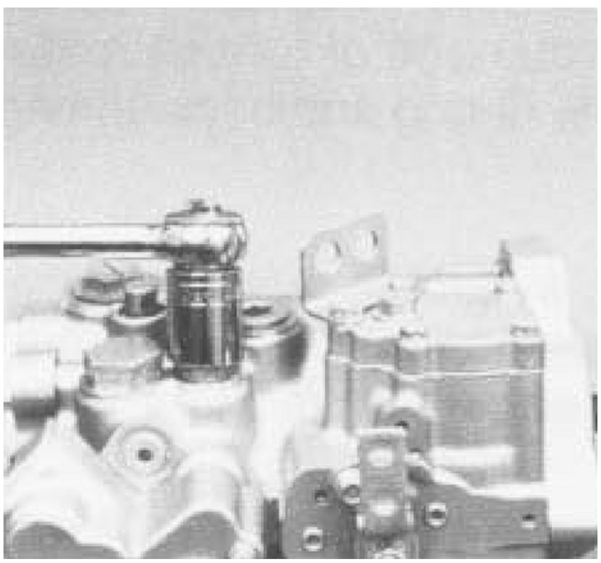
4. Reinstall the valve cartridge, spring, and plug (with O-ring) into the housing. Torque the plug to 30 to 70 ft. lbs. (41 to 95 Nm).

NOTICE

THE RELIEF VALVES ARE FACTORY SET AND SHOULD NOT BE TAMPERED WITH EXCEPT FOR REPLACING THE ENTIRE CARTRIDGE. DISASSEMBLY MAY CHANGE THE SETTING AND CAUSE ERRATIC UNIT OPERATION OR PREMATURE FAILURE.

CHARGE PRESSURE RELIEF VALVE

1. Remove charge relief valve hex plug.



2. Remove the spring and poppet from the housing. Do not alter the shims or interchange parts with another valve. Inspect the poppet and mating seat in the end cap for damage or foreign material.

3. Reinstall the poppet, spring, and plug (with shims and O-ring) into the housing. Torque the plug to 30 to 70 ft. lbs.(41 to 95 Nm).

ELECTRICAL DISPLACEMENT CONTROLS (EDC)

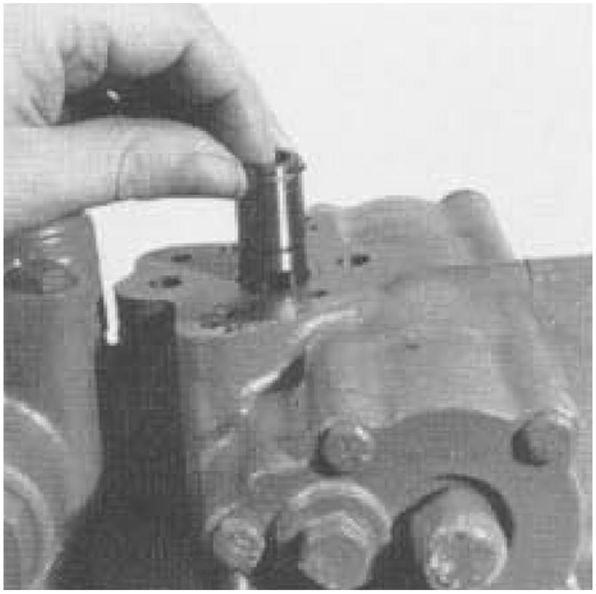
NOTICE

THE REMOVAL OF ANY PORTION OF THE CONTROL MECHANISM MAY RESULT IN LOSS OF NEUTRAL, WHICH WILL NECESSITATE READJUSTMENT.

1. Remove the four control mounting screws using an internal hex wrench (3/16”).

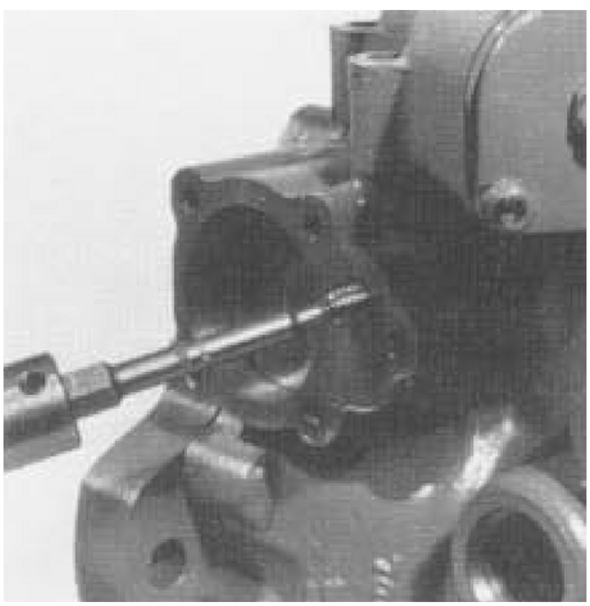
2. Carefully lift the control off the pump housing.

3. Remove the control sleeve from the pump.

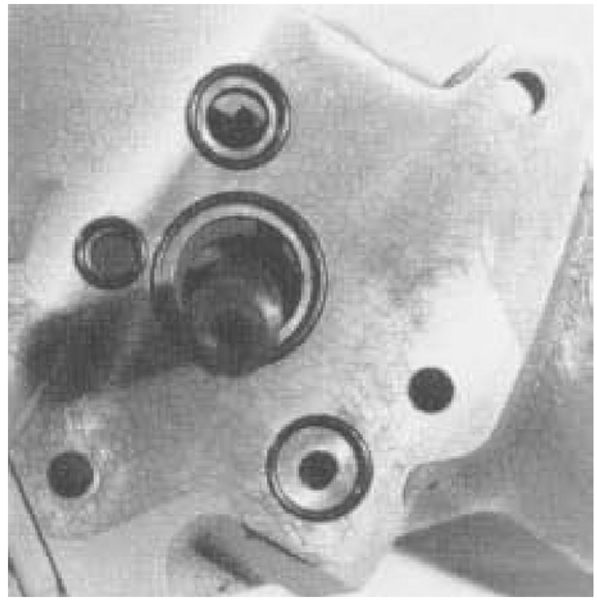


4. Remove the control inlet screen plug from the inlet passage next to the control sleeve bore, using an internal hex wrench (5/32”).

5. The control orifice plugs are located in threaded passages under the servo piston cover. Remove the servo piston cover and gasket, and remove the orifice plugs using an internal hex wrench (7/32”).

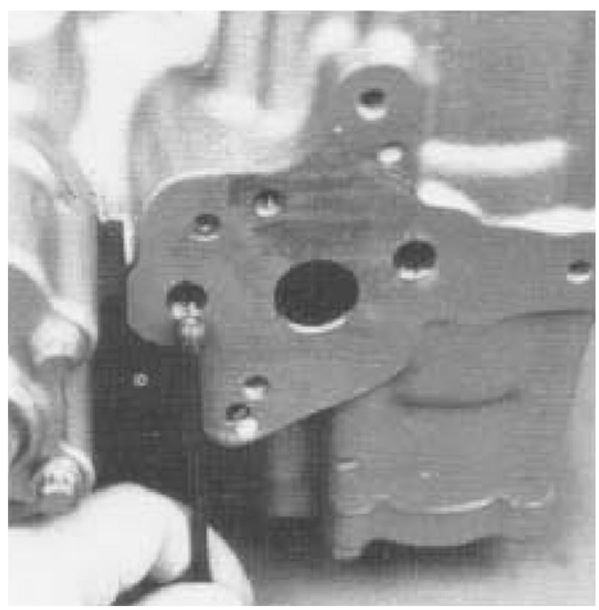


6. Replace the O-ring on the bottom of the control housing.Lightly lubricate all O-rings with clean petroleum jelly prior to assembly. The control spool and sleeve are a matched set and are not available separately.

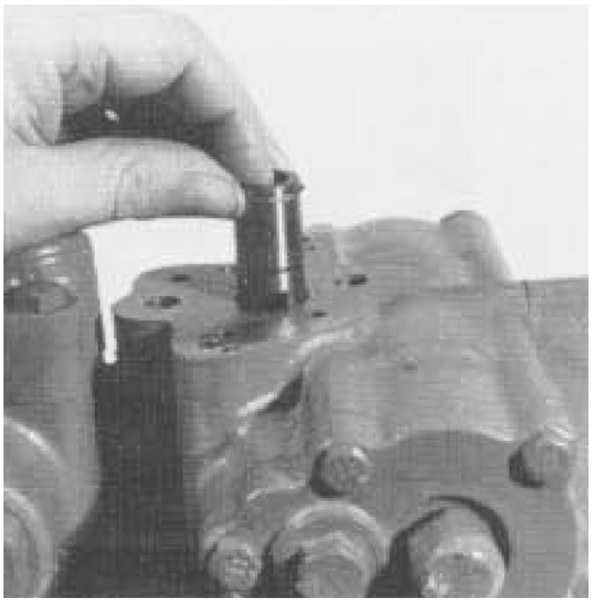


7. Reinstall the control orifice plugs into their passages and replace the servo piston covers.

8. Install the control inlet screen plug and torque to 20 to 30 in.lbs. (2.2 to 3.4 Nm). Always install a screen plug (with a 0.156" (3.96 mm.) thru hole) when servicing earlier production pumps. Pumps prior to date c ode 86 - 14 use a plug with a thread that is different from later units. Refer to the Service Parts Manual for plug part numbers.



9. Align the control sleeve so its slot will engage the swash plate feedback pin (slot positioned toward the pump cover) and insert the sleeve into the housing. Carefully align the control spool with the sleeve and install the control onto the pump housing. Install the four mounting screws and torque to 10 to 11 ft.lbs. (13 to 14 Nm).



10. Install the four cover screws and torque to 18 to 24 in. lbs. (2.0 to 2.7 Nm).

11. Readjust the neutral position of the control. Refer to the instructions in the Inspections and Adjustment.

5.6 VALVES - THEORY OF OPERATION

Solenoid Control Valve - Rexroth

Control valves used are four-way three-position solenoid valves of the sliding spool design. When a circuit is activated and the control valve solenoid energizes, the spool is shifted and the corresponding work port opens to permit oil flow to the component in the selected circuit with the opposite work port opening to reservoir. Once the circuit is deactivated (control returned to neutral) the valve spool returns to neutral (center) and oil flow is then directed through the valve body and returns to reservoir. A typical control valve consist of the valve body, sliding spool, and two solenoid assemblies. The spool is machine fitted in the bore of the valve body. Lands on the spool divide the bore into various chambers, which, when the spool is shifted, align with corresponding ports in the valve body open to common flow. At the same time other ports would be blocked to flow. The spool is spring loaded to center position, therefore when the control is released, the spool automatically returns to neutral, prohibiting any flow through the circuit.

Relief Valves

Relief valves are installed at various points within the hydraulic system to protect associated systems and components against excessive pressure. Excessive pressure can be developed when a cylinder reaches its limit of travel and the flow of pressurized fluid continues from the system control. The relief valve provides an alternate path for the continuing flow from the pump, thus preventing rupture of the cylinder, hydraulic line or fitting. Complete failure of the system pump is also avoided by relieving circuit pressure. The relief valve is installed in the circuit between the pump outlet (pressure line) and the cylinder of the circuit, generally as an integral part of the system valve bank. Relief pressures are set slightly higher than the load requirement, with the valve diverting excess pump delivery back to the reservoir when operating pressure of the component is reached.

5.7 PRESSURE SETTING PROCEDURES

NOTICE

COLD TEMPERATURES HAVE A SIGNIFICANT IMPACT ON PRESSURE READINGS. JLG INDUSTRIES, INC. RECOMMENDS OPERATING THE MACHINE UNTIL THE HYDRAULIC SYSTEM HAS WARMED TO NORMAL OPERATING TEMPERATURES PRIOR TO CHECKING PRESSURES. JLG ALSO RECOMMENDS USING A CALIBRATED GAUGE. PRESSURE READINGS ARE ACCEPTABLE IF WITHIN +/- 5% OF SPECIFIED PRESSURES.

Main Relief, Steer, Swing and Lift Down

1. Install pressure gauge at quick disconnect on port MP on main valve.
2. With the aid of an assistant, activate telescope in.
3. While monitoring pressure gauge, adjust main relief to 3000 PSI (206.85 Bar).
4. With the aid of an assistant, activate steer left.
5. While monitoring pressure gauge, adjust steer left relief to 1800 PSI (124.1 Bar).
6. With the aid of an assistant, activate steer right.
7. While monitoring pressure gauge, adjust steer right relief to 1800 PSI (124.1 Bar).
8. With the aid of an assistant, activate swing left or right.
9. While monitoring pressure gauge, adjust swing relief to 1700 PSI (117.2 Bar).
10. With the aid of an assistant, activate lift down.
11. While monitoring pressure gauge, adjust lift down relief to 1500 PSI (103.4 Bar)
.

Platform Level

1. Install pressure gauge at quick disconnect on port M3 on main valve.
2. With the aid of an assistant, activate platform level forward.
3. While monitoring pressure gauge, adjust platform level relief to 2800 PSI (193.06 Bar).
4. Install pressure gauge at quick disconnect on port M4 on main valve.
5. With the aid of an assistant, activate platform level backward.
6. While monitoring pressure gauge, adjust platform level relief to 1800 PSI (124.11 Bar).

Articulating Jib Boom (If Equipped)

1. Install pressure gauge at quick disconnect on articulating valve.
2. With the aid of an assistant, activate articulating jib up.
3. While monitoring pressure gauge, adjust articulating jib up relief to 1500 PSI (103 Bar).
4. With the aid of an assistant, activate articulating jib down.
5. While monitoring pressure gauge, adjust activate articulating jib down relief to 1200 PSI (83 Bar).

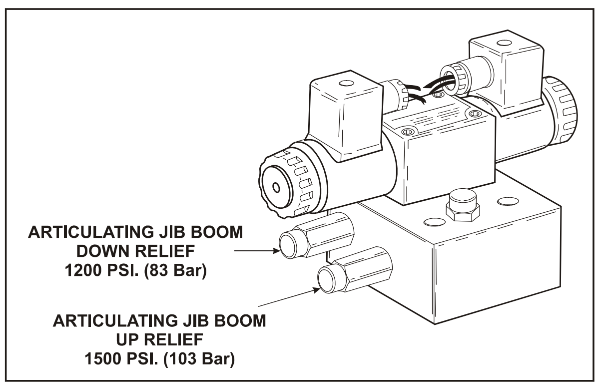
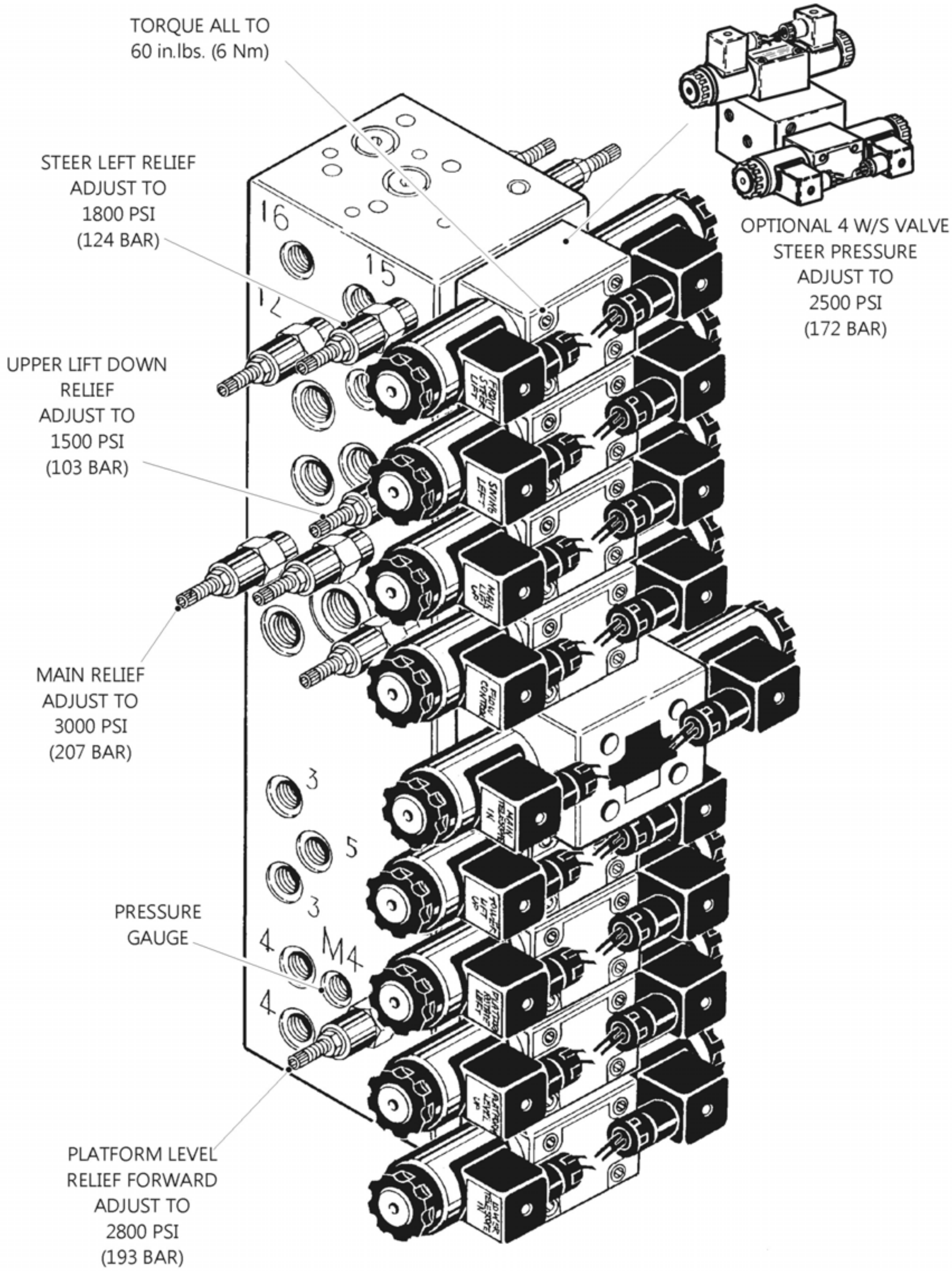
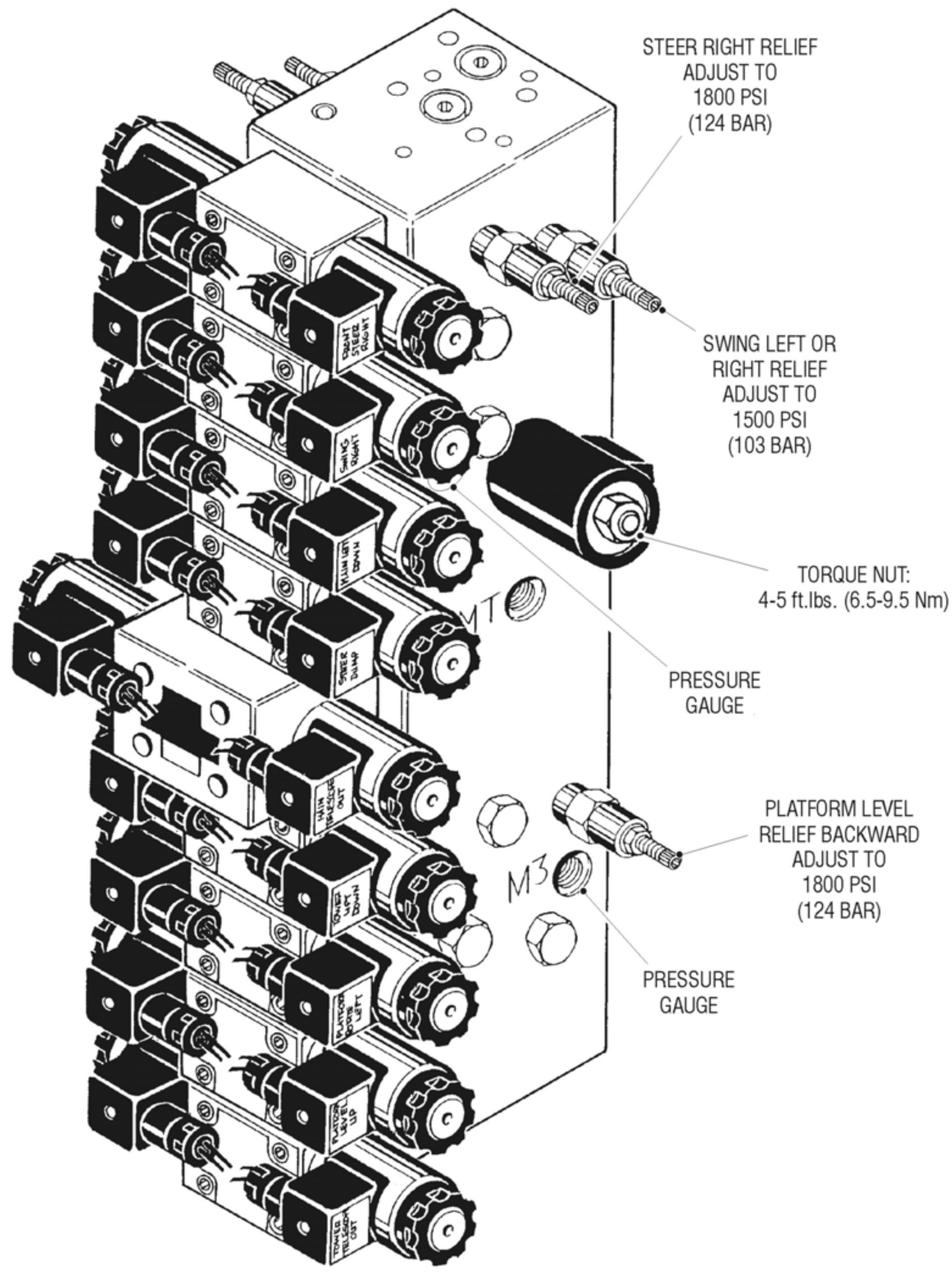


Figure 5-28. Articulating Jib Boom Pressure Adjustments



NOTE: Torque all valve cartridges 18 to 20 ft.lbs. (24.5 to 27.2 Nm).

Figure 5-29. Main Control Valve Pressure Adjustments - Sheet 1 of 2



NOTE: Torque all valve cartridges 18 to 20 ft.lbs. (24.5 to 27.2 Nm).

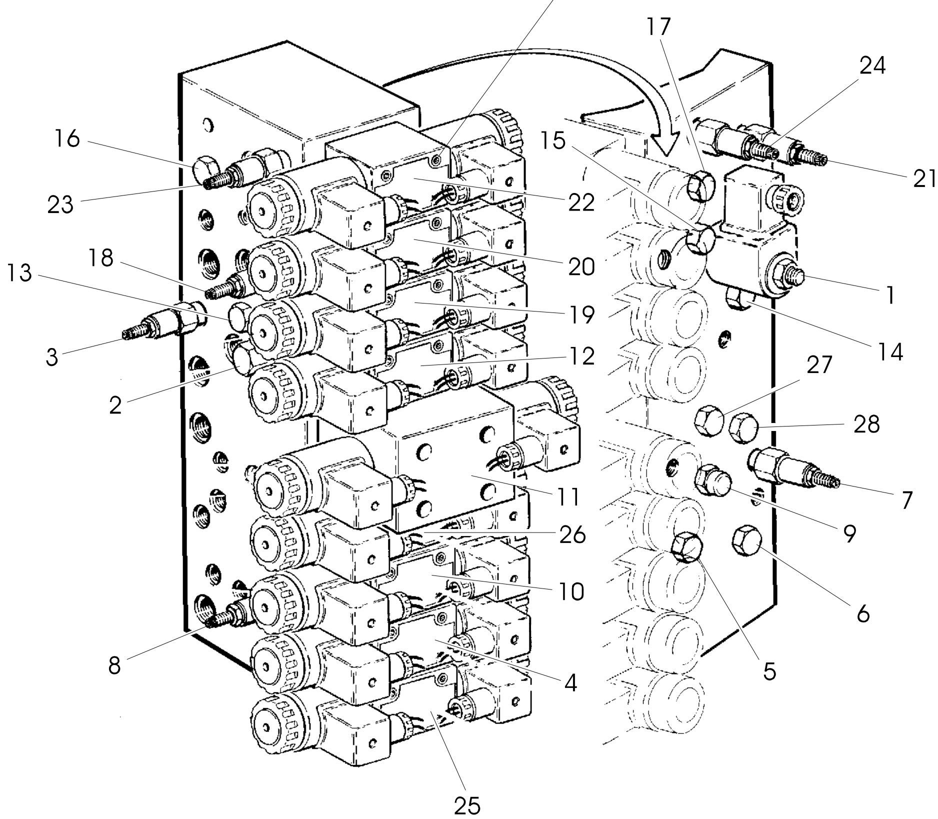
Figure 5-30. Main Control Valve Pressure Adjustments - Sheet 2 of 2

Note

When removing the directional control valve, it is important to observe the tag on the face of the valve, as the new valve must be installed with the tag facing the same way on the valve that was removed. The bolt pattern on the directional valve is not symmetrical, so if the bolts seem difficult to turn when installing, it would indicate the valve is upside down, and forcing the bolts would result in cross-threading. Check the tag and, if necessary, rotate the directional control valve 180 degrees and reinstall the bolts.

Note

Torque valve bolts to 60 in. lbs. (7 Nm).



1. Solenoid Operated 2-Way Valve (N/O)
2. Pressure Control Load Sense Cartridge
3. Direct Operated Relief Valve (Main Relief)
4. Directional Control Valve (Platform Level)
5. Pilot Operated Check
6. Pilot Operated Check
7. Direct Operated Relief Valve
8. Direct Operated Relief Valve
9. Pressure Compensated Flow Control (Fixed 0.2 GPM)
10. Directional Control Valve (Platform Rotator)
11. Directional Control Valve (Upper Tele)
12. Directional Control Valve (Flow Control)
13. Load Shuttle Valve
14. Load Shuttle Valve
15. Load Shuttle Valve
16. Load Shuttle Valve
17. Load Shuttle Valve
18. Direct Operated Relief Valve
19. Directional Control Valve (Upper Lift)
20. Directional Control Valve (Swing)
21. Direct Operated Relief Valve
22. Directional Control Valve (Steer)
23. Direct Operated Relief Valve
24. Direct Operated Relief Valve
25. Directional Control Valve (Lower Tele)
26. Directional Control Valve (Lower Lift)
27. Check Valve

Figure 5-31. Location of Components - Main Control Valve

4 Wheel Steer (If Equipped)

1. At the platform console using the steer select switch activate " 2 wheel steer".
2. Install a pressure gauge in port MP on main control valve.
3. With the aid of an assistant, activate steer left and right, adjust front steer relief valve to 2500 PSI (172.4 Bar). This pressure only affects the front axle.
4. At the platform console using the steer select switch activate “crab” or “coordinated” steer.
5. At the main control valve block disconnect the wire din connectors on the front steer valve. When steer is activated only the rear steer will work.
6. Install a pressure gauge in port MP on main control valve.
7. With the aid of an assistant, activate steer left and right, adjust rear steer relief valve to 2500 PSI (172.4 Bar). Reading at the valve bank 2500 PSI (172.4 Bar) will give you 2000PSI (137.9 Bar) at the cylinders.
8. Re-connect the front steer din connectors at the valve bank.

5.8 HYDRAULIC COMPONENT START-UP PROCEDURES AND RECOMMENDATIONS

From a hydrostatic component standpoint, the goal at system start up is to put into functional operation, the hydrostatic system in such a way as to preserve the designed life span of the system. The following start-up procedure should be adhered to whenever a new pump or motor is initially installed into a machine, or a system is restarted after either a pump or motor has been removed and/or replaced.

⚠ WARNING

THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURE MAY REQUIRE THE MACHINE TO BE DISABLED (WHEELS RAISED OFF THE GROUND, WORK FUNCTIONS DISCONNECTED, ETC.) WHILE PERFORMING THE PROCEDURE IN ORDER TO PREVENT INJURY. TAKE NECESSARY SAFETY PRECAUTIONS BEFORE MOVING THE VEHICLE/MACHINE.

Prior to installing the pump and/or motor, inspect the unit(s) for damage that may have been incurred during shipping and handling. Make certain that all system components (reservoir, hoses, valves, fittings, heat exchanger, etc.) are clean prior to filling with fluid.

Fill the reservoir with recommended hydraulic fluid. This fluid should be passed through a 10 micron (nominal, no bypass) filter prior to entering the reservoir. The use of contaminated fluid will cause damage to the components, which may result in unexpected vehicle/machine movement.

NOTE: *If a pump or motor is being replaced due to internal damage, the remaining units (pump or motors) need to be inspected for damage and contamination, and the entire hydraulic system will need to be flushed and the fluid replaced. Failure to do so may cause considerable damage to the entire system.*

The inlet line leading from the reservoir to the pump must be filled prior to start-up. Check the inlet line for property tightened fittings and make sure it is free of restrictions and air leaks.

NOTE: *In most cases, the reservoir is above the pump inlet so that the pressure head created by the higher oil level helps to keep the inlet pressures within an acceptable range and prevent high vacuum levels. However, due to hose routing or low reservoir locations, there may be air trapped within this line. It is important to assure that the air is bled from this line. This can be accomplished by loosening the hose at the fitting closest the pump. When oil begins to flow, the line is full, the air has been purged, and the fitting can be retightened to its specified torque. If the tank needs to be pressurized in order to start the flow of oil, a vacuum reading should be taken at the inlet of the pump during operation in order to verify that the pump is not being asked to draw an inlet vacuum higher than it is capable of.*

Be certain to fill the pump and/or motor housing with clean hydraulic fluid prior to start up. Fill the housing by pouring filtered oil into the upper case drain port.

NOTE: *It is highly recommended to use the highest possible case drain port, this ensures that the housing contains as much oil as possible and offers the greatest amount of lubrication to the internal components.*

NOTE: *In initial start-up conditions, it may be convenient to fill the housing, just prior to installing the case drain line. Component, (especially motor), location may be such that access to the case drain port after installation is not realistic.*

NOTE: *Make certain that the oil being used to fill the component housing is as clean as possible, and store the fill container in such a way as to prevent it from becoming contaminated.*

Install a 60 bar (or 1000 psi) pressure gauge in the charge pressure gauge port in order to monitor the charge pressure during start-up.

It is recommended that the external control input signal, (electrical connections for EDC), be disconnected at the pump control until after initial start-up. This will ensure that the pump remains in its neutral position.

WARNING

DO NOT START THE ENGINE UNLESS PUMP IS IN THE NEUTRAL POSITION (0 DEGREES SWASHPLATE ANGLE). TAKE PRECAUTIONS TO PREVENT MACHINE MOVEMENT IN CASE PUMP IS ACTUATED DURING INITIAL START-UP.

"Jog" or slowly rotate the engine until charge pressure starts to rise. Start the engine and run at the lowest possible RPM until charge pressure has been established. Excess air should be bled from the system lines as close to the motors as possible.

NOTE: *With the engine on low idle, "crack", (loosen-don't remove), the system lines at the motor(s). Continue to run the engine at low idle and tighten the system lines as soon as oil is observed to leak from them. When oil is observed to "leak" at the motor the line is full, the air has been purged, and the system hoses should be retightened to their specified torque.*

Once charge pressure has been established, increase speed to normal operating RPM. Charge pressure should be as indicated in the pump model code. If charge pressure is inadequate, shut down and determine the cause for improper pressure.

WARNING

INADEQUATE CHARGE PRESSURE WILL AFFECT THE OPERATOR'S ABILITY TO CONTROL THE MACHINE.

Shut down the engine and connect the external control input signal. Also reconnect the machine function(s), if disconnected earlier. Start the engine, checking to be certain the pump remains in neutral. With the engine at normal operating RPM, slowly check for forward and reverse machine operation.

Charge pressure may slightly decrease during forward or reverse operation. Continue to cycle slowly between forward and reverse for at least five minutes.

Shut down engine, remove gauges, and plug ports. Check reservoir level and add filtered fluid if needed.

The machine is now ready for operation.

5.9 HYDRAULIC PUMP W/HAYES PUMP DRIVE COUPLING LUBRICATION

Any time pump or pump drive coupling is removed coat, pump and drive coupling splines with Lithium Soap Base Grease (TEXACO CODE 1912 OR EQUIVALENT) coupling is greased prior to assembly.

NOTES:

SECTION 6. JLG CONTROL SYSTEM

6.1 INTRODUCTION

NOTICE

WHEN INSTALLING A NEW GROUND MODULE CONTROLLER ON THE MACHINE, IT WILL BE NECESSARY TO PROGRAM THE CONTROLLER FOR THE PROPER MACHINE CONFIGURATION, INCLUDING OPTIONS.

NOTICE

IT IS A GOOD PRACTICE TO AVOID PRESSURE-WASHING ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS. SHOULD PRESSURE-WASHING BE UTILIZED TO WASH AREAS CONTAINING ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS, JLG INDUSTRIES, INC. RECOMMENDS A MAXIMUM PRESSURE OF 750 PSI (52 BAR) AT A MINIMUM DISTANCE OF 12 INCHES (30.5 CM) AWAY FROM THESE COMPONENTS. IF ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS ARE SPRAYED, SPRAYING MUST NOT BE DIRECT AND BE FOR BRIEF TIME PERIODS TO AVOID HEAVY SATURATION.

The JLG designed Control System is a 12 volt based motor control unit installed on the boom lift.

The JLG Control System has reduced the need for exposed terminal strips, diodes and trimpots and provides simplicity in viewing and adjusting the various personality settings for smooth control of: acceleration, deceleration, creep, min speed, and max.-speed for all boom, drive, and steering functions.

The upper lift, swing, and drive are controlled by individual joysticks, with steering being controlled by a rocker switch built in the top of the drive joystick. To activate Drive, Lift, and Swing simply pull up on the slide lock location on the joystick and move the handle in the desired direction.

The control system controls voltage output to the valves and pump, as programmed for smooth operation and maximum cycle time. Ground control speeds for all boom functions can also be programmed in the control system.

The JLG Control System controller has a built in LED to indicate any faults. The system stores recent faults which may be accessed for troubleshooting. Optional equipment includes a soft touch system, head and tail lights, and ground alarm. These options may be added later but must be programmed into the control system when installed.

The Control System may be accessed utilizing a custom designed, hand held analyzer (Analyzer Kit, JLG part no. 2901443) which will display two lines of information at a time, by scrolling through the program.

NOTE: *Each module has a label with the JLG part number and a serial number which contains a date code.*

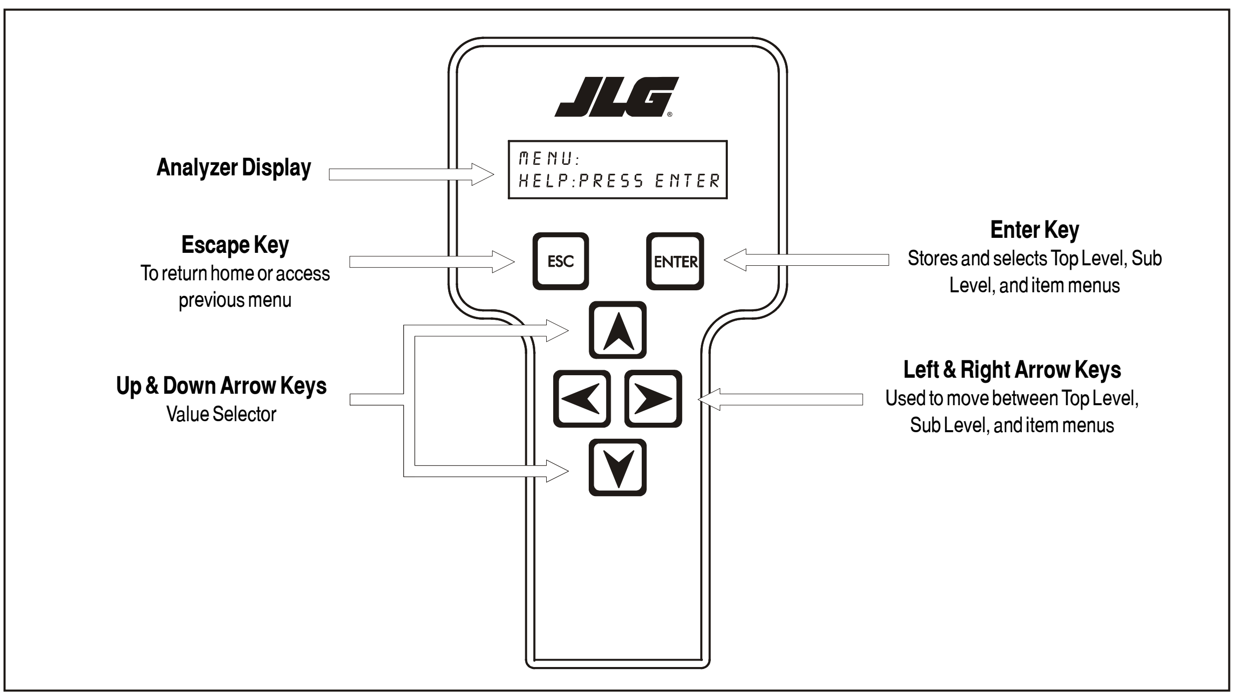


Figure 6-1. Hand Held Analyzer

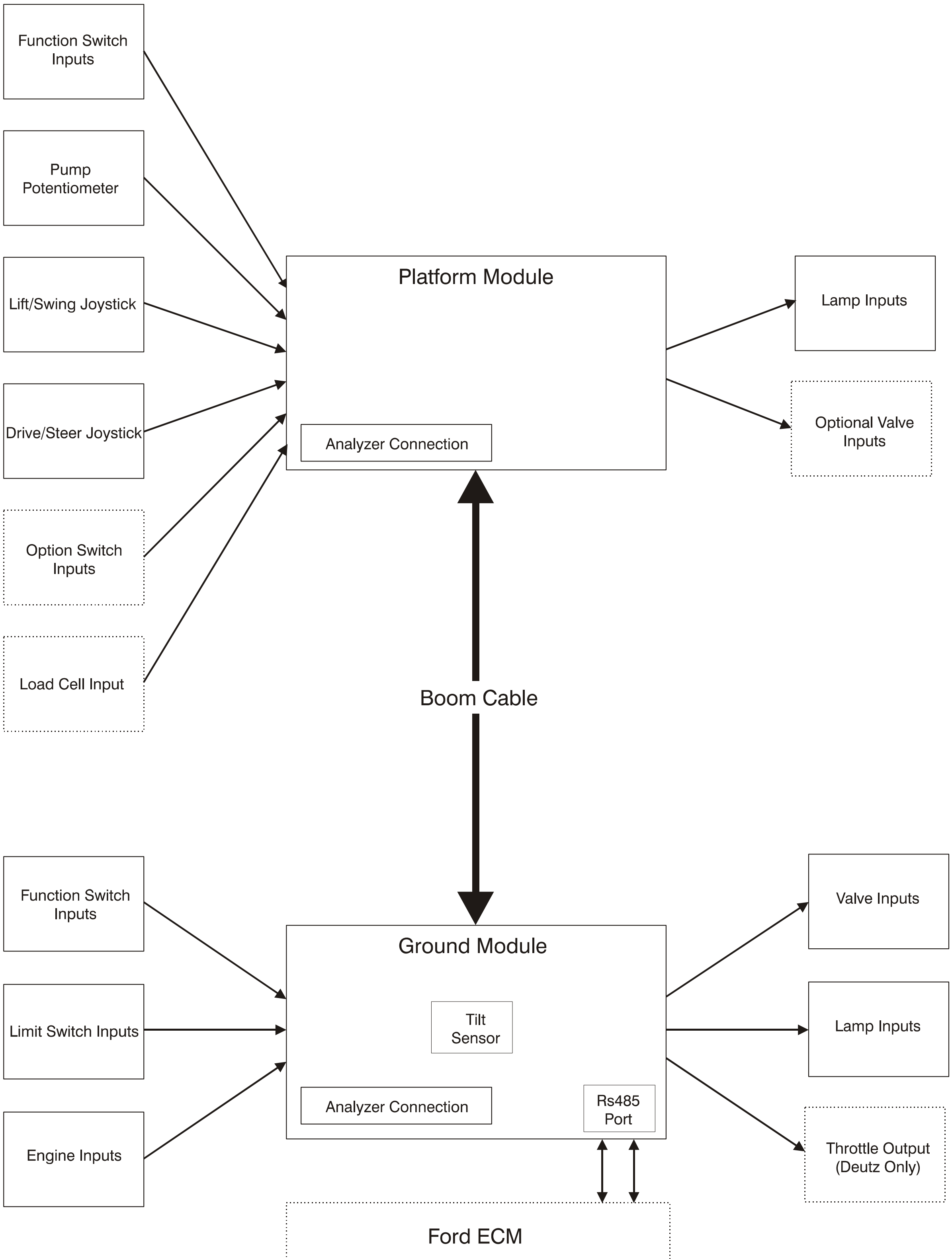


Figure 6-2. ADE Block Diagram

6.2 TO CONNECT THE JLG CONTROL SYSTEM ANALYZER

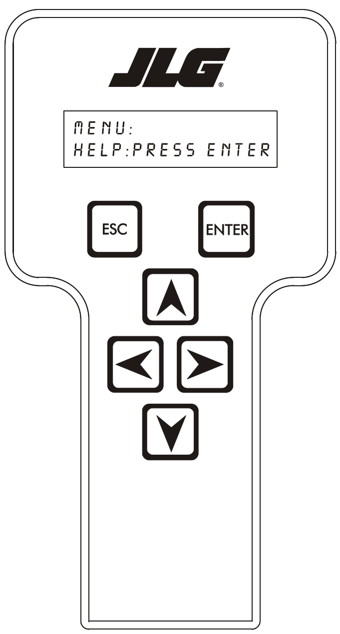
1. Connect the four pin end of the cable supplied with the analyzer, to the controller module located in the platform box or at the controller module in the ground control box and connect the remaining end of the cable to the analyzer.

NOTE: *The cable has a four pin connector at each end of the cable; the cable cannot be connected backwards.*

2. Power up the Control System by turning the lower key to the platform or ground position and pulling both emergency stop buttons on.

6.3 USING THE ANALYZER

With the machine power on and the analyzer connected properly, the analyzer will display the following:



HELP:
PRESS ENTER

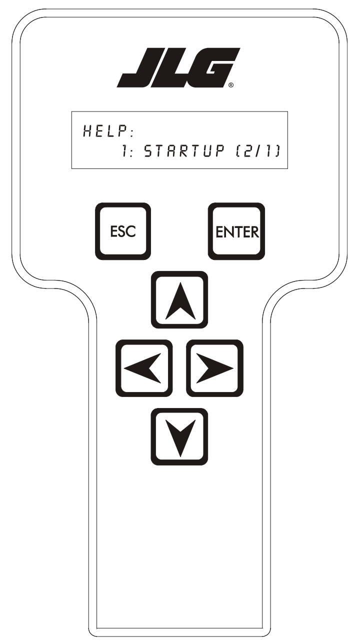
At this point, using the **RIGHT** and **LEFT** arrow keys, you can move between the top level menu items. To select a displayed menu item, press **ENTER**. To cancel a selected menu item, press ESC.; then you will be able to scroll using the right and left arrow keys to select a different menu item.

The top level menus are as follows:

HELP
DIAGNOSTICS
SYSTEM TEST
ACCESS LEVEL
PERSONALITIES
MACHINE SETUP
CALIBRATIONS (view only)

If you press **ENTER**, at the **HELP: PRESS ENTER** display, and a fault is present, the analyzer display will scroll the fault across the screen. If there was no fault detected, the display will read: **HELP: EVERYTHING OK.** If powered up at the ground station, the display will read: **GROUND OK.**

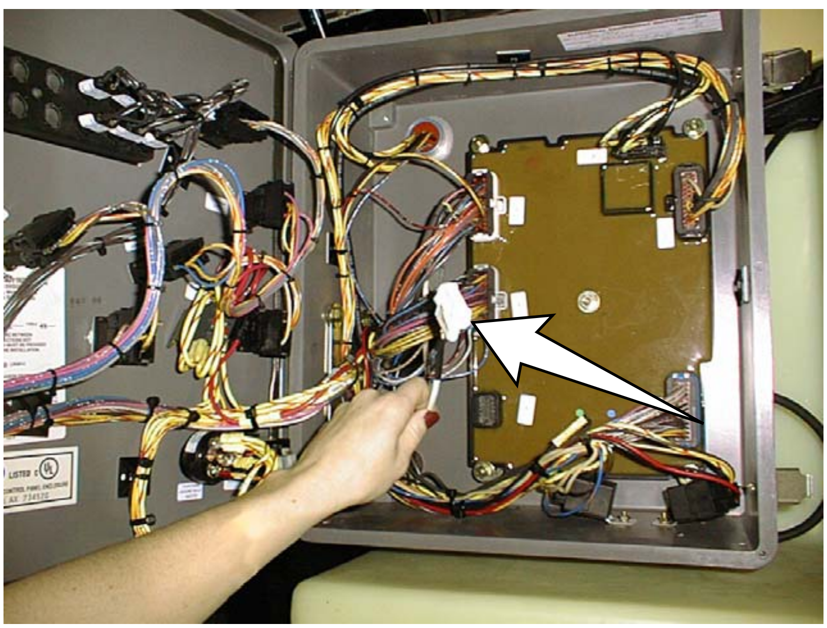
If **ENTER** is pressed again, the display moves to the following display:



LOGGED HELP
1: POWER CYCLE (0/0)

At this point, the analyzer will display the last fault the system has seen, if any are present. You may scroll through the fault logs to view what the last 25 faults were. Use the right and left arrow keys to scroll through the fault logs. To return to the beginning, press **ESC.** two times. **POWER CYCLE (0/0)** indicates a power up.

PLATFORM CONNECTION



GROUND CONTROL CONNECTION

Figure 6-3. Analyzer Connecting Points

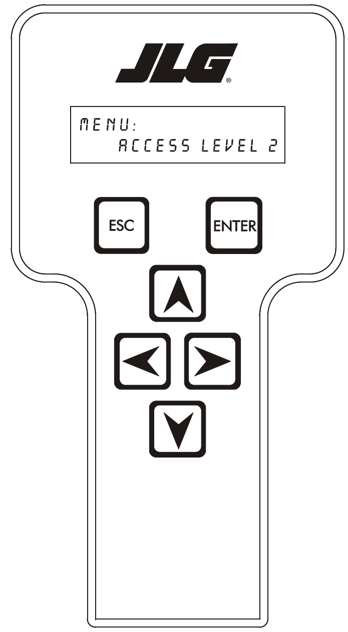
When a top level menu is selected, a new set of menu items may be offered: for example:

DRIVE
BOOM
SYSTEM
DATALOG
VERSIONS

Pressing **ENTER** with any of the above displayed menus, will display additional sub-menus within the selected menu. In some cases, such as **DRIVE**, the next level is the parameter or information to be changed. Refer to the flow chart for what menus are available within the top level menus. You may only view the personality settings for selected menus while in access level 2. Remember, you may always cancel a selected menu item by pressing the **ESC.** key.

6.4 CHANGING THE ACCESS LEVEL OF THE HAND HELD ANALYZER

When the analyzer is first connected, you will be in access level 2 which enables you to only view most settings which cannot be changed until you enter a password to advance to a lower level. This ensures that a setting cannot be accidentally altered. To change the access level, the correct password must be entered. To enter the password, scroll to the **ACCESS LEVEL** menu. For example:



MENU:
ACCESS LEVEL 2

Press **ENTER** to select the **ACCESS LEVEL** menu.

Using the **UP** or **DOWN** arrow keys, enter the first digit of the password, 3.

Then using the **RIGHT** arrow key, position the cursor to the right one space to enter the second digit of the password.

Use the **UP** or **DOWN** arrow key to enter the second digit of the password which is 33271.

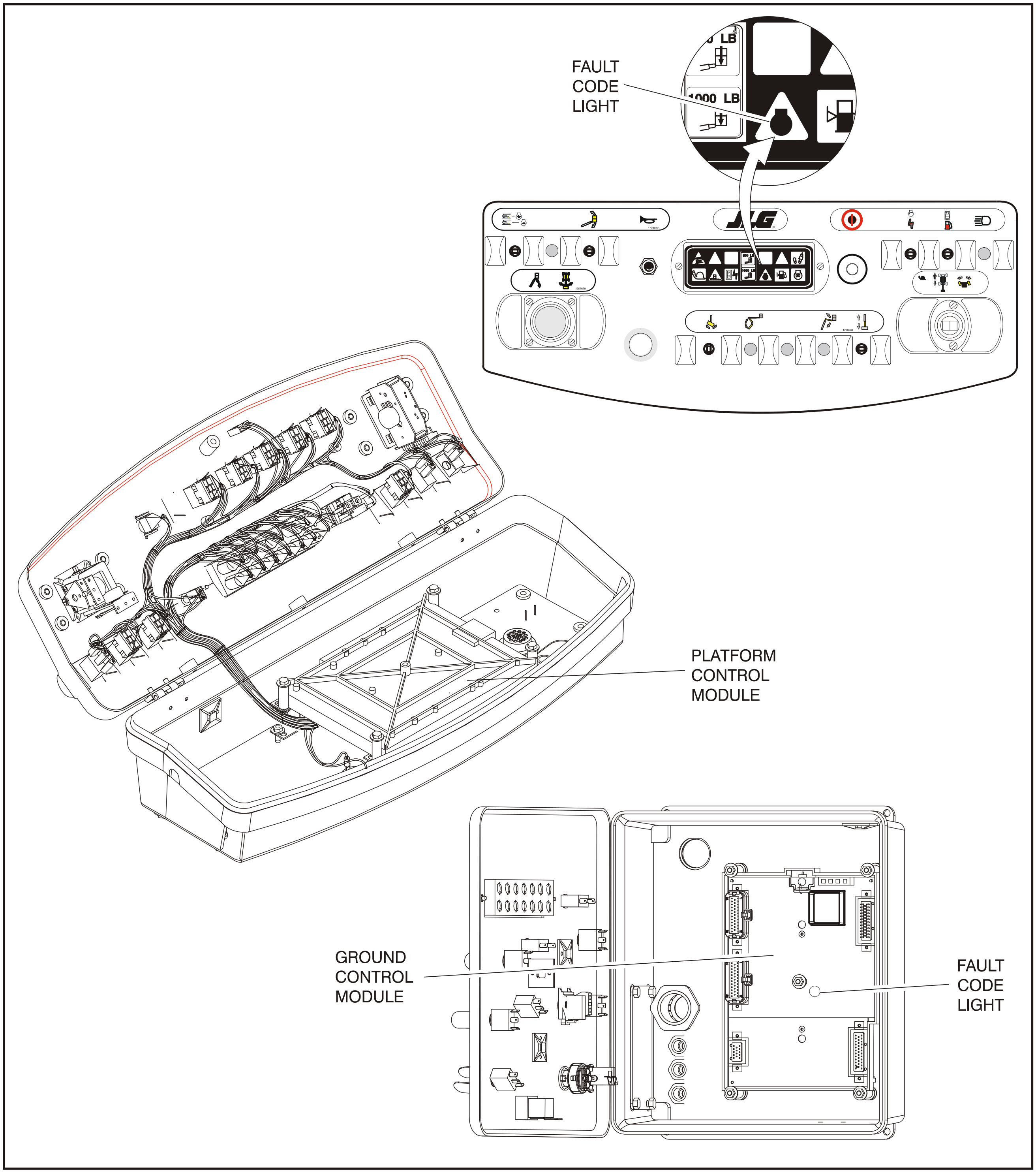
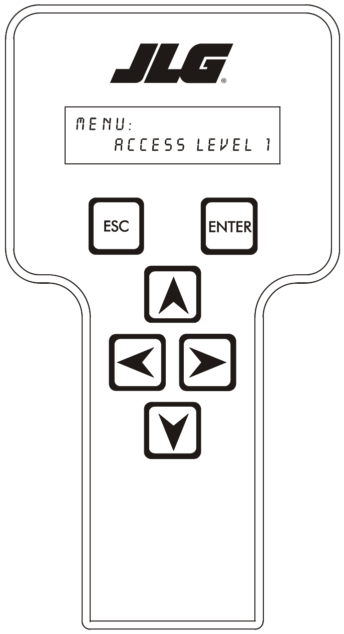


Figure 6-4. Control Module Location

Once the correct password is displayed, press **ENTER**. The access level should display the following, if the password was entered correctly:

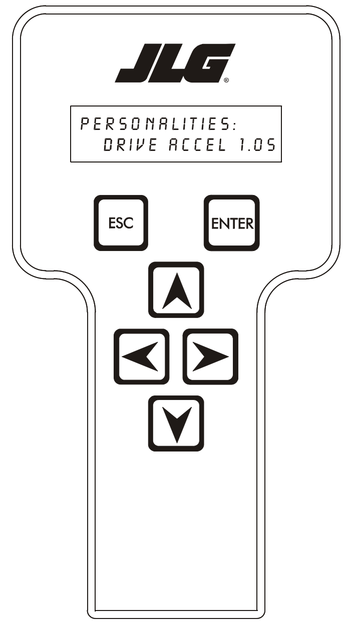


MENU:
ACCESS LEVEL 1

Repeat the above steps if the correct access level is not displayed or you can not adjust the personality settings.

6.5 ADJUSTING PARAMETERS USING THE HAND HELD ANALYZER

Once you have gained access to level 1, and a personality item is selected, press the UP or DOWN arrow keys to adjust its value, for example:

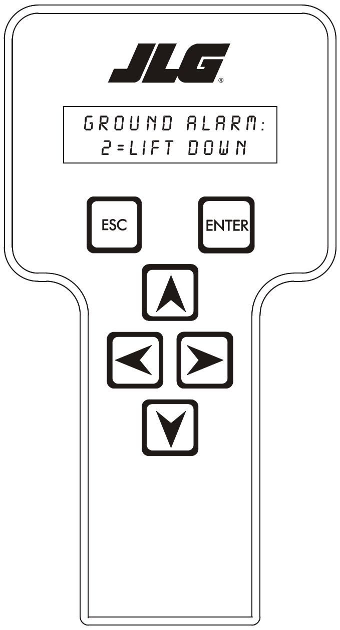


PERSONALITIES:
DRIVE ACCEL 1.0s

There will be a minimum and maximum for the value to ensure efficient operation. The Value will not increase if the **UP** arrow is pressed when at the maximum value nor will the value decrease if the **DOWN** arrow is pressed and the value is at the minimum value for any particular personality. If the value does not change when pressing the up and won arrows, check the access level to ensure you are at access level 1.

6.6 MACHINE SETUP

When a machine digit item is selected, press the UP or DOWN arrow keys to adjust its value, for example:



GROUND ALARM:
2 = LIFT DOWN

The effect of the machine digit value is displayed along with its value. The above display would be selected if the machine was equipped with a ground alarm and you wanted it to sound when lifting down. There are certain settings allowed to install optional features or select the machine model.

When selection the machine model to match the size of the machine, the personality settings will all default to the factory recommended setting.

NOTE: *Refer to Table 6-1, Personality Ranges/Defaults, and in this Service Manual for the recommended factory settings.*

NOTE: *Password 33271 will give you access to level 1, which will permit you to change all machine personality settings.*

There is a setting that JLG strongly recommends that you do not change. This setting is so noted below:

ELEVATION CUTBACK

⚠ WARNING

CHANGING THIS SETTING MAY ADVERSELY AFFECT THE PERFORMANCE OF YOUR MACHINE.

NOTICE

ITS IS A GOOD PRACTICE TO AVOID PRESSURE-WASHING ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS. SHOULD PRESSURE-WASHING BE UTILIZED TO WASH AREAS CONTAINING ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS, JLG INDUSTRIES INC. RECOMMENDS A MAXIMUM PRESSURE OF 750 PSI (52 BAR) AT A MINIMUM DISTANCE OF 12 INCHES (30.5CM) AWAY FROM THESE COMPONENTS. IF ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS ARE SPRAYED, SPRAYING MUST NOT BE DIRECT AND BE FOR BRIEF TIME PERIODS TO AVOID HEAVY SATURATION.

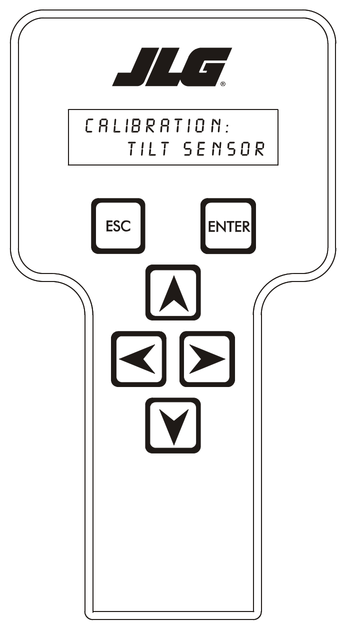
6.7 LEVEL VEHICLE DESCRIPTION

NOTICE

A NEW TILT MODULE WILL ACT AS IF IT IS TILTED ALL OF THE TIME UNTIL THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURE IS PERFORMED.

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT CALIBRATE THE LEVEL SENSOR EXCEPT ON A LEVEL SURFACE.



Place machine in stowed position with the boom between the rear wheels.

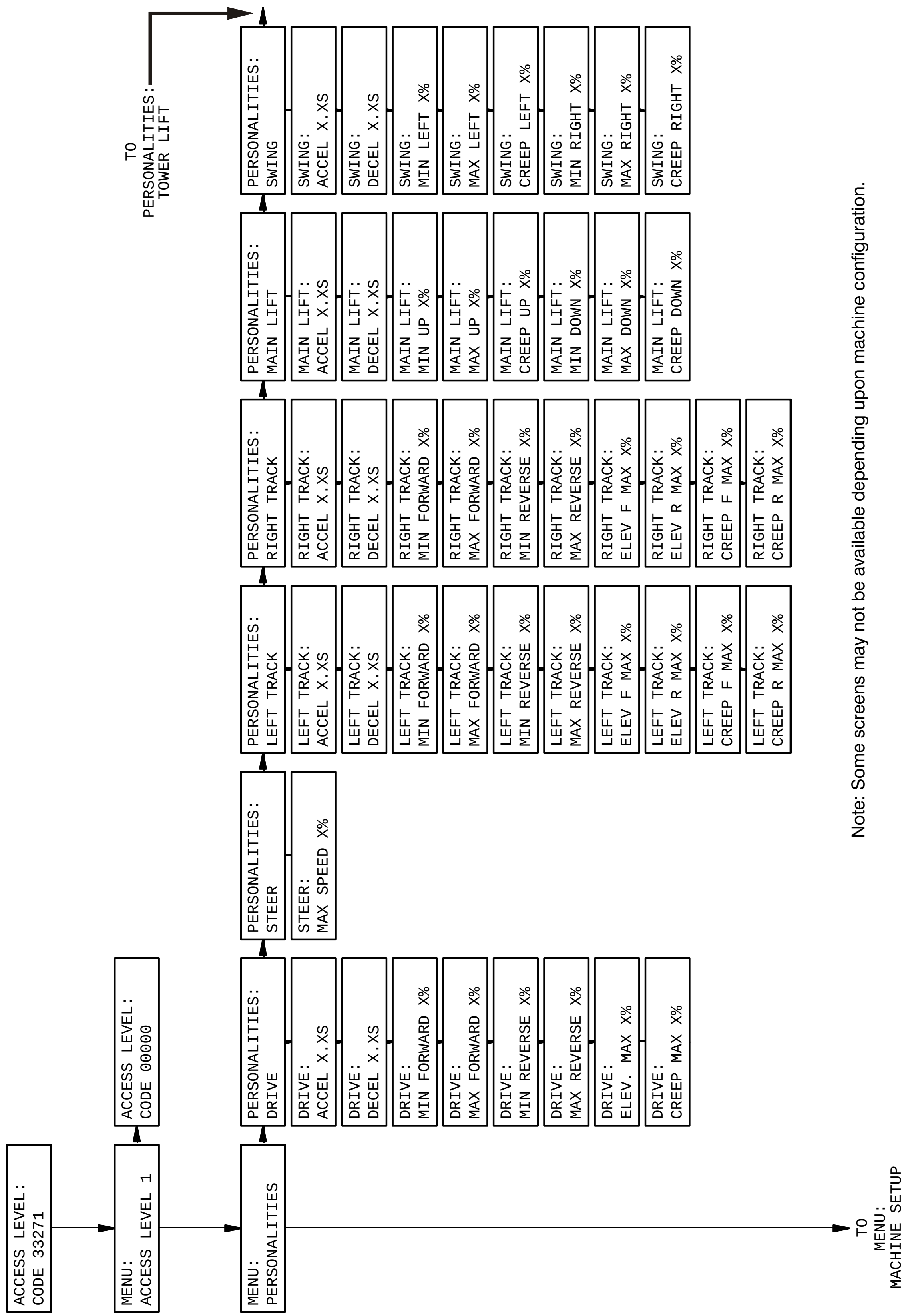
To level machine chose:

CALIBRATION:
TILT SENSOR

Press ENTER.

When prompted, swing machine 180°

Press ENTER.



Note: Some screens may not be available depending upon machine configuration.

Figure 6-5. Analyzer Flow Chart, Prior to Version 5.X Software - Sheet 1 of 4

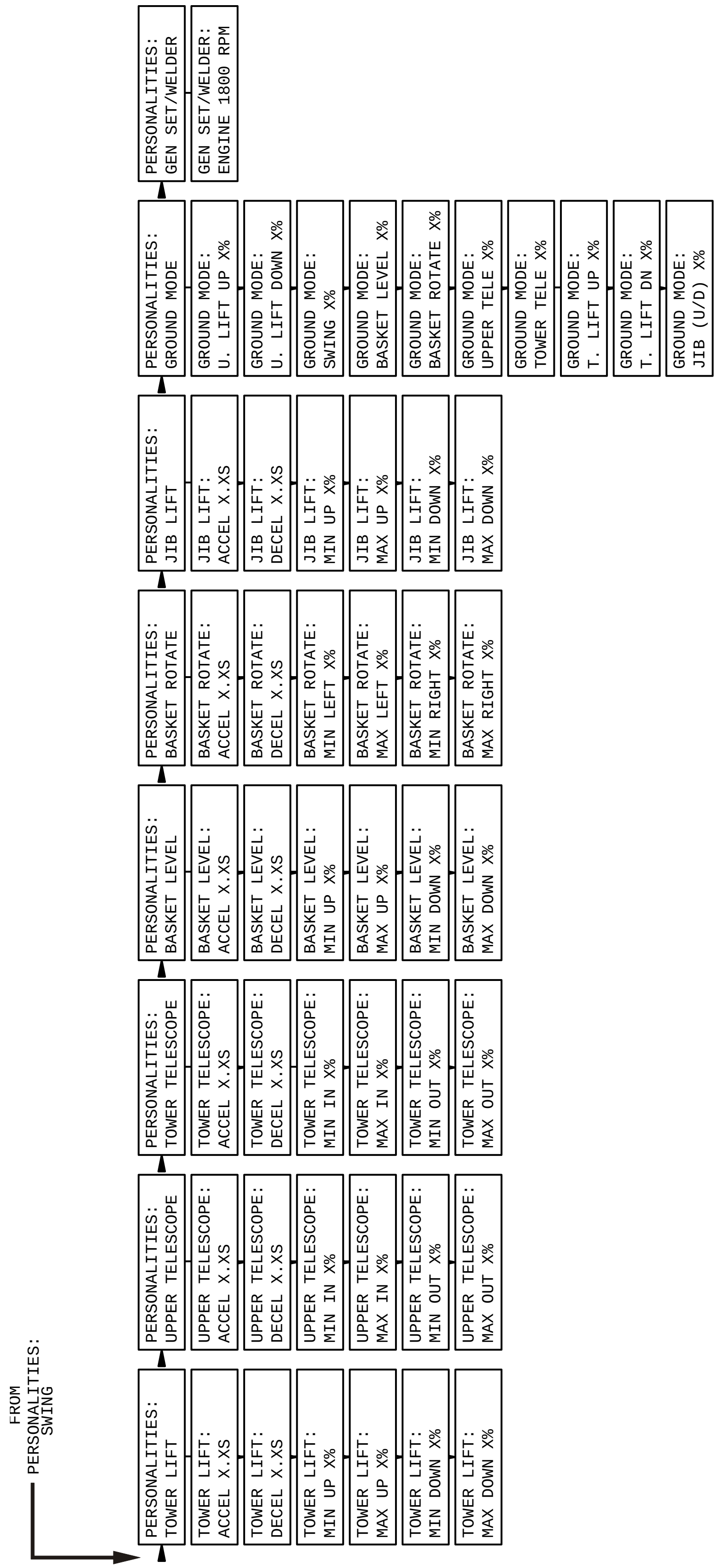


Figure 6-6. Analyzer Flow Chart, Prior to Version 5.X Software - Sheet 2 of 4

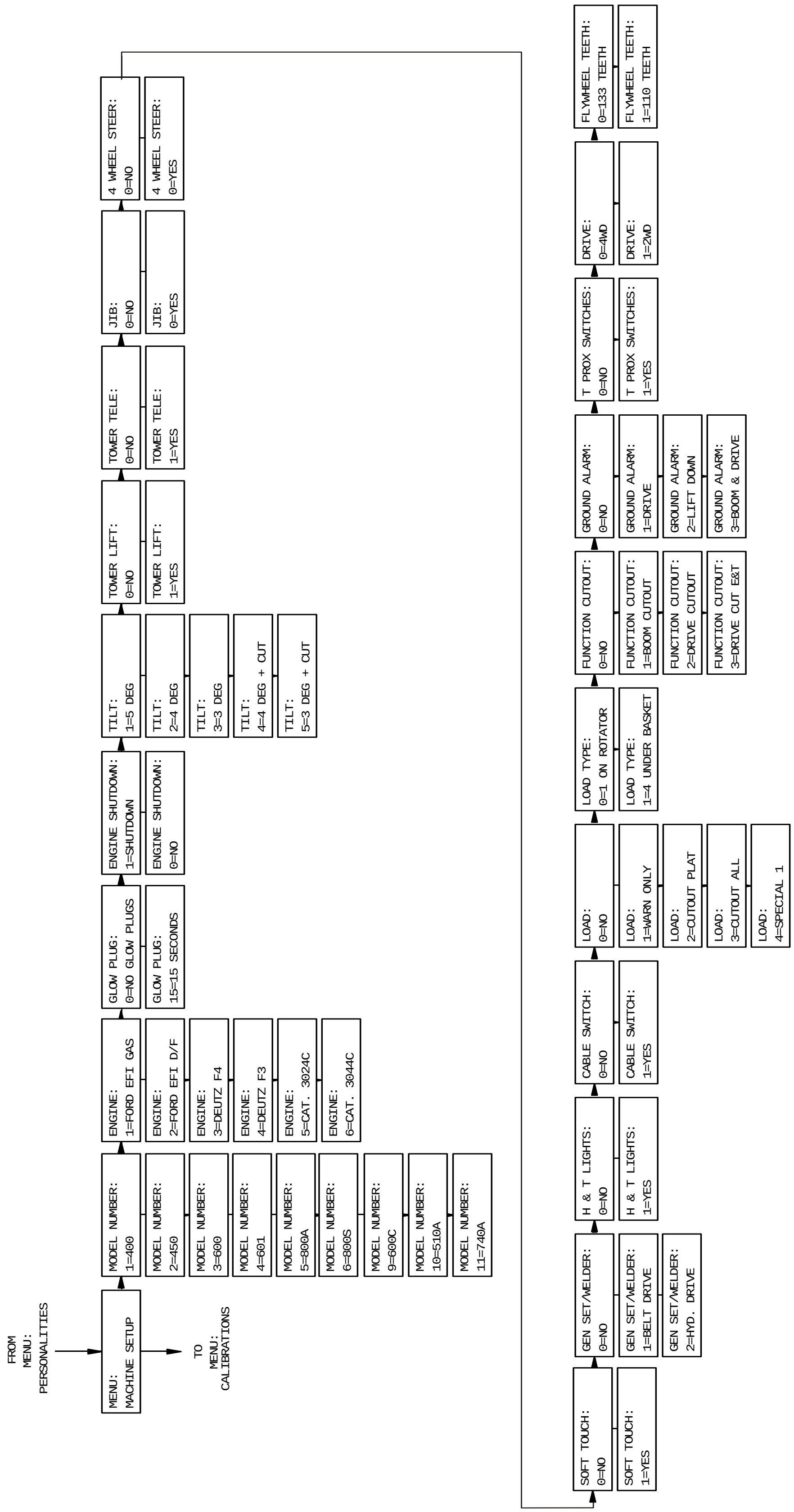


Figure 6-7. Analyzer Flow Chart, Prior to Version 5.X Software - Sheet 3 of 4

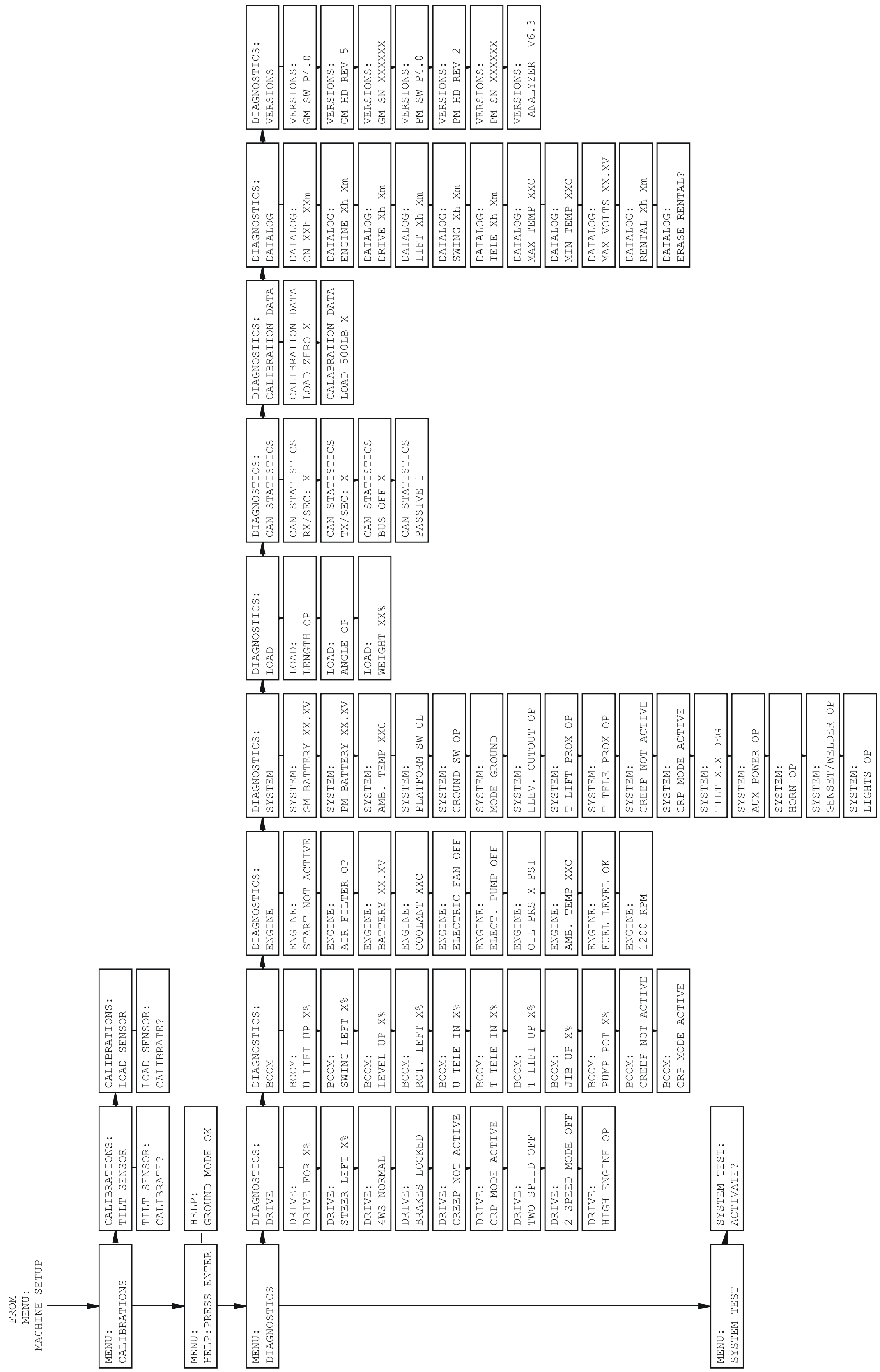
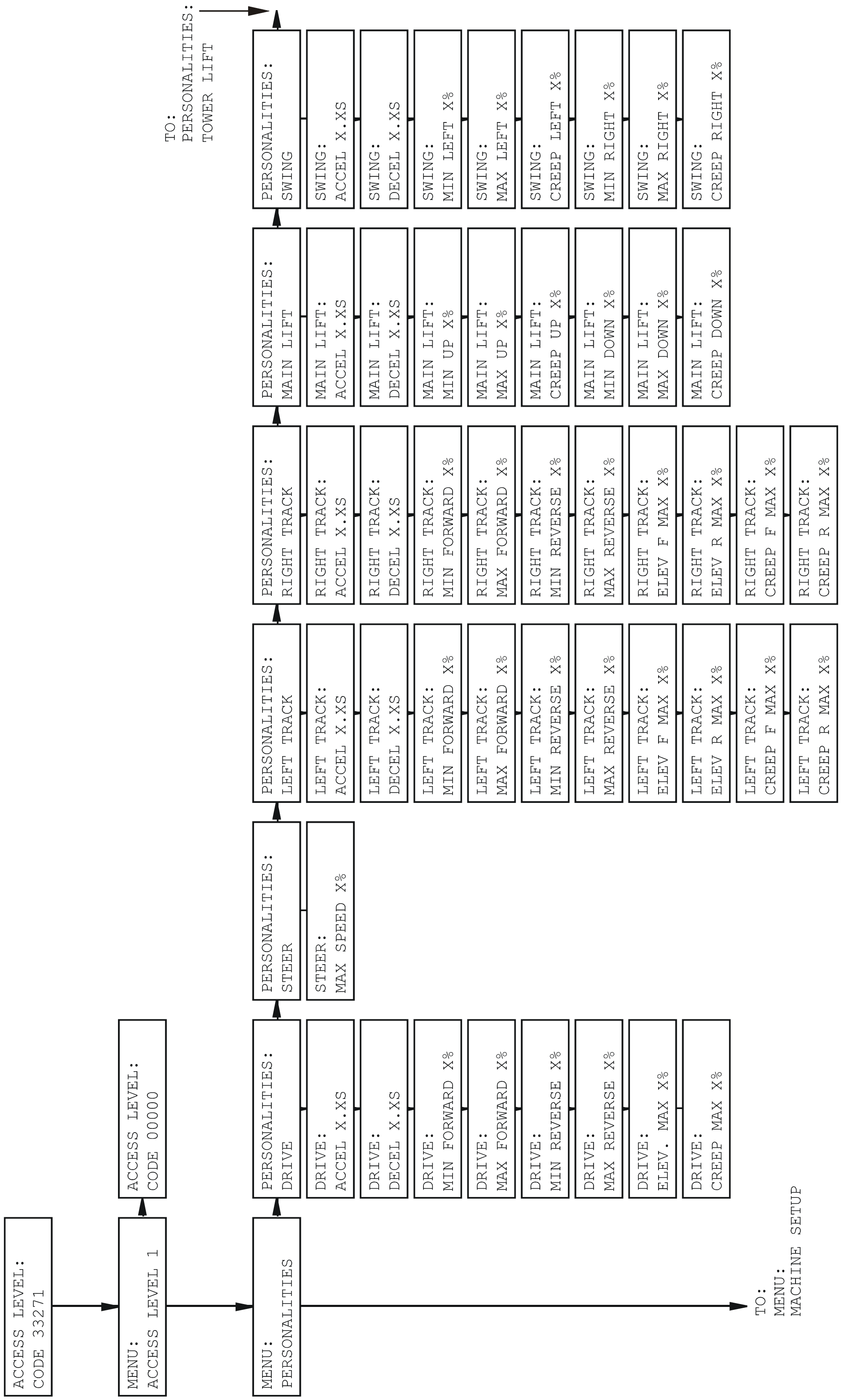


Figure 6-8. Analyzer Flow Chart, Prior to Version 5.X Software - Sheet 4 of 4



NOTE: *Some screens may not be available depending upon machine configuration.*

Figure 6-9. Analyzer Flow Chart, Version 5.X Software - Sheet 1 of 4

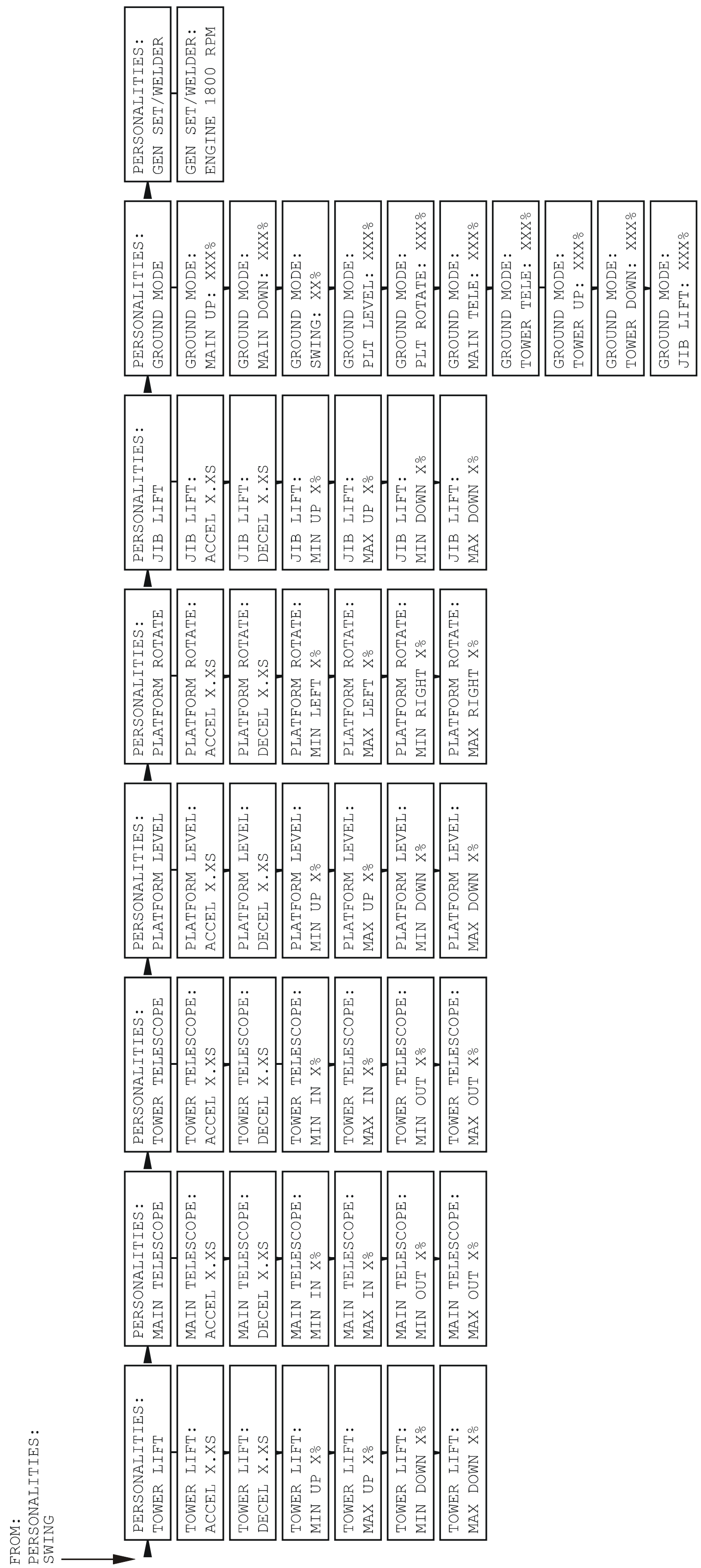


Figure 6-10. Analyzer Flow Chart, Version 5.X Software - Sheet 2 of 4

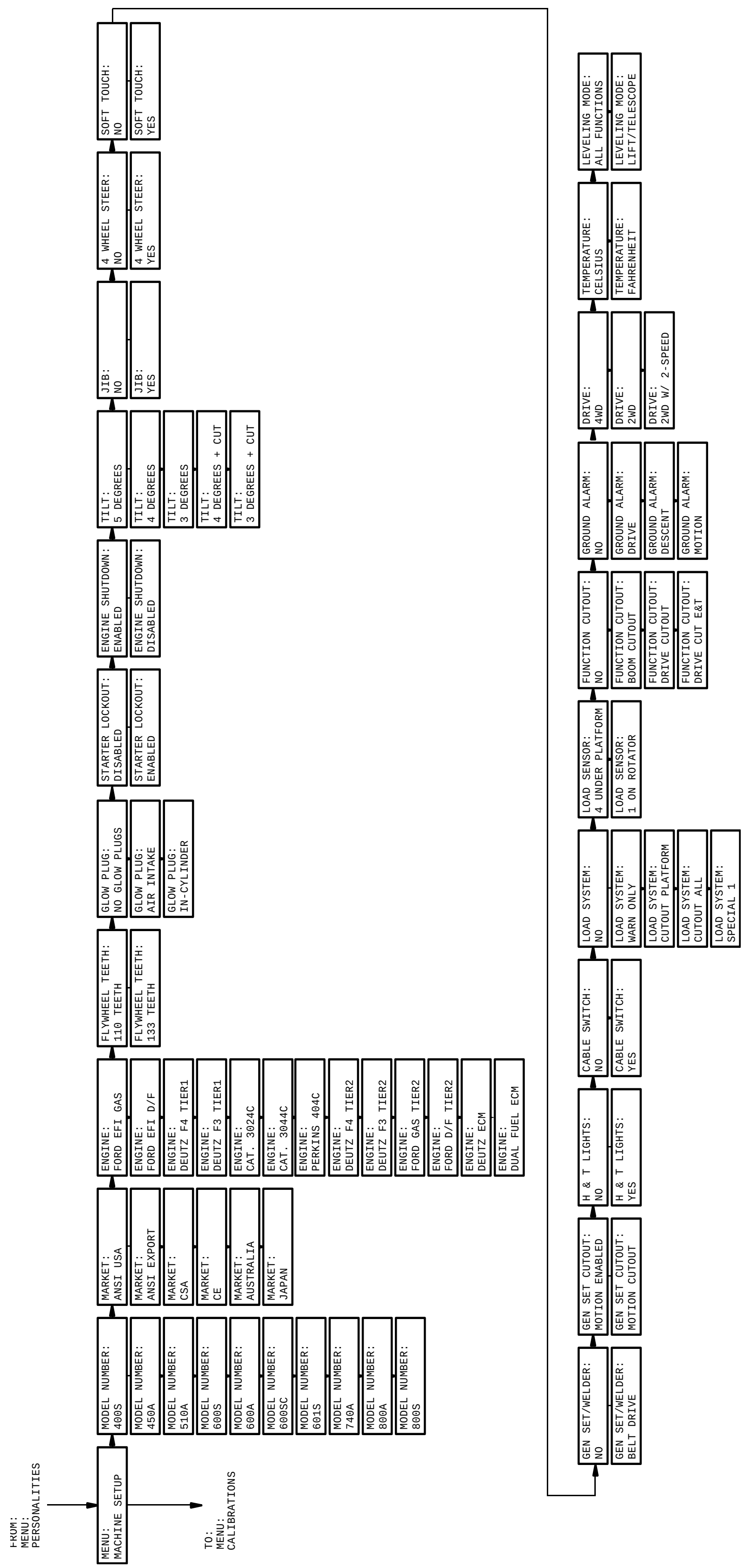


Figure 6-11. Analyzer Flow Chart, Version 5.X Software - Sheet 3 of 4

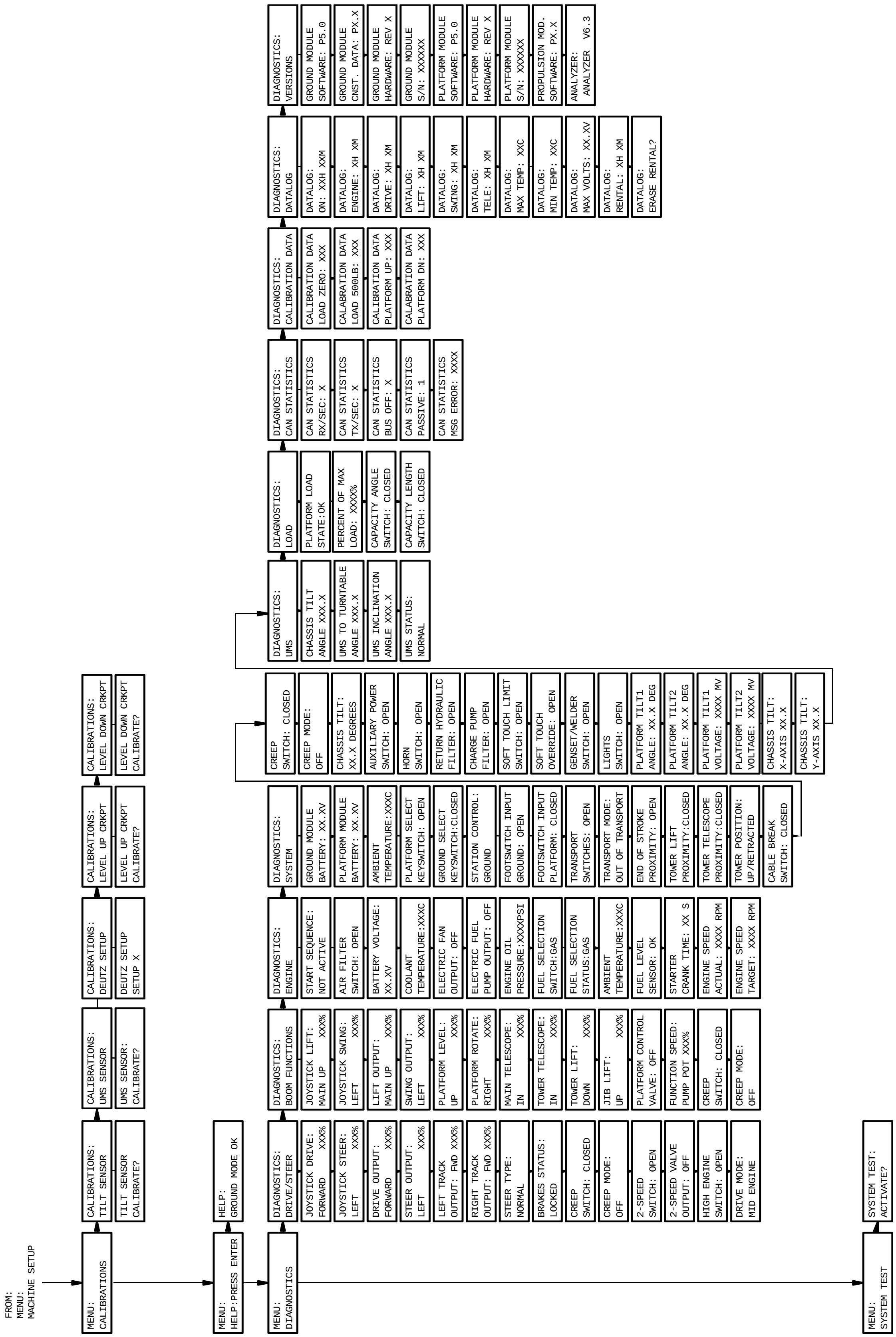


Figure 6-12. Analyzer Flow Chart, Version 5.X Software - Sheet 4 of 4

6.8 MACHINE PERSONALITY SETTINGS

NOTE: *Personality settings can be adjusted within the adjustment range in order to achieve optimum machine performance.*

Table 6-1. Personality Ranges/Defaults

FUNCTION	PERSONALITY	RANGE	DEFAULTS - 600S
DRIVE	ACCELeration	0.1s to 5.0s	2.0
	DECELeration	0.1s to 3.0s	2.0
	Forward MINimum speed	0 to 35%	4
	Forward MAXimum speed	0 to 100%	35
	REVerse MINimum speed	0 to 35%	4
	REVerse MAXimum speed	0 to 100%	35
	ELEVATED MAXimum speed	0 to 50%	15
	CREEP MAXimum speed	0 to 50%	25
	Engine RPM	800 to 2900	1800
TOWER LIFT	ACCELeration	0.1 to 5.0	N/A
	DECELeration	0.1 to 3.0	N/A
	MINimum UP speed	0 to 60%	N/A
	MAXimum UP speed	0 to 100%	N/A
	MINimum DOWN speed	0 to 60%	N/A
	MAXimum DOWN speed	0 to 100%	N/A
	Engine RPM	800 to 2900	N/A
UPPER LIFT	ACCELeration	0.1 to 5.0	2.0
	DECELeration	0.1 to 3.0	0.7
	MINimum UP speed	0 to 60%	40
	MAXimum UP speed	0 to 100%	80
	CREEP Maximum UP speed	0 to 65%	55
	MINimum DOWN speed	0 to 60%	40
	MAXimum DOWN speed	0 to 100%	70
	CREEP maximum DOWN speed	0 to 75%	55
	Engine RPM	800 to 2900	1800

Table 6-1. Personality Ranges/Defaults

FUNCTION	PERSONALITY	RANGE	DEFAULTS - 600S
SWING	ACCELeration	0.1 to 5.0s	2.0
	DECELeration	0.1 to 3.0s	1.8
	MINimum LEFT speed	0 to 50%	30
	MAXimum LEFT speed	0 to 100%	65
	CREEP maximum LEFT speed	0 to 65%	45
	MINimum RIGHT speed	0 to 50%	30
	MAXimum RIGHT speed	0 to 100%	65
	CREEP maximum RIGHT speed	0 to 65%	45
	Engine RPM	800 to 2900	1400
TELESCOPE UPPER	ACCELeration	0.1 to 5.0	3.5
	DECELeration	0.1 to 3.0	0.8
	MINimum IN speed	0 to 65%	45
	MAXimum IN speed	0 to 100%	75
	MINimum OUT speed	0 to 65%	45
	MAXimum OUT speed	0 to 100%	70
	Engine RPM	800 to 2900	1800
TELESCOPE TOWER	ACCELeration	0.1 to 5.0	N/A
	DECELeration	0.1 to 3.0	N/A
	MINimum IN speed	0 to 65%	N/A
	MAXimum IN speed	0 to 100%	N/A
	MINimum OUT speed	0 to 65%	N/A
	MAXimum OUT speed	0 to 100%	N/A
	Engine RPM	800 to 2900	N/A
BASKET LEVEL	ACCELeration	0.1 to 5.0	2.5
	DECELeration	0.1 to 3.0	0.5
	MINimum UP speed	0 to 65%	48
	MAXimum UP speed	0 to 100%	52
	MINimum DOWN speed	0 to 65%	45
	MAXimum DOWN speed	0 to 100%	50
	Engine RPM	800 to 2900	1500

Table 6-1. Personality Ranges/Defaults

FUNCTION	PERSONALITY	RANGE	DEFAULTS - 600S
BASKET ROTATE	ACCELeration	0.1 to 5.0	1.8
	DECELeration	0.1 to 3.0	0.7
	MINimum LEFT speed	0 to 65%	46
	MAXimum LEFT speed	0 to 100%	50
	MINimum RIGHT speed	0 to 65%	46
	MAXimum RIGHT speed	0 to 100%	50
	Engine RPM	800 to 2900	1500
JIB LIFT	ACCELeration	0.1 to 5.0	5.0
	DECELeration	0.1 to 3.0	1.0
	MINimum UP speed	0 to 65%	46
	MAXimum UP speed	0 to 100%	52
	MINimum DOWN speed	0 to 65%	45
	MAXimum DOWN speed	0 to 100%	52
	Engine RPM	800 to 2900	1800
STEER	MAXimum speed	0 to 100%	100
	Engine RPM	800 to 2900	1800
GROUND MODE	Tower LIFT UP speed	0 to 100%	N/A
	Tower LIFT DOWN speed	0 to 100%	N/A
	Upper LIFT UP	0 to 100%	60
	Upper LIFT DOWN	0 to 100%	60
	SWING speed	0 to 100%	60
	Upper TELEscope speed	0 to 100%	70
	Tower TELEscope speed	0 to 100%	N/A
	BASKET ROTATE speed	0 to 100%	50
	BASKET LEVEL speed	0 to 100%	50
	JIB LIFT speed	0 to 100%	50

NOTE: *Personality settings can be adjusted anywhere within the adjustment range in order to achieve optimum machine performance.*

4150365-5

Table 6-2. Help Fault Codes, Displayed Faults, and Descriptions

Fault Flash Code	Communicated (Displayed on Analyzer) Fault	Description	Priority
None		**No flash code is indicated for the following help messages. They are intended to hint at a possible problem if the vehicle is not behaving as expected.**	1
	EVERYTHING OK	The "normal" help message in platform mode	
	GROUND MODE OK	The "normal" help message in ground mode	
	FSW OPEN	A drive or boom function has been selected but footswitch is open.	
	RUNNING AT CREEP – CREEP SWITCH OPEN	All function speeds are limited to creep because the creep switch is open.	
	RUNNING AT CREEP – TILTED AND ABOVE ELEVATION	All boom function speeds are limited to creep because the vehicle is tilted and above elevation.	
	RUNNING AT CUTBACK – ABOVE ELEVATION	Drive speed is limited to "ELEVATED MAX" because the vehicle is above elevation.	
	TILT SENSOR OUT OF RANGE	The tilt sensor has indicated a tilt angle greater than 19 degrees for more than 4 seconds. Not reported during 2 second power-up.	
	LOAD SENSOR READING UNDER WEIGHT	The load sensor is reading 20% or more under the calibrated zero point. This fault may occur if the basket is resting on the ground. Not reported during 2 second power-up.	
1/1		**Flash code 1/1 indicates a "sleep" mode. NOT REQUIRED**	
2/1		**Flash code 2/1 indicates problems with footswitch.**	2
	FSW FAULTY	The two footswitch inputs have read the same state for more than one second.	
	KEYSWITCH FAULTY	Both platform and ground modes are selected simultaneously	
2/2		**Flash code 2/2 indicates problems with drive & steer selection. Except where noted, these faults are not reported during 2 second power-up sequence.**	3
	DRIVE LOCKED – JOYSTICK MOVED BEFORE FOOTSWITCH	Drive was selected before and during footswitch closure. Can be reported during power-up sequence.	
	FSW INTERLOCK TRIPPED	Footswitch was closed for seven seconds with no function selected. Can be reported during power-up sequence.	
	STEER LOCKED – SELECTED BEFORE FOOTSWITCH	Steer was selected before and during footswitch closure.	
	STEER SWITCHES FAULTY	Both steer switches are active together.	
	DRIVE / STEER WITH NO QPROX	This fault only occurs with inductive joysticks. It occurs if the joystick is moved out of the neutral position with no Qprox sensors active.	
	D/S JOY. QPROX BAD	These faults only occur with inductive joysticks. They indicate that the Q-Prox sensor is reading above 3.18 volts.	
	D/S JOY. OUT OF RANGE LOW	Resistive joysticks: These faults do not occur. Inductive joysticks: The trigger points for these faults are dependent on the centertap voltage reading. These faults will be triggered when the voltage is less than the centertap voltage minus half the center tap voltage minus 0.3 volts. If the centertap is at the high end of the range, these faults will be triggered below 1.05 volts. If the centertap is at the low end of the range, these faults will be triggered below 0.79 volts.	

Table 6-2. Help Fault Codes, Displayed Faults, and Descriptions

Fault Flash Code	Communicated (Displayed on Analyzer) Fault	Description	Priority
	D/S JOY. OUT OF RANGE HIGH	Resistive joysticks: These faults do not occur if the Vref voltage is below 8.1 volts. If Vref is above 7.7 volts, Vref is operating out of tolerance or a short to battery has occurred. Inductive joysticks: The trigger points for these faults are dependent on the centertap voltage reading. These faults will be triggered when the voltage is more than the centertap voltage plus half the centertap voltage plus 0.3 volts. If the centertap is at the high end of the range, these faults will be triggered above 4.35 volts. If the centertap is at the low end of the range, these faults will be triggered above 3.8 volts.	
	D/S JOY. CENTER TAP BAD	Resistive joysticks: These faults occur when the center tap voltage is not between 3.08 volts and 3.83 volts. Due to resistor tolerances there is a +/- .1 volt range around these values where the fault may be indicated. Inductive joysticks: These faults occur when the center tap voltage is not between 2.18 volts and 2.70 volts. Due to resistor tolerances there is a +/- .1 volt range around these values where the fault may be indicated.	
	WAITING FOR FSW TO BE OPEN	Footswitch was closed when platform mode was selected. Can be reported during power-up sequence.	
2/3		**Flash code 2/3 indicates problems with boom function selection.**	**3**
	LIFT/SWING LOCKED – JOYSTICK MOVED BEFORE FOOTSWITCH	Platform upper lift or swing was selected before and during footswitch closure.	
	PUMP SWITCHES FAULTY – CHECK DIAGNOSTICS/ BOOM	A boom function (lower lift, telescope, basket level, basket rotate, jib) has both directions selected together.	
	PUMP SWITCHES LOCKED – SELECTED BEFORE FOOTSWITCH	A platform boom function (lower lift, telescope, basket level, basket rotate, jib) was selected before key switch or footswitch closure.	
	PUMP SWITCHES LOCKED – SELECTED BEFORE AUX POWER	A ground boom function (lower lift, telescope, basket level, basket rotate, jib) was selected before aux power.	
	LIFT / SWING WITH NO QPROX	This fault only occurs with inductive joysticks. It occurs if the joystick is moved out of the neutral position with no Qprox sensors active.	
	l/s joy. qprox bad	These faults only occur with inductive joysticks. They indicate that the Q-Prox sensor is reading above 3.18 volts.	
	l/s joy. out of range low	Resistive joysticks: These faults do not occur. Inductive joysticks: The trigger points for these faults are dependent on the centertap voltage reading. These faults will be triggered when the voltage is less than the centertap voltage minus half the center tap voltage minus 0.3 volts. If the centertap is at the high end of the range, these faults will be triggered below 1.05 volts. If the centertap is at the low end of the range, these faults will be triggered below 0.79 volts.	
	l/s joy. out of range high	Resistive joysticks: These faults do not occur if the Vref voltage is below 8.1 volts. If Vref is above 7.7 volts, Vref is operating out of tolerance or a short to battery has occurred. Inductive joysticks: The trigger points for these faults are dependent on the centertap voltage reading. These faults will be triggered when the voltage is more than the centertap voltage plus half the centertap voltage plus 0.3 volts. If the centertap is at the high end of the range, these faults will be triggered above 4.35 volts. If the centertap is at the low end of the range, these faults will be triggered above 3.8 volts.	

Table 6-2. Help Fault Codes, Displayed Faults, and Descriptions

Fault Flash Code	Communicated (Displayed on Analyzer) Fault	Description	Priority
	l/s joy. center tap bad	Resistive joysticks: These faults occur when the center tap voltage is not between 3.08 volts and 3.83 volts. Due to resistor tolerances there is a +/- .1 volt range around these values where the fault may be indicated. Inductive joysticks: These faults occur when the center tap voltage is not between 2.18 volts and 2.70 volts. Due to resistor tolerances there is a +/- .1 volt range around these values where the fault may be indicated.	
	PUMP SWITCHES LOCKED – SELECTED BEFORE START SWTICH	This fault occurs when a hydraulic function switch is closed before the start switch is closed.	
	FOOTSWITCH SELECTED BEFORE START	The user attempted to start the machine with the footswitch engaged.	
2/4		**Flash code 2/4 indicates that steering digital inputs are faulty. NOT REQUIRED**	
2/5		**Flash code 2/5 indicates that a function is prevented due to a cutout.**	4
	BOOM PREVENTED – DRIVE SELECTED	A boom function is selected while a drive function is selected and drive cut-out is configured to prevent simultaneous drive & boom operation.	
	DRIVE PREVENTED – ABOVE ELEVATION	Drive is selected while above elevation and drive cutout is configured to prevent drive.	
	DRIVE PREVENTED – BOOM SELECTED	Drive is selected while a boom function is selected and drive cutout is configured to prevent simultaneous drive & boom operation.	
	DRIVE PREVENTED – TILTED & ABOVE ELEVATION	Drive is selected while tilted and above elevation and tilt is configured to cutout drive.	
	MODEL CHANGED – HYDRAULICS SUSPENDED – CYCLE EMS	User changed the model number using the analyzer. User must cycle power before the hydraulics system will be active again.	11
2/7		**Flash code 2/7 indicates that the accelerator input is faulty. NOT REQUIRED**	
2/8		**Flash code 2/8 indicates a problem with a hydraulic filter. Not reported during 2 second power-up.**	5
	RETURN FILTER BYPASSED	Hydraulic return filter clogged	
	charge pump filter bypassed	Charge pump filter clogged	
3/1		**Flash code 3/1 indicates that a contactor did not close when energized. NOT REQUIRED**	
3/2		**Flash code 3/2 indicates that a contactor did not open when energized. NOT REQUIRED**	
3/3		**Flash code 3/3 indicates a driver problem. All driver faults are detected in a similar manner. Open circuit faults are detected when the analog feedback reads too high and the output is commanded off. Short to ground is detected when the analog feedback reads low and the output is commanded on. Short to battery is detected when the analog feedback reads Vbat and the output is commanded off. Not reported during 2 second power-up.**	6
	ALTERNATOR/ECM POWER SHORT TO GROUND		
	HOUR METER SHORT TO GROUND		

Table 6-2. Help Fault Codes, Displayed Faults, and Descriptions

Fault Flash Code	Communicated (Displayed on Analyzer) Fault	Description	Priority
	HOUR METER SHORT TO BATTERY		
	HORN SHORT TO GROUND		
	HORN OPEN CIRCUIT		
	HORN SHORT TO BATTERY		
	AUX POWER SHORT TO GROUND		
	AUX POWER OPEN CIRCUIT		
	AUX POWER SHORT TO BATTERY		
	GLOW PLUG SHORT TO GROUND		
	GLOW PLUG OPEN CIRCUIT		
	GLOW PLUG SHORT TO BATTERY		
	LP LOCK SHORT TO GROUND		
	LP LOCK OPEN CIRCUIT		
	LP LOCK SHORT TO BATTERY		
	LP START ASSIST SHORT TO GROUND		
	LP START ASSIST OPEN CIRCUIT		
	LP START ASSIST SHORT TO BATTERY		
	MAIN DUMP SHORT TO GROUND		
	MAIN DUMP OPEN CIRCUIT		
	MAIN DUMP SHORT TO BATTERY		
	PARKING BRAKE SHORT TO GROUND		
	PARKING BRAKE OPEN CIRCUIT		
	PARKING BRAKE SHORT TO BATTERY		
	START SOLENOID SHORT TO GROUND		
	START SOLENOID OPEN CIRCUIT		
	START SOLENOID SHORT TO BATTERY		
	STEER DUMP SHORT TO GROUND		

Table 6-2. Help Fault Codes, Displayed Faults, and Descriptions

Fault Flash Code	Communicated (Displayed on Analyzer) Fault	Description	Priority
	STEER DUMP OPEN CIRCUIT		
	STEER DUMP SHORT TO BATTERY		
	TWO SPEED SHORT TO GROUND		
	TWO SPEED OPEN CIRCUIT		
	TWO SPEED SHORT TO BATTERY		
	GROUND ALARM SHORT TO GROUND		
	GROUND ALARM OPEN CIRCUIT		
	GROUND ALARM SHORT TO BATTERY		
	GENERATOR SHORT TO GROUND		
	GENERATOR OPEN CIRCUIT		
	GENERATOR SHORT TO BATTERY		
	WELDER SHORT TO GROUND		
	WELDER OPEN CIRCUIT		
	WELDER SHORT TO BATTERY		
	HEAD TAIL LIGHT SHORT TO GROUND		
	HEAD TAIL LIGHT OPEN CIRCUIT		
	HEAD TAIL LIGHT SHORT TO BATTERY		
	BASKET UP OVERRIDE SHORT TO GROUND	Only occurs on machines with electronic leveling systems.	
	BASKET UP OVERRIDE OPEN CIRCUIT	Only occurs on machines with electronic leveling systems.	
	BASKET UP OVERRIDE SHORT TO BATTERY	Only occurs on machines with electronic leveling systems.	
	BASKET UP SHORT TO GROUND		
	BASKET UP OPEN CIRCUIT		
	BASKET UP SHORT TO BATTERY		
	BASKET DOWN SHORT TO GROUND		
	BASKET DOWN OPEN CIRCUIT		

Table 6-2. Help Fault Codes, Displayed Faults, and Descriptions

Fault Flash Code	Communicated (Displayed on Analyzer) Fault	Description	Priority
	BASKET DOWN SHORT TO BATTERY		
	BASKET DOWN OVERRIDE SHORT TO GROUND	Only occurs on machines with electronic leveling systems.	
	BASKET DOWN OVERRIDE OPEN CIRCUIT	Only occurs on machines with electronic leveling systems.	
	BASKET DOWN OVERRIDE SHORT TO BATTERY	Only occurs on machines with electronic leveling systems.	
	BASKET LEFT OPEN CIRCUIT		
	BASKET LEFT SHORT TO BATTERY		
	BASKET LEFT SHORT TO GROUND		
	BASKET RIGHT SHORT TO GROUND		
	BASKET RIGHT OPEN CIRCUIT		
	BASKET RIGHT SHORT TO BATTERY		
	JIB UP SHORT TO GROUND		
	JIB UP OPEN CIRCUIT		
	JIB UP SHORT TO BATTERY		
	JIB DOWN SHORT TO GROUND		
	JIB DOWN OPEN CIRCUIT		
	JIB DOWN SHORT TO BATTERY		
	JIB LEFT SHORT TO GROUND		
	JIB LEFT OPEN CIRCUIT		
	JIB LEFT SHORT TO BATTERY		
	JIB RIGHT SHORT TO GROUND		
	JIB RIGHT OPEN CIRCUIT		
	JIB RIGHT SHORT TO BATTERY		
	TOWER UP SHORT TO GROUND		
	TOWER UP OPEN CIRCUIT		
	TOWER UP SHORT TO BATTERY		
	TOWER DOWN SHORT TO GROUND		

Table 6-2. Help Fault Codes, Displayed Faults, and Descriptions

Fault Flash Code	Communicated (Displayed on Analyzer) Fault	Description	Priority
	TOWER DOWN OPEN CIRCUIT		
	TOWER DOWN SHORT TO BATTERY		
	TOWER IN SHORT TO GROUND		
	TOWER IN OPEN CIRCUIT		
	TOWER IN SHORT TO BATTERY		
	TOWER OUT SHORT TO GROUND		
	TOWER OUT OPEN CIRCUIT		
	TOWER OUT SHORT TO BATTERY		
	UPPER IN SHORT TO GROUND		
	UPPER IN OPEN CIRCUIT		
	UPPER IN SHORT TO BATTERY		
	UPPER OUT SHORT TO GROUND		
	UPPER OUT OPEN CIRCUIT		
	UPPER OUT SHORT TO BATTERY		
	LIFT UP DUMP SHORT TO GROUND		
	LIFT UP DUMP OPEN CIRCUIT		
	LIFT UP DUMP SHORT TO BATTERY		
	LIFT DOWN HOLDING SHORT TO GROUND		
	LIFT DOWN HOLDING OPEN CIRCUIT		
	LIFT DOWN SHORT TO BATTERY		
	HOUR METER OPEN CIRCUIT	This fault cannot be detected during normal operation. It may be reported during self test.	
	FORD ECM POWER OPEN CIRCUIT	This fault cannot be detected during normal operation. It may be reported during self test.	
	FORD ECM POWER SHORT TO BATTERY	This fault cannot be detected during normal operation. It may be reported during self test.	

Table 6-2. Help Fault Codes, Displayed Faults, and Descriptions

Fault Flash Code	Communicated (Displayed on Analyzer) Fault	Description	Priority
3/4		**Flash code 3/4 indicates a driver problem on a platform valve block valve driver. All driver faults are detected in a similar manner. Open circuit faults are detected when the analog feedback reads too high and the output is commanded off. Short to ground is detected when the analog feedback reads low and the output is commanded on. Short to battery is detected when the analog feedback reads Vbat and the output is commanded off. Not reported during 2 second power-up.**	6
	BASKET UP SHORT TO BATTERY		
	BASKET UP SHORT TO GROUND		
	BASKET UP OPEN CIRCUIT		
	BASKET UP SHORT TO BATTERY OR OPEN CIRCUIT	Only occurs on machines with electronic basket leveling	
	BASKET DOWN SHORT TO BATTERY		
	BASKET DOWN SHORT TO GROUND		
	bASKET DOWN OPEN CIRCUIT		
	BASKET DOWN SHORT TO BATTERY OR OPEN CIRCUIT	Only occurs on machines with electronic basket leveling.	
	BASKET LEFT SHORT TO BATTERY		
	BASKER LEFT SHORT TO GROUND		
	BASKET LEFT OPEN CIRCUIT		
	BASKET RIGHT SHORT TO BATTERY		
	BASKET RIGHT SHORT TO GROUND		
	BASKET RIGHT OPEN CIRCUIT		
	JIB UP SHORT TO BATTERY		
	JIB UP SHORT TO GROUND		
	JIB UP OPEN CIRCUIT		
	JIB DOWN SHORT TO BATTERY		
	JIB DOWN SHORT TO GROUND		
	JIB DOWN OPEN CIRCUIT		
	JIB LEFT SHORT TO BATTERY		
	JIB LEFT SHORT TO GROUND		

Table 6-2. Help Fault Codes, Displayed Faults, and Descriptions

Fault Flash Code	Communicated (Displayed on Analyzer) Fault	Description	Priority
	JIB LEFT OPEN CIRCUIT		
	JIB RIGHT SHORT TO BATTERY		
	JIB RIGHT SHORT TO GROUND		
	JIB RIGHT OPEN CIRCUIT		
	PLATFORM CONTROL VALVE SHORT TO BATTERY	Only occurs on machines with electronic basket leveling	
	PLATFORM CONTROL VALVE SHORT TO GROUND	Only occurs on machines with electronic basket leveling	
	PLATFORM CONTROL VALVE OPEN CIRCUIT	Only occurs on machines with electronic basket leveling	
3/5		**Flash code 3/5 indicates a brake pressure problem. NOT REQUIRED**	
4/2		**Flash code 4/2 indicates that the engine is over temperature. NOT REQUIRED**	
4/3		**Flash code 4/3 indicates problems with the engine. Except where noted, these faults are not reported during 2 second power-up sequence.**	9
	high engine temp	Occurs when the engine temperature is above 117 degrees Celsius for the Ford engines, and above 130 degrees Celsius for the Deutz engines.	
	AIR FILTER BYPASSED	Air filter clogged	
	NO aLTERNATOR OUTPUT	The engine has been running for 15 seconds or more and the battery voltage is still below 12.5 volts.	
	LOW Oil PrESSURE	If a Deutz engine is installed, the oil pressure is below 8 PSI and the engine has been running for at least 10 seconds. If a Ford engine is installed, the Ford ECM has reported a low oil pressure fault.	
	OIL PRESSURE SHORT TO BATTERY	If a Deutz engine is installed, this indicates that the oil pressure sensor is reading above 6.6 volts.	
	OIL PRESSURE SHORT TO GROUNd	If a Deutz engine is installed, this indicates that the oil pressure sensor is reading below 0.1 volts for more than 5 seconds. This fault is not detected during crank.	
	COOLANT TEMPERATURE SHORT TO GROUND	If a Deutz engine is installed, this indicates that the coolant temperature is reading below 0.1 volts.	
	FORD FAULT CODE ##	All Ford fault codes except 63 are simply passed through from the FORD ECM. They only occur if a Ford engine is selected in the machine configuration digits. Can be reported during power-up sequence.	
	FORD FAULT CODE UNKNOWN	An unrecognized Ford ECM fault code has been received. Can be reported during power-up sequence.	
	485 communications lost	This fault only occurs with a Ford engine. It occurs when no responses are received from the ECM for 2.5 seconds. Can be reported during power-up sequence.	
	FUEL SENSOR SHORT TO BATTERY	Indicates that the fuel sensor is reading above 4.3 volts.	
	FUEL SENSOR SHORT TO GROUND	Indicates that the fuel sensor is reading below 0.2 volts.	

Table 6-2. Help Fault Codes, Displayed Faults, and Descriptions

Fault Flash Code	Communicated (Displayed on Analyzer) Fault	Description	Priority
4/4		**Flash code 4/4 indicates problems with the battery supply. Not reported during 2 second power-up.**	7
	BATTERY LOW	Battery voltage is below 11V for more than 5 seconds. This fault is not detected during crank. This is a warning – the controller does not shut down.	
	BATTERY TOO HIGH – SYSTEM SHUT DOWN	Battery voltage is above 16V. EMS recycle required.	
	BATTERY TOO LOW – SYSTEM SHUT DOWN	Battery voltage is below 9V.	
5/5		**Flash code 5/5 indicates problems with vehicle engine RPM or the encoder. Not reported during 2 second power-up.**	8
	SPEED SENSOR READING INVALID SPEED	This fault is detected with diesel engines only. The RPM pickup is indicating a speed that greater than 4000 RPM or approximately 8875 Hz.	
	SPEED INPUT LOST	This fault is detected with diesel engines only. It occurs if there is no RPM detected and the oil pressure input is reading above 8 PSI for more than three seconds. This is probably due to wiring problems at the ground module or a faulty speed sensor.	
6/6		**Flash code 6/6 indicates problems with the CAN bus.**	10
	CAN BUS FAILURE:	The ground module or platform module is not receiving CAN messages. This is probably due to wiring problems between the platform and ground modules.	
7/7		**Flash code 7/7 indicates problems with a motor.** **NOT REQUIRED**	
9/9		**Flash code 9/9 indicates problems with the controller.**	11
	PLATFORM MODULE SOFTWARE UPDATE REQUIRED	Platform module code is too old to support the EIM or BPE load sensor and the machine is configured to use one of these two sensors. The PM code must be updated to a newer version.	
	HIGH RESOLUTION A2D FAILURE –INTERRUPT LOST	The ADS1213 chip in the platform module has stopped asserting its interrupt(DRDY) line for some reason. An EMS cycle is required.	
	HIGH RESOLUTION A2D FAILURE-REINIT LIMIT	The ADS1213 has needed to be reset 3 or more times.	
	PLATFORM MODULE FAILURE: hwfs CODE 1	Platform module V(Low) FET has failed	
	GROUND MODULE FAILURE: hwfs CODE 1	Ground module V(Low) FET has failed	
	GROUND SENSOR REF VOLTAGE OUT OF RANGE	These faults occur when the seven volt reference voltage used for the joysticks, sensors, etc. goes out of range. Not reported during 2 second power-up.	
	PLATFORM SENSOR REF VOLTAGE OUT OF RANGE	These faults occur when the seven volt reference voltage used for the joysticks, sensors, etc. goes out of range. Not reported during 2 second power-up.	
	EEPROM FAILURE – CHECK ALL SETTINGS	A critical failure occurred with the EEPROM. Personalities, machine configuration digits, etc. may be reset to default values and should be checked.	

Table 6-2. Help Fault Codes, Displayed Faults, and Descriptions

Fault Flash Code	Communicated (Displayed on Analyzer) Fault	Description	Priority
	CHASSIS TILT SENSOR NOT GAIN CALIBRATED	Indicates that the chassis tilt sensor calibration information has been lost. Machine will indicate that it is tilted at all times. This calibration data is programmed into the unit at the factory.	
	CHASSIS TILT SENSOR GAIN OUT OF RANGE	Indicates that the chassis tilt sensor calibration has become corrupted.	

Table 6-3. Machine Configuration Programming Information Prior to Software Version P5.3

Configuration Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
MODEL NUMBER: 1	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	400S 450A 510A 600S 600A 600SC 601S 740A 800A 800S	1
MARKET: 2	0 1 2 3 4 5	ANSI USA ANSI EXPORT CSA CE AUSTRALIA JAPAN	0
ENGINE: 3* * Engine selections vary depending on model selection.	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11	FORD EFI GAS: Ford LRG425 EFI Gas (Tier 1) FORD EFI D/F: Ford LRG425 EFI dual fuel (Tier 1) DEUTZ F4 TIER1: Deutz F4M1011F Diesel (Tier 1) DEUTZ F3 TIER1: Deutz F3M1011F Diesel (Tier 1) CAT. 3024C: CAT 3024C Diesel (Tier 2) CAT. 3044C: CAT 3044C Diesel (Tier 2) DEUTZ F4 TIER2: Deutz F4M2011 Diesel (Tier 2) DEUTZ F3 TIER2: Deutz F3M2011 Diesel (Tier 2) FORD GAS TIER2: Ford LRG425 EFI Gas (Tier 2) FORD D/F TIER2: Ford LRG425 EFI Dual Fuel (Tier 2) DEUTZ ECM: Engine Control Module - ECM	11
FLYWHEEL TEETH: 4* * This menu item is only visible if Deutz engine selections 3 or 4 are selected.	0 1	133 TEETH: 133 flywheel teeth. 110 TEETH: 110 flywheel teeth.	1

Table 6-3. Machine Configuration Programming Information Prior to Software Version P5.3

Configuration Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
GLOW PLUG: 5	0 1 2	NO GLOW PLUGS: No glow plugs installed. W/O STARTER LOCK: Automatic pre-glow time determined by ambient air temperature; engine start can be attempted at any time during pre-glow. W/ STARTER LOCK: Automatic pre-glow time determined by ambient air temperature; engine start is NOT permitted until pre-glow is finished.	1
ENGINE SHUTDOWN: 6	0 1	DISABLED: No engine shutdown. ENABLED: Shutdown engine when coolant temperature is greater than 110 deg. C or the oil pressure is less than 8 psi.	1
TILT: 7* * Certain market selections will limit tilt options.	1 2 3 4 5	5 DEGREES: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 5 degrees and above elevation; also reduces drive speed to creep. 4 DEGREES: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 4 degrees and above elevation; also reduces drive speed to creep. 3 DEGREES: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 3 degrees and above elevation; also reduces drive speed to creep. 4 DEGREES + CUT: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 4 degrees and above elevation; also disallows tower lift up, tower telescope out, drive, main telescope out and main lift up. 3 DEGREES + CUT: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 3 degrees and above elevation; also disallows tower lift up, tower telescope out, drive, main telescope out and main lift up. *Note: Any of the selections above will light the tilt lamp when a tilted condition occurs and will sound the platform alarm when the machine is also above elevation.*	1
JIB: 8* * Only visible under certain model selections	0 1	NO: No jib installed. YES: Jib installed which has up and down movements only.	0
4 WHEEL STEER: 9* * Only visible under certain model selections.	0 1	NO: No four-wheel steer installed. YES: Four-wheel steer installed.	0
SOFT TOUCH: 10* * Only visible under certain model selections.	0 1	NO: No soft touch system installed. YES: Soft touch system installed.	0
GEN SET/WELDER: 11	0 1	NO: No generator installed. BELT DRIVE: Belt driven setup.	0

Table 6-3. Machine Configuration Programming Information Prior to Software Version P5.3

Configuration Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
GEN SET CUTOUT: 12* * Only visible if Gen Set / Welder Menu selection is not 0.	0 1	MOTION ENABLED: Motion enabled when generator is ON. MOTION CUTOUT: Motion cutout in platform mode only.	0
H & T LIGHTS: 13	0 1	NO: No head and tail lights installed. YES: Head and tail lights installed.	0
CABLE SWITCH: 14* * Only visible under certain model selections. * Certain market and model selections will alter the default setting.	0 1	NO: No broken cable switch installed. YES: Broken cable switch installed.	0
LOAD SYSTEM: 15* * Only visible under certain model selections. * Certain market selections will limit load system options or alter default setting.	0 1 2 3 4	NO: No load sensor installed. WARN ONLY: Functions in creep, overload lamp lit, platform alarm beeps (5 sec ON, 2 sec OFF). CUTOUT PLATFORM: All functions cutout, overload lamp lit, platform alarm beeps (5 sec ON, 2 sec OFF). CUTOUT ALL: All functions cutout, flash overload light (500mS on, 500mS off), platform alarm beeps (5 sec ON, 2 sec OFF). SPECIAL 1: Functions in creep, overload lamp lit, disables main telescope out & main lift up, platform alarm beeps (5 sec ON, 2 sec OFF).	0
LOAD SENSOR: 16* * Only visible if Load Sensor Menu selection is not 0. * Market selections will limit certain load sensor options.	0 1	1 ON ROTATOR: Use the on-board load sensor for all models except those which use the Leveling Platform Module. 4 UNDER PLATFORM: Use the EIM for load sensing.	1
FUNCTION CUTOUT: 17* * Only visible under certain market selections. * Certain market selections will limit function cutout options or alter default setting.	0 1 2 3	NO: No drive cutout. BOOM CUTOUT: Boom function cutout while driving above elevation. DRIVE CUTOUT: Drive cutout above elevation. DRIVE CUT E&T: Drive cutout above elevation and tilted.	0

Table 6-3. Machine Configuration Programming Information Prior to Software Version P5.3

Configuration Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
GROUND ALARM: 18* * Certain market selections will alter default setting.	0 1 2 3	NO: No ground alarm installed. DRIVE: Travel alarm sounds when the drive function is active (Option). DESCENT: Descent alarm sounds when lift down is active (Option). MOTION: Motion alarm sounds when any function is active (Option).	0
DRIVE: 19* * Only visible under certain model selections.	0 1 2	4WD: Four wheel drive. 2WD: Two wheel drive. 2WD W/ 2-SPEED: Two wheel drive with 2-speed valve.	0
TEMPERATURE: 20	0 1	CELSIUS: Celsius unit selection. FAHRENHEIT: Fahrenheit unit selection.	1
LEVELING MODE: 21* * Only visible on 800S models.	0 1	ALL FUNCTIONS: Platform level with all functions. LEVEL LIFT/TELESCOPE: Platform level on lift and telescope only.	0

4150364-14

Table 6-4. Machine Configuration Programming Information Software Version P5.3 to P6.1

Configuration Label/ Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
MODEL NUMBER: 1	1	400S	1
	2	450A	
	3	510A	
	4	600S	
	5	600A	
	6	600SC	
	7	601S	
	8	740A	
	9	800A	
	10	800S	
MARKET: 2	0	ANSI USA	0
	1	ANSI EXPORT	
	2	CSA	
	3	CE	
	4	AUSTRALIA	
	5	JAPAN	

Table 6-4. Machine Configuration Programming Information Software Version P5.3 to P6.1

Configuration Label/ Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
ENGINE: 3* * Engine selections vary depending on model selection.	1	FORD EFI GAS: Ford LRG425 EFI Gas (Tier 1)	7
	2	FORD EFI D/F: Ford LRG425 EFI dual fuel (Tier 1)	
	3	DEUTZ F4 TIER1: Deutz F4M1011F Diesel (Tier 1)	
	4	DEUTZ F3 TIER1: Deutz F3M1011F Diesel (Tier 1)	
	5	CAT. 3024C: CAT 3024C Diesel (Tier 2)	
	6	CAT. 3044C: CAT 3044C Diesel (Tier 2)	
	7	PERKINS 404C (Tier 2)	
	8	DEUTZ F4 TIER2: Deutz F4M2011 Diesel (Tier 2)	
	9	DEUTZ F3 TIER2: Deutz F3M2011 Diesel (Tier 2)	
	10	FORD GAS TIER2: Ford LRG425 EFI Gas (Tier 2)	
	11	FORD D/F TIER2: Ford LRG425 EFI Dual Fuel (Tier 2)	
	12	DEUTZ ECM: Engine Control Module - ECM	
	13	DUAL FUEL ECM: GM/PSI 3.0L Dual Fuel (Tier 2)	
FLYWHEEL TEETH: 4* * This menu item is only visible if Deutz engine selections 3 or 4 are selected.	0	133 TEETH: 133 flywheel teeth.	1
	1	110 TEETH: 110 flywheel teeth.	
GLOW PLUG: 5	0	NO GLOW PLUGS: No glow plugs installed.	2
	1	AIR INTAKE: Glow plugs installed in the air intake on the manifold.	
	2	IN-CYLINDER: Glow plugs installed in each cylinder.	
STARTER LOCKOUT: 6	0	DISABLED: Automatic pre-glow time determined by ambient air temperature; engine start can be attempted at any time during pre-glow.	0
	1	ENABLED: Automatic pre-glow time determined by ambient air temperature; engine start is NOT permitted until pre-glow is finished.	

Table 6-4. Machine Configuration Programming Information Software Version P5.3 to P6.1

Configuration Label/ Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
ENGINE SHUTDOWN: 7	0 1	DISABLED: No engine shutdown. ENABLED: Shutdown engine when coolant temperature is greater than 110 deg. C or the oil pressure is less than 8 PSI.	1
TILT: 8* * Certain market selections will limit tilt options and alter default setting. *Note: Any of the selections above will light the tilt lamp when a tilted condition occurs and will sound the platform alarm when the machine is also above elevation.*	1 2 3 4 5	5 DEGREES: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 5 degrees and above elevation; also reduces drive speed to creep. 4 DEGREES: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 4 degrees and above elevation; also reduces drive speed to creep. 3 DEGREES: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 3 degrees and above elevation; also reduces drive speed to creep. 4 DEGREES + CUT: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 4 degrees and above elevation; also disallows tower lift up, tower telescope out, drive, main telescope out and main lift up. 3 DEGREES + CUT: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 3 degrees and above elevation; also disallows tower lift up, tower telescope out, drive, main telescope out and main lift up.	1
JIB: 9* * Only visible under certain model selections.	0 1	NO: No jib installed. YES: Jib installed which has up and down movements only.	0
4 WHEEL STEER: 10* * Only visible under certain model selections.	0 1	NO: No four-wheel steer installed. YES: Four-wheel steer installed.	0
SOFT TOUCH: 11* * Only visible under certain model selections.	0 1	NO: No soft touch system installed. YES: Soft touch system installed.	0
GEN SET/WELDER: 12	0 1	NO: No generator installed. BELT DRIVE: Belt driven setup.	0

Table 6-4. Machine Configuration Programming Information Software Version P5.3 to P6.1

Configuration Label/ Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
GEN SET CUTOUT: 13* * Only visible if Gen Set / Welder Menu selection is not 0.	0 1	MOTION ENABLED: Motion enabled when generator is ON. MOTION CUTOUT: Motion cutout in platform mode only.	0
H & T LIGHTS: 14	0 1	NO: No head and tail lights installed. YES: Head and tail lights installed.	0
CABLE SWITCH: 15* * Only visible under certain model selections. * Certain market and model selections will alter the default setting.	0 1	NO: No broken cable switch installed. YES: Broken cable switch installed.	0
LOAD SYSTEM: 16* * Only visible under certain market selections. * Certain market selections will limit load system options or alter default setting.	0 1 2 3 4	NO: No load sensor installed. WARN ONLY: Functions in creep, overload lamp lit, platform alarm beeps (5 sec ON, 2 sec OFF). CUTOUT PLATFORM: All functions cutout, overload lamp lit, platform alarm beeps (5 sec ON, 2 sec OFF). CUTOUT ALL: All functions cutout, flash overload light (500mS on, 500mS off), platform alarm beeps (5 sec ON, 2 sec OFF). SPECIAL 1: Functions in creep, overload lamp lit, disables main telescope out & main lift up, platform alarm beeps (5 sec ON, 2 sec OFF).	0
LOAD SENSOR: 17* * Only visible if Load Sensor Menu selection is not 0 and under certain market selections. * Certain market selections will limit load sensor options.	0 1	1 ON ROTATOR: Use the on-board load sensor for all models except those which use the Leveling Platform Module. 4 UNDER PLATFORM: Use the EIM for load sensing.	1

Table 6-4. Machine Configuration Programming Information Software Version P5.3 to P6.1

Configuration Label/ Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
FUNCTION CUTOUT: 18* * Only visible under certain market selections. * Certain market selections will limit function cutout options or alter default setting.	0 1 2 3	NO: No drive cutout. BOOM CUTOUT: Boom function cutout while driving above elevation. DRIVE CUTOUT: Drive & steer cutout above elevation. DRIVE CUT E&T: Drive & steer cutout above elevation and tilted.	0
GROUND ALARM: 19* * Certain market selections will alter default setting.	0 1 2 3	NO: No ground alarm installed. DRIVE: Travel alarm sounds when the drive function is active (Option). DESCENT: Descent alarm sounds when lift down is active (Option). MOTION: Motion alarm sounds when any function is active (Option).	3
DRIVE: 20* * Only visible under certain model selections.	0 1 2	4WD: Four wheel drive. 2WD: Two wheel drive. 2WD W/ 2-SPEED: Two wheel drive with 2-speed valve.	0
TEMPERATURE: 21* * Certain market selections will alter default setting.	0 1	CELSIUS: Celsius unit selection. FAHRENHEIT: Fahrenheit unit selection.	1
LEVELING MODE: 22* * Only visible on 800S models.	0 1	ALL FUNCTIONS: Platform level with all functions. LEVEL LIFT/TELESCOPE: Platform level on lift and telescope only.	0

4150364-18

Table 6-5. Machine Configuration Programming Information Software Version P6.1 to Present

Configuration Label/ Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
MODEL NUMBER: 1	1	400S	1
	2	450A	
	3	510A	
	4	600S	
	5	600A	
	6	600SC	
	7	601S	
	8	740A	
	9	800A	
	10	800S	
MARKET: 2	0	ANSI USA	0
	1	ANSI EXPORT	
	2	CSA	
	3	CE	
	4	AUSTRALIA	
	5	JAPAN	

Table 6-5. Machine Configuration Programming Information Software Version P6.1 to Present

Configuration Label/ Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
ENGINE: 3* * Engine selections vary depending on model selection.	1	FORD EFI GAS: Ford LRG425 EFI Gas (Tier 1)	14
	2	FORD EFI D/F: Ford LRG425 EFI dual fuel (Tier 1)	
	3	DEUTZ F4 TIER1: Deutz F4M1011F Diesel (Tier 1)	
	4	DEUTZ F3 TIER1: Deutz F3M1011F Diesel (Tier 1)	
	5	CAT. 3024C: CAT 3024C Diesel (Tier 2)	
	6	CAT. 3044C: CAT 3044C Diesel (Tier 2)	
	7	PERKINS 404C (Tier 2)	
	8	DEUTZ F4 TIER2: Deutz F4M2011 Diesel (Tier 2)	
	9	DEUTZ F3 TIER2: Deutz F3M2011 Diesel (Tier 2)	
	10	FORD GAS TIER2: Ford LRG425 EFI Gas (Tier 2)	
	11	FORD D/F TIER2: Ford LRG425 EFI Dual Fuel (Tier 2)	
	12	DEUTZ ECM: Engine Control Module - ECM (Tier 2 and Tier 3)	
	13	DUAL FUEL ECM: GM/PSI 3.0L Dual Fuel (Tier 2)	
	14	PERKINS ECM	
	15	CAT ECM	
FLYWHEEL TEETH: 4* * This menu item is only visible if Deutz engine selections 3 or 4 are selected.	0	133 TEETH: 133 flywheel teeth.	1
	1	110 TEETH: 110 flywheel teeth.	
GLOW PLUG: 5	0	NO GLOW PLUGS: No glow plugs installed.	2
	1	AIR INTAKE: Glow plugs installed in the air intake on the manifold.	
	2	IN-CYLINDER: Glow plugs installed in each cylinder.	

Table 6-5. Machine Configuration Programming Information Software Version P6.1 to Present

Configuration Label/ Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
STARTER LOCKOUT: 6	0 1	DISABLED: Automatic pre-glow time determined by ambient air temperature; engine start can be attempted at any time during pre-glow. ENABLED: Automatic pre-glow time determined by ambient air temperature; engine start is NOT permitted until pre-glow is finished.	0
ENGINE SHUTDOWN: 7	0 1	DISABLED: No engine shutdown. ENABLED: Shutdown engine when coolant temperature is greater than 110 deg. C or the oil pressure is less than 8 PSI.	1
TILT: 8* * Certain market selections will limit tilt options and alter default setting. *Note: Any of the selections above will light the tilt lamp when a tilted condition occurs and will sound the platform alarm when the machine is also above elevation.*	1 2 3 4 5	5 DEGREES: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 5 degrees and above elevation; also reduces drive speed to creep. 4 DEGREES: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 4 degrees and above elevation; also reduces drive speed to creep. 3 DEGREES: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 3 degrees and above elevation; also reduces drive speed to creep. 4 DEGREES + CUT: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 4 degrees and above elevation; also disallows tower lift up, tower telescope out, drive, main telescope out and main lift up. 3 DEGREES + CUT: Reduces the maximum speed of all boom functions to creep when tilted more than 3 degrees and above elevation; also disallows tower lift up, tower telescope out, drive, main telescope out and main lift up.	1
JIB: 9* * Only visible under certain model selections.	0 1	NO: No jib installed. YES: Jib installed which has up and down movements only.	0
4 WHEEL STEER: 10* * Only visible under certain model selections.	0 1	NO: No four-wheel steer installed. YES: Four-wheel steer installed.	0
SOFT TOUCH: 11* * Only visible under certain model selections.	0 1	NO: No soft touch system installed. YES: Soft touch system installed.	0

Table 6-5. Machine Configuration Programming Information Software Version P6.1 to Present

Configuration Label/ Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
GEN SET/WELDER: 12	0 1	NO: No generator installed. BELT DRIVE: Belt driven setup.	0
GEN SET CUTOUT: 13* * Only visible if Gen Set / Welder Menu selection is not 0.	0 1	MOTION ENABLED: Motion enabled when generator is ON. MOTION CUTOUT: Motion cutout in platform mode only.	0
H & T LIGHTS: 14	0 1	NO: No head and tail lights installed. YES: Head and tail lights installed.	0
CABLE SWITCH: 15* * Only visible under certain model selections. * Certain market and model selections will alter the default setting.	0 1	NO: No broken cable switch installed. YES: Broken cable switch installed.	0
LOAD SYSTEM: 16* * Only visible under certain market selections. * Certain market selections will limit load system options or alter default setting.	0 1 2 3 4	NO: No load sensor installed. WARN ONLY: Functions in creep, overload lamp lit, platform alarm beeps (5 sec ON, 2 sec OFF). CUTOUT PLATFORM: All functions cutout, overload lamp lit, platform alarm beeps (5 sec ON, 2 sec OFF). CUTOUT ALL: All functions cutout, flash overload light (500mS on, 500mS off), platform alarm beeps (5 sec ON, 2 sec OFF). SPECIAL 1: Functions in creep, overload lamp lit, disables main telescope out & main lift up, platform alarm beeps (5 sec ON, 2 sec OFF).	0

Table 6-5. Machine Configuration Programming Information Software Version P6.1 to Present

Configuration Label/ Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
LOAD SENSOR: 17* * Only visible if Load Sensor Menu selection is not 0 and under certain market selections. * Certain market selections will limit load sensor options.	0 1	1 ON ROTATOR: Use the on-board load sensor for all models except those which use the Leveling Platform Module. 4 UNDER PLATFORM: Use the EIM for load sensing.	1
FUNCTION CUTOUT: 18* * Only visible under certain market selections. * Certain market selections will limit function cutout options or alter default setting.	0 1 2 3	NO: No drive cutout. BOOM CUTOUT: Boom function cutout while driving above elevation. DRIVE CUTOUT: Drive & steer cutout above elevation. DRIVE CUT E&T: Drive & steer cutout above elevation and tilted.	0
GROUND ALARM: 19* * Certain market selections will alter default setting.	0 1 2 3	NO: No ground alarm installed. DRIVE: Travel alarm sounds when the drive function is active (Option). DESCENT: Descent alarm sounds when lift down is active (Option). MOTION: Motion alarm sounds when any function is active (Option).	3
DRIVE: 20* * Only visible under certain model selections.	0 1 2	4WD: Four wheel drive. 2WD: Two wheel drive. 2WD W/ 2-SPEED: Two wheel drive with 2-speed valve.	0
TEMPERATURE: 21* * Certain market selections will alter default setting.	0 1	CELSIUS: Celsius unit selection. FAHRENHEIT: Fahrenheit unit selection.	1

Table 6-5. Machine Configuration Programming Information Software Version P6.1 to Present

Configuration Label/ Digit	Number	Description	Default Number
LEVELING MODE: 22* * Only visible on 800S models.	0	ALL FUNCTIONS: Platform level with all functions.	0
	1	LEVEL LIFT/TELESCOPE: Platform level on lift and telescope only.	
DRIVE CONTROL: 23	0	NORMAL: Drive coils are energized from the Ground Module.	2
	1	PROPULSION: Drive coils are energized from the Propulsion Module.	
	2	ENHANCED: Drive coils are energized from the Ground Module and the ground side of the drive coils are brought back to current feedback returns.	
CLEARSKY: 24	0	NO: Clearsky (telematics) option is disabled.	0
	1	YES: Clearsky (telematics) option is enabled.	
CRIBBING OPTION: 25	0	NO: Cribbing Option is disabled.	0
	1	YES: Cribbing Option is enabled.	

4150364-19

NOTE: *Bold Italic Numbers indicate the default setting. Plain text indicates another available selection. Bold, Italic underlined numbers indicate the default when the option is factory installed.*

600S	MODEL NUMBER	MARKET	ENGINE	GLOW PLUGS			ENGINE SHUTDOWN		TILT					JIB	4 WHEEL STEER	SOFT TOUCH		GEN SET / WELDER		GEN SET CUTOUT		HEAD & TAIL LIGHTS	
ANSI USA	***4***	***0***	***11***	0	***1***	2	0	***1***	***1***	2	3	4	5	***0***	***0***	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1
ANSI EXPORT	***4***	***1***	***11***	0	***1***	2	0	***1***	***1***	2	3	4	5	***0***	***0***	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1
CSA	***4***	***2***	***11***	0	***1***	2	0	***1***	***1***	2	3	4	5	***0***	***0***	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1
CE	***4***	***3***	***11***	0	***1***	2	0	***1***	***X***	***X***	***3***	***X***	5	***0***	***0***	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1
AUSTRALIA	***4***	***4***	***11***	0	***1***	2	0	***1***	***X***	***X***	***3***	***X***	5	***0***	***0***	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1
JAPAN	***4***	***5***	***11***	0	***1***	2	0	***1***	***1***	2	3	4	5	***0***	***0***	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1

600S	CABLE BREAK SWITCH		LOAD SYSTEM					LOAD SENSOR		FUNCTION CUTOUT				GROUND ALARM				DRIVE TYPE			TEMPERATURE	
ANSI USA	0	1	***0***	***X***	***X***	***X***	***X***	***0***	***1***	***0***	***X***	***X***	***X***	***0***	1	2	3	***0***	1	2	0	***1***
ANSI EXPORT	0	1	***0***	***1***	2	3	4	0	***1***	***0***	1	2	3	***0***	1	2	3	***0***	1	2	0	***1***
CSA	0	1	***0***	***X***	***X***	***X***	***X***	0	***1***	***0***	1	2	3	0	1	2	***3***	***0***	1	2	***0***	1
CE	0	1	0	***X***	***2***	3	***X***	0	***1***	0	***1***	***X***	***X***	0	1	2	***3***	***0***	1	2	***0***	1
AUSTRALIA	0	1	***0***	***1***	2	3	4	0	***1***	***0***	1	2	3	***0***	1	2	3	***0***	1	2	***0***	1
JAPAN	0	1	0	***1***	2	3	4	0	***1***	***0***	1	2	3	0	1	2	***3***	***0***	1	2	***0***	1

NOTE: *Bold Italic Numbers indicate the default setting. Plain text indicates another available selection. Italic, underlined numbers indicate the default when the option is factory installed.*

600SJ

	MODEL NUMBER	MARKET	ENGINE	GLOW PLUGS			ENGINE SHUTDOWN		TILT					JIB	4 WHEEL STEER	SOFT TOUCH		GEN SET / WELDER		GEN SET CUTOUT		HEAD & TAIL LIGHTS	
ANSI USA	***4***	***0***	***11***	***0***	1	2	0	***1***	***1***	2	3	4	5	***1***	***0***	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1
ANSI EXPORT	***4***	***1***	***11***	***0***	1	2	0	***1***	***1***	2	3	4	5	***1***	***0***	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1
CSA	***4***	***2***	***11***	***0***	1	2	0	***1***	***1***	2	3	4	5	***1***	***0***	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1
CE	***4***	***3***	***11***	***0***	1	2	0	***1***	***X***	***X***	***3***	***X***	5	***1***	***0***	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1
AUSTRALIA	***4***	***4***	***11***	***0***	1	2	0	***1***	***X***	***X***	***3***	***X***	5	***1***	***0***	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1
JAPAN	***4***	***5***	***11***	***0***	1	2	0	***1***	***1***	2	3	4	5	***1***	***0***	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1

600SJ

	CABLE BREAK SWITCH		LOAD SYSTEM					LOAD SENSOR		FUNCTION CUTOUT				GROUND ALARM				DRIVE TYPE			TEMPERATURE	
ANSI USA	***0***	1						0	***1***	***0***	X	X	X	***0***	1	2	3	***0***	1	2	0	***1***
ANSI EXPORT	***0***	1	***0***	*1*	2	3	4	0	***1***	***0***	1	2	3	***0***	1	2	3	***0***	1	2	0	***1***
CSA	***0***	1						0	***1***	***0***	1	2	3	0	1	2	***3***	***0***	1	2	***0***	1
CE	0	***1***	0		***2***	3		0	***1***	0	***1***	***X***	***X***	0	1	2	***3***	***0***	1	2	***0***	1
AUSTRALIA	0	***1***	***0***	*1*	2	3	4	0	***1***	***0***	1	2	3	***0***	1	2	3	***0***	1	2	***0***	1
JAPAN	***0***	1	0	***1***	2	3	4	0	***1***	***0***	1	2	3	0	1	2	***3***	***0***	1	2	***0***	1

NOTE: *Bold Italic Numbers indicate the default setting. Plain text indicates another available selection. Italic, underlined numbers indicate the default when the option is factory installed.*

660SJ

	MODEL NUMBER	MARKET	ENGINE	GLOW PLUGS			ENGINE SHUTDOWN		TILT					JIB	4 WHEEL STEER	SOFT TOUCH		GEN SET / WELDER		GEN SET CUTOUT		HEAD & TAIL LIGHTS	
ANSI USA	***4***	***0***	***11***	0	***1***	2	0	***1***	***1***	2	3	4	5	***1***	***0***	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1
ANSI EXPORT	***4***	***1***	***11***	0	***1***	2	0	***1***	***1***	2	3	4	5	***1***	***0***	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1
CSA	***4***	***2***	***11***	0	***1***	2	0	***1***	***1***	2	3	4	5	***1***	***0***	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1
CE	***4***	***3***	***11***	0	***1***	2	0	***1***	***X***	***X***	***3***	***X***	5	***1***	***0***	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1
AUSTRALIA	***4***	***4***	***11***	0	***1***	2	0	***1***	***X***	***X***	***3***	***X***	5	***1***	***0***	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1
JAPAN	***4***	***5***	***11***	0	***1***	2	0	***1***	***1***	2	3	4	5	***1***	***0***	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1	***0***	1

660SJ

	CABLE BREAK SWITCH		LOAD SYSTEM					LOAD SENSOR		FUNCTION CUTOUT				GROUND ALARM				DRIVE TYPE			TEMPERATURE	
ANSI USA	***0***	1	***0***	***X***	***X***	***X***	***X***	0	***1***	***0***	X	X	X	***0***	1	2	3	***0***	1	2	0	***1***
ANSI EXPORT	***0***	1	***0***	*1*	2	3	4	0	***1***	***0***	1	2	3	***0***	1	2	3	***0***	1	2	0	***1***
CSA	***0***	1	***0***	***X***	***X***	***X***	***X***	0	***1***	***0***	1	2	3	0	1	2	***3***	***0***	1	2	***0***	1
CE	***0***	***1***	0	***X***	***2***	3	***X***	0	***1***	0	***1***	***X***	***X***	0	1	2	***3***	***0***	1	2	***0***	1
AUSTRALIA	***0***	***1***	***0***	*1*	2	3	4	0	***1***	***0***	1	2	3	***0***	1	2	3	***0***	1	2	***0***	1
JAPAN	***0***	1	***0***	1	2	3	4	0	***1***	***0***	1	2	3	0	1	2	***3***	***0***	1	2	***0***	1

Table 6-6. Fault Code Listing

HELP MESSAGE	FAULT		FAULT REMOVAL
OK	0	0	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
DRIVING AT CREEP - TILTED	0	0	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FSW OPEN	0	0	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
RUNNING AT CREEP - CREEP SWITCH OPEN	0	0	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
RUNNING AT CREEP - TILTED AND ABOVE ELEVATION	0	0	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
RUNNING AT CUTBACK - ABOVE ELEVATION	0	0	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
TILT SENSOR OUT OF RANGE	0	0	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
LOAD SENSOR READING UNDER WEIGHT	0	0	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FSW FAULTY	2	1	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
KEYSWITCH FAULTY	2	1	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
DRIVE LOCKED - JOYSTICK MOVED BEFORE FOOTSWITCH	2	2	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FSW INTERLOCK TRIPPED	2	2	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
STEER LOCKED - SELECTED BEFORE FOOTSWITCH	2	2	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
STEER SWITCHES FAULTY	2	2	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
D/S JOY. QPROX BAD	2	2	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
L/S JOY. QPROX BAD	2	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
D/S JOY. OUT OF RANGE LOW	2	2	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
D/S JOY. OUT OF RANGE HIGH	2	2	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
L/S JOY. OUT OF RANGE LOW	2	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
L/S JOY. OUT OF RANGE HIGH	2	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
D/S JOY. CENTER TAP BAD	2	2	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
L/S JOY. CENTER TAP BAD	2	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
WAITING FOR FSW TO BE OPEN	2	2	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
PUMP POT FAULTY	2	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
PUMP SWITCHES FAULTY - CHECK DIAGNOSTICS/BOOM	2	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
PUMP SWITCHES LOCKED - SELECTED BEFORE FOOTSWITCH	2	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
PUMP SWITCHES LOCKED - SELECTED BEFORE START SWITCH	2	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FOOTSWITCH SELECTED BEFORE START	2	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
BOOM PREVENTED - DRIVE SELECTED	2	5	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
DRIVE PREVENTED - ABOVE ELEVATION	2	5	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
DRIVE PREVENTED - TILTED & ABOVE ELEVATION	2	5	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
DRIVE PREVENTED - BOOM SELECTED	2	5	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED

Table 6-6. Fault Code Listing

HELP MESSAGE	FAULT		FAULT REMOVAL
FORD ECM POWER SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
HORN SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
HORN OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
HORN SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
AUX POWER SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
AUX POWER OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
AUX POWER SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
GLOW PLUG SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
GLOW PLUG OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
GLOW PLUG SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
LP LOCK SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
LP LOCK OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
LP LOCK SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
LP START ASSIST SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
LP START ASSIST OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
LP START ASSIST SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
MAIN DUMP SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
MAIN DUMP OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
MAIN DUMP SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
PARKING BRAKE SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
PARKING BRAKE OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
PARKING BRAKE SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
START SOLENOID SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
START SOLENOID OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
START SOLENOID SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
STEER DUMP SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
STEER DUMP OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
STEER DUMP SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
TWO SPEED SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
TWO SPEED OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
TWO SPEED SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
ALARM SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
ALARM OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT

Table 6-6. Fault Code Listing

HELP MESSAGE	FAULT		FAULT REMOVAL
ALARM SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
GENERATOR SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
GENERATOR OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
GENERATOR SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
HEAD TAIL LIGHT SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
HEAD TAIL LIGHT OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
HEAD TAIL LIGHT SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
HOUR METER SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
HOUR METER SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
BASKET UP SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
BASKET UP OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
BASKET UP SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
BASKET DOWN SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
BASKET DOWN OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
BASKET DOWN SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
BASKET LEFT SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
BASKET LEFT OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
BASKET LEFT SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
BASKET RIGHT SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
BASKET RIGHT OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
BASKET RIGHT SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
JIB UP SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
JIB UP OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
JIB UP SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
JIB DOWN SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
JIB DOWN OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
JIB DOWN SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
JIB LEFT SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
JIB LEFT OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
JIB LEFT SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
JIB RIGHT SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
JIB RIGHT OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
JIB RIGHT SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT

Table 6-6. Fault Code Listing

HELP MESSAGE	FAULT		FAULT REMOVAL
TOWER UP SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
TOWER UP OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
TOWER UP SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
TOWER DOWN SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
TOWER DOWN OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
TOWER DOWN SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
TOWER IN SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
TOWER IN OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
TOWER IN SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
TOWER OUT SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
TOWER OUT OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
TOWER OUT SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
UPPER IN SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
UPPER IN OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
UPPER IN SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
UPPER OUT SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
UPPER OUT OPEN CIRCUIT	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
UPPER OUT SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
FUEL SENSOR SHORT TO BATTERY	3	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FUEL SENSOR SHORT TO GROUND	3	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
OIL PRESSURE SHORT TO BATTERY	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
OIL PRESSURE SHORT TO GROUND	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
COOLANT TEMPERATURE SHORT TO GROUND	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 12	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 13	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 14	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 15	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 21	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 22	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 23	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 24	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 25	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 26	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED

Table 6-6. Fault Code Listing

HELP MESSAGE	FAULT		FAULT REMOVAL
FORD FAULT CODE 31	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 32	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 33	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 34	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 35	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 36	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 41	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 42	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 43	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 44	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 45	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 46	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 51	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 52	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 53	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 54	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 55	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 56	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 57	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 61	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 62	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 63	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE 64	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
FORD FAULT CODE UNKNOWN	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
RETURN FILTER BYPASSED	2	8	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
CHARGE PUMP FILTER BYPASSED	2	8	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
BATTERY LOW	4	4	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
BATTERY TOO HIGH - SYSTEM SHUT DOWN	4	4	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
BATTERY TOO LOW - SYSTEM SHUT DOWN	4	4	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
SPEED SENSOR READING INVALID SPEED	5	5	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
SPEED INPUT LOST	5	5	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
ENGINE TEMP HIGH	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
AIR FILTER BYPASSED	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED

Table 6-6. Fault Code Listing

HELP MESSAGE	FAULT		FAULT REMOVAL
NO ALTERNATOR OUTPUT	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
OIL PRESSURE LOW	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
485 COMMUNICATIONS LOST	4	3	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
CAN BUS FAILURE	6	6	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
LOAD SENSOR NOT CALIBRATED	9	9	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
TILT SENSOR NOT CALIBRATED	9	9	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
EEPROM FAILURE - CHECK ALL SETTINGS	9	9	REQUIRES EMS TO BE RECYCLED TO CLEAR FAULT
PLATFORM MODULE FAILURE: HWFS CODE 1	9	9	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED
GROUND MODULE FAILURE: HWFS CODE 1	9	9	CLEARS WHEN FAULT IS REMOVED

6.9 ANALYZER DIAGNOSTICS MENU STRUCTURE

In the following structure descriptions, an intended item is selected by pressing ENTER; pressing ESC steps back to the next outer level. The LEFT/RIGHT arrow keys move between items in the same level. The UP/DOWN arrow keys alter a value if allowed

Table 6-7. Adjustments - Personality Descriptions

DRIVE	
ACCEL …	Displays/adjusts drive acceleration
DECEL …	Displays/adjusts drive deceleration
MIN FORWARD …	Displays/adjusts minimum forward drive speed
MAX FORWARD …	Displays/adjusts maximum forward drive speed
MIN REVERSE …	Displays/adjusts minimum reverse drive speed
MAX REVERSE …	Displays/adjusts maximum reverse drive speed
ELEVATED MAX …	Displays/adjusts maximum drive speed NOTE: used when elevation cutout switches are limiting maximum speed
CREEP MAX …	Displays/adjusts maximum drive speed NOTE: used when creep switch on pump pot is active
STEER MAX …	Displays/adjusts the maximum steer speed
LIFT	
ACCEL …	Displays/adjusts upper lift acceleration
DECEL …	Displays/adjusts upper lift deceleration
MIN UP …	Displays/adjusts minimum upper lift up speed
MAX UP …	Displays/adjusts maximum upper lift up speed
CREEP UP …	Displays/adjusts maximum upper lift up speed NOTE: used when creep switch on pump pot is active
MIN DOWN …	Displays/adjusts minimum upper lift down speed
MAX DOWN …	Displays/adjusts maximum upper lift down speed
CREEP DOWN …	Displays/adjusts maximum upper lift down speed NOTE: used when creep switch on pump pot is active

Table 6-7. Adjustments - Personality Descriptions

SWING	
ACCEL …	Displays/adjusts swing acceleration
DECEL …	Displays/adjusts swing deceleration
MIN LEFT …	Displays/adjusts minimum swing left speed
MAX LEFT …	Displays/adjusts maximum swing left speed
CREEP LEFT …	Displays/adjusts maximum swing left speed NOTE: used when creep switch on pump pot is active
MIN RIGHT …	Displays/adjusts minimum swing right speed
MAX RIGHT …	Displays/adjusts maximum swing right speed
CREEP RIGHT …	Displays/adjusts maximum swing right speed NOTE: used when creep switch on pump pot is active
UPPER TELESCOPE	
ACCEL …	Displays/adjusts telescope acceleration
DECEL …	Displays/adjusts telescope deceleration
MIN IN …	Displays/adjusts minimum telescope in speed
MAX IN …	Displays/adjusts maximum telescope in speed
MIN OUT …	Displays/adjusts minimum telescope out speed
MAX OUT …	Displays/adjusts maximum telescope out speed
BASKET LEVEL	
ACCEL …	Displays/adjusts basket level acceleration
DECEL …	Displays/adjusts basket level deceleration
MIN UP …	Displays/adjusts minimum basket level up speed
MAX UP …	Displays/adjusts maximum basket level up speed
MIN DOWN …	Displays/adjusts minimum basket level down speed
MAX DOWN …	Displays/adjusts maximum basket level down speed
BASKET ROTATE	
ACCEL …	Displays/adjusts basket rotate acceleration
DECEL …	Displays/adjusts basket rotate deceleration
MIN LEFT …	Displays/adjusts minimum basket rotate left speed
MAX LEFT …	Displays/adjusts maximum basket rotate left speed
MIN RIGHT …	Displays/adjusts minimum basket rotate right speed
MAX RIGHT …	Displays/adjusts maximum basket rotate right speed

Table 6-7. Adjustments - Personality Descriptions

JIB LIFT	Not displayed if JIB = NO
ACCEL …	Displays/adjusts jib acceleration
DECEL …	Displays/adjusts jib deceleration
MIN UP …	Displays/adjusts minimum jib up speed
MAX UP …	Displays/adjusts maximum jib up speed
MIN DOWN …	Displays/adjusts minimum jib down speed
MAX DOWN …	Displays/adjusts maximum jib down speed
MIN LEFT …	Displays/adjusts minimum jib left speed
MAX LEFT …	Displays/adjusts maximum jib left speed
MIN RIGHT …	Displays/adjusts minimum jib right speed
MAX RIGHT …	Displays/adjusts maximum jib right speed
STEER	
MAX SPEED …	Displays/adjusts maximum steer speed, which applies when vehicle speed is at minimum
GROUND MODE	
LIFT UP …	Displays/adjusts fixed lift up speed
LIFT DOWN …	Displays/adjusts fixed lift down speed
SWING …	Displays/adjusts fixed swing speed
TELE …	Displays/adjusts fixed telescope speed
BASKETLEVEL …	Displays/adjusts fixed basket level speed
BASKETROTATE …	Displays/adjusts fixed basket rotate speed
JIB (U/D) …	Displays/adjusts jib lift speed Not displayed if JIB = NO
JIB (L/R)…	Displays/adjusts jib swing speed Not displayed if JIB = NO

Table 6-8. Diagnostic Menu Descriptions

DRIVE	
DRIVE FOR …	Displays drive joystick direction & demand
STEER …	Displays steer switch direction & demand NOTE: steer demand is inversely proportional to vehicle speed
BRAKES …	Displays brake control system status
CREEP …	Displays pump pot creep switch status
TWO SPEED ...	Displays two speed switch status
2 SPEED MODE	Displays status of two speed valve
HIGH ENGINE	Displays high engine switch status
BOOM	
U LIFT UP …	Displays lift joystick direction & demand
SWING LEFT …	Displays swing joystick direction & demand
LEVEL UP …	Displays basket level switch direction & demand NOTE: demand is controlled by the pump pot
ROT. LEFT …	Displays basket rotate switch direction & demand NOTE: demand is controlled by the pump pot
U TELE IN …	Displays telescope switch direction & demand NOTE: demand is controlled by the pump pot
JIB UP …	Displays jib lift switch direction & demand NOTE: demand is controlled by the pump pot Not displayed if JIB = NO
JIB LEFT …	Displays jib swing switch direction & demand NOTE: demand is controlled by the pump pot Not displayed if JIB = NO
PUMP POT …	Displays pump pot demand
ENGINE	
START …	Displays start switch status
AIR FILTER …	Displays air filter status
BATTERY …	Displays measured battery voltage
COOLANT …	Displays coolant temperature
OIL PRS …	Displays oil pressure status
FUEL SELECT …	Displays selected fuel (Dual Fuel only)
FUEL LEVEL …	Displays fuel level status
RPM	Displays Engine RPM
GM BATTERY	Displays battery voltage at ground module

Table 6-8. Diagnostic Menu Descriptions

PM BATTERY …	Displays battery voltage at platform module
TEMP ...	Displays ground module temperature
ELEV. CUTOUT …	Displays elevation cutout switch status
FUNC. CUTOUT …	Displays function cutout switch status
CREEP…	Displays creep switch status
TILT …	Displays measured vehicle tilt
AUX POWER …	Displays status of auxiliary power switch
HORN …	Displays status of horn switch
R FILTER …	Displays status of return filter switch
C FILTER …	Displays status of charge pump filter
LOAD LENGTH …	Displays length switch status
ANGLE …	Displays angle switch status
LOAD …	Displays load sensor value NOTE: Not displayed if load = 0.
DATALOG	
ON …	Displays total controller on (EMS) time
ENGINE …	Displays engine run time
DRIVE …	Displays total controller drive operation time
LIFT …	Displays total controller lift operation time
SWING …	Displays total controller swing operation time
TELE …	Displays total controller tele operation time
MAX.TEMP …	Displays maximum measured heatsink temp.
MIN.TEMP …	Displays minimum measured heatsink temp.
MAX.VOLTS …	Displays maximum measured battery voltage
RENTAL …	Displays total controller operation time NOTE: can be reset
ERASE RENTAL	Not available at password level 2
YES:ENTER, NO:ESC	ENTER resets rental datalog time to zero
VERSIONS	
GROUND …	Displays ground module software version
PLATFORM …	Displays platform module software version
ANALYSER …	Displays Analyzer software version

NOTES:

SECTION 7. BASIC ELECTRICAL INFORMATION & SCHEMATICS

7.1 GENERAL

This section contains basic electrical information and schematics to be used for locating and correcting most of the operating problems which may develop. If a problem should develop which is not presented in this section or which is not corrected by listed corrective actions, technically qualified guidance should be obtained before proceeding with any maintenance.

7.2 MULTIMETER BASICS

A wide variety of multimeters or Volt Ohm Meters (VOM) can be used for troubleshooting your equipment. This section shows diagrams of a common, digital VOM configured for several different circuit measurements. Instructions for your VOM may vary. Please consult the meter operator's manual for more information.

Grounding

"Grounding the meter" means to take the black lead (which is connected to the COM (common) or negative port) and touch it to a good path to the negative side of the Voltage source.

Backprobing

To "backprobe" means to take the measurement by accessing a connector's contact on the same side as the wires, the back of the connector. Readings can be done while maintaining circuit continuity this way. If the connector is the sealed type, great care must be taken to avoid damaging the seal around the wire. It is best to use probes or probe tips specifically designed for this technique, especially on sealed connectors. Whenever possible insert probes into the side of the connector such that the test also checks both terminals of the connection. It is possible to inspect a connection within a closed connector by backprobing both sides of a connector terminal and measuring resistance. Do this after giving each wire a gentle pull to ensure the wires are still attached to the contact and contacts are seated in the connector.

Min/Max

Use of the "Min/Max" recording feature of some meters can help when taking measurements of intermittent conditions while alone. For example, you can read the Voltage applied to a solenoid when it is only operational while a switch, far from the solenoid and meter, is held down.

Polarity

Getting a negative Voltage or current reading when expecting a positive reading frequently means the leads are reversed. Check what reading is expected, the location of the signal and that the leads are connected to the device under test correctly. Also check that the lead on the "COM" port goes to the Ground or negative side of the signal and the lead on the other port goes to the positive side of the signal.

Scale

M = Mega = 1,000,000 * (Displayed Number)

k = kilo = 1,000 * (Displayed Number)

m = milli = (Displayed Number) / 1,000

μ = micro = (Displayed Number) / 1,000,000

Example: 1.2 kΩ = 1200 Ω
Example: 50 mA = 0.05 A

Voltage Measurement

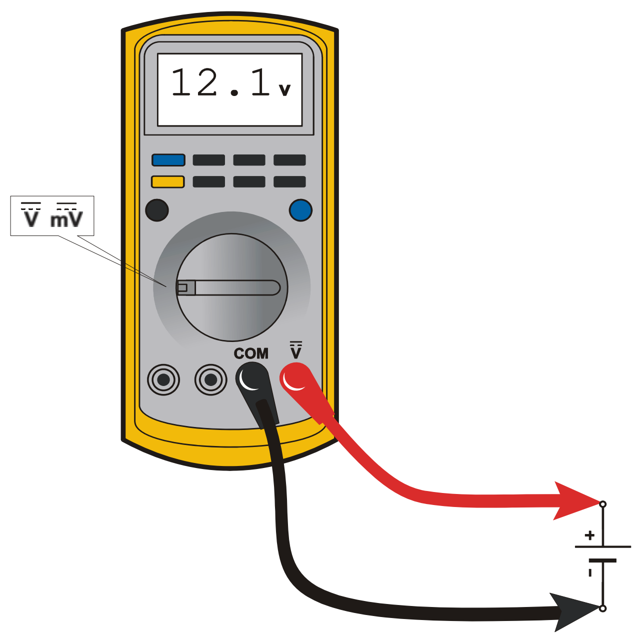


Figure 7-1. Voltage Measurement (DC)

- If meter is not auto ranging, set it to the correct range (See multimeter's operation manual)
- Use firm contact with meter leads

Resistance Measurement

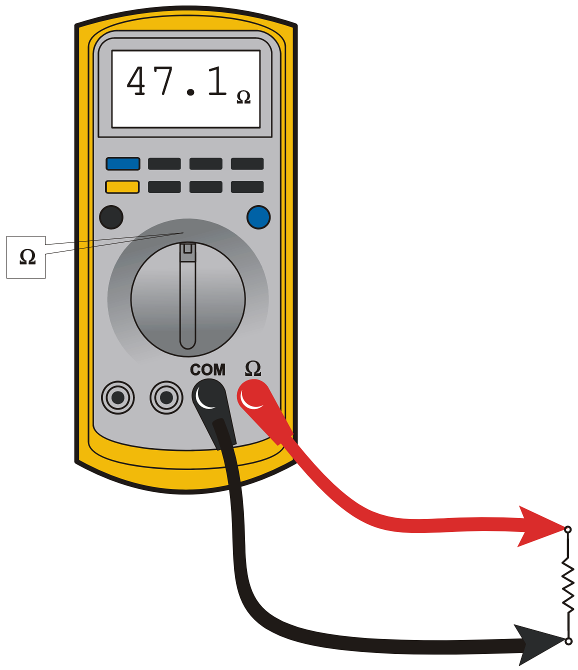


Figure 7-2. Resistance Measurement

- First test meter and leads by touching leads together. Resistance should read a short circuit (very low resistance)
- Circuit power must be turned OFF before testing resistance
- Disconnect component from circuit before testing
- If meter is not auto ranging, set it to the correct range (See multimeter's operation manual)
- Use firm contact with meter leads

Continuity Measurement

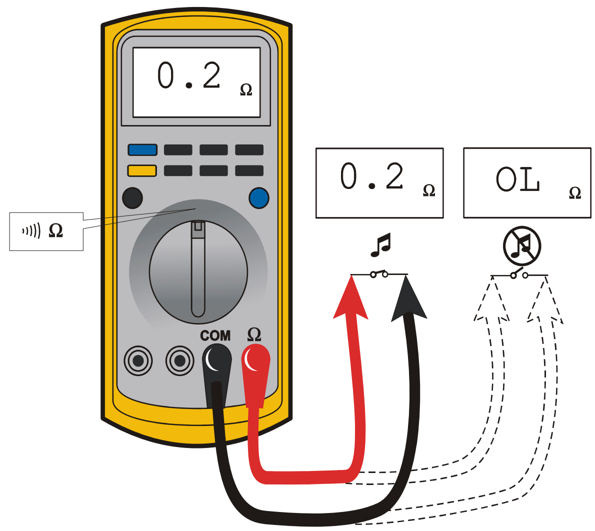


Figure 7-3. Continuity Measurement

- Some meters require a separate button press to enable audible continuity testing
- Circuit power must be turned OFF before testing continuity
- Disconnect component from circuit before testing
- Use firm contact with meter leads
- First test meter and leads by touching leads together. Meter should produce an audible alarm, indicating continuity

Current Measurement

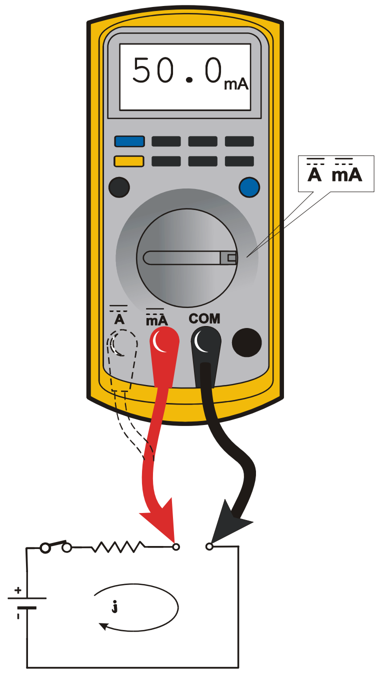


Figure 7-4. Current Measurement (DC)

- Set up the meter for the expected current range
- Be sure to connect the meter leads to the correct jacks for the current range you have selected
- If meter is not auto ranging, set it to the correct range (See multi meter's operation manual)
- Use firm contact with meter leads

7.3 APPLYING SILICONE DIELECTRIC COMPOUND TO ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

NOTE: *Do NOT apply dielectric grease to the following connections:*

- Main Boom Rotary sensor connections (on Celesco Sensor),
- LSS Modules connections,
- Deutz EMR 2 ECM connection.

Silicone Dielectric Compound must be used on all electrical connections except for those mentioned above for the following reasons:

- To prevent oxidation at the mechanical joint between male and female pins.
- To prevent electrical malfunction caused by low level conductivity between pins when wet.

Use the following procedure to apply Silicone Dielectric Compound to the electrical connectors. This procedure applies to all plug connections not enclosed in a box. Silicone grease should not be applied to connectors with external seals.

1. To prevent oxidation, silicone grease must be packed completely around male and female pins on the inside of the connector prior to assembly. This is most easily achieved by using a syringe.

NOTE: *Over a period of time, oxidation increases electrical resistance at the connection, eventually causing circuit failure.*

2. To prevent shorting, silicone grease must be packed around each wire where they enter the outside of the connector housing. Also, silicone grease must be applied at the joint where the male and female connectors come together. Any other joints (around strain reliefs, etc.) where water could enter the connector should also be sealed.

NOTE: *This condition is especially common when machines are pressure washed since the washing solution is much more conductive than water.*

3. Anderson connectors for the battery boxes and battery chargers should have silicone grease applied to the contacts only.

NOTE: *Curing-type sealants might also be used to prevent shorting and would be less messy, but would make future pin removal more difficult.*

7.4 AMP CONNECTOR

Applying Silicone Dielectric Compound to AMP Connectors

Silicone Dielectric Compound must be used on the AMP connections for the following reasons:

- To prevent oxidation at the mechanical joint between male and female pins.
- To prevent electrical malfunction caused by low level conductivity between pins when wet.

Use the following procedure to apply Silicone Dielectric Compound to the electrical connectors.

1. To prevent oxidation and low level conductivity, silicone dielectric grease must be packed completely around male and female pins on the inside of the connector after the mating of the housing to the header. This is easily achieved by using a syringe to fill the header with silicone dielectric compound, to a point just above the top of the male pins inside the header. When assembling the housing to the header, it is possible that the housing will become air locked, thus preventing the housing latch from engaging.
2. Pierce one of the unused wire seals to allow the trapped air inside the housing to escape.
3. Install a hole plug into this and/or any unused wire seal that has silicone dielectric compound escaping from it.

Assembly

Check to be sure the wedge lock is in the open, or as-shipped, position (See Figure 7-5.). Proceed as follows:

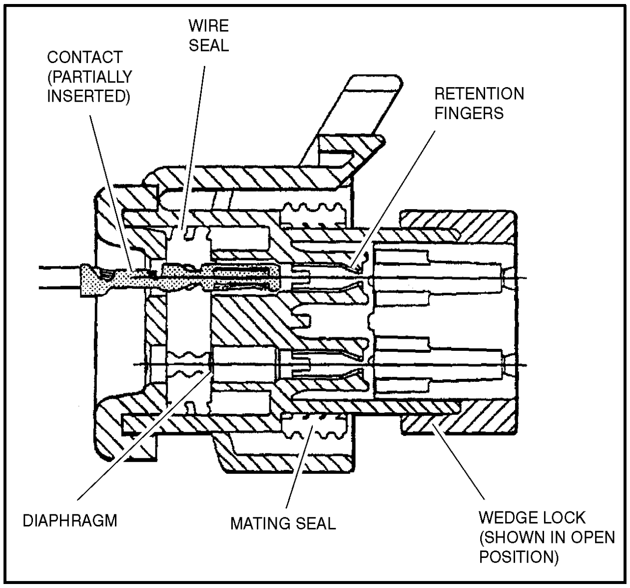


Figure 7-5. Connector Assembly Figure 1

1. To insert a contact, push it straight into the appropriate circuit cavity as far as it will go (See Figure 7-7.).
2. Pull back on the contact wire with a force of 1 or 2 lbs. to be sure the retention fingers are holding the contact (See Figure 7-7.).

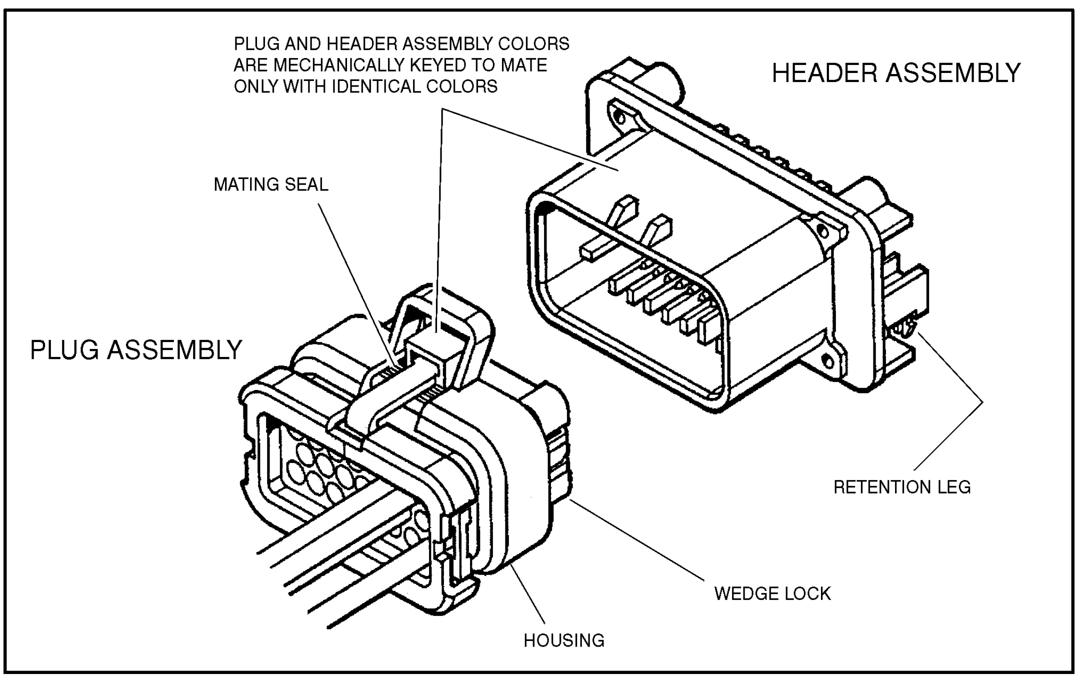


Figure 7-6. AMP Connector

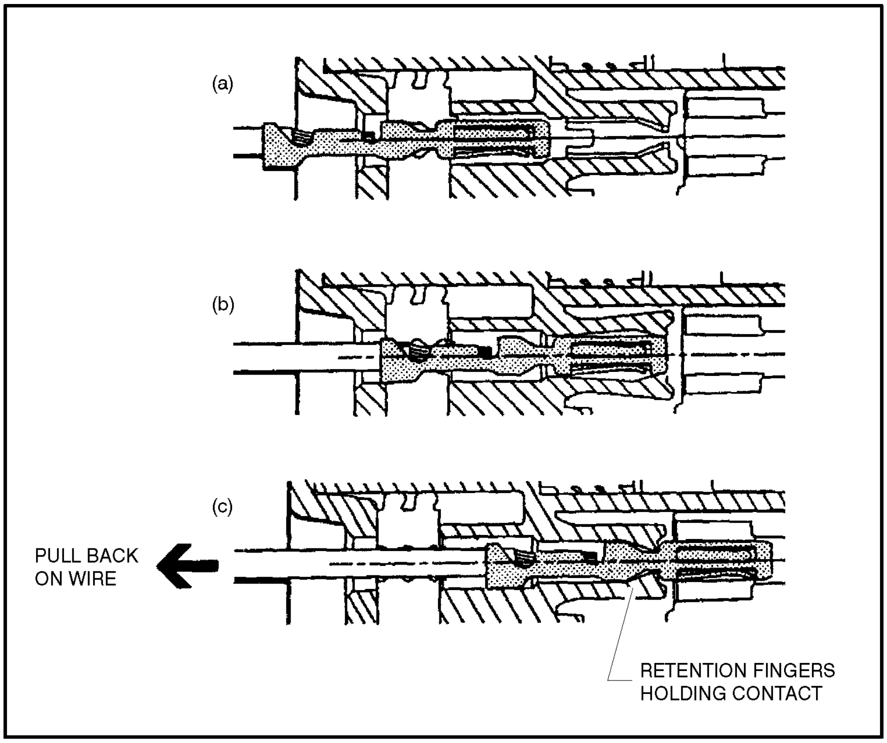


Figure 7-7. Connector Assembly Figure 2

3. After all required contacts have been inserted, the wedge lock must be closed to its locked position. Release the locking latches by squeezing them inward (See Figure 7-8.).

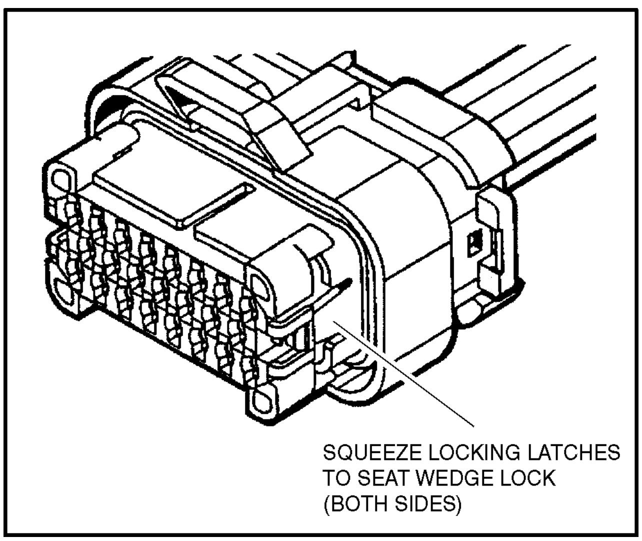


Figure 7-8. Connector Assembly Figure 3

4. Slide the wedge lock into the housing until it is flush with the housing (See Figure 7-9.).

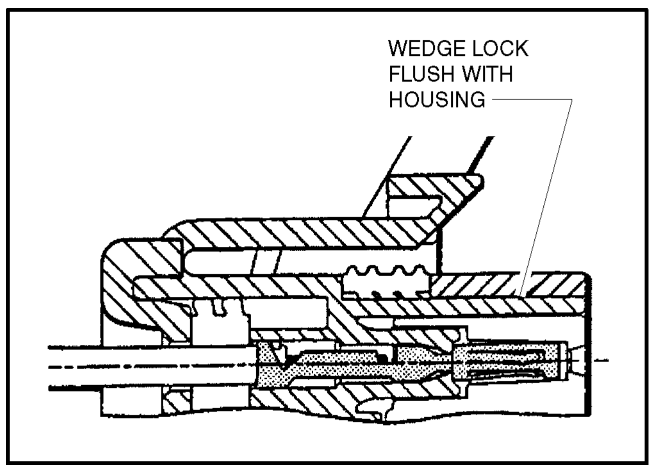


Figure 7-9. Connector Assembly Figure 4

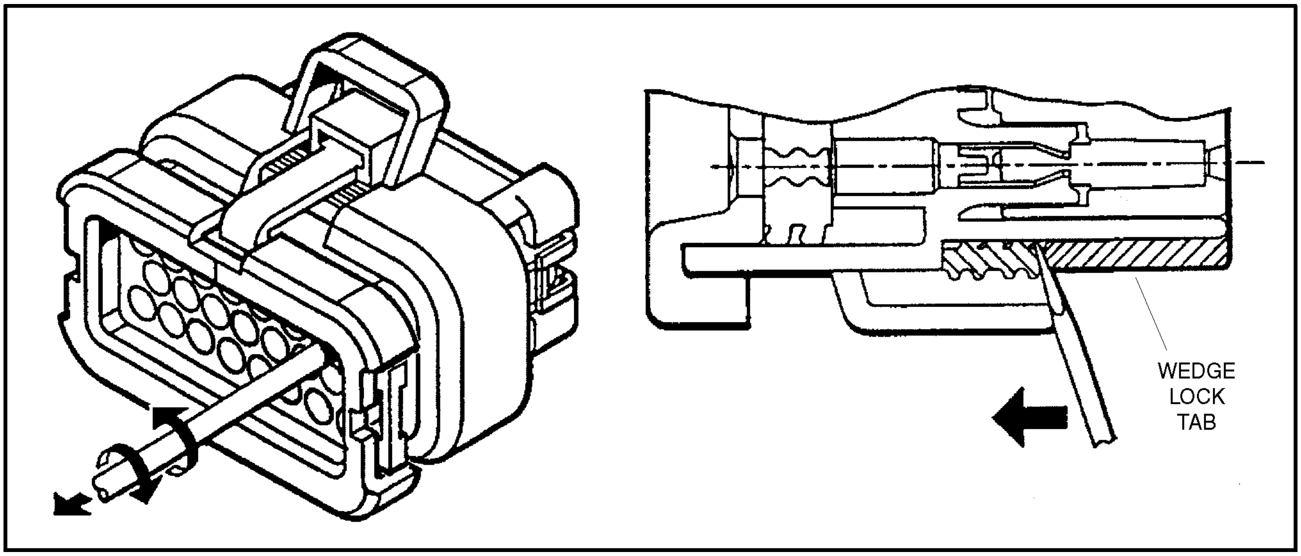


Figure 7-10. Connector Disassembly

Disassembly

1. Insert a 4.8 mm (3/16") wide screwdriver blade between the mating seal and one of the red wedge lock tabs.
2. Pry open the wedge lock to the open position.
3. While rotating the wire back and forth over a half turn (1/4 turn in each direction), gently pull the wire until the contact is removed.

NOTE: *The wedge lock should never be removed from the housing for insertion or removal of the contacts.*

Wedge Lock

The wedge lock has slotted openings in the forward, or mating end. These slots accommodate circuit testing in the field, by using a flat probe such as a pocket knife. DO NOT use a sharp point such as an ice pick.

Service - Voltage Reading

CAUTION

DO NOT PIERCE WIRE INSULATION TO TAKE VOLTAGE READINGS.

It has been common practice in electrical troubleshooting to probe wires by piercing the insulation with a sharp point. This practice should be discouraged when dealing with the AMPSEAL plug assembly, or any other sealed connector system. The resulting pinholes in the insulation will allow moisture to invade the system by traveling along the wire strands. This nullifies the effectiveness of the connector seals and could result in system failure.

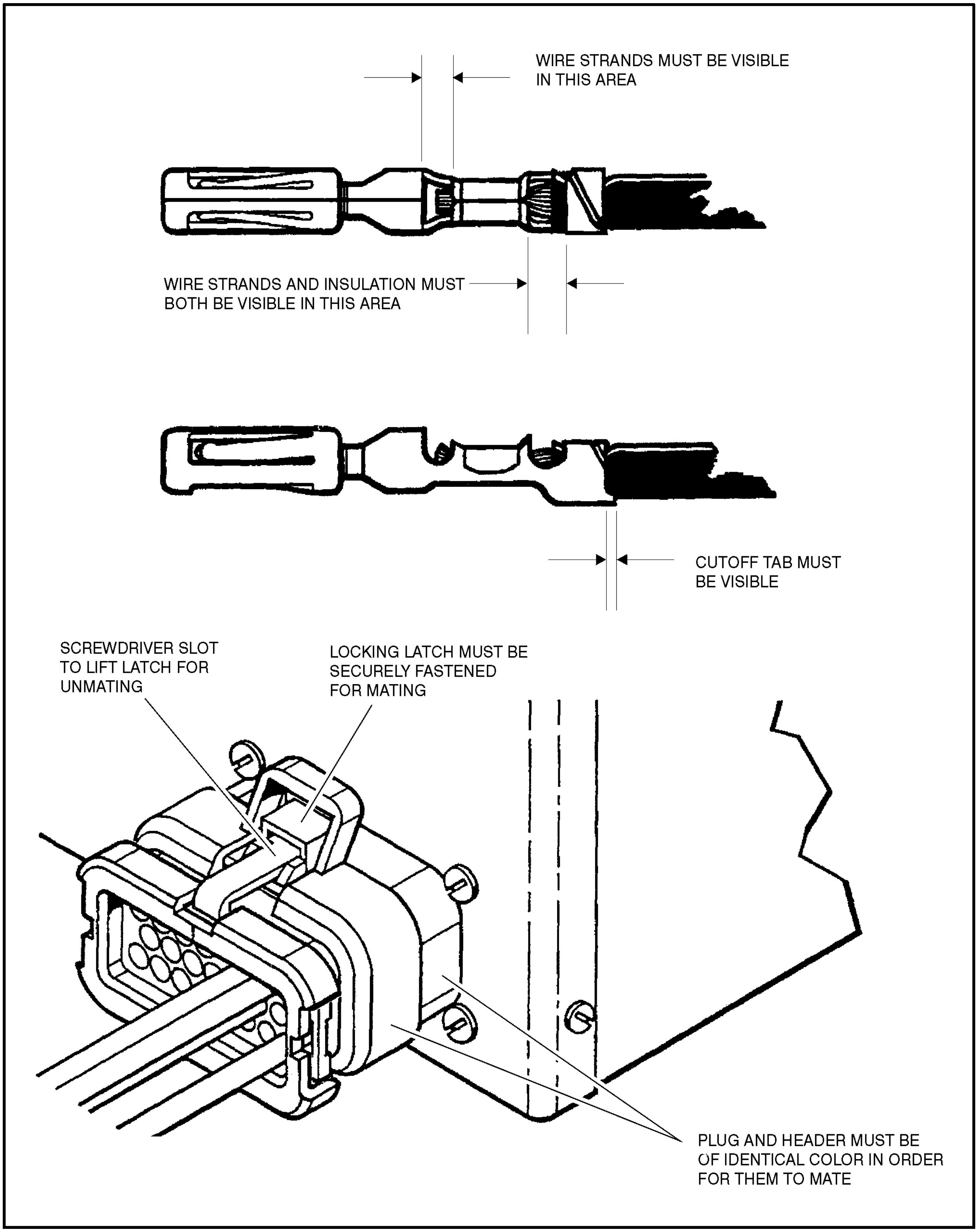
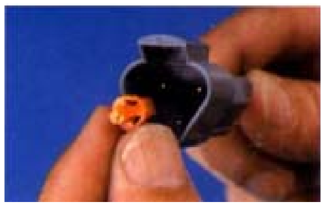


Figure 7-11. Connector Installation

7.5 DEUTSCH CONNECTORS

DT/DTP Series Assembly


A B

C D

Figure 7-12. DT/DTP Contact Installation

1. Grasp crimped contact about 25mm behind the contact barrel.
2. Hold connector with rear grommet facing you.
3. Push contact straight into connector grommet until a click is felt. A slight tug will confirm that it is properly locked in place.
4. Once all contacts are in place, insert wedgelock with arrow pointing toward exterior locking mechanism. The wedgelock will snap into place. Rectangular wedges are not oriented. Thy may go in either way.

NOTE: *The receptacle is shown - use the same procedure for plug.*

DT/DTP Series Disassembly


A B

C

Figure 7-13. DT/DTP Contact Removal

1. Remove wedgelock using needlenose pliers or a hook shaped wire to pull wedge straight out.
2. To remove the contacts, gently pull wire backwards, while at the same time releasing the locking finger by moving it away from the contact with a screwdriver.
3. Hold the rear seal in place, as removing the contact may displace the seal.

HD30/HDP20 Series Assembly

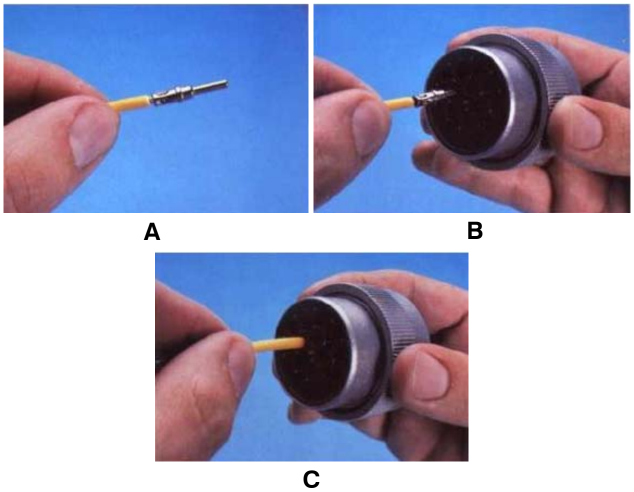


Figure 7-14. HD/HDP Contact Installation

1. Grasp contact about 25mm behind the contact crimp barrel.
2. Hold connector with rear grommet facing you.
3. Push contact straight into connector grommet until a positive stop is felt. A slight tug will confirm that it is properly locked in place.

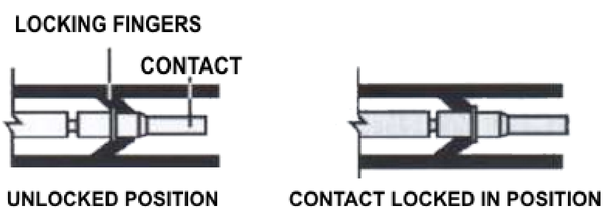


Figure 7-15. HD/HDP Locking Contacts Into Position

NOTE: *For unused wire cavities, insert sealing plugs for full environmental sealing*

HD30/HDP20 Series Disassembly

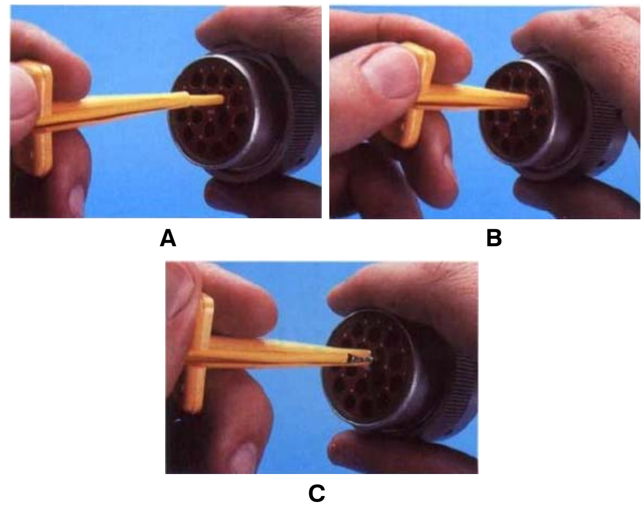


Figure 7-16. HD/HDP Contact Removal

1. With rear insert toward you, snap appropriate size extractor tool over the wire of contact to be removed.
2. Slide tool along into the insert cavity until it engages contact and resistance is felt.
3. Pull contact-wire assembly out of connector.

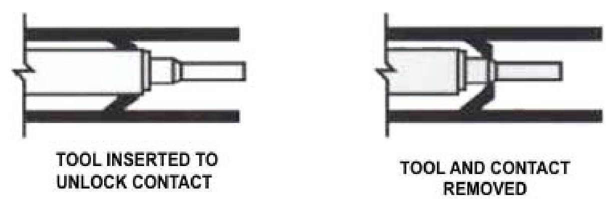


Figure 7-17. HD/HDP Unlocking Contacts

NOTE: *Do Not twist or insert tool at an angle.*

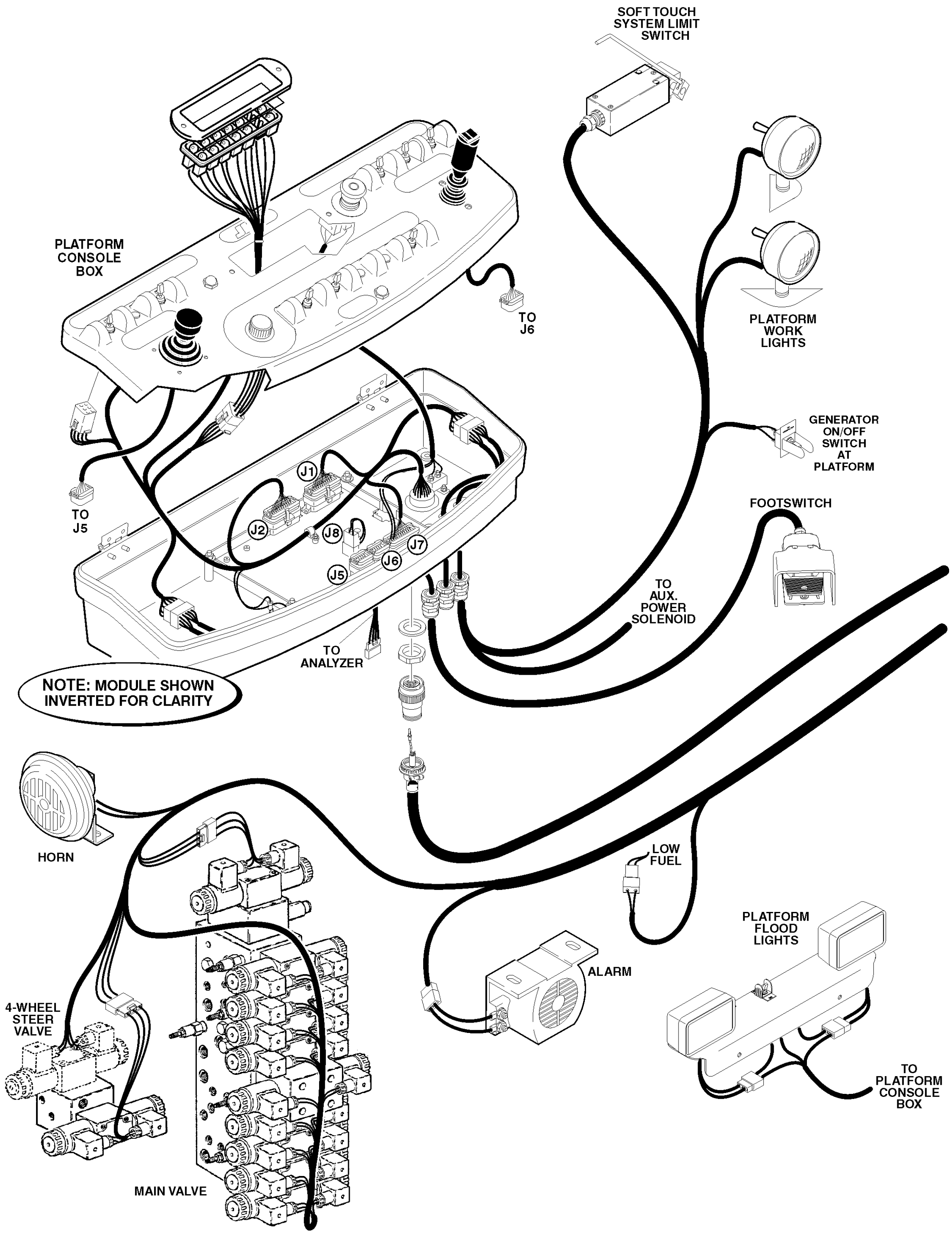


Figure 7-18. Electrical Harness - Prior to S/N 87000 - Sheet 1 of 2

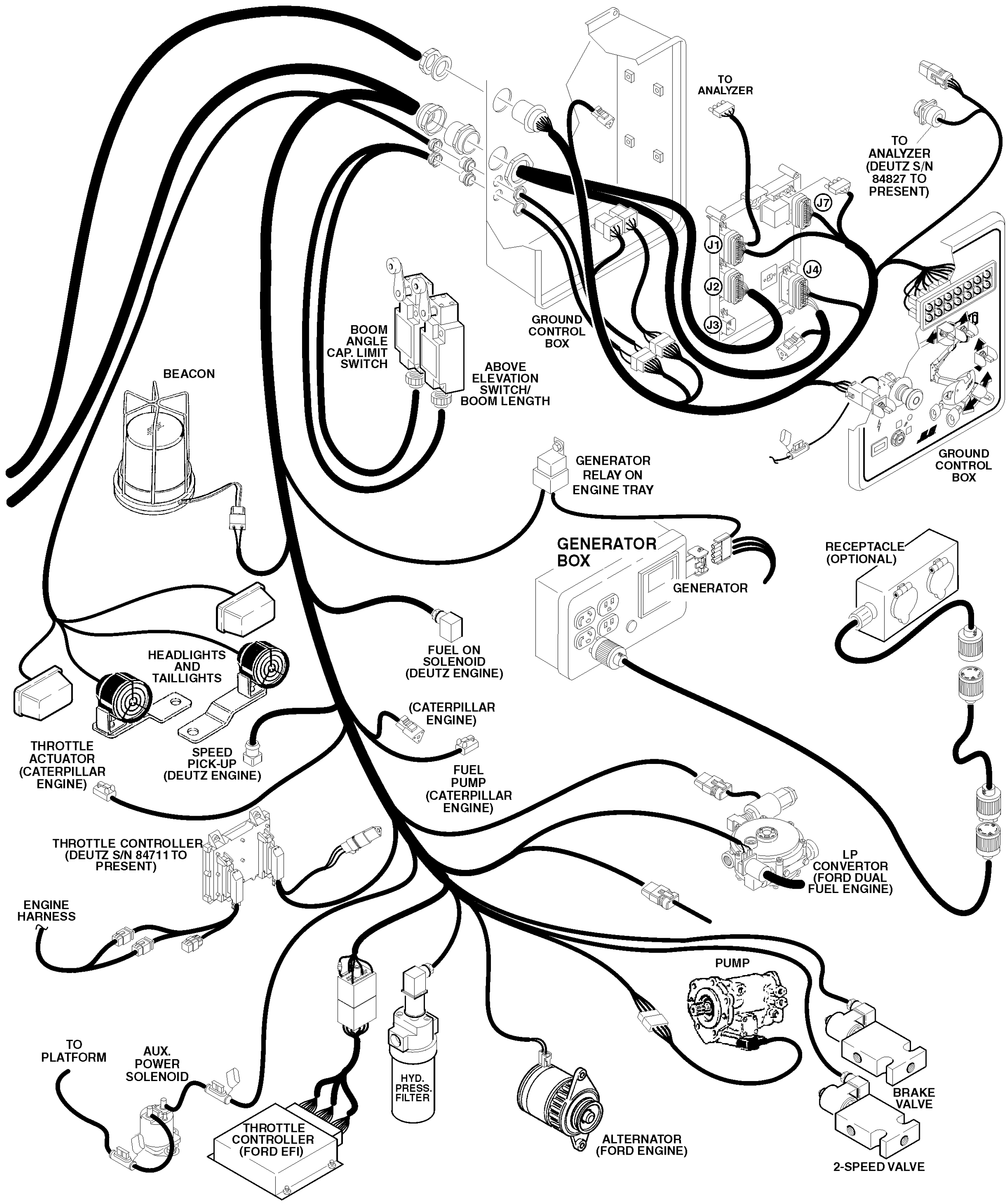


Figure 7-19. Electrical Harness - Prior to S/N 87000 - Sheet 2 of 2

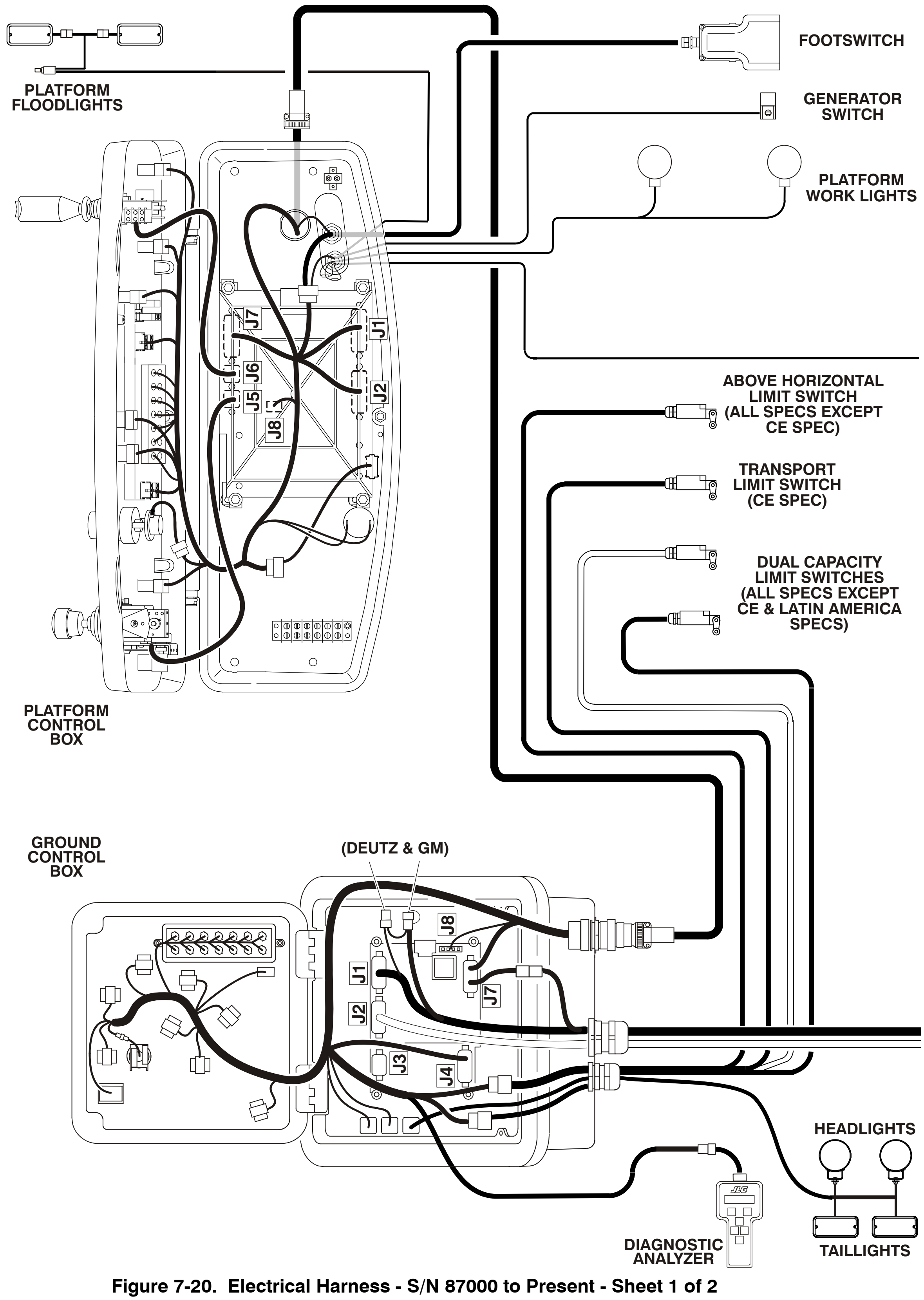


Figure 7-20. Electrical Harness - S/N 87000 to Present - Sheet 1 of 2

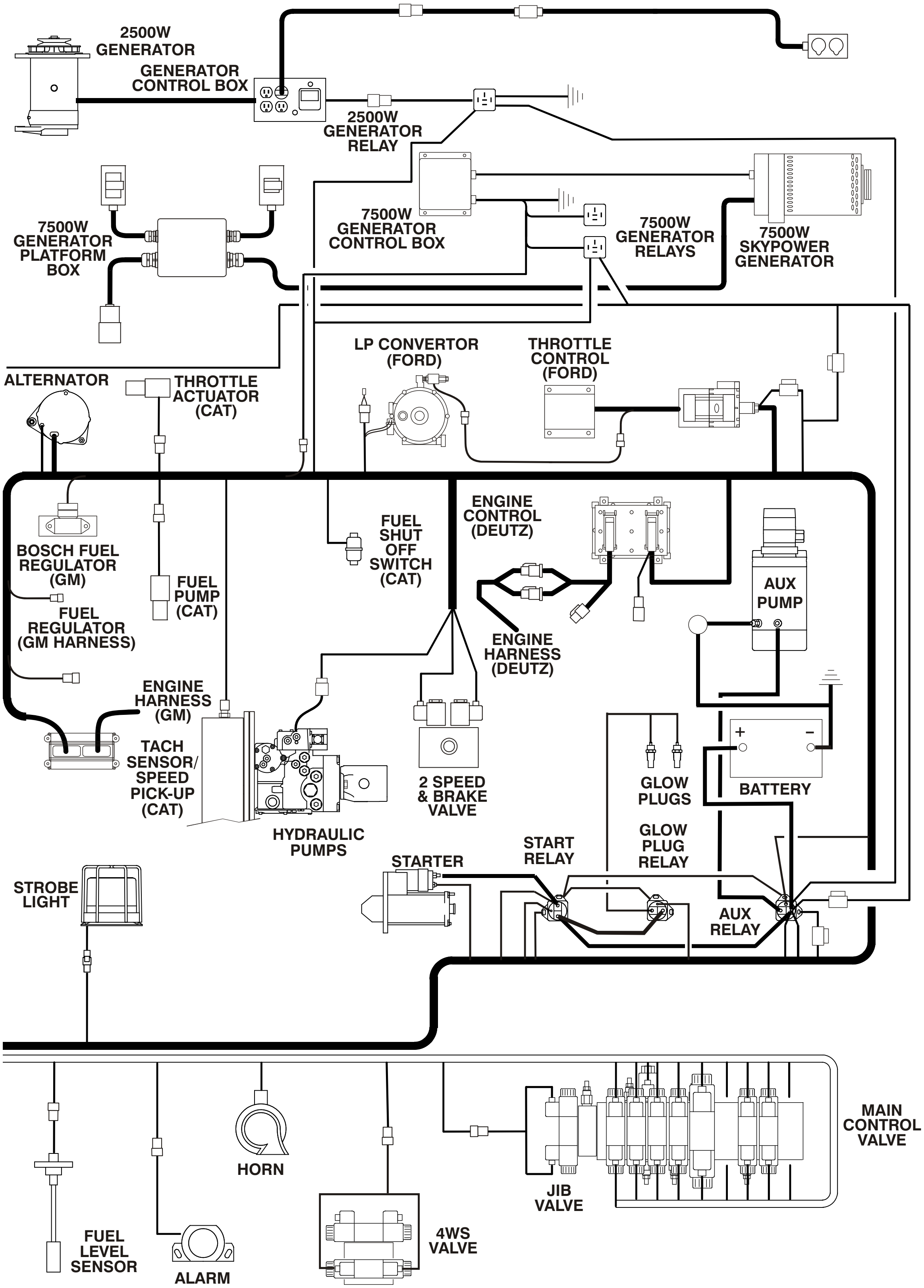


Figure 7-21. Electrical Harness - S/N 87000 to Present - Sheet 2 of 2

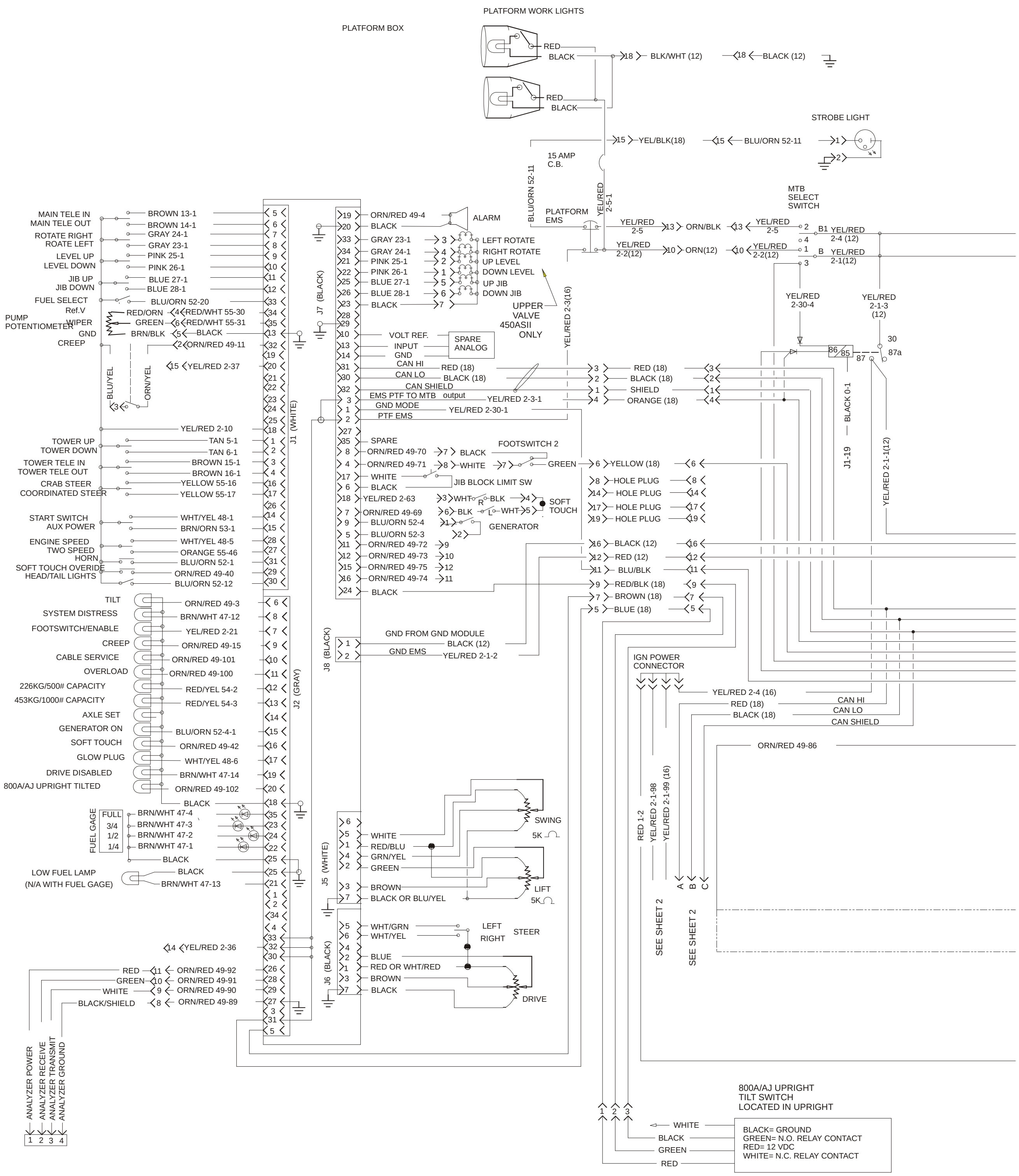


Figure 7-22. Electrical Schematic - ADE - Sheet 1 of 6

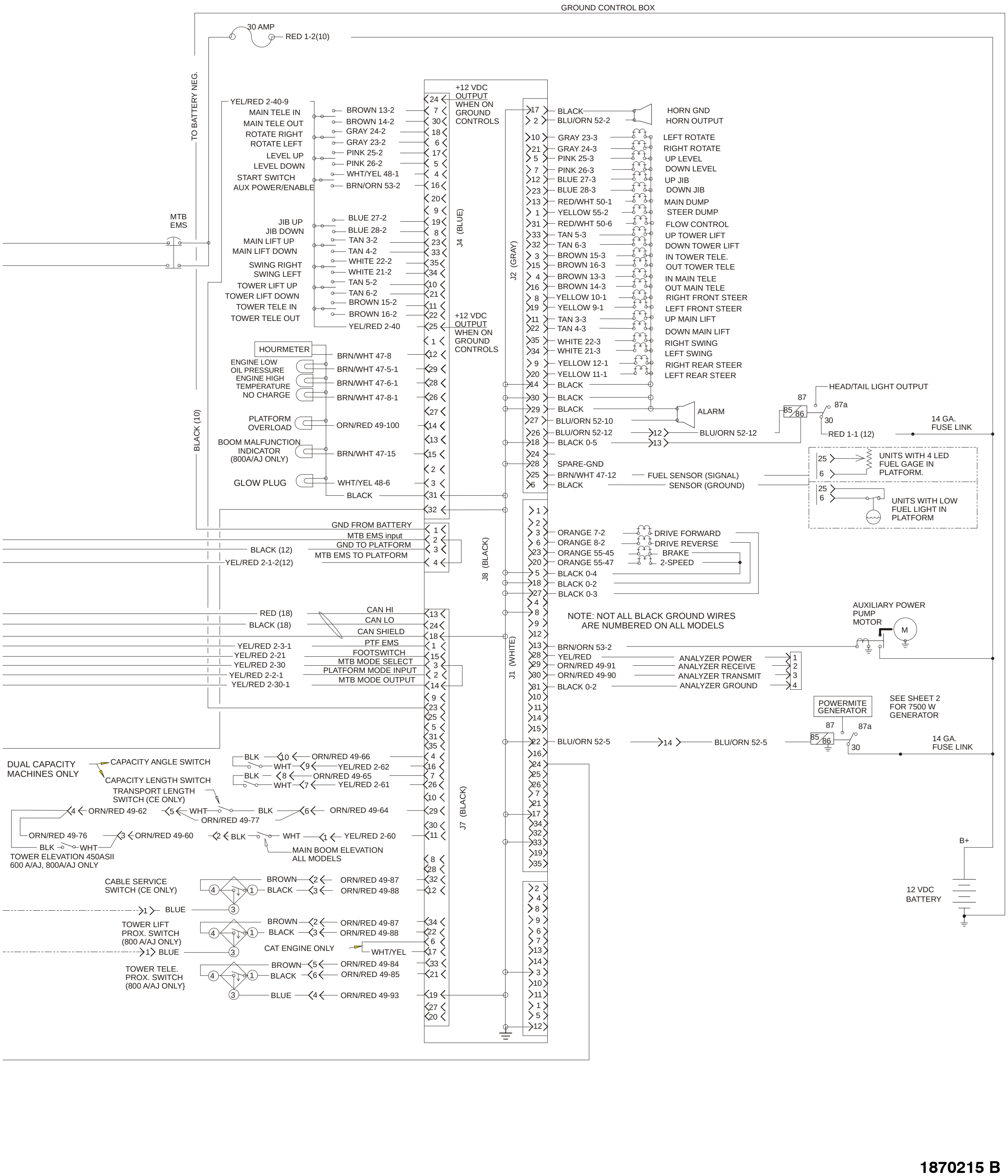


Figure 7-23. Electrical Schematic - ADE - Sheet 2 of 6

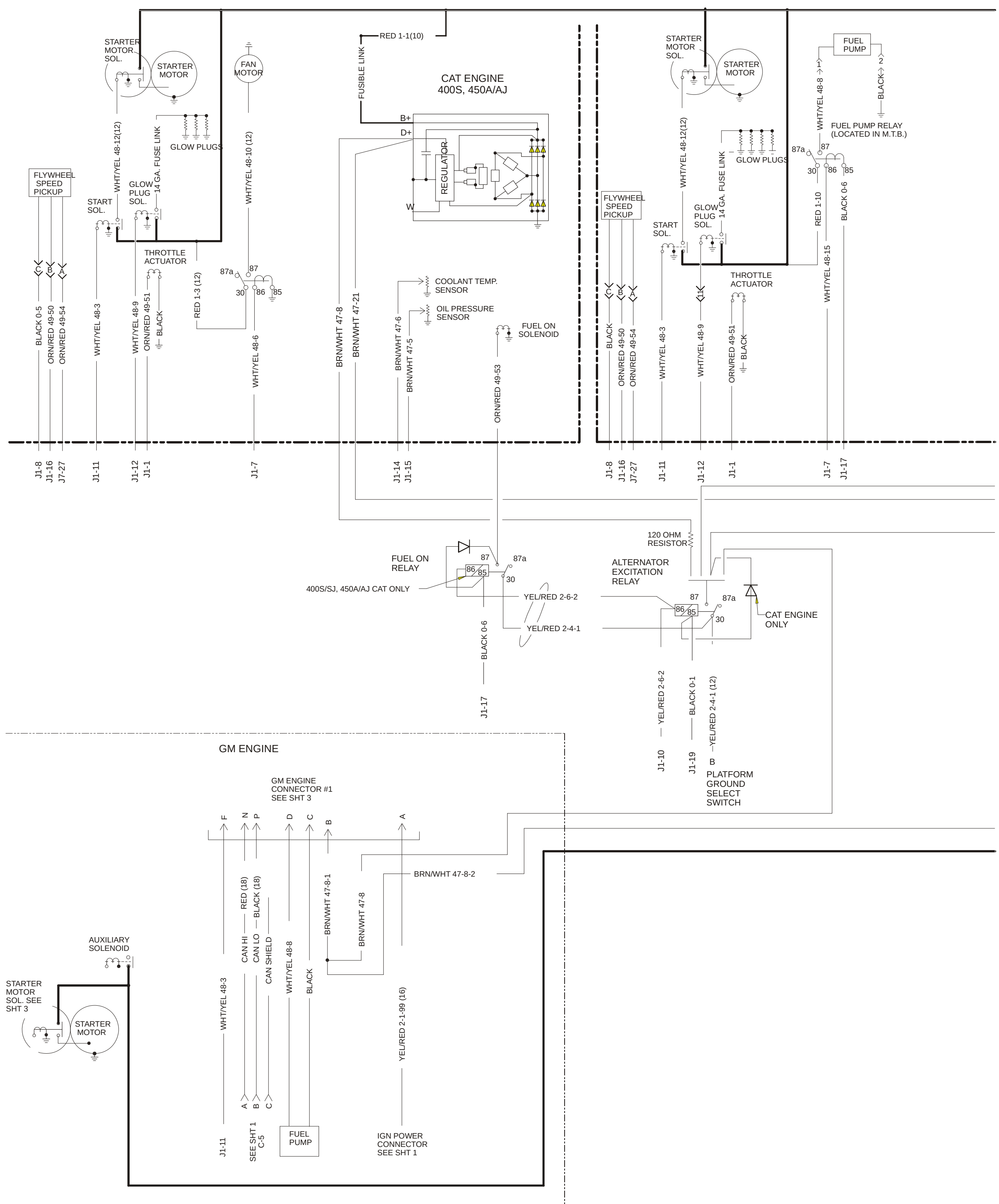


Figure 7-24. Electrical Schematic - ADE - Sheet 3 of 6

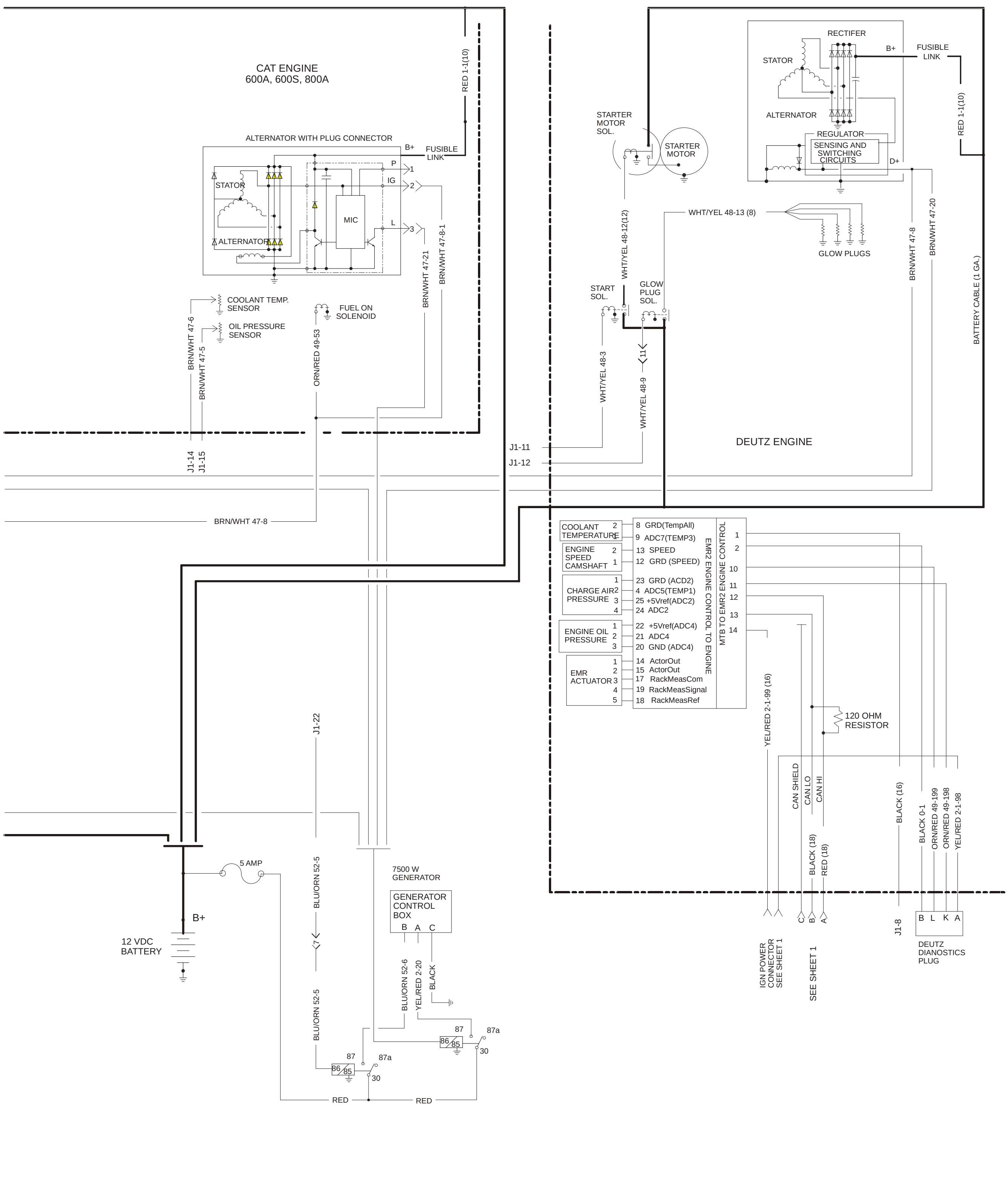


Figure 7-25. Electrical Schematic - ADE - Sheet 4 of 6

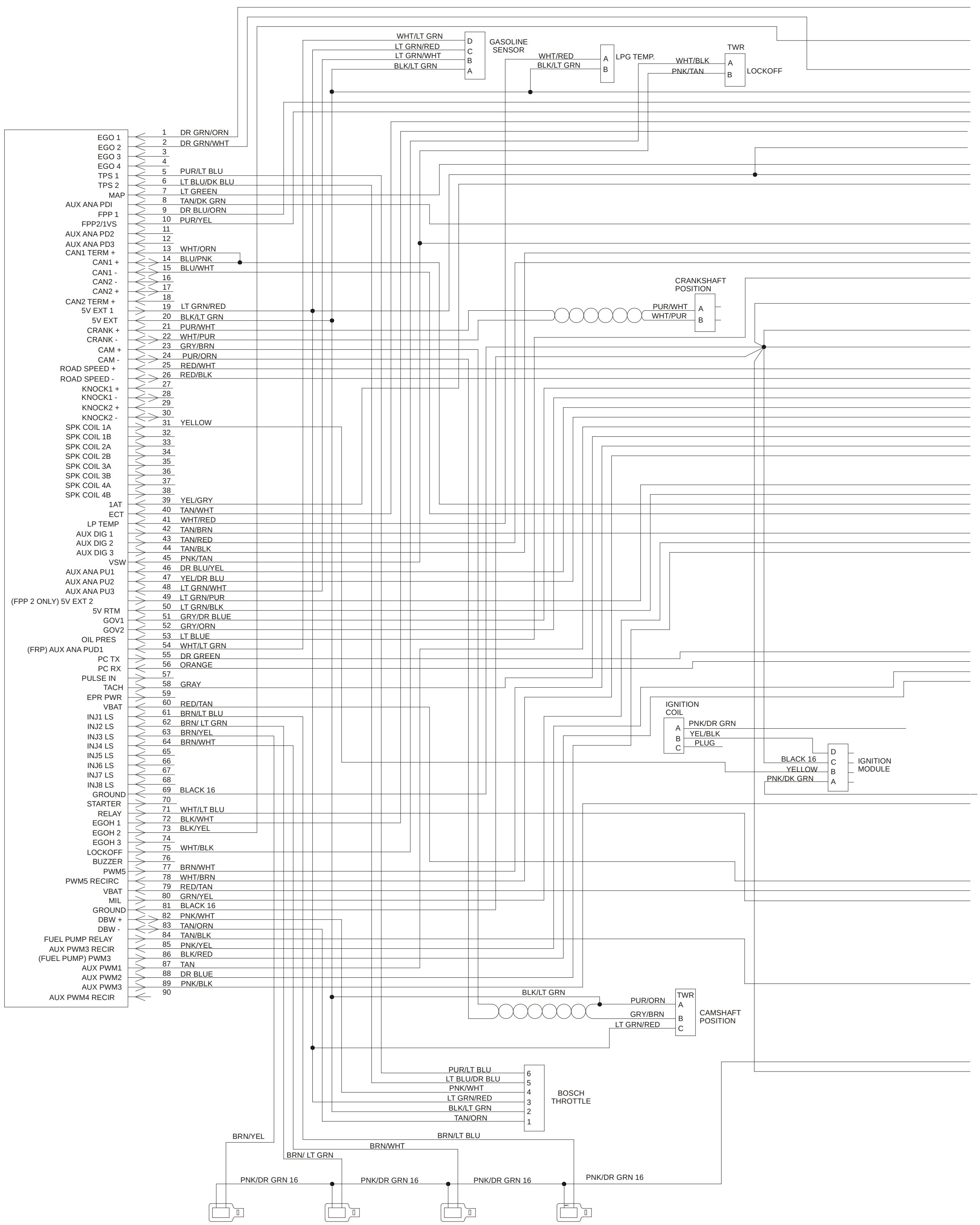
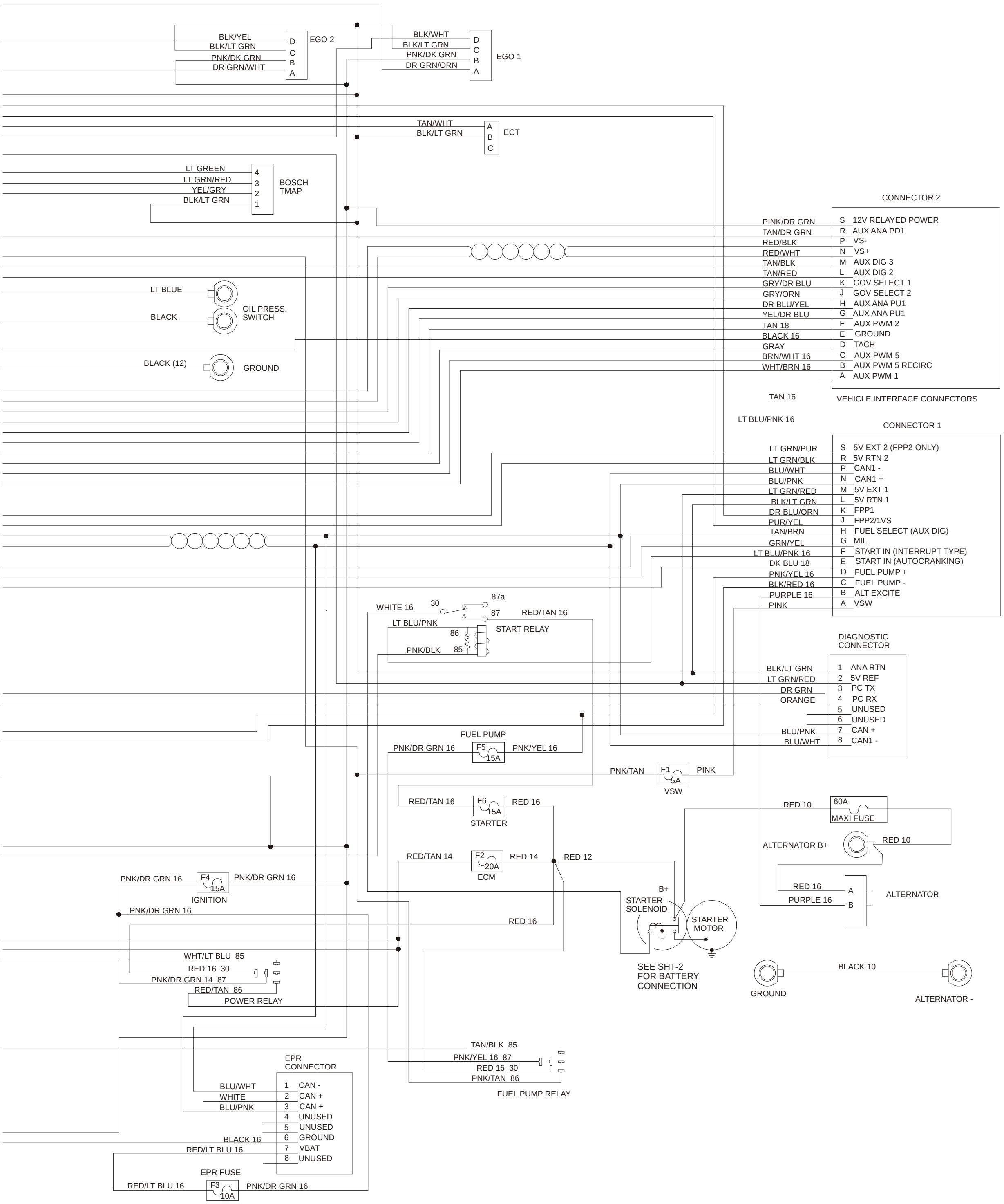


Figure 7-26. Electrical Schematic - ADE - Sheet 5 of 6



1870215 B

Figure 7-27. Electrical Schematic - ADE - Sheet 6 of 6

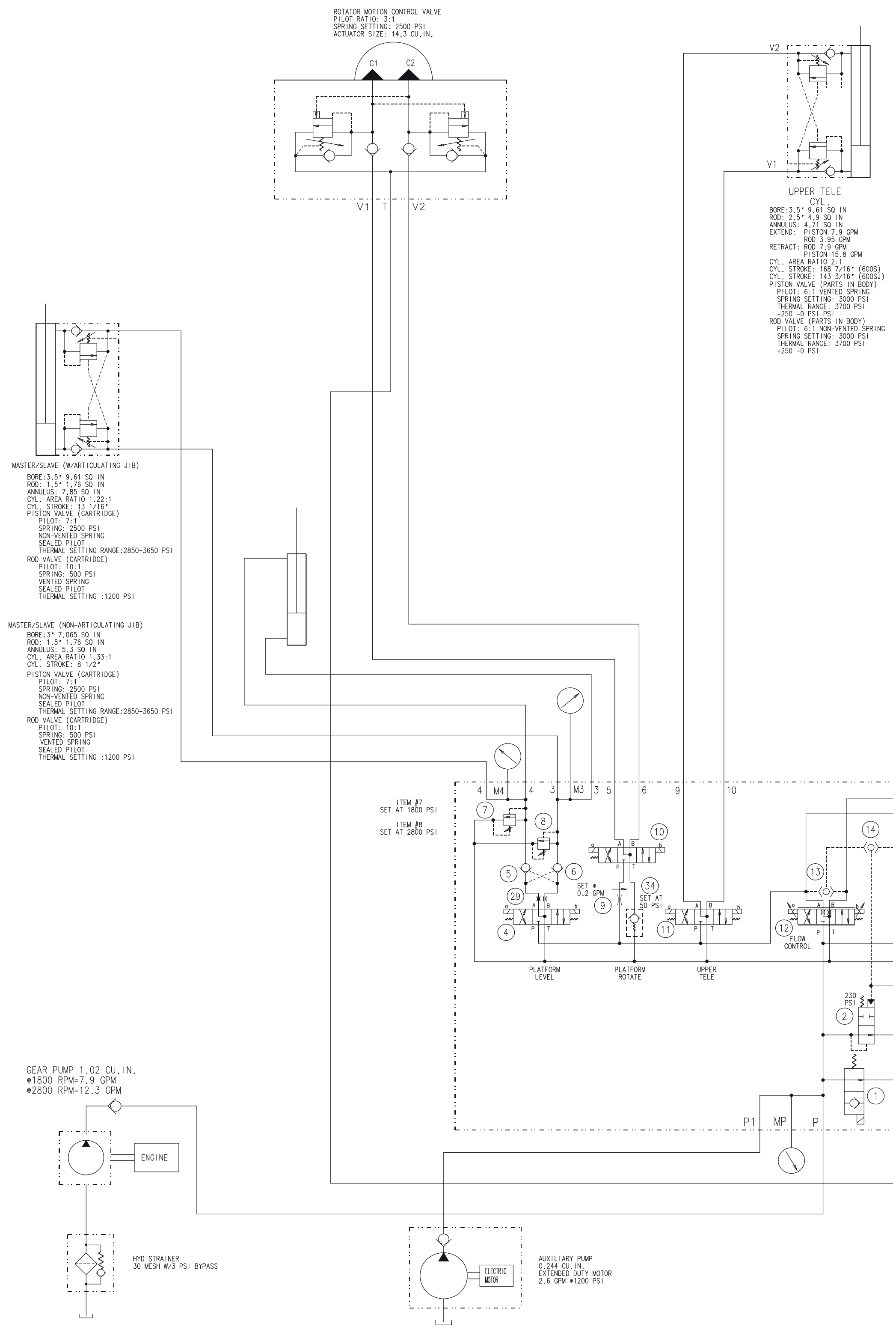
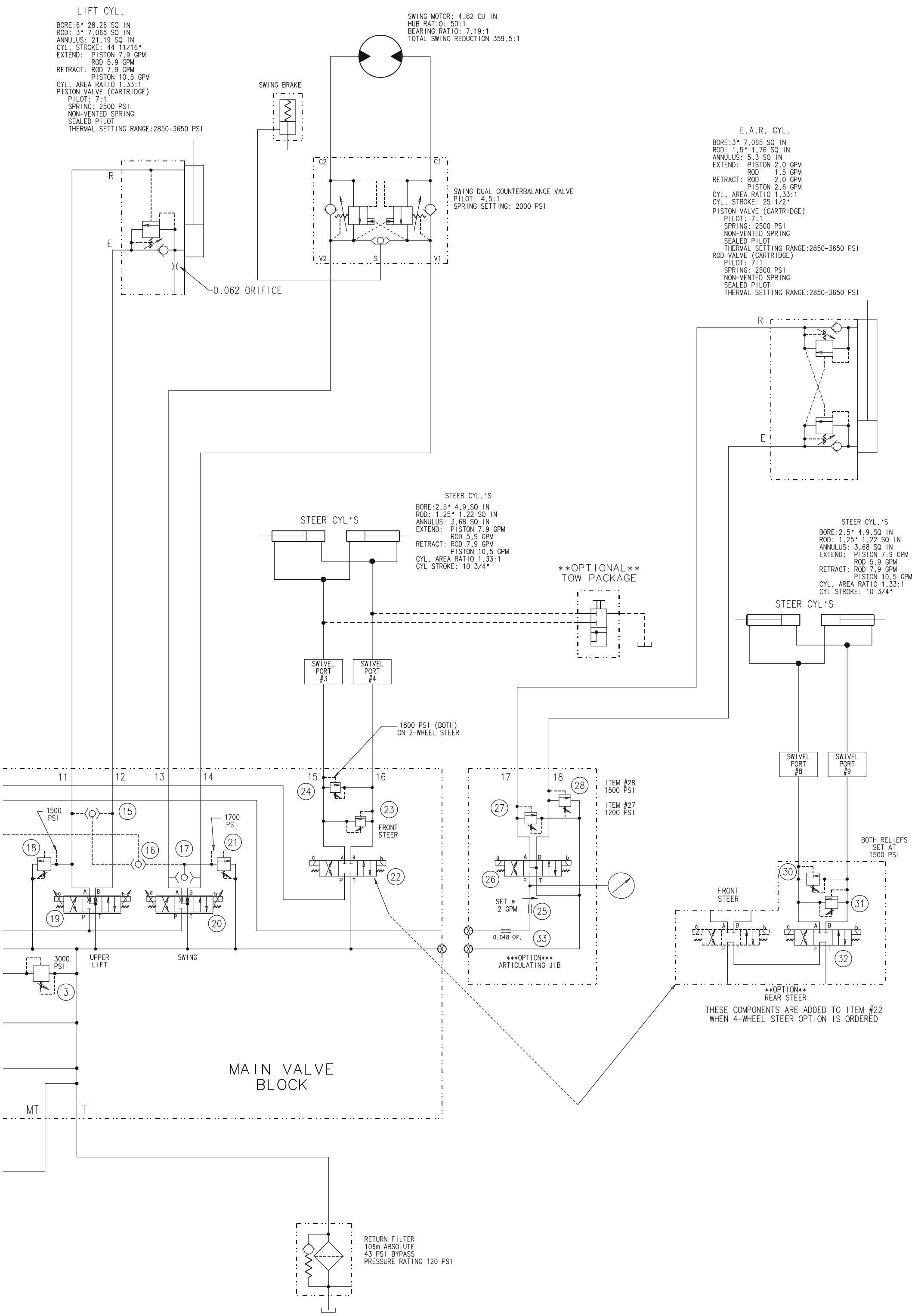


Figure 7-28. Hydraulic Schematic - Sheet 1 of 6



2792605 D

Figure 7-29. Hydraulic Schematic - Sheet 2 of 6

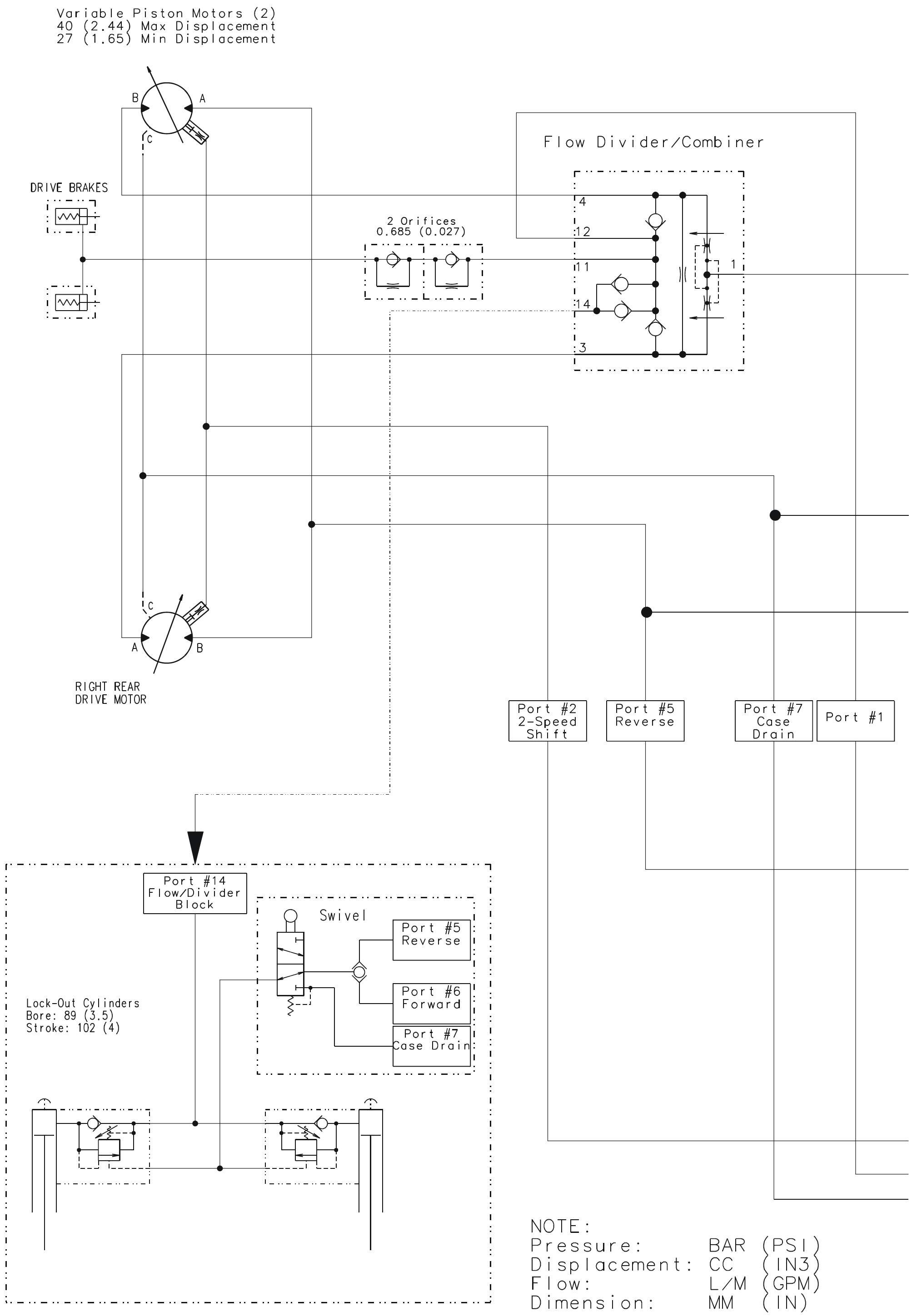
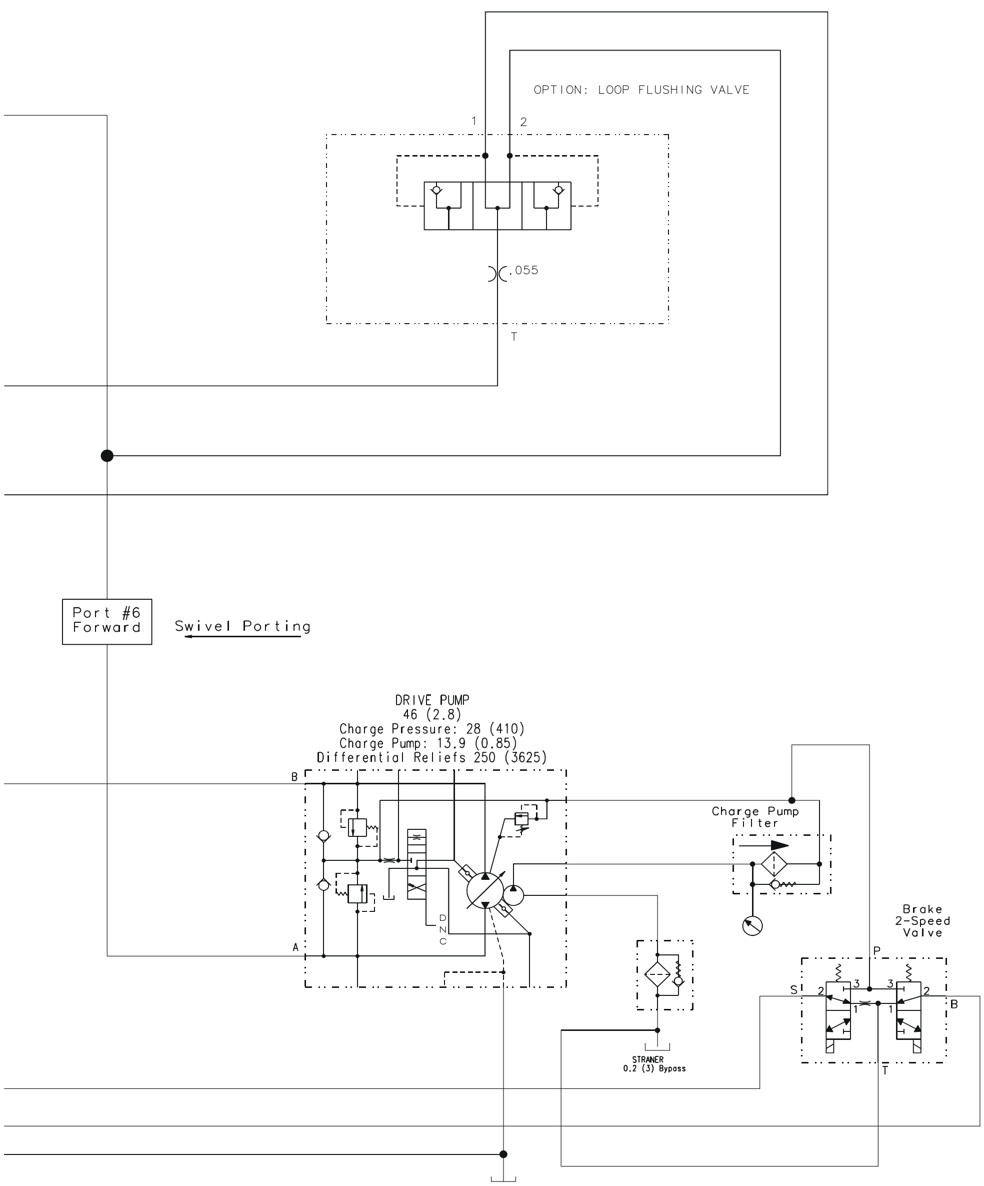


Figure 7-30. Hydraulic Schematic - Sheet 3 of 6



2792605 D

Figure 7-31. Hydraulic Schematic - Sheet 4 of 6

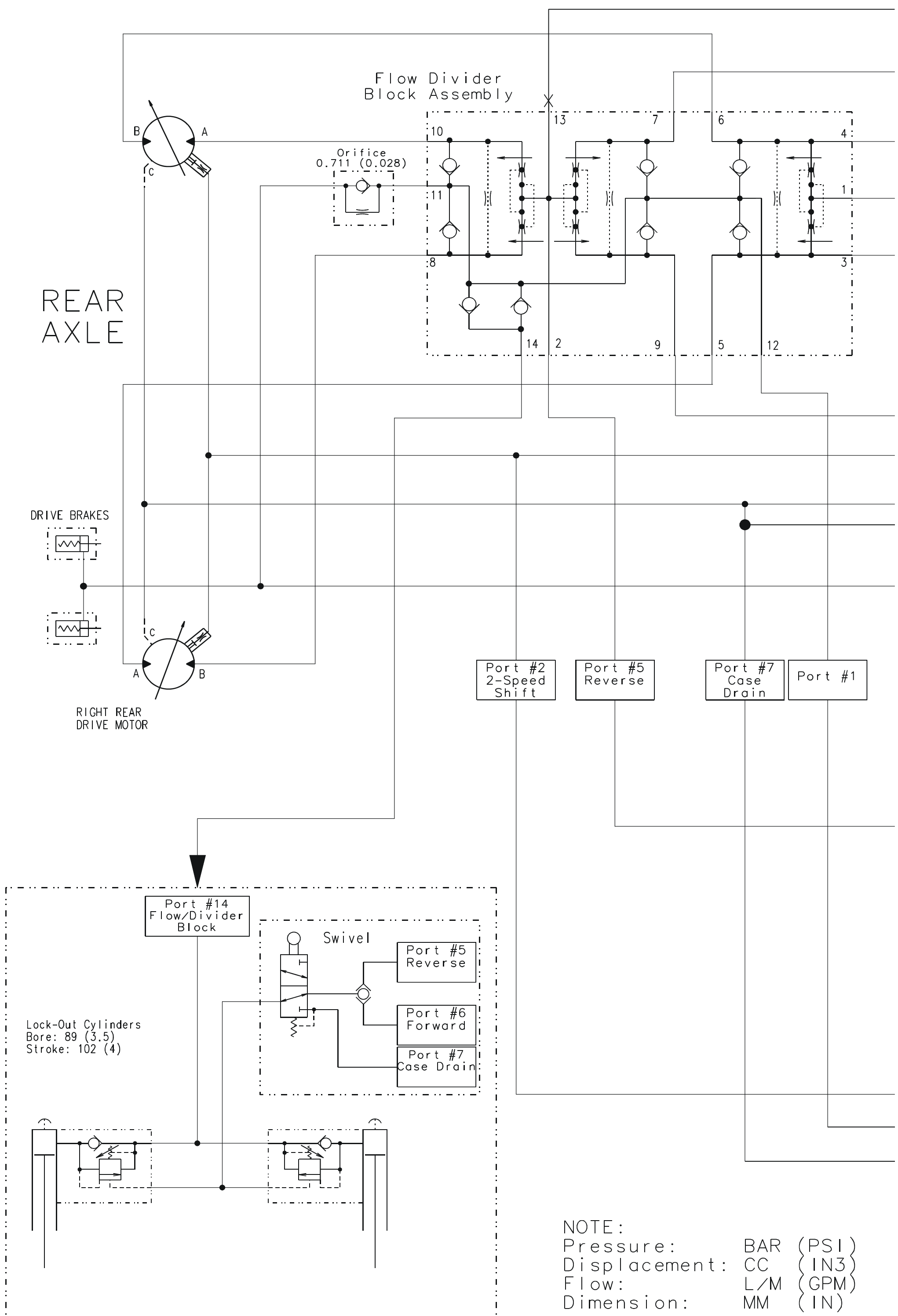
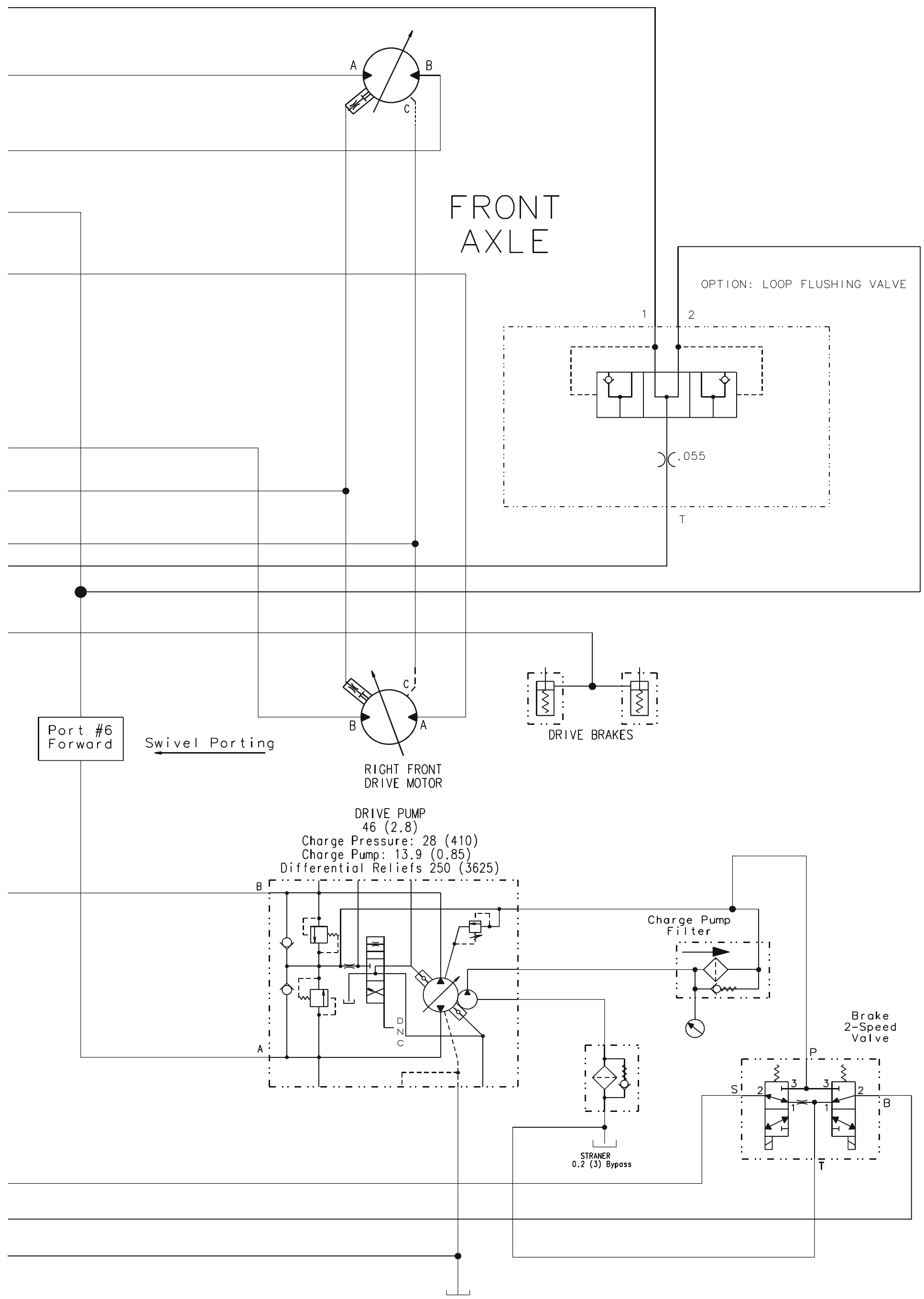


Figure 7-32. Hydraulic Schematic - Sheet 5 of 6



2792605 D

Figure 7-33. Hydraulic Schematic - Sheet 6 of 6

NOTES:

PROPOSITION 65 WARNING

- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm.
- Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer.
- Wash hands after handling.

WARNING:

The engine exhaust from this product contains chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects, or other reproductive harm.

1702961

3121202

An Oshkosh Corporation Company

Corporate Office
JLG Industries, Inc.
1 JLG Drive
McConnellsburg PA. 17233-9533
USA
☎ *(717) 485-5161*
Fax *(717) 485-6417*

JLG Worldwide Locations

JLG Industries (Australia)
P.O. Box 5119
11 Bolwarra Road
Port Macquarie
N.S.W. 2444
Australia
☎ +61 2 65 811111
Fax +61 2 65813058

JLG Latino Americana Ltda.
Rua Eng. Carlos Stevenson,
80-Suite 71
13092-310 Campinas-SP
Brazil
☎ +55 19 3295 0407
Fax +55 19 3295 1025

JLG Industries (UK) Ltd
Bentley House
Bentley Avenue
Middleton
Greater Manchester
M24 2GP - England
☎ +44 (0)161 654 1000
Fax +44 (0)161 654 1001

JLG France SAS
Z.I. de Baulieu
47400 Fauillet
France
☎ +33 (0)5 53 88 31 70
Fax +33 (0)5 53 88 31 79

JLG Deutschland GmbH
Max-Planck-Str. 21
D - 27721 Ritterhude - Ihlpohl
Germany
☎ +49 (0)421 69 350 20
Fax +49 (0)421 69 350 45

JLG Equipment Services Ltd.
Rm 1107 Landmark North
39 Lung Sum Avenue
Sheung Shui N. T.
Hong Kong
☎ (852) 2639 5783
Fax (852) 2639 5797

JLG Industries (Italia) s.r.l.
Via Po. 22
20010 Pregnana Milanese - MI
Italy
☎ +39 029 359 5210
Fax +39 029 359 5845

Oshkosh-JLG Singapore
Technology Equipment Pte
Ltd
29 Tuas Ave 4,
Jurong Industrial Estate
Singapore, 639379
☎ +65-6591 9030
Fax +65-6591 9031

Plataformas Elevadoras
JLG Iberica, S.L.
Trapadella, 2
P.I. Castellbisbal Sur
08755 Castellbisbal, Barcelona
Spain
☎ +34 93 772 4700
Fax +34 93 771 1762

JLG Sverige AB
Enkopingsvagen 150
Box 704
SE - 176 27 Jarfalla
Sweden
☎ +46 (0)850 659 500
Fax +46 (0)850 659 534

www.jlg.com